Kia, THE COMPANY

Thank you for becoming the owner of a new Kia vehicle.

As a global car manufacturer focused on building high-quality, value for money prices, Kia Motors is dedicated to providing you with a customer service experience that exceeds your expectations.

At all of our Kia dealerships you will be treated with warmth, hospitality and professionalism by people who care based on our **"Family-like Care"** promise.

All information contained in this Owner's Manual is accurate at the time of publication. However, Kia reserves the right to make changes at any time so that our policy of continual product improvement can be carried out.

This manual applies to all models of this vehicle and includes descriptions and explanations of optional as well as standard equipment. As a result, you may encounter material in this manual that is not applicable to your specific Kia vehicle.

Enjoy your vehicle and Kia's "Family-like Care" experience!

FOREWORD

Thank you for choosing a Kia vehicle.

This manual will familiarize you with operational, maintenance and safety information about your new vehicle. It is supplemented by a Warranty and Maintenance book that provides important information on all warranties regarding your vehicle. Kia urges you to read these publications carefully and follow the recommendations to help assure enjoyable and safe operation of your new vehicle.

Kia offers a great variety of options, components and features for its various models. Therefore, some of the equipment described in this manual, along with the various illustrations, may not be applicable to your particular vehicle.

The information and specifications provided in this manual were accurate at the time of printing. Kia reserves the right to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation. If you have questions, always check with your authorised Kia dealer.

Kia assures you of our continuing interest in your motoring pleasure and satisfaction in your Kia vehicle.

© 2016 Kia MOTORS Corp.

All rights reserved. Reproduction by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system or translation in whole or part is not permitted without written authorization from Kia MOTORS Corporation.

Printed in Korea

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction	1
Your vehicle at a glance	2
Safety features of your vehicle	3
Features of your vehicle	4
Audio system	5
Driving your vehicle	6
What to do in an emergency	7
Maintenance	8
Specifications & Consumer information	9
Index	I

Introduction

1

How to use this manual 1-2
Fuel requirements 1-3
- **Petrol engine 1-3**
- **Diesel engine. 1-6**

Vehicle break-in process 1-8

HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

We want to help you get the greatest possible driving pleasure from your vehicle. Your Owner's Manual can assist you in many ways. We strongly recommend that you read the entire manual. In order to minimise the chance of death or injury, you must read the WARNING and CAUTION sections in the manual.

Illustrations complement the words in this manual to best explain how to enjoy your vehicle. By reading your manual, you learn about features, important safety information, and driving tips under various road conditions.

The general layout of the manual is provided in the Table of Contents. Use the index when looking for a specific area or subject; it has an alphabetical listing of all information in your manual.

Sections: This manual has eight sections plus an index. Each section begins with a brief list of contents so you can tell at a glance if that section has the information you want.

You will find various WARNINGs, CAUTIONs, and NOTICEs in this manual. These WARNINGs were prepared to enhance your personal safety. You should carefully read and follow ALL procedures and recommendations provided in these WARNINGs, CAUTIONs and NOTICEs.

⚠ WARNING

A WARNING indicates a situation in which harm, serious bodily injury or death could result if the warning is ignored.

⚠ CAUTION

A CAUTION indicates a situation in which damage to your vehicle could result if the caution is ignored.

✻ NOTICE

A NOTICE indicates interesting or helpful information is being provided.

FUEL REQUIREMENTS

Petrol engine

Unleaded

For Europe

For the optimal vehicle performance, we recommend you to use unleaded petrol with an octane rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 95 / AKI (Anti Knock Index) 91 or higher.

You may use unleaded petrol with an octane rating of RON 91~94 / AKI 87~90 but it may result in slight performance reduction of the vehicle. (Do not use methanol blended fuels.)

Except Europe

Your new Kia vehicle is designed to use only unleaded fuel having an Octane Rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 91 / AKI (Anti-Knock Index) 87 or higher. (Do not use methanol blended fuels.)

Your new vehicle is designed to obtain maximum performance with UNLEADED FUEL, as well as minimise exhaust emissions and spark plug fouling.

⚠ CAUTION

NEVER USE LEADED FUEL. The use of leaded fuel is detrimental to the catalytic converter and will damage the engine control system's oxygen sensor and affect emission control.

Never add any fuel system cleaning agents to the fuel tank other than what has been specified. (We recommend that you consult an authorised Kia dealer for details.)

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not "top off" after the nozzle automatically shuts off when refuelling.**
- **Always check that the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.**

Leaded (if equipped)

For some countries, your vehicle is designed to use leaded petrol. When you are going to use leaded petrol, we recommend that you ask an authorised Kia dealer whether leaded petrol in your vehicle is available or not.

Octane Rating of leaded petrol is same with unleaded one.

Petrol containing alcohol and methanol

Gasohol, a mixture of petrol and ethanol (also known as grain alcohol), and petrol or gasohol containing methanol (also known as wood alcohol) are being marketed along with or instead of leaded or unleaded petrol.

Do not use gasohol containing more than 10% ethanol, and do not use petrol or gasohol containing any methanol. Either of these fuels may cause drivability problems and damage to the fuel system, engine control system and emission control system.

Discontinue using gasohol of any kind if drivability problems occur.

Vehicle damage or drivability problems may not be covered by the manufacturer's warranty if they result from the use of:

1. Gasohol containing more than 10% ethanol.
2. Petrol or gasohol containing methanol.
3. Leaded fuel or leaded gasohol.

⚠ CAUTION

Never use gasohol which contains methanol. Discontinue use of any gasohol product which impairs drivability.

Other fuels

Using fuels such as

- Silicone (Si) contained fuel,
- MMT (Manganese, Mn) contained fuel,
- Ferrocene (Fe) contained fuel, and
- Other metalic additives contained fuels, may cause vehicle and engine damage or cause plugging, misfiring, poor acceleration, engine stalling, catalyst melting, abnormal corrosion, life cycle reduction, etc.

  Also, the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) may illuminate.

✻ NOTICE

Damage to the fuel system or performance problem caused by the use of these fuels may not be covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Use of MTBE

Kia recommends avoiding fuels containing MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight) in your vehicle.

Fuel containing MTBE over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight) may reduce vehicle performance and produce vapour lock or hard starting.

⚠ CAUTION

Your New Vehicle Limited Warranty may not cover damage to the fuel system and any performance problems that are caused by the use of fuels containing methanol or fuels containing MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight.)

Do not use methanol

Fuels containing methanol (wood alcohol) should not be used in your vehicle. This type of fuel can reduce vehicle performance and damage components of the fuel system, engine control system and emission control system.

Fuel Additives

Kia recommends that you use unleaded petrol which has an octane rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 95 / AKI (Anti Knock Index) 91 or higher (for Europe) or Octane Rating of RON (Reasearch Octane Number) 91 / AKI (Anti-Knock Index) 87 or higher (except Europe).

For customers who do not use good quality petrols including fuel additives regularly, and have problems starting or the engine does not run smoothly, one bottle of additives added to the fuel tank at every 15,000km (For Europe, Australia and New Zealand) / 10,000km (Except Europe, Australia and New Zealand). Additives are available from your authorised Kia dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

Operation in foreign countries

If you are going to drive your vehicle in another country, be sure to:

- Observe all regulations regarding registration and insurance.
- Determine that acceptable fuel is available.

Diesel engine

Diesel fuel

Diesel engine must be operated only on commercially available diesel fuel that complies with EN 590 or comparable standard. (EN stands for "European Norm"). Do not use marine diesel fuel, heating oils, or non-approved fuel additives, as this will increase wear and cause damage to the engine and fuel system. The use of non-approved fuels and / or fuel additives will result in a limitation of your warranty rights.

Diesel fuel of above cetane 51 is used in your vehicle. If two types of diesel fuel are available, use summer or winter fuel properly according to the following temperature conditions.

- Above -5°C (23°F) ... Summer type diesel fuel.
- Below -5°C (23°F) ... Winter type diesel fuel.

Watch the fuel level in the tank very carefully : If the engine stops through fuel failure, the circuits must be completely purged to restart.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not let any petrol or water enter the tank. This would make it necessary to drain it out and to bleed the lines to avoid jamming the injection pump and damaging the engine.

⚠ CAUTION - Diesel Fuel (if equipped with DPF)

It is recommended to use the regulated automotive diesel fuel for diesel vehicle equipped with the DPF system.

If you use diesel fuel including high sulfur (more than 50 ppm sulfur) and unspecified additives, it can cause the DPF system to be damaged and white smoke can be emitted.

Biodiesel

Commercially supplied Diesel blends of no more than 7% biodiesel, commonly known as "B7 Diesel" may be used in your vehicle if Biodiesel meets EN 14214 or equivalent specifications. (EN stands for "European Norm"). The use of biofuels exceeding 7% made from rapeseed methyl ester (RME), fatty acid methyl ester (FAME), vegetable oil methyl ester (VME) etc. or mixing diesel exceeding 7% with biodiesel will cause increased wear or damage to the engine and fuel system. Repair or replacement of worn or damaged components due to the use of non approved fuels will not be covered by the manufactures warranty.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Never use any fuel, whether diesel or B7 biodiesel or otherwise, that fails to meet the latest petroleum industry specification.***
- ***Never use any fuel additives or treatments that are not recommended or approved by the vehicle manufacturer.***

Biodiesel (for New Zealand)

Commercially supplied Diesel blends of no more than 7% biodiesel, commonly known as "B7 Diesel" may be used in your vehicle if Biodiesel meets EN 14214 or equivalent specifications. (EN stands for "European Norm"). The use of biofuels exceeding 7%, made from rapeseed methyl ester (RME), vegetable oil methyl ester (VME) etc. or mixing diesel exceeding 7% with biodiesel will cause increased wear or damage to the engine and fuel system. Repair or replacement of worn or damaged components due to the use of non approved fuels will not be covered by the manufactures warranty.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Never use any fuel, whether diesel or B7 biodiesel or otherwise, that fails to meet the latest petroleum industry specification.***
- ***Never use any fuel additives or treatments that are not recommended or approved by the vehicle manufacturer.***

VEHICLE BREAK-IN PROCESS

No special break-in period is needed. By following a few simple precautions for the first 1,000 km (600 miles) you may add to the performance, economy and life of your vehicle.

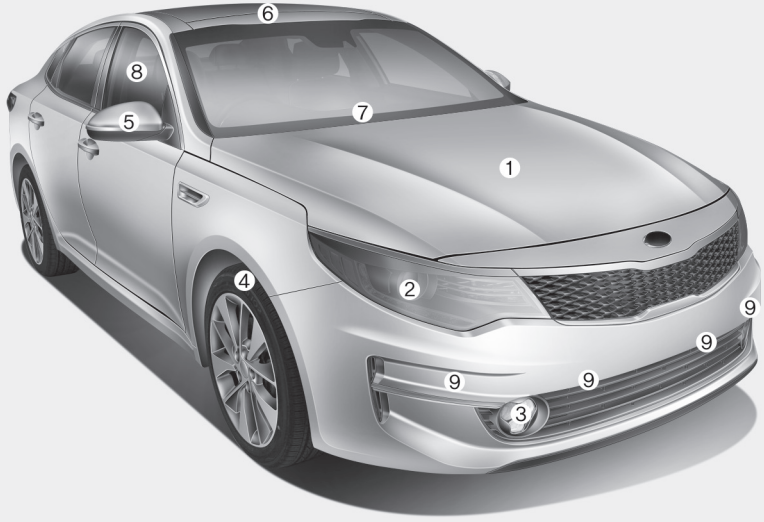
- Do not race the engine.
- Whilst driving, keep your engine speed (rpm, or revolutions per minute) within 3,000 rpm.
- Do not maintain a single speed for long periods of time, either fast or slow. Varying engine speed is needed to properly break-in the engine.
- Avoid hard stops, except in emergencies, to allow the brakes to seat properly.
- Don't tow a trailer during the first 2,000 km (1,200 miles) of operation.

Your vehicle at a glance

Exterior overview **2-2**
Interior overview **2-4**
Instrument panel overview **2-5**
Engine compartment **2-7**

EXTERIOR OVERVIEW

■ Front view

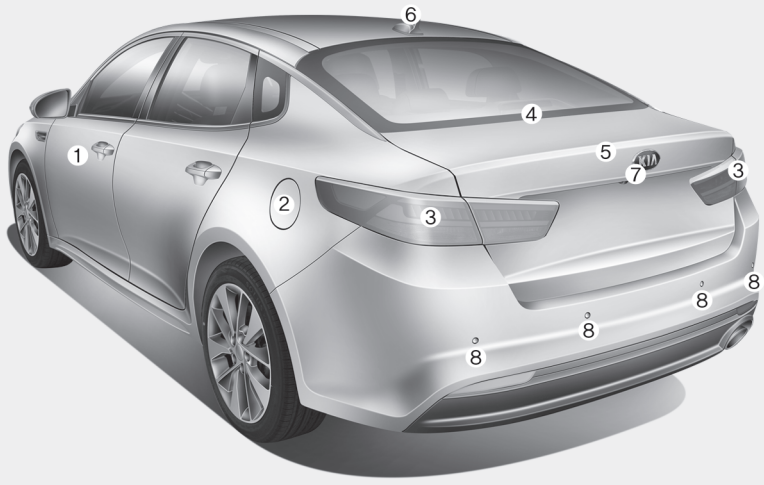


1. Bonnet 4-49
2. Head lamp
   (Features of your vehicle) 4-143
   Head lamp (Maintenance) 8-116
3. Front fog lamp
   (Features of your vehicle) 4-148
   Front fog lamp (Maintenance) 8-116
4. Wheel and tyre 8-78, 9-8
5. Outside rearview mirror 4-63
6. Panorama sunroof 4-54
7. Front windscreen wiper blades
   (Features of your vehicle) 4-152
   Front windscreen wiper blades
   (Maintenance) 8-71
8. Windows 4-44
9. Parking assist system 4-117

❈ The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

OJF015001R

■ Rear view

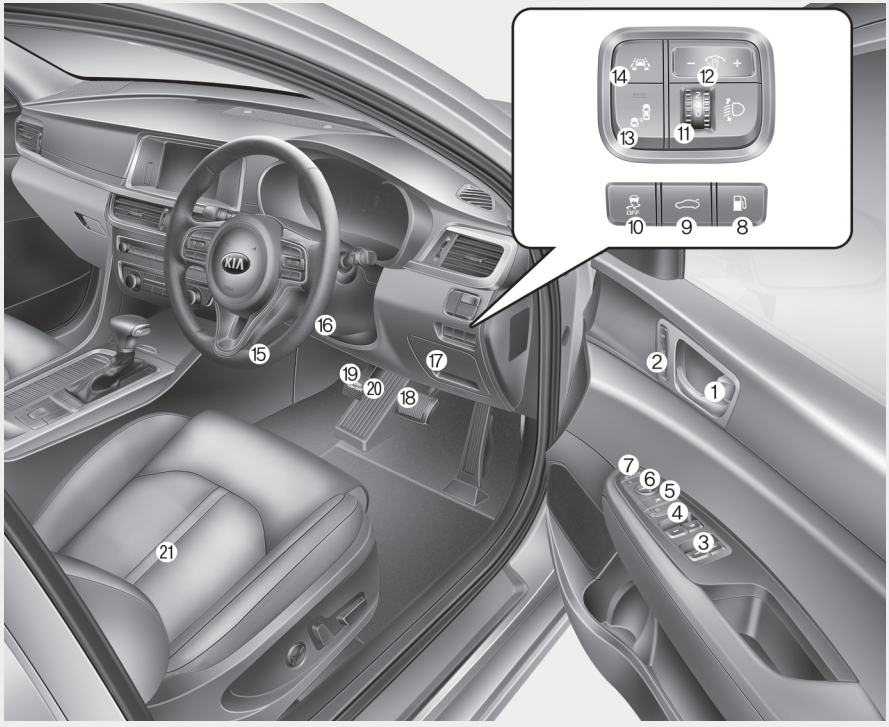


1. Door locks 4-20
2. Fuel filler lid 4-51
3. Rear combination lamp (Maintenance) 8-117, 8-118
4. High mounted stop lamp (Maintenance) 8-117, 8-118
5. Trunk 4-26, 4-29
6. Antenna 5-2
7. Rearview camera 4-139
8. Parking assist system 4-117

❈ The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

OJF015002L

INTERIOR OVERVIEW



1. Inside door handle 4-21
2. Driver position memory button 3-9
3. Power window switch.....4-44
4. Central door lock switch 4-23
5. Power window lock button 4-47
6. Outside rearview mirror control 4-64
7. Outside rearview mirror folding 4-65
8. Fuel filler lid open button 4-51
9. Trunk open button 4-26
10. ESC off button 6-61
11. Headlight levelling device 4-150
12. Instrument panel illumination control 4-69
13. BSD On/Off button 6-133
14. LDWS On/Off button.....6-121
    LKAS On/Off button.....6-125
15. Steering wheel.....4-59
16. Tilt and telescopic steering control lever..4-60
17. Inner fuse panel.....8-91
18. Brake pedal.....6-43
19. Parking brake pedal.....6-45
20. Bonnet release lever.....4-49
21. Seat.....3-2

❈ The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

OJF015003R

INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW (1)

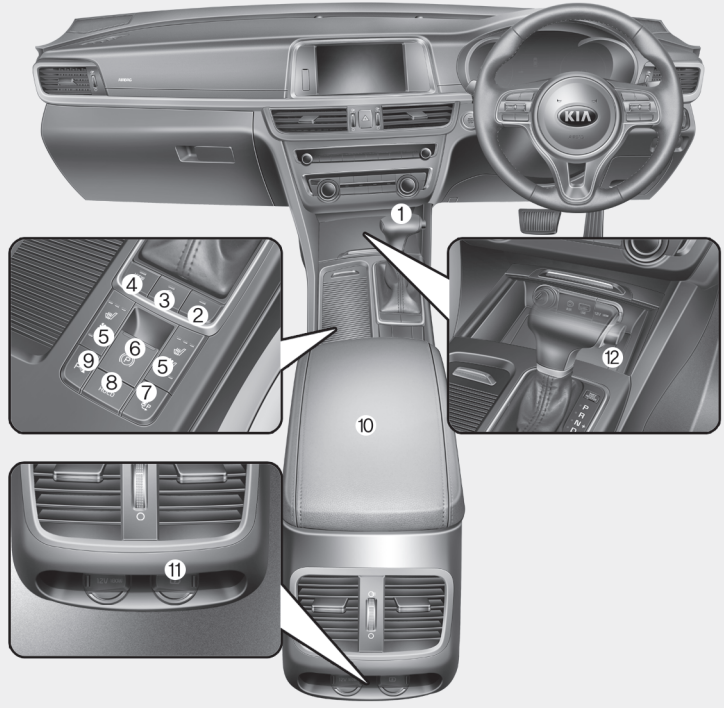


1. Steering wheel audio controls 5-3
2, Driver`s front air bag 3-58
3. Horn.....4-61
4. Instrument cluster.....4-67
5. Wiper and washer control lever
(Except Europe) 4-152
Lighting control lever (For Europe)....4-142
6. Ignition switch.....6-7
Engine start/stop button 6-12
7. Cruise control 6-82
Speed limit control.....6-87
Advanced smart cruise control.....6-97
8. Audio 5-7
9. Hazard warning flasher 7-2
10. Manual climate control system.....4-169
Automatic climate control system....4-175
11. Glove box 4-189
12. Passenger's front air bag 3-58
13. Wiper and washer control lever
(For Europe) 4-152
Lighting control lever
(Except Europe) 4-142

❊ The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

OJF016004R

INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW (2)



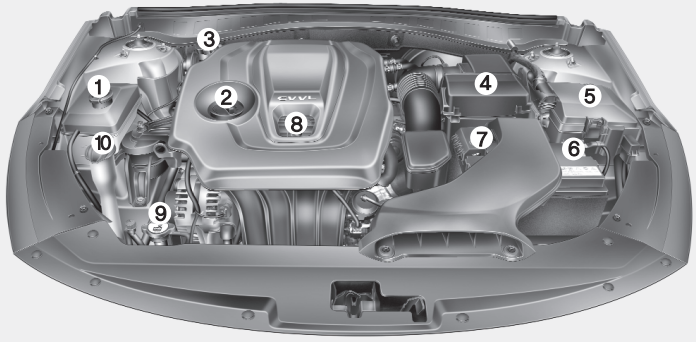
1. Shift lever M/T 6-19
   Shift lever A/T 6-23
   Shift lever DCT 6-32
2. Heated steering wheel button 4-60
3. ISG On/Off button.....6-114
4. Surround view monitoring system On/Off button.....4-140
5. Seat warmer.....4-195
   Air ventilation seat.....4-196
6. Electronic parking brake (EPB) switch ..6-47
7. Auto Hold On/Off button.....6-54
8. Smart parking assist system On/Off button.....4-128
9. Parking assist system On/Off button.4-117
10. Centre console storage box 4-189
11. USB charger.....4-198
12. Smart phone wireless charger 4-199

❊ The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

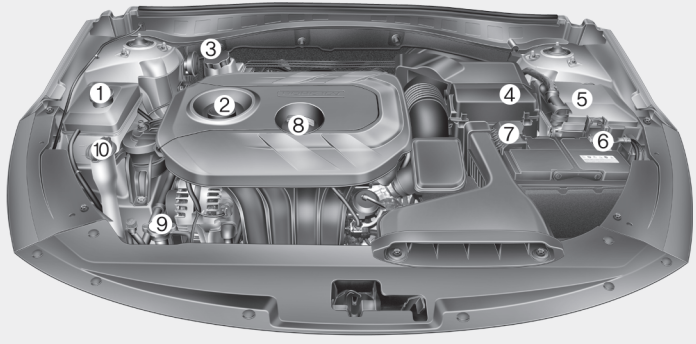
OJF015005R

ENGINE COMPARTMENT

■ **Petrol Engine (Nu 2.0L - CVVL)**



■ **Petrol Engine (Nu 2.0L - MPI)**

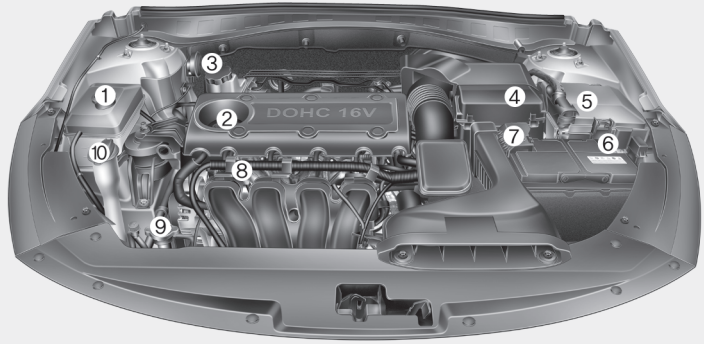


❈ The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

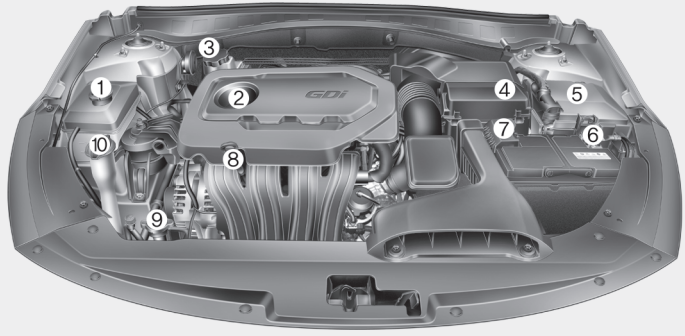
1. Engine coolant reservoir.....8-60
2. Engine oil filler cap 8-57
3. Brake/clutch fluid reservoir (if equipped).....8-62
4. Air cleaner.....8-66
5. Fuse box 8-93
6. Negative battery terminal.....8-74
7. Positive battery terminal 8-74
8. Engine oil dipstick.....8-55
9. Radiator cap 8-61
10. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir ..8-63

OJF075074R/OJF075140R

■ **Petrol Engine (THETA 2.4L - MPI)**



■ **Petrol Engine (THETA 2.4L - GDI)**

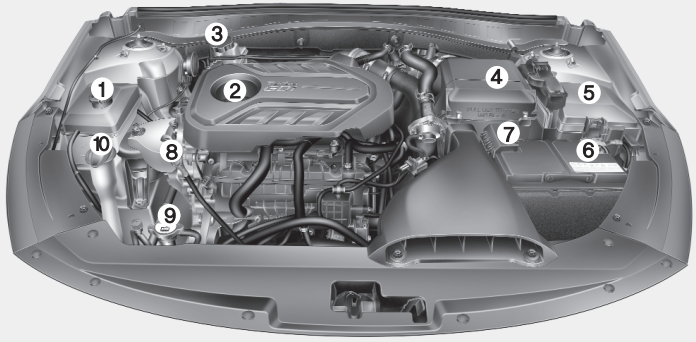


1. Engine coolant reservoir.....8-60
2. Engine oil filler cap 8-57
3. Brake/clutch fluid reservoir (if equipped).....8-62
4. Air cleaner.....8-66
5. Fuse box 8-93
6. Negative battery terminal.....8-74
7. Positive battery terminal 8-74
8. Engine oil dipstick.....8-55
9. Radiator cap 8-61
10. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir ..8-63

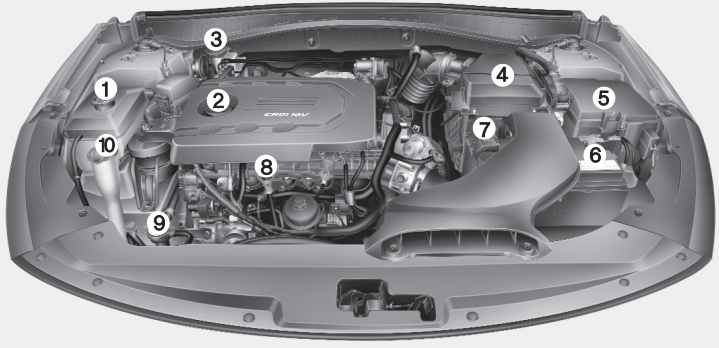
❈ The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OJF075139R/OJF075141R

■ **Petrol Engine (THETA 2.0L T-GDI)**



■ **Diesel Engine (U2 1.7)**



1. Engine coolant reservoir.....8-60
2. Engine oil filler cap 8-57
3. Brake/clutch fluid reservoir (if equipped).....8-62
4. Air cleaner.....8-66
5. Fuse box 8-93
6. Negative battery terminal.....8-74
7. Positive battery terminal 8-74
8. Engine oil dipstick.....8-55
9. Radiator cap 8-61
10. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir ..8-63

❈ The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OJF075001R/OJF075003R

Safety features of your vehicle

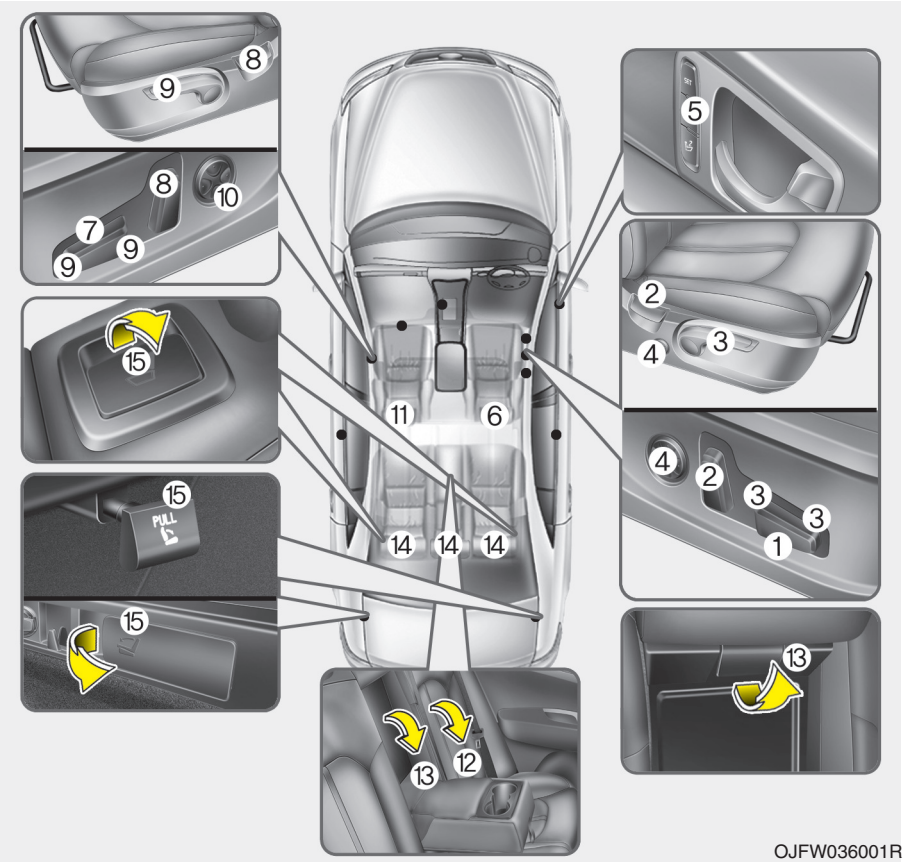
Seats 3-2
- Driver's seat 3-2
- Front passenger's seat 3-2
- Rear seat 3-2
- Front seat adjustment - manual 3-5
- Front seat adjustment - power 3-6
- Driver position memory system (for power seat) 3-9
- Headrest (for front seat) 3-11
- Seatback pocket 3-14
- Rear seat adjustment 3-15

Seat belts 3-22
- Seat belt restraint system 3-22
- Pre-tensioner seat belt 3-29
- Seat belt precautions 3-32
- Care of seat belts 3-35

Child restraint system (CRS) 3-36
- Selecting a Child Restraint System (CRS) 3-37
- Installing a Child Restraint System (CRS) 3-39
- ISOFIX anchorage and top-tether anchorage (ISOFIX anchorage system) for children 3-40

Air bag - supplemental restraint system 3-51
- How does the air bag system operate 3-52
- Air bag warning light 3-55
- SRS components and functions 3-57
- Driver's and passenger's front air bag 3-60
- Side air bag 3-66
- Curtain air bag 3-67
- SRS Care 3-74
- Additional safety precautions 3-76
- Air bag warning label 3-77

SEATS



OJFW036001R

Driver's seat

(1) Forward and backward
(2) Seatback angle
(3) Seat cushion height
(4) Lumbar support
(5) Driver position memory system*
(6) Headrest

Front passenger's seat

(7) Forward and backward
(8) Seatback angle
(9) Seat cushion height
(10) Lumbar support*
(11) Headrest

Rear seat

(12) Armrest
(13) Ski pass-through
(14) Headrest
(15) Seatback folding lever*

* : if equipped

⚠ WARNING - Loose objects

Loose objects in the driver's foot area could interfere with the operation of the foot pedals, possibly causing an accident. Do not place anything under the front seats.

⚠ WARNING - Uprighting seat

When you return the seatback to its upright position, hold the seatback and return it slowly and be sure there are no other occupants around the seat. If the seatback is returned without being held and controlled, the back of the seat could spring forward resulting in accidental injury to a person struck by the seatback.

⚠ WARNING - Driver responsibility for passengers

Riding in a vehicle with the seatback reclined could lead to serious or fatal injury in an accident. If a seat is reclined during an accident, the occupant's hips may slide under the lap portion of the seat belt applying great force to the unprotected abdomen. Serious or fatal internal injuries could result. The driver must advise the passenger to keep the seatback in an upright position whenever the vehicle is in motion.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use a sitting cushion that reduces friction between the seat and passenger. The passenger's hips may slide under the lap portion of the seat belt during an accident or a sudden stop. Serious or fatal internal injuries could result because the seat belt cannot operate normally.

⚠ WARNING - Driver's seat

- **Never attempt to adjust the seat whilst the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Do not allow anything to interfere with the normal position of the seatback. Storing items against a seatback or in any other way interfering with proper locking of a seatback could result in serious or fatal injury in a sudden stop or collision.
- Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap portion of the seat belt snug and low across the hips. This is the best position to protect you in case of an accident.
- In order to avoid unnecessary and perhaps severe air bag injuries, always sit as far back as possible from the steering wheel whilst maintaining comfortable control of the vehicle. We recommend that your chest be at least 25 cm (10 inches) away from the steering wheel.

⚠ WARNING - Rear seatbacks

- The rear seatback must be securely latched. If not, passengers and objects could be thrown forward resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or collision.
- Luggage and other cargo should be laid flat in the cargo area. If objects are large, heavy, or must be piled, they must be secured.

  Under no circumstances should cargo be piled higher than the seatbacks. Failure to follow these warnings could result in serious injury or death in the event of a sudden stop, collision or rollover.
- No passenger should ride in the cargo area or sit or lie on folded seatbacks whilst the vehicle is moving. All passengers must be properly seated in seats and restrained properly whilst riding.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- When resetting the seatback to the upright position, make sure it is securely latched by pushing it forward and backwards.
- To avoid the possibility of burns, do not remove the carpet in the cargo area.

  Emission control devices beneath this floor generate high temperatures.

⚠ WARNING

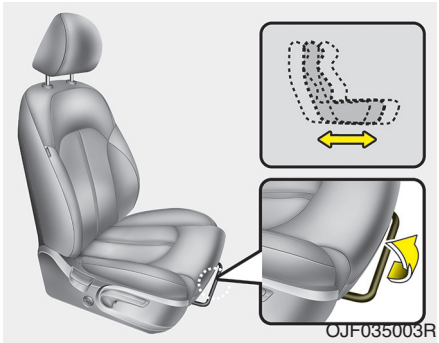
After adjusting the seat, always check that it is securely locked into place by attempting to move the seat forward or backward without using the lock release lever. Sudden or unexpected movement of the driver's seat could cause you to lose control of the vehicle resulting in an accident.

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not adjust the seat whilst wearing seat belts. Moving the seat cushion forward may cause strong pressure on the abdomen.**
- **Use extreme caution so that hands or other objects are not caught in the seat mechanisms whilst the seat is moving.**
- **Do not put a cigarette lighter on the floor or seat. When you operate the seat, gas may gush out of the lighter and cause fire.**
- **If there are occupants in the rear seats, be careful whilst adjusting the front seat position.**
- **Use extreme caution when picking small objects trapped under the seats or between the seat and the centre console. Your hands might be cut or injured by the sharp edges of the seat mechanism.**

Front seat adjustment - manual

Forward and backward

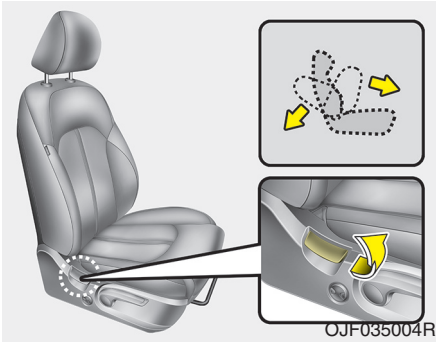

OJF035003R

To move the seat forward or backward:

1. Pull the seat slide adjustment lever up and hold it.
2. Slide the seat to the position you desire.
3. Release the lever and make sure the seat is locked in place.

Adjust the seat before driving, and make sure the seat is locked securely by trying to move forward and backward without using the lever. If the seat moves, it is not locked properly.

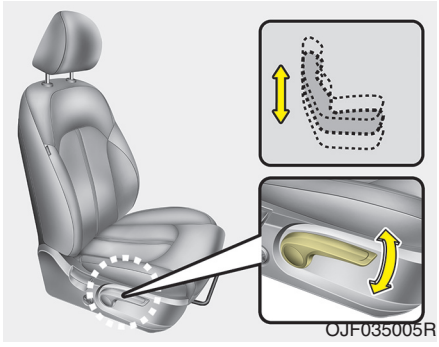
Seatback angle


OJF035004R

To recline the seatback:

1. Lean forward slightly and lift up the seatback recline lever.
2. Carefully lean back on the seat and adjust the seatback of the seat to the position you desire.
3. Release the lever and make sure the seatback is locked in place. (The lever MUST return to its original position for the seatback to lock.)

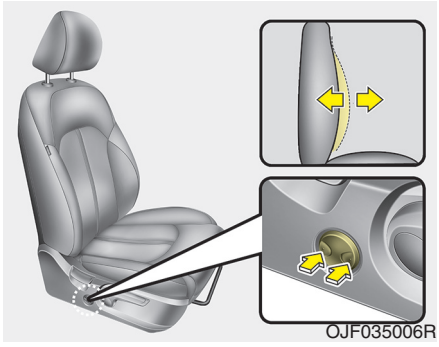
Seat height


OJF035005R

To change the height of the seat, push the lever upwards or downwards.

- To lower the seat cushion, push the lever down several times.
- To raise the seat cushion, pull the lever up several times.

Lumbar support (if equipped)


OJF035006R

The lumbar support can be adjusted by pressing the lumbar support switch on the side of the Driver`s seat.

1. Press the front portion of the switch to increase support, or the rear portion of the switch, to decrease support.
2. Release the switch once it reaches the desired position.

Front seat adjustment - power (if equipped)

The front seat can be adjusted by using the control switches located on the outside of the seat cushion. Before driving, adjust the seat to the proper position so you can easily control the steering wheel, pedals and switches on the instrument panel.

⚠ WARNING

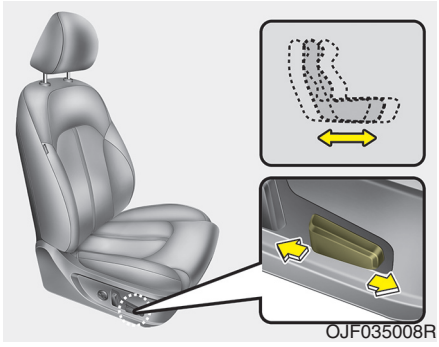
The power seat is operable with the ignition OFF.

Therefore, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

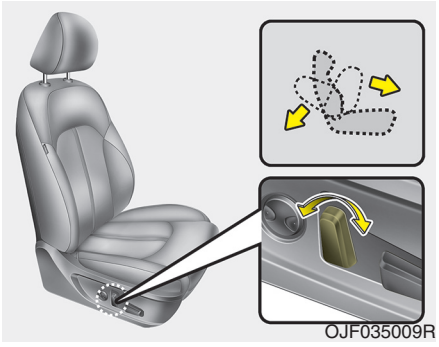
- ***The power seat is driven by an electric motor. Stop operating once the adjustment is completed. Excessive operation may damage the electrical equipment.***
- ***When in operation, the power seat consumes a large amount of electrical power. To prevent unnecessary charging system drain, don't adjust the power seat longer than necessary whilst the engine is not running.***
- ***Do not operate two or more power seat control switches at the same time. Doing so may result in power seat motor or electrical component malfunction.***

Forward and backward



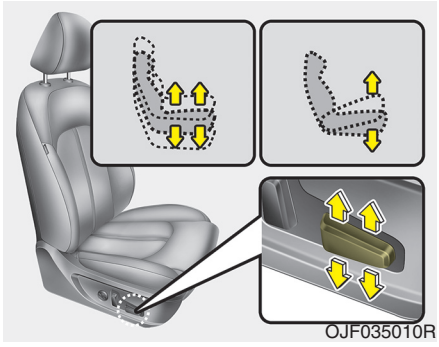
Push the control switch forward or backward to move the seat to the desired position. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

Seatback angle



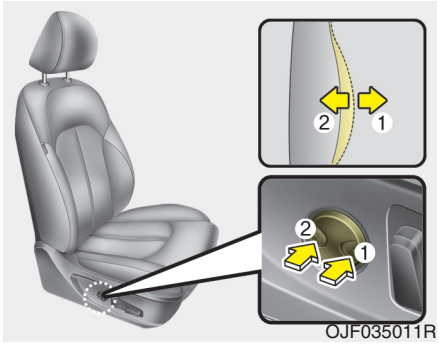
Push the control switch forward or backward to move the seatback to the desired angle. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

Seat height



Pull the front portion of the control switch up to raise or press down to lower the front part of the seat cushion. Pull the rear portion of the control switch up to raise or press down to lower the seat cushion. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

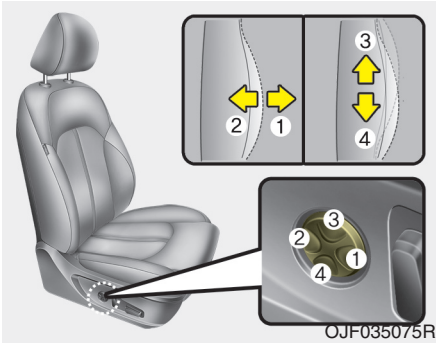
Lumbar support



The lumbar support can be adjusted by pressing the lumbar support switch on the side of the seat.

Type A

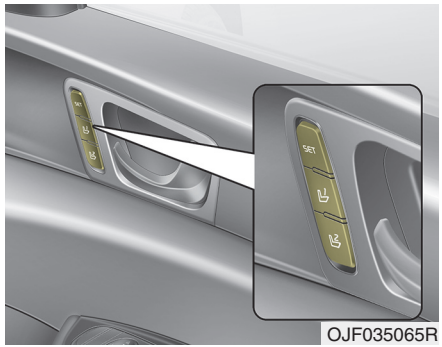
1. Press the front portion of the switch to increase support, or the rear portion of the switch, to decrease support.
2. Release the switch once it reaches the desired position.



Type B

1. Press the front portion (1) of the switch to increase support, or the rear portion (2) of the switch, to decrease support.
2. Release the switch once it reaches the desired position.
3. Press the upper portion (3) of the switch to move the support position up, or press the lower portion (4) of the switch, to move the support position down.
4. Release the switch once it reaches the desired position.

Driver position memory system (if equipped, for power seat)



A driver position memory system is provided to store and recall the driver seat and outside rearview mirror position with a simple button operation. By saving the desired position into the system memory, different drivers can reposition the driver seat based upon their driving preference.

If the battery is disconnected, the position memory will be erased and the driving position should be restored in the system.

⚠ WARNING

Never attempt to operate the driver position memory system whilst the vehicle is moving.

This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.

Storing positions into memory using the buttons on the door

Storing driver's seat positions

1. Shift the shift lever into P (for Automatic transaxle / Dual clutch transmission) or Neutral (for manual transaxle) whilst the engine start/stop button is ON or ignition switch ON.
2. Adjust the driver's seat and outside rearview mirror comfortable for the driver.
3. Press SET button on the control panel. The system will beep once.
4. Press one of the memory buttons (1 or 2) within 5 seconds after pressing the SET button. The system will beep twice when memory has been successfully stored.

Recalling positions from memory

1. Shift the shift lever into P (for Automatic transaxle / Dual clutch transmission) or Neutral (for manual transaxle) whilst the engine start/stop button is ON or ignition switch ON.
2. To recall the position in the memory, press the desired memory button (1 or 2). The system will beep once, then the driver's seat will automatically adjust to the stored position.

Adjusting the control switch for the driver's seat whilst the system is recalling the stored position will cause the movement to stop and move in the direction that the control switch is moved.

⚠ WARNING

Use caution when recalling the adjustment memory whilst sitting in the vehicle. Push the seat position control switch to the desired position immediately if the seat moves too far in any direction.

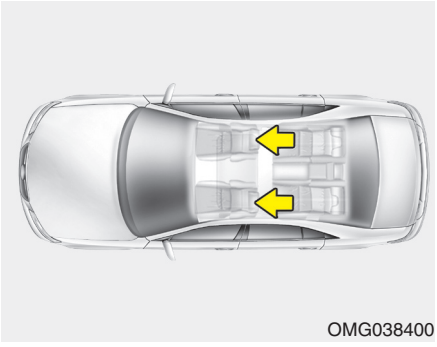
Easy access function (if equipped)

The system will move the driver's seat automatically as follows:

- Without smart key system
  - It will move the driver's seat rearward when the ignition key is removed and front driver's door is opened.
  - It will move the driver's seat forward when the ignition key is inserted.
- With smart key system
  - It will move the driver's seat rearward when the engine start/stop button is changed to the OFF position and front driver's door is opened.
  - It will move the driver's seat forward when the engine start/stop button is changed to the ACC or START position.
  - It will move the driver's seat forward when you get in your vehicle with the smart key after closing the driver's door.

You can activate or deactivate this feature. Refer to "User settings" in chapter 4.

Headrest (for front seat)



OMG038400

The driver's and front passenger's seats are equipped with a headrest for the occupant's safety and comfort.

The headrest not only provides comfort for the driver and front passenger, but also helps protect the head and neck in the event of a collision.

⚠ WARNING

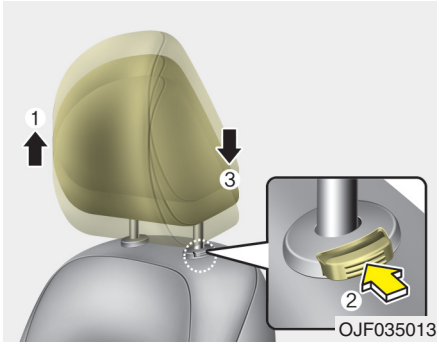
- **For maximum effectiveness in case of an accident, the headrest should be adjusted so the middle of the headrest is at the same height of the centre of gravity of an occupant's head. Generally, the centre of gravity of most people's head is similar with the height of the top of their eyes. Also, adjust the headrest as close to your head as possible. For this reason, the use of a cushion that holds the body away from the seatback is not recommended.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

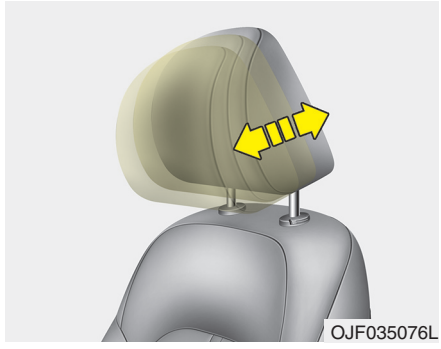
- **Do not operate the vehicle with the headrests removed. Severe injury to the occupants may occur in the event of an accident. Headrests may provide protection against neck injuries when properly adjusted.**
- **Do not adjust the headrest position of the driver's seat whilst the vehicle is in motion.**

Adjusting the height up and down



To raise the headrest, pull it up to the desired position (1). To lower the headrest, push and hold the release button (2) and lower the headrest to the desired position (3).

Forward and backward adjustment

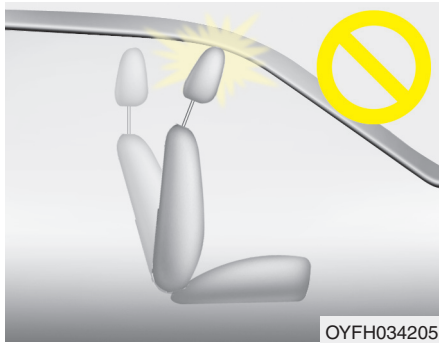


The headrest may be adjusted forward to 4 different positions by pulling the headrest forward to the desired detent.

To adjust the headrest to it's furthest backwards position,

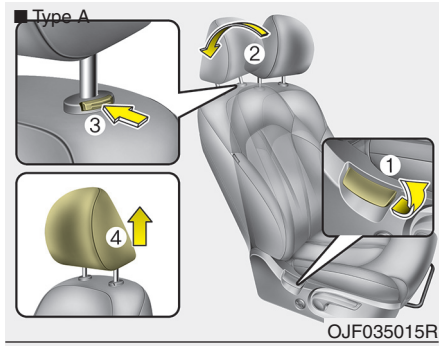
Pull the headrest fully forward to the farthest position and release it.

Adjust the headrest so that it properly supports the head and neck.


OYFH034205

⚠ CAUTION

If you recline the seatback towards the front with the headrest and seat cushion raised, the headrest may come in contact with the sunvisor or other parts of the vehicle.



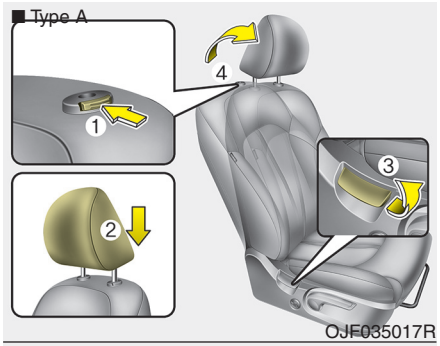
Removal/Reinstall

To remove the headrest:

1. Recline the seatback (2) with the recline lever or switch (1).
2. Raise headrest as far as it can go.
3. Press the headrest release button (3) whilst pulling the headrest up (4).

⚠ WARNING

NEVER allow anyone to ride in a seat with the headrest removed.



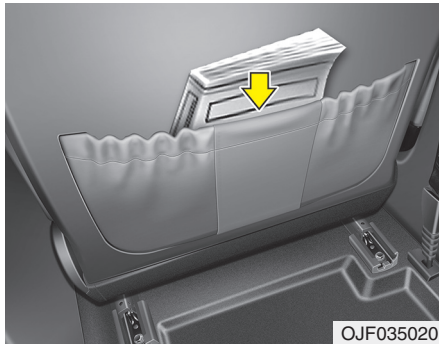
To reinstall the headrest:

1. Put the headrest poles (2) into the holes whilst pressing the release button or switch (1).
2. Recline the seatback(4) with the recline lever or switch (3).
3. Adjust the headrest to the appropriate height.

⚠ WARNING

Always make sure the headrest locks into position after reinstalling and adjusting it properly.

Seatback pocket (if equipped)



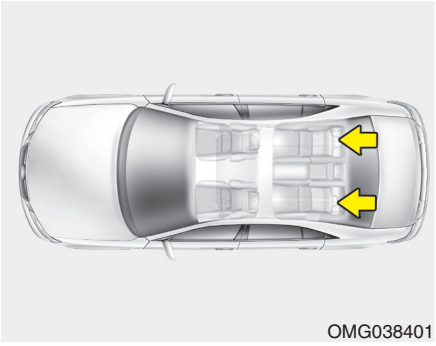
The seatback pocket is provided on the back of the front passenger's and driver's seatbacks.

⚠ WARNING - Seatback pockets

Do not put heavy or sharp objects in the seatback pockets. In an accident they could come loose from the pocket and injure vehicle occupants.

Rear seat adjustment

Headrest (if equipped)



OMG038401

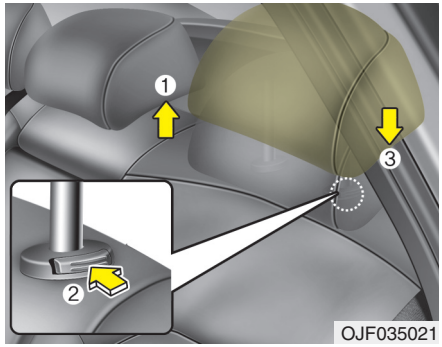
The rear seat is equipped with headrests for the occupant's safety and comfort.

The headrest not only provides comfort for passengers, but also helps to protect the head and neck in the event of a collision.

⚠ WARNING



- **For maximum effectiveness in case of an accident, the headrest should be adjusted so the middle of the headrest is at the same height of the centre of gravity of an occupant's head. Generally, the centre of gravity of most people's head is similar with the height of the top of their eyes. Also adjust the headrest as close to your head as possible. For this reason, the use of a cushion that holds the body away from the seatback is not recommended.**
- **Do not operate the vehicle with the headrests removed. Severe injury to an occupant may occur in the event of an accident. Headrests may provide protection against severe neck injuries when properly adjusted.**



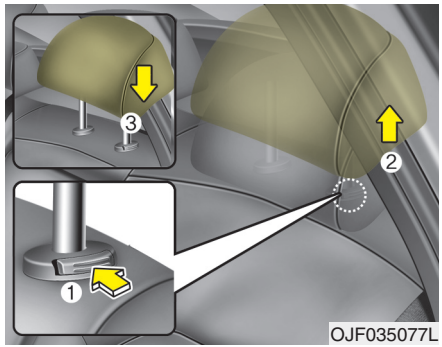
OJF035021

Adjusting the height up and down (if equipped)

To raise the headrest, pull it up to the desired position (1). To lower the headrest, push and hold the release button (2) on the headrest support and lower the headrest to the desired position (3).

⚠ CAUTION

When there is no occupant in the rear seats, adjust the height of the headrest to the lowest position. The rear seat headrest can reduce the visibility of the rear area.



Removal and installation (if equipped)

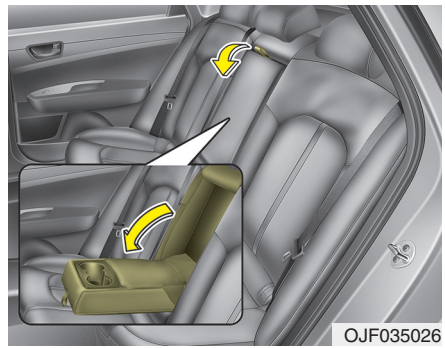
To remove the headrest, raise it as far as it can go then press the release button (1) whilst pulling upward (2).

To reinstall the headrest, put the headrest poles (3) into the holes whilst pressing the release button (1). Then adjust it to the appropriate height.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure the headrest locks in position after adjusting it to properly protect the occupants.

Armrest



To use the armrest, pull it forward from the seatback.

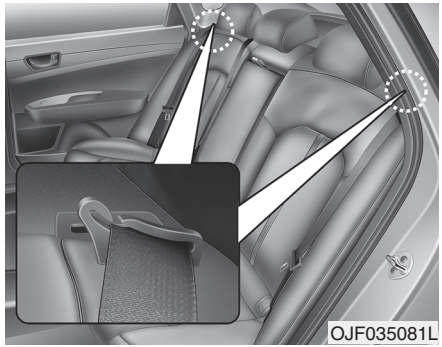
Folding the rear seat (if equipped)

The rear seatbacks may be folded to facilitate carrying long items or to increase the luggage capacity of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

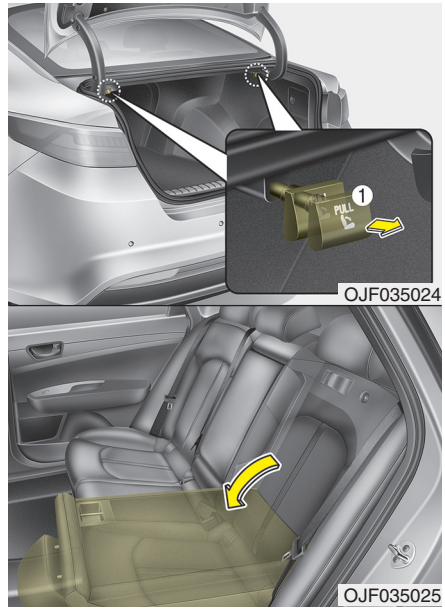
The purpose of the fold-down rear seatbacks is to allow you to carry longer objects than could not otherwise be accommodated.

Never allow passengers to sit on top of the folded down seatback whilst the car is moving as this is not a proper seating position and no seat belts are available for use. This could result in serious injury or death in case of an accident or sudden stop. Objects carried on the folded down seatback should not extend higher than the top of the front seats. This could allow cargo to slide forward and cause injury or damage during sudden stops.



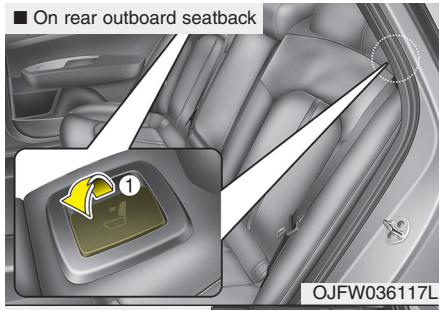
To fold down the rear seatback (for sedan):

1. Make sure the rear seat belt webbing is in the guide to prevent the seat belt from being damaged.
2. Set the front seatback to the upright position and if necessary, slide the front seat forward.
3. Lower the rear headrests to the lowest position.



4. Pull out the seatback locking knob(1) in the trunk, then fold the seat toward the front of the vehicle.
5. To use the rear seat, lift and pull the seatback backward. Pull the seatback firmly until it clicks into place. Make sure the seatback is locked in place.
6. Return the rear seat belt to the proper position.

■ On rear outboard seatback



■ In the luggage room



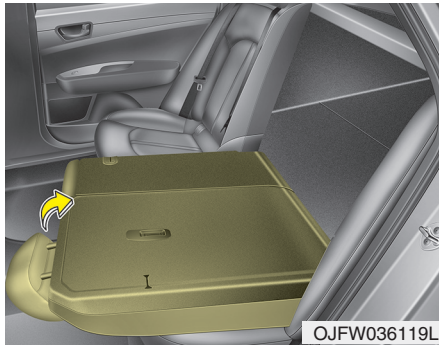
To fold down the rear seatback (for Wagon):

4. On rear outboard seatback :

Pull on the seatback folding lever(1), then fold the seat toward the front of the vehicle.

In the luggage room(Remote folding):

Pull on the seatback folding lever(2), then the rear seatback will be folded.



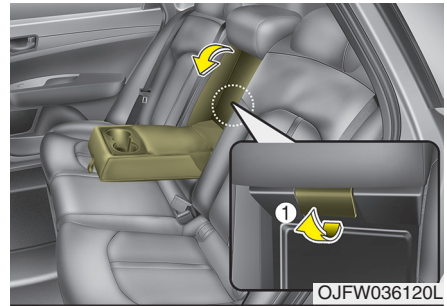
5. To use the rear seat, lift and push the seatback backward. Push the seat back firmly until it clicks into place. Make sure the seatback is locked in place.
6. Return the rear seat belt to the proper position.

⚠ CAUTION - Remote folding

Do not strongly push back the seat back to lock. It may be unlock and returned by repulsive power.

⚠ WARNING - Remote folding

Do not fold the rear seats, if passengers, pets or luggage are in the rear seats or on the foled seats. It may cause injury or damage to passengers, pets, lug gage.





To fold down the rear centre seatback separately (for Wagon):

Long objects can be stored by folding the rear centre seatback, without having to fold all rear seats. See below steps for folding the rear centre seatback.

1. Lower the rear centre headrest to the lowest position.
2. Pull the armrest forward from the seatback.
3. Pull the lever (1) to unlock the centre seatback.
4. After unlocking, pull forward the centre seatback and fold it.

⚠ WARNING

After folding the rear seat, unless the driver's position is properly set according to the driver's physical figure, do not fold the rear seat. It may increase body injuries in a sudden stop or collision.

⚠ WARNING - Uprighting seat

When you return the seatback to its upright position, hold the seatback and return it slowly. If the seatback is returned without holding it, the back of the seat could spring forward resulting in injury caused by being struck by the seatback.

⚠ WARNING

When you return the rear seatback to its upright position after being folded down:

Be careful not to damage the seat belt webbing or buckle. Do not allow the seat belt webbing or buckle to get caught or pinched in the rear seat. Ensure that the seatback is completely locked into its upright position by pushing on the top of the seatback. Otherwise, in an accident or sudden stop, the seat could fold down and allow cargo enter the passenger compartment, which could result in serious injury or death.

⚠ CAUTION - Damaging rear seat belt buckles

When you fold the rear seatback, insert the buckle between the rear seatback and cushion. Doing so can prevent the buckle from being damaged by the rear seatback.

⚠ CAUTION - Rear seat belts

When returning the rear seatbacks to the upright position, remember to return the rear shoulder belts to their proper position.

⚠ WARNING - Cargo

Cargo should always be secured to prevent it from being thrown about the vehicle in a collision and causing injury to the vehicle occupants. Do not place objects in the rear seats, since they cannot be properly secured and may hit the front seat occupants in a collision.

⚠ WARNING - Cargo loading

Make sure the engine is off, the automatic transaxle is in P (Park) or the manual transaxle is in 1st, and the parking brake is securely applied whenever loading or unloading cargo. Failure to take these steps may allow the vehicle to move if the shift lever is inadvertently moved to another position.

SEAT BELTS

Seat belt restraint system

⚠ WARNING

- For maximum restraint system protection, the seat belts must always be used whenever the vehicle is moving.
- Seat belts are most effective when seatbacks are in the upright position.
- Children age 12 and under must always be properly restrained in the rear seat. Never allow children to ride in the front passenger seat. If a child over 12 must be seated in the front seat, he/she must be properly belted and the seat should be moved as far back as possible.
- Never wear the shoulder belt under your arm or behind your back. An improperly positioned shoulder belt can cause serious injuries in a crash.

(Continued)

(Continued)

The shoulder belt should be positioned midway over your shoulder across your collarbone.

- Never wear a seat belt over fragile objects. If there is a sudden stop or impact, the seat belt can damage it.
- Avoid wearing twisted seat belts. A twisted belt can't do its job well. In a collision, it could even cut into you. Be sure the belt webbing is straight and not twisted.
- Be careful not to damage the belt webbing or hardware. If the belt webbing or hardware is damaged, replace it.

⚠ WARNING- Australian design rules

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed.

A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

(Continued)

(Continued)

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged. It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious. Belts should not be worn with straps twisted. Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

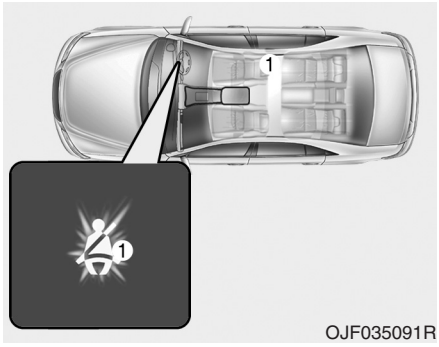
⚠ WARNING - Australian design rules

- **No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.**
- **When you fasten the seat belt, be careful not to latch the seat belt in buckles of other seat. It's very dangerous and you may not be protected by the seat belt properly.**
- **Do not unfasten the seat belt and do not fasten and unfasten the seat belt repeatedly whilst driving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **When fastening the seat belt, make sure that the seat belt does not pass over objects that are hard or can break easily.**
- **Make sure there is nothing in the buckle. The seat belt may not be fastened securely.**



OJF035091R

Driver's seat belt warning

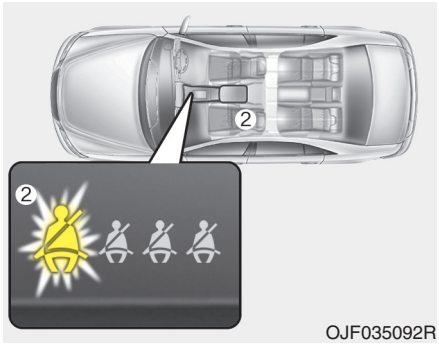
As a reminder to the driver, the seat belt warning light will illuminate and warning chime will sound for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON if the seat belt is unfastened.

If you continue not to fasten the seat belt and you drive over 9km/h, the warning light will stay illuminated until you drive under 6km/h.(if equipped)

If you continue not to fasten the seat belt and you drive over 20km/h the seat belt warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds and the corresponding warning light will blink. (if equipped)

If you unfasten the seat belt whilst driving under 20km/h, the seat belt warning light will illuminate until the seat belt is fastened.

If you unfasten the seat belt whilst driving over 20km/h, the seat belt warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds and the corresponding warning light will blink.



OJF035092R

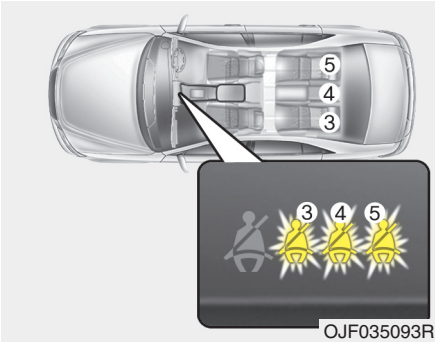
Front passenger's seat belt warning (if equipped)

As a reminder to the front passenger, the front passenger's seat belt warning lights will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON regardless of belt fastening.

If you continue not to fasten the seat belt and you drive over 9km/h, the warning light the warning light will stay illuminated.

If you unfasten the seat belt whilst driving in case of under 20km/h (12mph) the seat belt warning light will illuminate until the seat belt is fastened.

If you unfasten the seat belt whilst driving over 20km/h (12mph), the seat belt warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds and the corresponding warning light will blink.



Rear passenger's seat belt warning (if equipped)

When the IGN is in ON, or the engine is running, the seat belt warning light will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds. The light will illuminate regardless of whether the seat belt is worn or not.

And then, the rear corresponding seat belt warning light will illuminate for approximately 35 seconds, if you drive over 9km/h when the rear belt is not fastened.

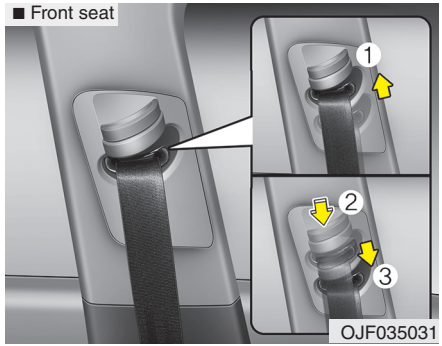
This warning operates only once from start to off the vehicle.

However, the seat belt warning light will illuminate again for approximately 35 seconds, if you drive under 9km/h for about 29 minutes more.

If you unfasten the seat belt whilst driving under 20km/h (12mph) the seat belt warning light will illuminate for approximately 35 seconds.

If you unfasten the seat belt whilst driving over 20km/h (12mph), the seat belt warning chime will sound for approximately 35 seconds and the corresponding warning light will blink.

Lap/shoulder belt



Height adjustment

You can adjust the height of the shoulder belt anchor to one of 4 positions for maximum comfort and safety.

The height of the adjusting seat belt should not be too close to your neck. You will not be getting the most effective protection. The shoulder portion should be adjusted so that it lies across your chest and midway over your shoulder near the door and not your neck.

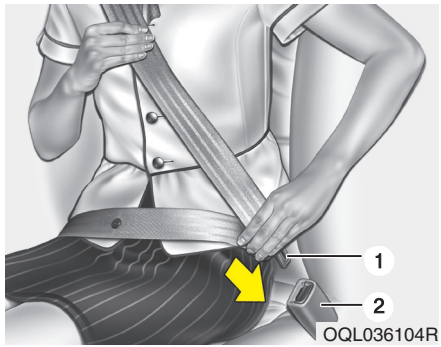
To adjust the height of the seat belt anchor, lower or raise the height adjuster into an appropriate position.

To raise the height adjuster, pull it up (1). To lower it, push it down (3) whilst pressing the height adjuster button (2).

Release the button to lock the anchor into position. Try sliding the height adjuster to make sure that it has locked into position.

⚠ WARNING

- **Verify the shoulder belt anchor is locked into position at the appropriate height. Never position the shoulder belt across your neck or face. Improperly positioned seat belts can cause serious injuries in an accident.**
- **Failure to replace seat belts after an accident could leave you with damaged seat belts that will not provide protection in the event of another collision leading to personal injury or death. Replace your seat belts after being in an accident as soon as possible.**



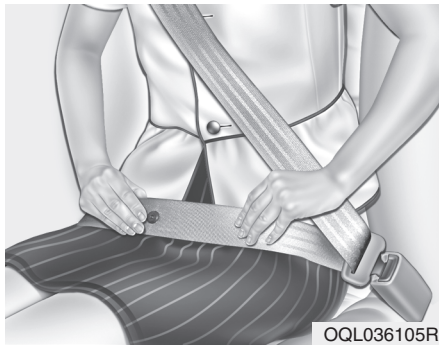
To fasten your seat belt:

To fasten your seat belt, pull it out of the retractor and insert the metal tab (1) into the buckle (2). There will be an audible "click" when the tab locks into the buckle.

The seat belt automatically adjusts to the proper length only after the lap belt portion is adjusted manually so that it fits snugly around your hips. If you lean forward in a slow, easy motion, the belt will extend and let you move around. If there is a sudden stop or impact, however, the belt will lock into position. It will also lock if you try to lean forward too quickly.

✻ NOTICE

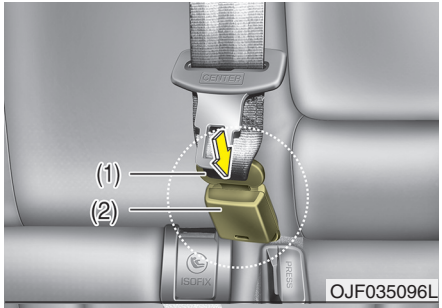
If you are not able to pull out the seat belt from the retractor, firmly pull the belt out and release it. Then you will be able to pull the belt out smoothly.

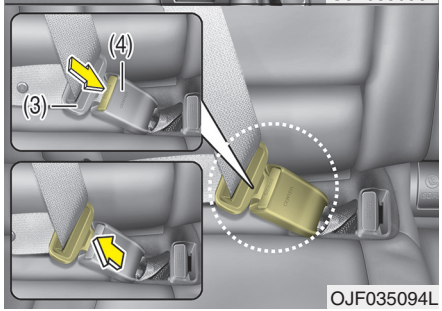


⚠ WARNING

You should place the lap belt portion as low as possible and snugly across your hips, not on your waist. If the lap belt is located too high on your waist, it may increase the chance of injury in the event of a collision. Both arms should not be under or over the belt. Rather, one should be over and the other under, as shown in the illustration.

Never wear the seat belt under the arm near the door.





Pull the metal tab (3) and insert it (3) into the buckle (4). There will be an audible “click” when the tab locks into the buckle. Make sure the belt is not twisted.

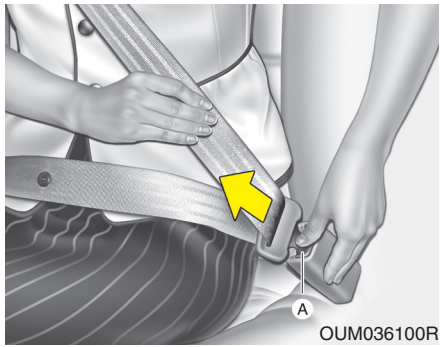
When using the rear centre seat belt the buckle with the “CENTER” mark must be used.

⚠ WARNING

Always have the metal tab (1) inserted into the buckle (2).

✻ NOTICE

If you are not able to pull out the safe-ty belt from the retractor, firmly pull the belt out and release it. After release, you will be able to pull the belt out smoothly.



To release the seat belt:

The seat belt is released by pressing the release button (A) in the locking buckle. When it is released, the belt should automatically draw back into the retractor.

If this does not happen, check the belt to be sure it is not twisted, then try again.

Pre-tensioner seat belt



Your vehicle is equipped with driver's and front passenger's pre-tensioner seat belts (retractor pretensioner).

Rear pre-tensioner seat belts are equipped (rear outboard seats-For Europe).

The pre-tensioner seat belts can be activated, where the frontal collision is severe enough, together with the air bags.

EFD (Emergency Fastening Device) is equipped with driver's seat belts. (For Europe)

When the vehicle stops suddenly, or if the occupant tries to lean forward too quickly, the seat belt retractor will lock into position. In certain frontal collisions, the pre-tensioner will activate and pull the seat belt into tighter contact against the occupant's body.

(1) Retractor Pretensioner

The purpose of the retractor pretensioner is to make sure that the shoulder belts fit in tightly against the occupant's upper body in certain frontal collisions.

(2) EFD (Emergency Fastening Device) (if equipped)

The purpose of the EFD is to make sure that the pelvis belts fit in tightly against the occupant's lower body in certain frontal collisions.

If the system senses excessive tension on the driver or passenger's seat belt when the pre-tensioner system activates, the load limiter inside the retractor pre-tensioner will release some of the pressure on the affected seat belt. (if equipped)

✻ NOTICE - if equipped with rollover sensor

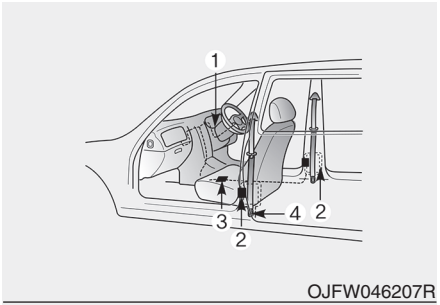
The pre-tensioner will activate not only in a frontal collision but also in a side collision or rollover, if the vehicle is equipped with a side or curtain air bag.

✻ NOTICE - without rollover sensor

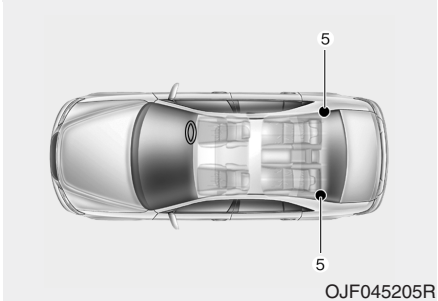
The pre-tensioner will activate not only in a frontal collision but also in a side collision, if the vehicle is equipped with a side or curtain air bag.

⚠ WARNING

For your safety, be sure that the belt webbing is not loose or twisted and always sit properly on your seat.



OJFW046207R



OJF045205R

The seat belt pre-tensioner system consists mainly of the following components. Their locations are shown in the illustration:

(1) SRS air bag warning light
(2) Front retractor pre-tensioner assembly
(3) SRS control module
(4) Emergency fastening device (EFD) (if equipped)
(5) Rear retractor pre-tensioner assembly (if equipped)

⚠ WARNING

To obtain maximum benefit from a pre-tensioner seat belt:

1. **The seatbelt must be worn correctly and adjusted to the proper position. Please read and follow all of the important information and precautions about your vehicle's occupant safety features – including seat belts and air bags – that are provided in this manual.**
2. **Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts properly.**

✻ NOTICE

- **Pre-tensioner seat belts will be activated in certain frontal collisions. The pre-tensioner seat belts can be activated, where the frontal collision is severe enough, together with the air bags.**
- **When the pre-tensioner seat belts are activated, a loud noise may be heard and fine dust, which may appear to be smoke, may be visible in the passenger compartment. These are normal operating conditions and are not hazardous.**
- **Although it is harmless, the fine dust may cause skin irritation and should not be breathed for prolonged periods. Wash all exposed skin areas thoroughly after an accident in which the pre-tensioner seat belts were activated.**
- **Because the sensor that activates the SRS air bag is connected with the pre-tensioner seat belt, the SRS air bag warning light on the instrument panel will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds after the ignition switch has been turned to the "ON" position, and then it should turn off.**

⚠ CAUTION

If the pre-tensioner seat belt is not working properly, the SRS air bag warning light will illuminate even if there is no malfunction of the SRS air bag. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate when the ignition key is turned to ON, or if it remains illuminated after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds, or if it illuminates whilst the vehicle is being driven, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING

- **Pre-tensioners are designed to operate only one time. After activation, pre-tensioner seat belts must be replaced. All seat belts, of any type, should always be replaced after they have been worn during a collision.**
- **The pre-tensioner seat belt assembly mechanisms become hot during activation. Do not touch the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies for several minutes after they have been activated.**
- **Do not attempt to inspect or replace the pre-tensioner seat belts yourself. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.**
- **Do not strike the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies.**
- **Do not attempt to service or repair the pre-tensioner seat belt system in any manner.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Improper handling of the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies, and failure to heed the warnings not to strike, modify, inspect, replace, service or repair the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies may lead to improper operation or inadvertent activation and serious injury.**
- **Always wear the seat belts when driving or riding in a motor vehicle.**
- **If the vehicle or pre-tensioner seat belt must be discarded, we recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.**

⚠ CAUTION

Body work on the front area of the vehicle may damage the pre-tensioner seat belt system. Therefore, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised Kia dealer.

Seat belt precautions

⚠ WARNING

All occupants of the vehicle must wear their seat belts at all times. Seat belts and child restraints reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries for all occupants in the event of a collision or sudden stop. Without a seat belt, occupants could be shifted too close to a deploying air bag, strike the interior structure or be thrown from the vehicle. Properly worn seat belts greatly reduce these hazards.

Always follow the precautions about seat belts, air bags and occupant seating contained in this manual.

Infant or small child

You should be aware of the specific requirements in your country. Child and/or infant seats must be properly placed and installed in the rear seat. For more information about the use of these restraints, refer to “Child restraint system” in this section.

⚠ WARNING

Every person in your vehicle needs to be properly restrained at all times, including infants and children. Never hold a child in your arms or lap when riding in a vehicle. The violent forces created during a crash will tear the child from your arms and throw the child against the interior. Always use a child restraint appropriate for your child's height and weight.

✻ NOTICE

Small children are best protected from injury in an accident when properly restrained in the rear seat by a child restraint system that meets the requirements of the Safety Standards of your country. Before buying any child restraint system, make sure that it has a label certifying that it meets Safety Standards of your country. The restraint must be appropriate for your child's height and weight. Check the label on the child restraint for this information. Refer to “Child restraint system” in this section.

Larger children

Children who are too large for child restraint systems should always occupy the rear seat and use the available lap/shoulder belts. The lap portion should be fastened and snugged on the hips and as low as possible. Check if the belt fits periodically. A child's squirming could put the belt out of position. Children are given the most safety in the event of an accident when they are restrained by a proper restraint system in the rear seat. If a larger child (over age 12) must be seated in the front seat, the child should be securely restrained by the available lap/shoulder belt and the seat should be placed in the rearmost position. Children age 12 and under should be restrained securely in the rear seat. NEVER place a child age 12 and under in the front seat. NEVER place a rear facing child seat in the front seat of a vehicle.

If the shoulder belt portion slightly touches the child's neck or face, try placing the child closer to the centre of the vehicle. If the shoulder belt still touches their face or neck they need to be returned to a child restraint system.

⚠ WARNING - Shoulder belts on small children

- **Never allow a shoulder belt to be in contact with a child's neck or face whilst the vehicle is in motion.**
- **If seat belts are not properly worn and adjusted on children, there is a risk of death or serious injury.**

Pregnant women

The use of a seat belt is recommended for pregnant women to lessen the chance of injury in an accident. When a seat belt is used, the lap belt portion should be placed as low and securely as possible on the hips, not across the abdomen. For specific recommendations, consult a physician.

⚠ WARNING - Pregnant women

Pregnant women must never place the lap portion of the safety belt over the area of the abdomen where the fetus is located or above the abdomen where the belt could crush the fetus during an impact.

Injured person

A seat belt should be used when an injured person is being transported. When this is necessary, you should consult a physician for recommendations.

One person per belt

Two people (including children) should never attempt to use a single seat belt. This could increase the severity of injuries in case of an accident.

Do not lie down

To reduce the chance of injuries in the event of an accident and to achieve maximum effectiveness of the restraint system, all passengers should be sitting up and the front and rear seats should be in an upright position when the vehicle is moving. A seat belt cannot provide proper protection if the person is lying down in the rear seat or if the front and rea seats are in a reclined position.

⚠ WARNING

Riding with a reclined seatback increases your chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop. The protection of your restraint system (seat belts and air bags) is greatly reduced by reclining your seat. Seat belts must be secured against your hips and chest to work properly. The more the seatback is reclined, the greater the chance an occupant's hips will slide under the lap belt causing serious internal injuries. Also, the shoulder belt may strike the occupant's neck. Drivers and passengers should always sit well back in their seats, properly belted, and with the seatbacks upright.

Care of seat belts

Seat belt systems should never be disassembled or modified. In addition, care should be taken to assure that seat belts and belt hardware are not damaged by seat hinges, doors or other abuse.

⚠ WARNING

When you return the rear seatback to its upright position after the rear seatback has been folded down, be careful not to damage the seat belt webbing or buckle. Be sure that the webbing or buckle does not get caught or pinched in the rear seat. A seat belt with damaged webbing or buckle could possibly fail during a collision or sudden stop, resulting in serious injury. If the webbing or buckles are damaged, get them replaced immediately.

Periodic inspection

All seat belts should be inspected periodically for wear or damage of any kind. Any damaged parts should be replaced as soon as possible.

Keep belts clean and dry

Seat belts should be kept clean and dry. If belts become dirty, they can be cleaned by using a mild soap solution and warm water. Bleach, dye, strong detergents or abrasives should not be used because they may damage and weaken the fabric.

When to replace seat belts

Entire in-use seat belt assembly or assemblies should be replaced if the vehicle has been involved in an accident. This should be done even if no damage is visible. We recommend that you consult an authorised Kia dealer.

CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM (CRS)

Our recommendation:

Children always in the rear

⚠ WARNING

Always properly restrain children in the vehicle. Children of all ages are safer when riding in the rear seats. Never place a rearward-facing Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat, unless the air bag is deactivated.

Children under age 13 should always ride in the rear seats and must always be properly restrained to minimise the risk of injury in an accident, sudden stop or sudden manoeuvre.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seats than in the front seat. Children too large for a Child Restraint System must use the seat belts provided.

Most countries have regulations which require children to travel in approved Child Restraint Systems.

The laws governing the age or height/weight restrictions at which seat belts can be used instead of Child Restraint System differs among countries, so you should be aware of the specific requirements in your country, and where you are travelling.

Child Restraint Systems must be properly installed in the vehicle seat. Always use a commercially available Child Restraint System that meets the requirements of your country.

Child Restraint System (CRS)

Infants and younger children must be restrained in an appropriate rearward-facing or forward-facing CRS that has first been properly secured to the seat of the vehicle. Read and comply with the instructions for installation and use provided by the manufacturer of the Child Restraint System.

⚠ WARNING

- **Always follow the Child Restraint System manufacturer's instructions for installation and use.**
- **Always properly restrain your child in the Child Restraint System.**
- **Do not use an infant carrier or a child safety seat that "hooks" over a seatback, it may not provide adequate protection in an accident.**
- **After an accident, we recommend a Kia dealer to check the Child Restraint System, seat belts, ISOFIX anchorages and top-tether anchorages.**

Selecting a Child Restraint System (CRS)

When selecting a Child Restraint System for your child, always:

- Make sure the Child Restraint System has a label certifying that it meets applicable Safety Standards of your country.

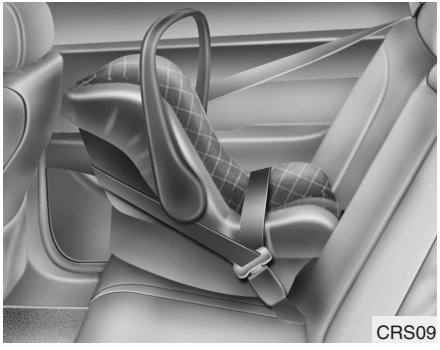
  A Child Restraint System may only be installed if it was approved in accordance with the requirements of ECE-R44, ECE-R129 or relevant regulation.
- Select a Child Restraint System based on your child's height and weight. The required label or the instructions for use typically provide this information.
- Select a Child Restraint System that fits the vehicle seating position where it will be used.

  For the suitability of Child Restraint Systems on the vehicle's seating positions, please refer to the installation tables on pages 3-45 and 3-48 to 3-50.
- Read and comply with the warnings and instructions for installation and use provided with the Child Restraint System.

Child Restraint System types

There are three main types of Child Restraint Systems: rearward-facing, forward-facing and booster Child Restraint Systems.

They are classified according to the child's age, height and weight.


CRS09

Rearward-facing Child Restraint System

A rearward-facing Child Restraint System provides restraint with the seating surface against the back of the child. The harness system holds the child in place, and in an accident, acts to keep the child positioned in the Child Restraint Systems and reduce the stress to the fragile neck and spinal cord.

All children under the age of one year must always ride in a rearward-facing Child Restraint System. There are different types of rearward-facing Child Restraint Systems: infant-only Child Restraint Systems can only be used rearward-facing. Convertible and 3-in-1 Child Restraint Systems typically have higher height and weight limits for the rearward-facing position, allowing you to keep your child rearward-facing for a longer period of time.

Keep using Child Restraint Systems in the rearward-facing position as long as children fit within the height and weight limits allowed by the Child Restraint System's manufacturer.


OJF035032

Forward-facing Child Restraint System

A forward-facing Child Restraint System provides restraint for the child's body with a harness. Keep children in a forward-facing Child Restraint System with a harness until they reach the top height or weight limit allowed by your Child Restraint System's manufacturer.

Once your child outgrows the forward-facing Child Restraint System, your child is ready for a booster seat.

Booster seats

A booster seat is a Child Restraint System designed to improve the fit of the vehicle's seat belt system. A booster seat positions the seat belt so that it fits properly over the stronger parts of your child's body. Keep your children in booster seats until they are big enough to fit in a seat belt properly.

For a seat belt to fit properly, the lap belt must lie comfortable across the upper thighs, not the stomach. The shoulder belt should lie comfortable across the shoulder and chest and not across the neck or face. Children under age 13 must always be properly restrained to minimise the risk of injury in an accident, sudden stop or sudden manoeuvre.

Installing a Child Restraint System (CRS)

⚠ WARNING

Before installing your Child Restraint System always:

Read and follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the Child Restraint System.

Failure to follow all warnings and instructions could increase the risk of the SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH if an accident occurs.

⚠ WARNING

If the vehicle headrest prevents proper installation of a Child Restraint System, the headrest of the respective seating position shall be readjusted or entirely removed.

After selecting a proper Child Restraint System for your child and checking that the Child Restraint System fits properly on the seating position, there are three general steps for a proper installation:

- **Properly secure the Child Restraint System to the vehicle.** All Child Restraint Systems must be secured to the vehicle with the lap belt or lap part of a lap/shoulder belt or with the ISOFIX top-tether and/or ISOFIX anchorage and/or with the support leg.
- **Make sure the Child Restraint System is firmly secured.** After installing a Child Restraint System to the vehicle, push and pull the seat forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is securely attached to the seat. A Child Restraint System secured with a seat belt should be installed as firmly as possible. However, some side-to-side movement can be expected.

  When installing a Child Restraint System, adjust the vehicle seat and seatback (up and down, forward and rearward) so that your child fits in the Child Restraint System in a confortable manner.

- **Secure the child in the Child Restraint System.** Make sure the child is properly strapped in the Child Restraint System according to the Child Restraint System manufacturer's instructions.

⚠ CAUTION

A Child Restraint System in a closed vehicle can become very hot. To prevent burns, check the seating surface and buckles before placing your child in the Child Restraint System.

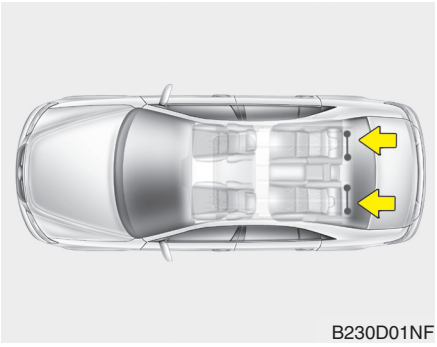
ISOFIX anchorage and top-tether anchorage (ISOFIX anchorage system) for children

The ISOFIX system holds a Child Restraint System during driving and in an accident. This system is designed to make installation of the Child Restraint System easier and reduce the possibility of improperly installing your Child Restraint System. The ISOFIX system uses anchors in the vehicle and attachments on the Child Restraint System. The ISOFIX system eliminates the need to use seat belts to secure the Child Restraint System to the rear seats.

ISOFIX anchorages are metal bars built into the vehicle. There are two lower anchors for each ISOFIX seating position that will accommodate a Child Restraint System with lower attachments.

To use the ISOFIX system in your vehicle, you must have a Child Restraint System with ISOFIX attachments.

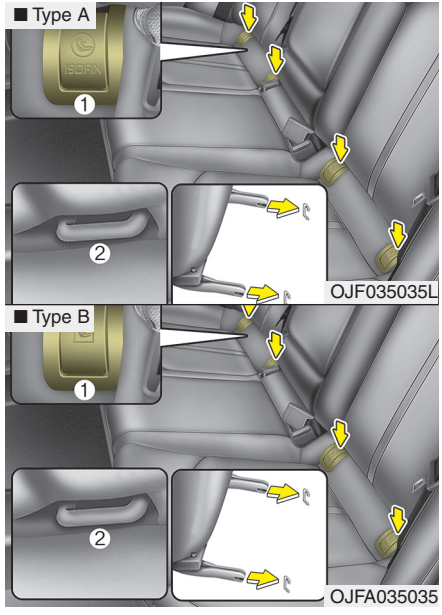
The Child Restraint System manufacturer will provide you with instructions on how to use the Child Restraint System with its attachments for the ISOFIX anchorages.


B230D01NF

ISOFIX anchorages have been provided in the left and right outboard rear seating positions. Their locations are shown in the illustration.

⚠ WARNING

Do not attempt to install a Child Restraint System using ISOFIX anchorages in the rear centre seating position. There are no ISOFIX anchorages provided for this seat. Using the outboard seat anchorages, for the CRS installation on the rear centre seating position, can damage the anchorages.



ISOFIX anchorages are located between the seatback and the seat cushion of the rear seat left and right outboard seating positions, indicated by the symbols.

To use the ISOFIX anchorages, push the upper portion of the ISOFIX anchorage cover.

❈ (1) : ISOFIX Anchor Position Indicator (Type A- , Type B-)

(2) : ISOFIX Anchor

Securing a Child Restraint System with the "ISOFIX Anchorage System"

To install an i-Size or ISOFIX-compatible Child Restraint System in either of the rear outboard seating positions:

1. Move the seat belt buckle away from the ISOFIX anchorages.
2. Move any other objects away from the anchorages that could prevent a secure connection between the Child Restraint System and the ISOFIX anchorages.
3. Place the Child Restraint System on the vehicle seat, then attach the seat to the ISOFIX anchorages according to the instructions provided by the Child Restraint System manufacturer.
4. Follow the instructions of the Child Restraint System's manufacturer for proper installation and connection of the ISOFIX attachments on the Child Restraint System to the ISOFIX anchorages.

⚠ WARNING

Take the following precautions when using the ISOFIX system:

- **Read and follow all installation instructions provided with your Child Restraint System.**
- **To prevent the child from reaching and taking hold of unretracted seat belts, buckle all unused rear seat belts and retract the seat belt webbing behind the child. Children can be strangled if a shoulder belt becomes wrapped around their neck and the seat belt tightens.**
- **NEVER attach more than one Child Restraint System to a single anchorage. This could cause the anchor or attachment to come loose or break.**

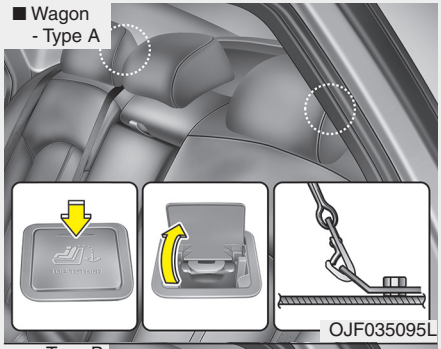
(Continued)

(Continued)

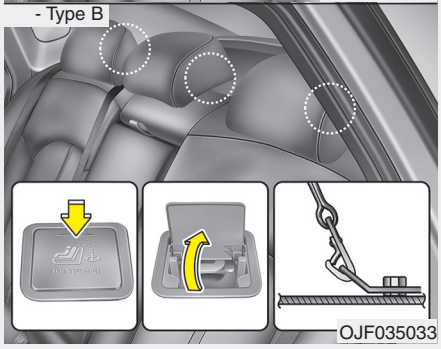
- **Always have the ISOFIX system inspected by your dealer after an accident. An accident can damage the ISOFIX system and may not properly secure the Child Restraint System.**

Securing a Child Restraint System seat with "Top-tether Anchorage" system (if equipped)

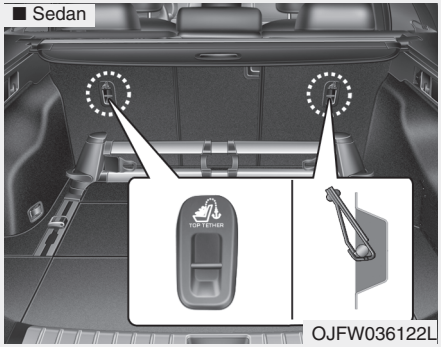
■ Wagon
- Type A



- Type B



■ Sedan



Top-tether anchorages for Child Restraint Systems are located on the shelf behind the rear seats.



1. Route the Child Restraint System top-tether strap over the seatback. Placing the top tether strap, please follow the instructions of the Child Restraint System manufacturer.
2. Connect the top-tether strap to the top-tether anchorage, then tighten the top-tether strap according to the instructions of your Child Restraint System's manufacturer to firmly attach the Child Restraint System to the seat.

⚠ WARNING - Australian design rule

Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Take the following precautions when installing the top-tether:

- **Read and follow all installation instructions provided with your Child Restraint System.**
- **NEVER attach more than one Child Restraint System to a single ISOFIX top-tether anchorage. This could cause the anchorage or attachment to come loose or break.**
- **Do not attach the top-tether to anything other than the correct top-tether anchorage. It may not work properly if attached to something else.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.**

Suitability of each seating position for ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems according to ECE regulations

Mass Group	Size Class	Fixture	vehicle ISOFIX positions			
			Front Passenger	Rear Outboard (Driver side)	Rear Outboard (Passenger side)	Rear Centre
Carrycot	F	ISO/L1	-	X	X	-
	G	ISO/L2	-	X	X	-
0 : UP to 10kg	E	ISO/R1	-	IL	IL	-
0+ : UP to 13kg	E	ISO/R1	-	IL	IL	-
	D	ISO/R2	-	IL	IL	-
	C	ISO/R3	-	IL	IL	-
I : 9 to 18kg	D	ISO/R2	-	IL	IL	-
	C	ISO/R3	-	IL	IL	-
	B	ISO/F2	-	IUF, IL	IUF, IL	-
	B1	ISO/F2X	-	IUF, IL	IUF, IL	-
	A	ISO/F3	-	IUF, IL	IUF, IL	-

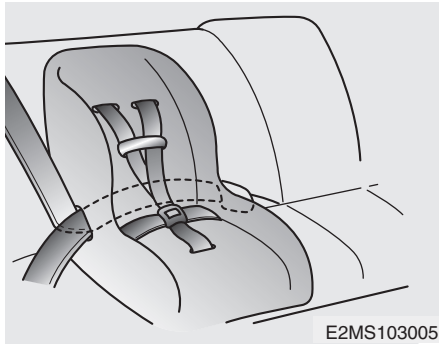
IUF = Suitable for ISOFIX forward child restraints systems of universal category approved for use in the mass group.

IL = suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraints systems (CRS) given in the attached list.
These ISOFIX CRS are those of the "specific vehicle", "restricted" or "semi-universal" categories.

X = ISOFIX position not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint system in this mass group and/or this size class.

Securing a Child Restraint System with a lap/shoulder belt

When not using the ISOFIX system, all Child Restraint Systems must be secured to a rear seat with the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt.

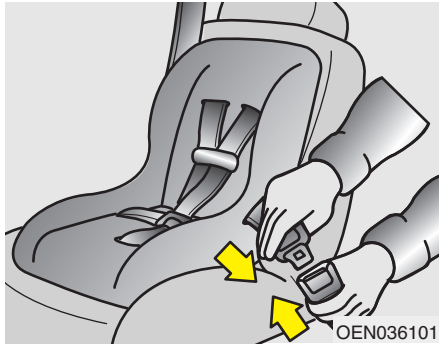

E2MS103005

Installing a Child Restraint System with a lap/shoulder belt

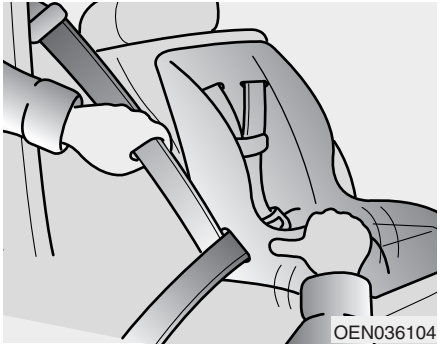
To install a Child Restraint System on the rear seats, do the following:

1. Place the Child Restraint System on a rear seat and route the lap/shoulder belt around or through the Child Restraint System, following the Child Restraint System manufacturer's instructions.

   Make sure the seat belt webbing is not twisted.


OEN036101

2. Fasten the lap/shoulder belt latch into the buckle. Listen for the distinct "click" sound. Position the release button so that it is easy to access in case of an emergency.


OEN036104

3. Remove as much slack from the belt as possible by pushing down on the Child Restraint System whilst feeding the shoulder belt back into the retractor.
4. Push and pull on the Child Restraint System to confirm that the seat belt is holding it firmly in place.

If your Child Restraint System manufacturer recommends the use of a top-tether with the lap/shoulder belt, see page 3-40.

To remove the Child Restraint System, press the release button on the buckle and then pull the lap/shoulder belt out of the Child Restraint System and allow the seat belt to retract fully.

Suitability of each seating position for "universal" category belted Child Restraint Systems according to ECE regulations (For Europe)

Use child safety seats that have been officially approved and are appropriate for your children. When using the child safety seats, refer to the following table.

Mass Group	Seating Position		
	Front passenger	Rear outboard	Rear Centre
0 : UP to 10 kg (0-9 months)	U	U	U
0+ : Up to 13 kg (0 - 2 years)	U	U	U
I : 9 kg to 18 kg (9 months - 4 years)	U	U	U
II & III : 15 kg to 36 kg (4 - 12 years)	U	U	U

U : suitable for "universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group (When you install the child seat on Front Passenger seat, you should move the seat position to upward properly, to restrain child seat)

UF : suitable for forward-facing "universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group

X : seat position not suitable for children in this mass group

Suitability of each seating position for "universal" category belted Child Restraint Systems according to ECE regulations (Except Europe)

Use child safety seats that have been officially approved and are appropriate for your children. When using the child safety seats, refer to the following table.

Mass Group	Seating Position		
	Front passenger	Rear outboard	Rear Centre
0 : UP to 10 kg (0-9 months)	UF	U	U
0+ : Up to 13 kg (0 - 2 years)	UF	U	U
I : 9 kg to 18 kg (9 months - 4 years)	UF	U	U
II & III : 15 kg to 36 kg (4 - 12 years)	UF	U	U

U : suitable for "universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group

UF : suitable for forward-facing "universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group (When you install the child seat on Front Passenger seat, you should move the seat position to upward properly, to restrain child seat)

X : seat position not suitable for children in this mass group

i-Size Child Restraint Systems according to ECE regulations

Mass Group	Seating Position			
	Front Passenger Outboard	Second Row		
		Outboard Left	Centre	Outboard Right
i-size Child Restraints Systems	X	i-U	X	i-U

i-U = Suitable for i-Size "universal" Child Restraints Systems forward and rearward facing

i-UF = Suitable for forward-facing i-Size "universal" Child Restraints Systems only.

X = Seat position not suitable for i-size CRS.

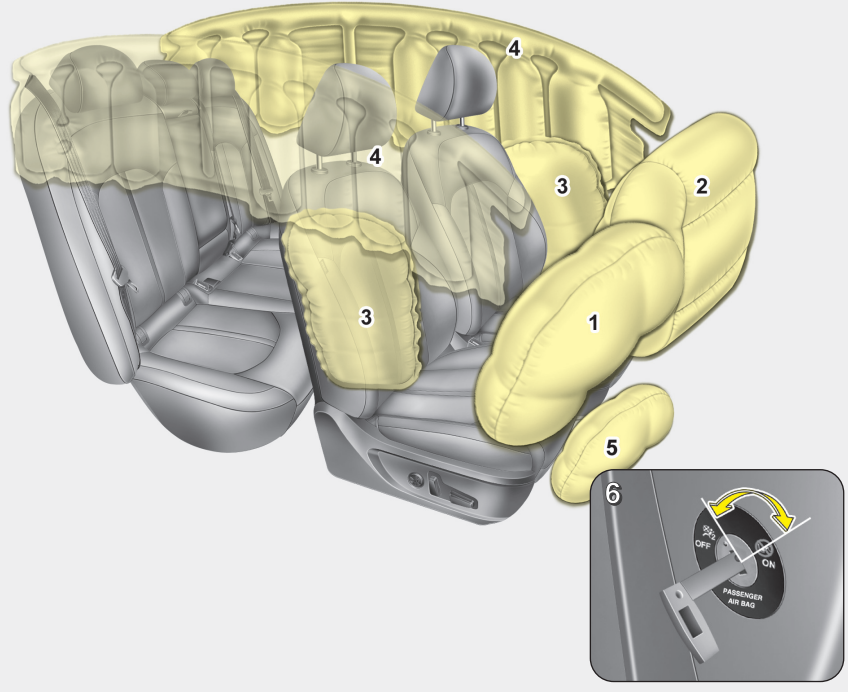
Recommended child restraint systems – For Europe

Mass Group	Size Class	Fixture	Name	Manufacturer	Type of Fixation	ECE-R44 Approval No.
Group 0-1 (0 ~ 13kg)	E	ISO/R1	Baby Safe Plus	Britax Römer	Reward facing with ISOFIX base	E1 04301146
Group 1 (9 ~ 18kg)	B1	ISO/F2X	Duo Plus	Britax Römer	Forward facing with vehicle ISOFIX lower anchorage + Top tether	E1 04301133

CRS Manufacturer information

Britax Römer http://www.britax.com

AIR BAG - SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



❈ The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OJF035036R/OJF035080R

(1) Driver's front air bag
(2) Passenger's front air bag*
(3) Side air bag*
(4) Curtain air bag*
(5) Driver's knee air bag*
(6) Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch*

* : if equipped

⚠ WARNING

- **Even in vehicles with air bags, you and your passengers must always wear the safety belts provided in order to minimise the risk and severity of injury in the event of a collision or rollover.**
- **SRS and pretensioners contain explosive chemicals.**

  If scraping a vehicle without removing SRS and pretensioners from a vehicle, it may cause fire. Before scraping a vehicle, we recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.
- **Keep the SRS parts and wirings away from water or any liquid. If the SRS components are inoperative due to exposure to water or liquids, it may cause fire or severe injury.**

How does the air bag system operate

- Air bags are activated (able to inflate if necessary) only when the ignition switch is turned to the ON or START position.
- Air bags inflate instantly in the event of a serious frontal collision or side collision (if equipped with a side air bag or curtain air bag) in order to help protect the occupants from serious physical injury.

✻ NOTICE - if equipped with rollover sensor

Also, the air bags inflate instantly in the event of a rollover (if equipped with a side air bag or curtain air bag) in order to help protect the occupants from serious physical injury.

- There is no single speed at which the air bags will inflate.

  Generally, air bags are designed to inflate based upon the severity of a collision and its direction. These two factors determine whether the sensors produce an electronic deployment/ inflation signal.
- Air bag deployment depends on a number of factors including vehicle speed, angles of impact and the density and stiffness of the vehicles or objects which your vehicle hits in the collision. The determining factors are not limited to those mentioned above.
- The front air bags will completely inflate and deflate in an instant.

  It is virtually impossible for you to see the air bags inflate during an accident.

  It is much more likely that you will simply see the deflated air bags hanging out of their storage compartments after the collision.

- In order to help provide protection in a severe collision, the air bags must inflate rapidly. The speed of the air bag inflation is a consequence of extremely short time in which a collision occurs and the need to inflate the air bag between the occupant and the vehicle structures before the occupant impacts those structures.

  This speed of inflation reduces the risk of serious or life-threatening injuries in a severe collision and is thus a necessary part of the air bag design.

  However, air bag inflation can also cause injuries which can include facial abrasions, bruises and broken bones because the inflation speed also causes the air bags to expand with a great deal of force.
- **There are even circumstances under which contact with the steering wheel air bag can cause fatal injuries, especially if the occupant is positioned excessively close to the steering wheel.**

⚠ WARNING

- **To avoid severe personal injury or death caused by deploying air bags in a collision, the driver should sit as far back from the steering wheel air bag as possible (at least 250 mm (10 inches) away). The front passengers should always move their seats as far back as possible and sit back in their seat.**
- **Air bags inflate instantly in the event of a collision, and passengers may be injured by the air bag expansion force if they are not in a proper position.**
- **Air bag inflation may cause injuries including facial or bodily abrasions, injuries from broken glasses or burns.**

Noise and smoke

When the air bags inflate, they make a loud noise and they leave smoke and powder in the air inside of the vehicle. This is normal and is a result of the ignition of the air bag inflator. After the air bag inflates, you may feel substantial discomfort in breathing due to the contact of your chest with both the seat belt and the air bag, as well as from breathing the smoke and powder. **Open your doors and/or windows as soon as possible after the impact in order to reduce discomfort and prevent prolonged exposure to smoke and powder.**

Though the smoke and powder are non-toxic, they may cause irritation to the skin (eyes, nose and throat, etc). If this is the case, wash and rinse with cold water immediately and consult a doctor if the symptom persists.

⚠ WARNING

When the air bags deploy, the air bag related parts in the steering wheel, instrument panel, front seats and/or in both sides of the roof rails above the front and rear doors are very hot. To prevent injury, do not touch the air bag storage area's internal components immediately after an air bag has inflated.

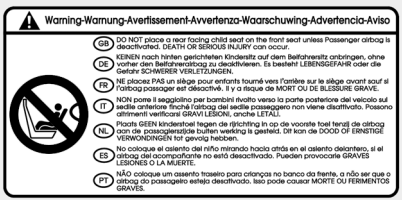
Front passenger's air bag warning label for child restraint system

■ Type A



OYDESA2042

■ Type B



OJD032059

⚠ WARNING

Never place a rear facing child restraint in the front passenger seat, unless the passenger-side air bag is deactivated. An inflating passenger-side air bag could impact the rear-facing child restraint and kill the child.

In addition, we recommend that you do not place front-facing child restraints in the front passenger's seat either. If the front passenger air bag inflates, it could cause serious or fatal injuries to the child.

If your vehicle is equipped with the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch, you can activate or deactivate the front passenger's air bag when necessary.

For more details, please refer to "Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch" in this chapter. (if equipped)

⚠ WARNING

- **Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an air bag in front of it!**
- **NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIR BAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.**
- **When children are seated in the rear outboard seats of a vehicle equipped with side and/or curtain air bags, be sure to install the child restraint system as far away from the door side as possible, and securely lock the child restraint system in position.**

  Inflation of side and/or curtain air bags could cause serious injury or death to an infant or child.

Air bag warning light

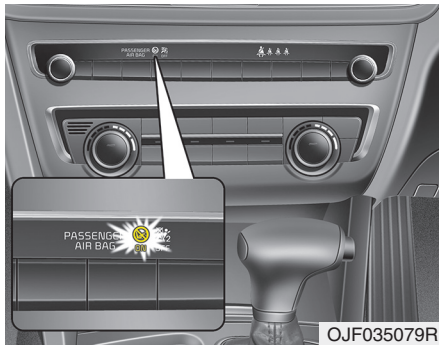


W7-147

The purpose of the air bag warning light in your instrument panel is to alert you of a potential problem with your air bag - Supplemental Restraint System (SRS).
When the ignition switch is turned ON, the warning light should illuminate for approximately 6 seconds, then go off.
Have the system checked if:

- The light does not turn on briefly when you turn the ignition ON.
- The light stays on after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds.
- The light comes on whilst the vehicle is in motion.
- The light blinks when the ignition switch is in ON position.

Passenger's front air bag ON indicator (if equipped)

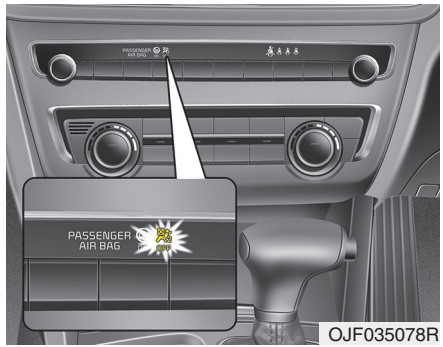


OJF035079R

The passenger's front air bag ON indicator illuminates for approximately 4 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.

The passenger's front air bag ON indicator also comes on when the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the ON position and goes off after approximately 60 seconds.

Passenger's front air bag OFF indicator (if equipped)



OJF035078R

The passenger's front air bag OFF indicator illuminates for about 4 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.

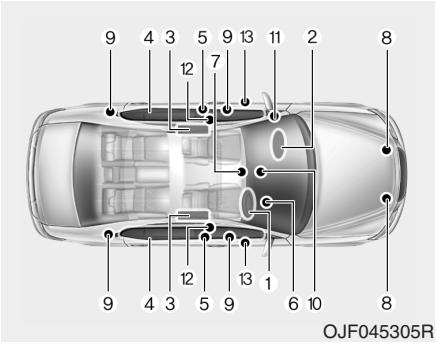
The passenger's front air bag OFF indicator also comes on when the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the OFF position and goes off when the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the ON position.

⚠ CAUTION

If the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch malfunctions, the passenger's front air bag OFF indicator will not illuminate (The passenger's front air bag ON indicator comes on and goes off after approximately 60 seconds) and the passenger's front air bag will inflate in a frontal impact even if the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the OFF position.

If this occurs, we recommend that the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch and the SRS air bag system be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

SRS components and functions



OJF045305R

The SRS consists of the following components:

1. Driver's front air bag module
2. Passenger's front air bag module*
3. Side air bag modules*
4. Curtain air bag modules*
5. Retractor pre-tensioner assemblies*
6. Air bag warning light
7. SRS control module (SRSCM)/ Rollover sensor*
8. Front impact sensors
9. Side impact sensors*
10. Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF indicator (front passenger's seat only)*
11. Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch*
12. Front anchor pre-tensioner*
13. Side pressure sensors

* : if equipped

The SRSCM continually monitors all SRS components whilst the ignition switch is ON to determine if a crash impact is severe enough to require air bag deployment or pre-tensioner seat belt deployment.

The SRS air bag warning light on the instrument panel will illuminate for about 6 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, after which the SRS air bag warning light should go out.

⚠ WARNING

If any of the following conditions occurs, this indicates a malfunction of the SRS. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

- **The light does not turn on briefly when you turn the ignition ON.**
- **The light stays on after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds.**
- **The light comes on whilst the vehicle is in motion.**
- **The light blinks when the ignition switch is in ON position.**

Driver's front air bag (1)



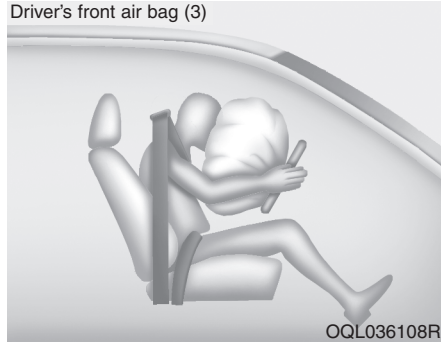
The front air bag modules are located in the centre of the steering wheel, in the front passenger's panel above the glove box and/or in the driver's side knee bolster. When the SRSCM detects a sufficiently severe impact to the front of the vehicle, it will automatically deploy the front air bags.

Driver's front air bag (2)



Upon deployment, tear seams molded directly into the pad covers will separate under pressure from the expansion of the air bags. Further opening of the covers then allows full inflation of the air bags.

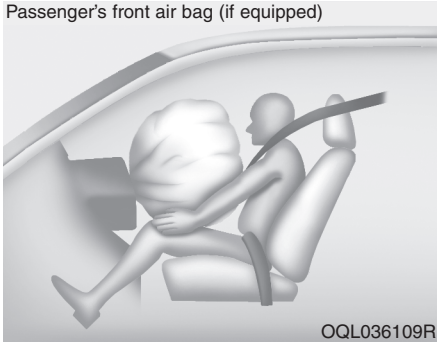
Driver's front air bag (3)



A fully inflated air bag, in combination with a properly worn seat belt, slows the driver's or the passenger's forward motion, reducing the risk of head and chest injury.

After complete inflation, the air bag immediately starts deflating, enabling the driver to maintain forward visibility and the ability to steer or operate other controls.

Passenger's front air bag (if equipped)



⚠ WARNING

- **Do not install or place any accessories (drink holder, cassette holder, sticker, etc.) on the front passenger's panel above the glove box in a vehicle with a passenger's air bag. Such objects may become dangerous projectiles and cause injury if the passenger's air bag inflates.]**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **When installing a container of liquid air freshener inside the vehicle, do not place it near the instrument cluster nor on the instrument panel surface.**

  It may become a dangerous projectile and cause injury if the passenger's air bag inflates.

⚠ WARNING

- **If an air bag deploys, there may be a loud noise followed by a fine dust released in the vehicle. These conditions are normal and are not hazardous - the air bags are packed in this fine powder. The dust generated during air bag deployment may cause skin or eye irritation as well as aggravate asthma for some persons. Always wash all exposed skin areas thoroughly with cold water and mild soap after an accident in which the air bags were deployed.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **The SRS can function only when the ignition key is in the ON position. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate, or continuously remains on after illuminating for about 6 seconds when the ignition key is turned to the ON position, or after the engine is started, comes on whilst driving, the SRS is not working properly. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.**
- **Before you replace a fuse or disconnect a battery terminal, turn the ignition switch to the LOCK position and remove the ignition key. Never remove or replace the air bag related fuse(s) when the ignition switch is in the ON position. Failure to heed this warning will cause the SRS air bag warning light to illuminate.**

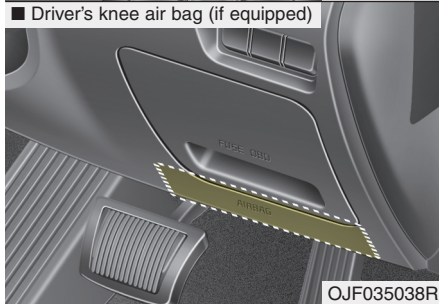
Driver's and passenger's front air bag

■ Driver's front air bag



OJF035037R

■ Driver's knee air bag (if equipped)



OJF035038R

Your vehicle is equipped with a Supplemental Restraint (Air Bag) System and the lap/shoulder belts at both the driver and passenger seating positions.

The indications of the system's presence are the letters "AIR BAG" embossed on the air bag pad cover in the steering wheel and/or on the cover of the driver's side knee bolster located below the steering wheel and the passenger's side front panel pad above the glove box.

■ Passenger's front air bag



The SRS consists of air bags installed under the pad covers in the centre of the steering wheel , in the knee bolster below the steering wheel column and the passenger's side front panel above the glove box.

The purpose of the SRS is to provide the vehicle's driver and/or the front passenger with additional protection than that offered by the seat belt system alone in case of a frontal impact of sufficient severity. The SRS uses sensors to gather information about the driver's seat position, the driver's and front passenger's seat belt usage and impact severity.

The seat belt buckle sensors (if equipped) determine if the driver and front passenger's seat belts are fastened. These sensors provide the ability to control the SRS deployment based on whether or not the seat belts are fastened, and how severe the impact is.

⚠ WARNING

Always use seat belts and child restraints – every trip, every time, everyone! Air bags inflate with considerable force and in the blink of an eye. Seat belts help keep occupants in proper position to obtain maximum benefit from the air bag. Even with air bags, improperly and unbelted occupants can be severely injured when the air bag inflates. Always follow the precautions about seat belts, air bags and occupant safety contained in this manual.

To reduce the chance of serious or fatal injuries and receive the maximum safety benefit from your restraint system:

- **Never place a child in any child or booster seat in the front seat.**
- **ABC – Always Buckle Children in the 2nd row seat. It is the safest place for children of any age to ride.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Front and side air bags can injure occupants improperly positioned in the front seats.**
- **Move your seat as far back as practical from the front air bags, whilst still maintaining control of the vehicle.**
- **You and your passengers should never sit or lean unnecessarily close to the air bags. Improperly positioned drivers and passengers can be severely injured by inflating air bags.**
- **Never lean against the door or centre console – always sit in an upright position.**
- **Do not allow a passenger to ride in the front seat when the passenger's front air bag OFF indicator is illuminated, because the air bag will not deploy in the event of a moderate or severe frontal crash.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **No objects should be placed over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel or the front passenger's panel above the glove box, because any such object could cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the air bags to deploy.**
- **Do not tamper with or disconnect SRS wiring or other components of the SRS system. Doing so could result in injury, due to accidental deployment of the air bags or by rendering the SRS inoperative.**
- **If the SRS air bag warning light remains illuminated whilst the vehicle is being driven, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Air bags can only be used once – we recommend that the system be replaced by an authorised Kia dealer.**
- **The SRS is designed to deploy the front air bags only when an impact is sufficiently severe and when the impact angle is less than 30° from the forward longitudinal axis of the vehicle. Additionally, the air bags will only deploy once. Seat belts must be worn at all times.**
- **Front air bags are not intended to deploy in side-impact, rear-impact or rollover crashes. In addition, front air bags will not deploy in frontal crashes below the deployment threshold.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **A child restraint system must never be placed in the front seat. The infant or child could be severely injured or killed by an air bag deployment in case of an accident.**
- **Children age 12 and under must always be properly restrained in the rear seat. Never allow children to ride in the front passenger seat. If a child over 12 must be seated in the front seat, he or she must be properly belted and the seat should be moved as far back as possible.**
- **For maximum safety protection in all types of crashes, all occupants including the driver should always wear their seat belts whether or not an air bag is also provided at their seating position to minimise the risk of severe injury or death in the event of a crash.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

Do not sit or lean unnecessarily close to the air bag whilst the vehicle is in motion.

- **Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash. All occupants should sit upright with the seat back in an upright position, centred on the seat cushion with their seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and their feet on the floor until the vehicle is parked and the ignition key is removed.**
- **The SRS air bag system must deploy very rapidly to provide protection in a crash. If an occupant is out of position because of not wearing a seat belt, the air bag may forcefully contact the occupant causing serious or fatal injuries.**

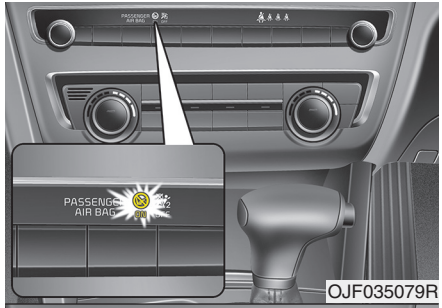
Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch (if equipped)

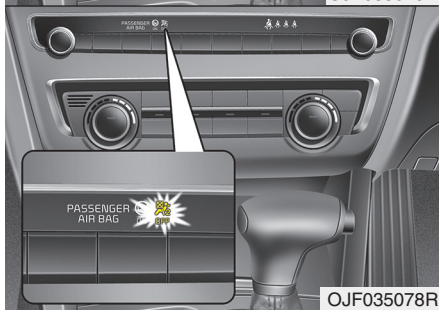


OJF035080R

The passenger's front air bag can be deactivated by the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch if a child restraint is installed on the front passenger's seat or if the front passenger's seat is unoccupied by a person.

To ensure the safety of your child, the passenger's front air bag must be deactivated when it should be necessary to install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances.





To deactivate or reactivate the passenger's front air bag:

To deactivate the passenger's front air bag, insert the master key into the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch and turn it to the OFF position. The passenger's front air bag OFF indicator will illuminate and stay on until the passenger's front air bag is reactivated.

To reactivate the passenger's front air bag, insert the master key into the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch and turn it to the ON position. The passenger's front air bag OFF indicator will go out.

⚠ WARNING

The front air bag ON/OFF switch could turn by using a similar small rigid device. Always check the status of the front air bag ON/OFF switch and passenger's front air bag OFF indicator.

✻ NOTICE

- **When the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the ON position, the passenger's front air bag is activated and child or infant seat should not be installed on the front passenger seat.**
- **When the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the OFF position, the passenger's front air bag is deactivated.**

⚠ CAUTION

- ***If the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is not working properly, the air bag warning light ( )on the instrument panel will illuminate.***

(Continued)

(Continued)

And, the passenger's front air bag OFF indicator (🙍) will not illuminate (The passenger's front air bag ON indicator comes on and goes off after approximately 60 seconds), the SRS Control Module reactivates the passenger's front air bag and the passenger's front air bag will inflate in frontal impact crashes even if the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the OFF position.

If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

- *If the SRS air bag warning light blinks or does not illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, or if it illuminates whilst the vehicle is being driven, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.*

⚠ WARNING

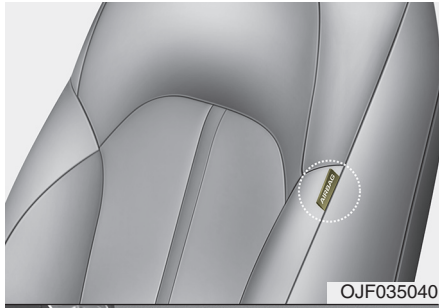
- **The driver is responsible for the proper position of the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch.**
- **Deactivate the passenger's front air bag only when the ignition switch is switched off, or the malfunction may occur in the SRS Control Module. And there may be a danger that the driver's and/or front passenger's and/or side and curtain air bag may fail to trigger, or not trigger correctly during a collision.**
- **Never install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger's seat unless the passenger's front air bag has been deactivated. The infant or child could be severely injured or killed by an air bag deployment in case of an accident.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Even though your vehicle is equipped with the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch, do not install a child restraint system in the front passenger's seat. A child restraint system must never be placed in the front seat. Children who are too large for child restraint systems should always occupy the rear seat and use the available lap/shoulder belts. Children are afforded the most safety in the event of an accident when they are restrained by a proper restraint system in the rear seat.**
- **As soon as the child seat is no longer needed on the front passenger's seat, reactivate the front passenger's air bag.**

Side air bag (if equipped)



❈ The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Your vehicle is equipped with a side air bag in each front seat.

The purpose of the air bag is to provide the vehicle's driver and/or the front passenger with additional protection than that offered by the seat belt alone.

The side air bags are designed to deploy only during certain side-impact collisions, depending on the crash severity, angle, speed and point of impact. However, when side deployment threshold is satisfied at front-impact, side air bags may deploy. The side air bags are not designed to deploy in all side impact or rollover situations.

The side air bags may deploy on the side of the impact or on both side.

✻ NOTICE - if equipped with rollover sensor

- **Also, both side of the side air bags deploy in certain rollover situations.**
- **The side air bag may deploy when the rollover sensor detects the situation as a rollover.**

⚠ WARNING

Do not allow the passengers to lean their heads or bodies onto doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window, or place objects between the doors and passengers when they are seated on seats equipped with side and/or curtain air bags.

⚠ WARNING

- **The side air bag is supplemental to the driver's and the passenger's seat belt systems and is not a substitute for them. Therefore your seat belts must be worn at all times whilst the vehicle is in motion. The air bags deploy only in certain side impact or rollover*1 conditions severe enough to cause significant injury to the vehicle occupants.**
- **For best protection from the side air bag system and to avoid being injured by the deploying side air bag, both front seat occupants should sit in an upright position with the seat belt properly fastened. The driver's hands should be placed on the steering wheel at the 9:00 and 3:00 positions.**

  The passenger's arms and hands should be placed on their laps.

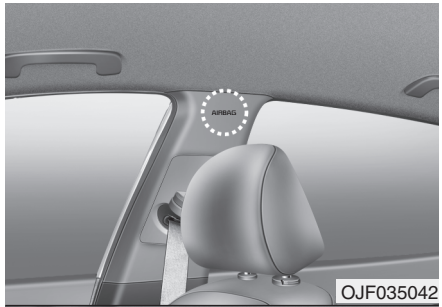
(Continued)

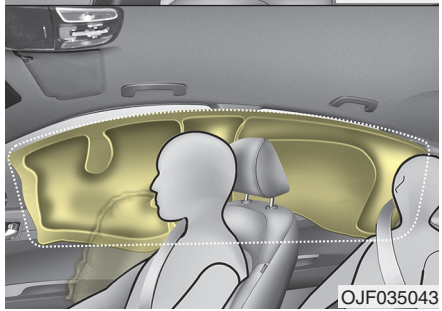
*1 Only vehicle equipped with rollover sensor.

(Continued)

- **Do not use any accessory seat covers.**
- **Use of seat covers could reduce or prevent the effectiveness of the system.**
- **Do not install any accessories on the side or near the side air bag.**
- **Do not place any objects over the air bag or between the air bag and yourself.**
- **Do not place any objects (an umbrella, bag, etc.) between the front door and the front seat. Such objects may become dangerous projectiles and cause injury if the supplemental side air bag inflates.**
- **To prevent unexpected deployment of the side air bag that may result in personal injury, avoid impact to the side impact sensor when the ignition switch is on.**
- **If the seat or seat cover is damaged, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised Kia dealer.**

Curtain air bag (if equipped)





❈ The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Curtain air bags are located along both sides of the roof rails above the front and rear doors.

They are designed to help protect the heads of the front seat occupants and the rear outboard seat occupants in certain side impact collisions.

The curtain air bags are designed to deploy during certain side impact collisions, depending on the crash severity, angle, speed and point of impact. However, when side deployment threshold is satisfied at front-impact, side air bags may deploy.

The curtain air bags may deploy on the side of the impact or on both side.

The curtain air bags are not designed to deploy in all side impacts or rollover situations.

✻ NOTICE - if equipped with rollover sensor

- **Also, both sides of the curtain air bags deploy in certain rollover situations.**
- **The curtain air bag may deploy when the rollover sensor detects the situation as a rollover.**

⚠ WARNING

- **In order for side and curtain air bags to provide the best protection, front seat occupants and outboard rear occupants should sit in an upright position with the seat belts properly fastened. Importantly, children should sit in a proper child restraint system in the rear seat.**
- **When children are seated in the rear outboard seats, they must be seated in the proper child restraint system. Make sure to position the child restraint system as far away from the door side as possible, and secure the child restraint system in a locked position.**

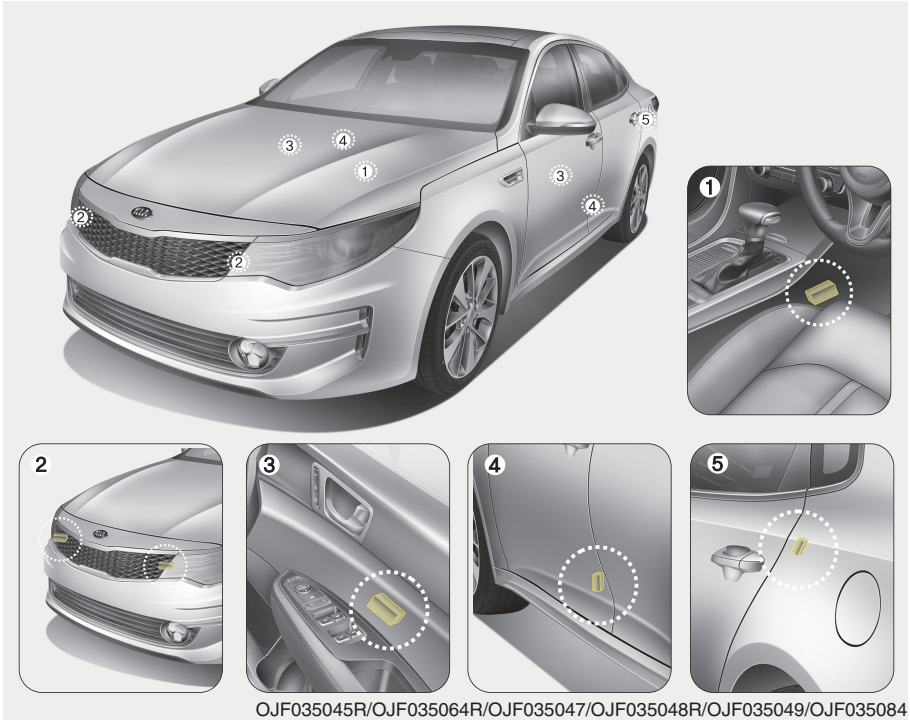
(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Do not allow the passengers to lean their heads or bodies against doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window or place objects between the doors and passengers when they are seated on seats equipped with side and curtain air bags.**
- **Never try to open or repair any components of the side curtain air bag system. We recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised Kia dealer.**

Failure to follow the above instructions can result in injury or death to the vehicle occupants in an accident.

Why didn't my air bag go off in a collision?



OJF035045R/OJF035064R/OJF035047/OJF035048R/OJF035049/OJF035084

Inflation and non-inflation conditions of the airbag

There are many types of accidents in which the air bag would not be expected to provide additional protection.

These include rear impacts, second or third collisions in multiple impact accidents, as well as low speed impacts.

Air bag collision sensors

1. SRS control module/ Rollover sensor (if equipped)
2. Front impact sensor
3. Side impact sensor (if equipped)
4. Side impact sensor (if equipped)
5. Side impact sensor (if equipped)

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not hit or allow any objects to impact the locations where air bag or sensors are installed.**

  This may cause unexpected air bag deployment, which could result in serious personal injury or death.
- **If the installation location or angle of the sensors is altered in any way, the air bags may deploy when they should not or they may not deploy when they should, causing severe injury or death.**

  Therefore, do not try to perform maintenance on or around the air bag sensors. We recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised Kia dealer.

(Continued)

(Continued)

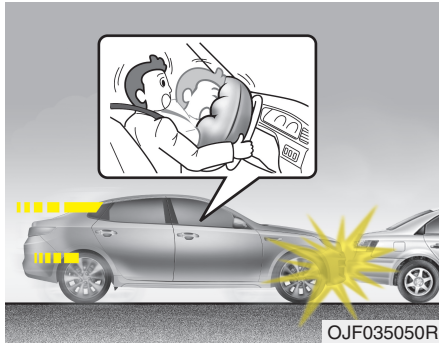
- **Problems may arise if the sensor installation angles are changed due to the deformation of the front bumper, body or front door and C pillars where side collision sensors are installed. We recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised Kia dealer.**
- **Your vehicle has been designed to absorb impact and deploy the air bag(s) in certain collisions. Installing bumper guards or replacing a bumper with non-genuine parts may adversely affect your vehicles collision and air bag deployment performance.**

⚠ WARNING - If equipped with rollover sensor

If your vehicle is equipped with side and curtain air bag, set the ignition switch to OFF or ACC position when the vehicle is being towed.

The side and curtain air bag may deploy when the ignitions is ON, and the rollover sensor detects the situation as a rollover.

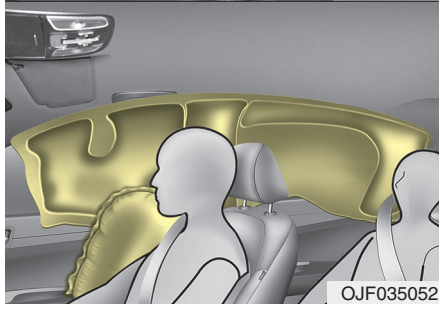
Air bag inflation conditions



Front air bags

Front air bags are designed to inflate in a frontal collision depending on the intensity, speed or angles of impact of the front collision.





✻ The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Side and curtain air bags (if equipped)

Side and curtain air bags are designed to inflate when an impact is detected by side collision sensors depending on the strength, speed or angles of impact resulting from a side impact collision.

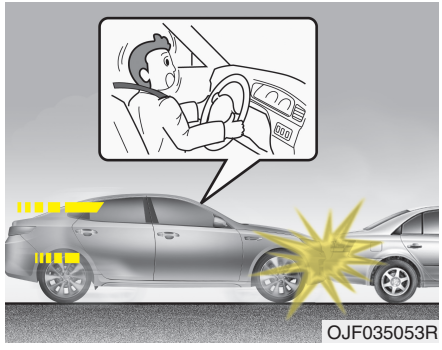
Although the front air bags (driver's and front passenger's air bags) are designed to inflate only in frontal collisions, they also may inflate in other types of collisions if the front impact sensors detect a sufficient impact. Side air bags (side and/or curtain air bags) are designed to inflate only in side impact collisions, but they may inflate in other collisions if the side impact sensors detect a sufficient impact.

If the vehicle chassis is impacted by bumps or objects on unimproved roads or sidewalks, air bags may deploy. Drive carefully on unimproved roads or on surfaces not designed for vehicle traffic to prevent unintended air bag deployment.

✻ NOTICE - If equipped with rollover sensor

Also, the side and curtain air bags are designed to inflate when a rollover is detected by a rollover sensor.

Air bag non-inflation conditions


OJF035053R

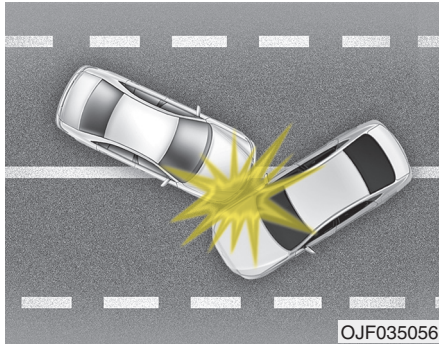
- In certain low-speed collisions the air bags may not deploy. The air bags are designed not to deploy in such cases because they may not provide benefits beyond the protection of the seat belts in such collisions.


OJF035054R

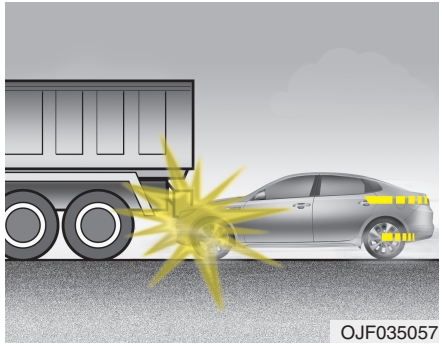
- Air bags are not designed to inflate in rear collisions, because occupants are moved backward by the force of the impact. In this case, inflated air bags would not be able to provide any additional benefit.


OJF035055

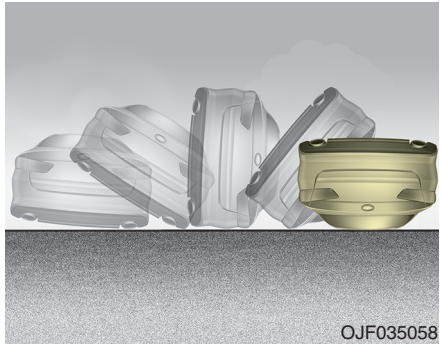
- Front air bags may not inflate in side impact collisions, because occupants move to the direction of the collision, and thus in side impacts, front air bag deployment would not provide additional occupant protection.
- However, if equipped with side and curtain air bags, the air bags may inflate depending on the intensity, vehicle speed and angles of impact.


OJF035056

- In an angled collision, the force of impact may direct the occupants in a direction where the air bags would not be able to provide any additional benefit, and thus the sensors may not deploy any air bags.


OJF035057

- Just before impact, drivers often brake heavily. Such heavy braking lowers the front portion of the vehicle causing it to “ride” under a vehicle with a higher ground clearance. Air bags may not inflate in this "under-ride" situation because deceleration forces that are detected by sensors may be significantly reduced by such “under-ride” collisions.


OJF035058

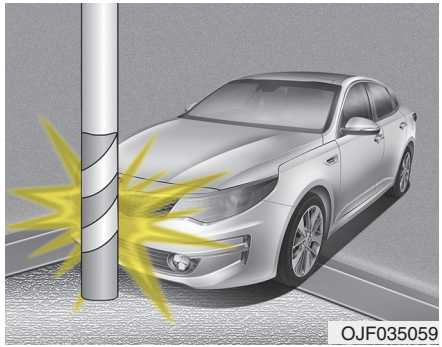
- Front air bags may not inflate in rollover accidents because front air bag deployment would not provide additional occupant protection.

✻ NOTICE - If equipped with rollover sensor

However, if equipped with side and curtain air bags, the air bags may inflate in a rollover, when it is detected by the rollover sensor.

✻ NOTICE - without rollover sensor

However, side and/or curtain air bags may inflate when the vehicle is rolled over by a side impact collision, if the vehicle is equipped with side air bags and curtain air bags.



- Air bags may not inflate if the vehicle collides with objects such as utility poles or trees, where the point of impact is concentrated to one area and the full force of the impact is not delivered to the sensors.

SRS Care

The SRS is virtually maintenance-free and so there are no parts you can safely service by yourself. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate, or continuously remains on, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING

- **Modification to SRS components or wiring, including the addition of any kind of badges to the pad covers or modifications to the body structure, can adversely affect SRS performance and lead to possible injury.**
- **For cleaning the air bag pad covers, use only a soft, dry cloth or one which has been moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could adversely affect the air bag covers and proper deployment of the system.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **No objects should be placed over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box, because any such object could cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the air bags to inflate.**
- **If the air bags inflate, we recommend that the system be replaced by an authorised Kia dealer.**
- **Do not tamper with or disconnect SRS wiring, or other components of the SRS system. Doing so could result in injury, due to accidental inflation of the air bags or by rendering the SRS inoperative.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **If components of the air bag system must be discarded, or if the vehicle must be scrapped, certain safety precautions must be observed. An authorised Kia dealer knows these precautions and can give you the necessary information. Failure to follow these precautions and procedures could increase the risk of personal injury.**
- **If your car was flooded and has soaked carpeting or water on flooring, you shouldn't try to start the engine; we recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.**

Additional safety precautions

- **Never let passengers ride in the cargo area or on top of a folded-down back seat.** All occupants should sit upright, fully back in their seats with their seat belts on and their feet on the floor.
- **Passengers should not move out of or change seats whilst the vehicle is moving.** A passenger who is not wearing a seat belt during a crash or emergency stop can be thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against other occupants, or out of the vehicle.
- **Each seat belt is designed to restrain one occupant.** If more than one person uses the same seat belt, they could be seriously injured or killed in a collision.
- **Do not use any accessories on seat belts.** Devices claiming to improve occupant comfort or reposition the seat belt can reduce the protection provided by the seat belt and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- **Passengers should not place hard or sharp objects between themselves and the air bags.** Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap or in your mouth can result in injuries if an air bag inflates.
- **Keep occupants away from the air bag covers.** All occupants should sit upright, fully back in their seats with their seat belts on and their feet on the floor. If occupants are too close to the air bag covers, they could be injured if the air bags inflate.
- **Do not attach or place objects on or near the air bag covers.** Any object attached to or placed on the front or side air bag covers could interfere with the proper operation of the air bags.
- **Do not modify the front seats.** Modification of the front seats could interfere with the operation of the supplemental restraint system sensing components or side air bags.
- **Do not place items under the front seats.** Placing items under the front seats could interfere with the operation of the supplemental restraint system sensing components and wiring harnesses.
- **Never hold an infant or child on your lap.** The infant or child could be seriously injured or killed in the event of a crash. All infants and children should be properly restrained in appropriate child safety seats or seat belts in the rear seat.

⚠ WARNING

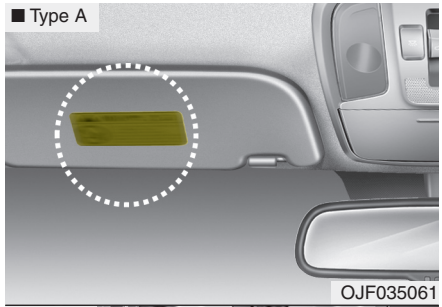
- **Sitting improperly or out of position can cause occupants to be shifted too close to a deploying air bag, strike the interior structure or be thrown from the vehicle resulting in serious injury or death.**
- **Always sit upright with the seatback in an upright position, centred on the seat cushion with your seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and your feet on the floor.**

Adding equipment to or modifying your air bag-equipped vehicle

If you modify your vehicle by changing your vehicle's frame, bumper system, front end or side sheet metal or ride height, this may affect the operation of your vehicle's air bag system.

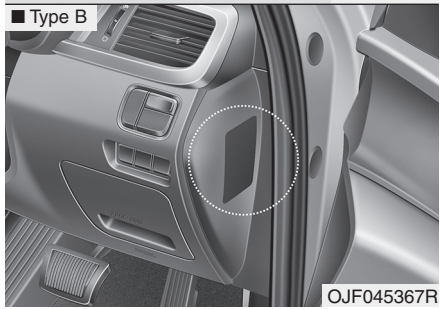
Air bag warning label

■ Type A



OJF035061

■ Type B



OJF045367R

Air bag warning labels are attached to alert the passengers of the potential risk of the air bag system.

Note that these government warnings focus on the risk of children. We also want you to be aware of the risks which adults are exposed to that have been described in previous pages.

Features of your vehicle

Keys 4-5
- Record your key number 4-5
- Key operations 4-5
- Immobiliser system 4-7

Remote keyless entry 4-9
- Remote keyless entry system operations 4-9
- Smart key system operation 4-10
- Transmitter precautions 4-12
- Battery replacement 4-13

Theft-alarm system 4-14
- Armed stage 4-14
- Theft-alarm stage 4-15
- Disarmed stage 4-16
- Theft-alarm system 4-17

Door locks 4-20
- Operating door locks from outside the vehicle 4-20
- Operating door locks from inside the vehicle 4-21
- Door lock/unlock features 4-23
- Child-protector rear door lock 4-25

Trunk (For SEDAN) 4-26
- Opening the trunk 4-26
- Closing the trunk 4-27
- Emergency trunk safety release 4-28

Smart trunk (For SEDAN) 4-29

Tailgate 4-33
- Non-power tailgate 4-33
- Power tailgate 4-34
- Smart tailgate 4-39
- Emergency tailgate safety release 4-43

Windows 4-44
- Power windows 4-45

Bonnet 4-49
- Opening the bonnet 4-49
- Closing the bonnet 4-49

Fuel filler lid 4-51
- Opening the fuel filler lid 4-51
- Emergency fuel filler lid release 4-53

Panorama sunroof 4-54
- Sunroof open warning 4-55
- Sunshade 4-55
- Sliding the sunroof 4-56
- Tilting the sunroof 4-57
- Closing the sunroof 4-57
- Resetting the sunroof 4-58

Steering wheel 4-59
- Electric power steering 4-59
- Tilt & telescopic steering 4-60
- Heated steering wheel 4-60
- Horn 4-61

Mirrors 4-62
- Inside rearview mirror 4-62
- Outside rearview mirror 4-63
- Reverse parking aid function 4-66

Instrument cluster 4-67
- Instrument Cluster Control 4-69
- LCD Display Control 4-70
- Gauges 4-70
- Transaxle Shift Indicator 4-74
- Dual clutch transmission shift indicator 4-75

LCD Display 4-77
- LCD Modes 4-77
- Service Mode 4-78
- User Settings Mode 4-80
- Trip modes (Trip computer) 4-84
- Turn By Turn Mode 4-89
- ASCC/LDWS/LKAS 4-89
- A/V Mode 4-89
- Warning Messages 4-90

Warning and indicator lights 4-100
- Warning lights 4-100
- Indicator Lights 4-111

Parking assist system 4-117
- Operation of the parking assist system 4-117
- Non-operational conditions of parking assist system 4-119
- Self-diagnosis 4-121

Smart parking assist system (SPAS) 4-122
- Operating condition 4-122
- Non-operating condition 4-124
- How the system works (Parking Mode) 4-127
- Additional instructions (messages) 4-133
- System malfunction 4-134
- How the system works (Exit mode) 4-134
- Additional instructions (messages) 4-137
- System malfunction 4-138

Rearview camera 4-139

Surround view monitoring system 4-140

Lighting 4-141
- Battery saver function 4-141
- Headlight escort function 4-141
- Daytime running light 4-142
- Smart cornering lamp 4-142
- Lighting control 4-142
- High beam operation 4-144
- High Beam Assist 4-145
- Turn signals and lane change signals 4-147
- Front fog light 4-148
- Rear fog light 4-149

- Headlight levelling device 4-150
- AFLS (Adaptive Front Lighting System) 4-151

Wipers and washers 4-152
- Windscreen wiper/washer 4-152
- Windscreen wipers 4-153
- Windscreen washers 4-155

Interior light 4-158
- Automatic turn off function 4-158
- Map lamp 4-158
- Room lamp 4-159
- Trunk room lamp 4-160
- Glove box lamp 4-160
- Vanity mirror lamp 4-161
- Door courtesy lamp 4-161

Welcome system 4-162
- Welcome light 4-162
- Escort welcome 4-162
- Interior light 4-162

Defroster 4-163
- Rear window defroster 4-163

Climate control system 4-164
- System operation 4-164
- Air conditioning 4-165
- Climate control air filter 4-166
- Air Conditioning refrigerant label 4-167
- Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant 4-168
- Manual climate control system 4-169
- Automatic climate control system 4-175
- Automatic heating and air conditioning 4-176

Windscreen defrosting and defogging 4-184
- Manual climate control system 4-184
- Automatic climate control system 4-184
- Operation tips 4-185
- Defogging logic 4-186
- Auto defogging system (Only for automatic climate control system) 4-187

Clean air 4-188

Storage compartment 4-189
- Centre console storage 4-189
- Glove box 4-189
- Sunglass holder 4-190
- Luggage tray (wagon) 4-191
- Luggage side tray (wagon) 4-191
- Luggage side partition (wagon) 4-191

Interior features 4-192
- Cigarette lighter 4-192
- Ashtray 4-192
- Cup holder 4-193
- Sunvisor 4-194

• Seat warmer 4-195
• Air ventilation seat 4-196
• Power outlet 4-197
• USB charger 4-198
• Wireless smart phone charging system 4-199
• Clothes hanger 4-202
• Floor mat anchor(s) 4-202
• Side curtain 4-203
• Luggage net (holder) 4-203
• Barrier net (wagon) 4-204
• Cargo security screen (Wagon) 4-206
• Luggage rail system (wagon) 4-208
Exterior features 4-210
• Roof rack (wagon) 4-210

KEYS

Record your key number

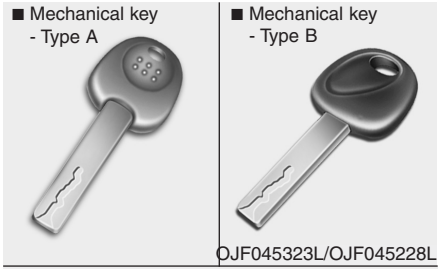


The key code number is stamped on the key code tag attached to the key set. Should you lose your keys, we recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer. Remove the key code tag and store it in a safe place. Also, record the key code number and keep it in a safe place (not in the vehicle).

Key operations

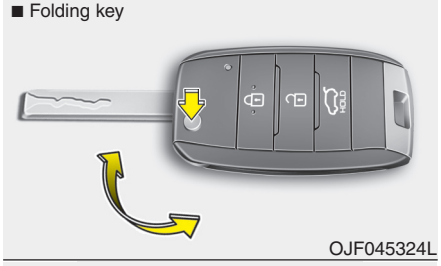
■ Mechanical key - Type A

■ Mechanical key - Type B



OJF045323L/OJF045228L

■ Folding key



OJF045324L

■ Smart Key



OXM043002/OXM043003

- Used to start the engine.
- Used to lock and unlock the doors.
- Used to lock and unlock the glove box.

Folding key

To unfold the key, press the release button then the key will unfold automatically.

To fold the key, fold the key manually whilst pressing the release button.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not fold the key without pressing the release button. This may damage the key.

Smart key

To remove the mechanical key, press and hold the release button (1) and remove the mechanical key (2).

To reinstall the mechanical key, put the key into the hole and push it until a click sound is heard.

⚠ WARNING - Ignition key (smart key)

Leaving children unattended in a vehicle with the ignition key (smart key) is dangerous even if the key is not in the ignition or start button is ACC or ON position. Children copy adults and they could place the key in the ignition or press the start button. The ignition key (smart key) would enable children to operate power windows or other controls, or even make the vehicle move, which could result in serious bodily injury or even death. Never leave the keys in your vehicle with unsupervised children, when the engine is running.

⚠ WARNING

We recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorised Kia dealer. If an aftermarket key is used, the ignition switch may not return to ON after START. If this happens, the starter will continue to operate causing damage to the starter motor and possible fire due to excessive current in the wiring.

Immobiliser system (if equipped)

Your vehicle may be equipped with an electronic engine immobiliser system to reduce the risk of unauthorised vehicle use.

Your immobiliser system is comprised of a small transponder in the ignition key and electronic devices inside the vehicle.

With the immobiliser system, whenever you insert your ignition key into the ignition switch and turn it to ON or Whenever the engine start/stop button is changed to the ON position, it checks and determines and verifies if the ignition key is valid or not.

If the key is determined to be valid, the engine will start.

If the key is determined to be invalid, the engine will not start.

To activate the immobiliser system:

Turn the ignition key to the OFF position or change the engine start/stop button to the OFF position. The immobiliser system activates automatically. Without a valid ignition key for your vehicle, the engine will not start.

To deactivate the immobiliser system:

Insert the ignition key into the key cylinder and turn it to the ON position or change the engine start/stop button to the ON position.

⚠ WARNING

In order to prevent theft of your vehicle, do not leave spare keys anywhere in your vehicle. Your immobiliser password is a customer unique password and should be kept confidential. Do not leave this number anywhere in your vehicle.

✻ NOTICE

When starting the engine, do not use the key with other immobiliser keys around. Otherwise the engine may not start or may stop soon after it starts. Keep each key separately in order to avoid a starting malfunction.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not put metal accessories near the ignition switch. Metal accessories may interrupt the transponder signal and may prevent the engine from being started.

✻ NOTICE

If you need additional keys or lose your keys, we recommend that you consult an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

The transponder in your ignition key is an important part of the immobiliser system. It is designed to give years of trouble-free service, however you should avoid exposure to moisture, static electricity and rough handling. Immobiliser system malfunction could occur.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not change, alter or adjust the immobiliser system because it could cause the immobiliser system to malfunction. We recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised Kia dealer.

Malfunctions caused by improper alterations, adjustments or modifications to the immobiliser system are not covered by your vehicle manufacturer warranty.

REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY

Remote keyless entry system operations

■ Folding key



OUM046432L

■ Smart Key



OUM046433L

Lock (1)

All doors (and trunk (tailgate)) are locked if the lock button is pressed.

If all doors (and trunk (tailgate)) are closed, the hazard warning lights will blink once to indicate that all doors (and trunk (tailgate)) are locked.

Unlock (2)

All doors (and trunk (tailgate)) are unlocked if the unlock button is pressed.

The hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that all doors (and trunk (tailgate)) are unlocked.

However, after pressing this button, the doors (and trunk (tailgate)) will lock automatically unless you open any door within 30 seconds.

Trunk (tailgate) unlock (3)

The trunk (tailgate) is unlocked if the button is pressed for more than 1 second.

The hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that the trunk (tailgate) is unlocked.

However, after pressing this button, the trunk (tailgate) will lock automatically unless you open the trunk (tailgate) within 30 seconds.

Also, once the trunk (tailgate) is opened and then closed, the trunk (tailgate) will lock automatically.

Smart key system operation (if equipped)



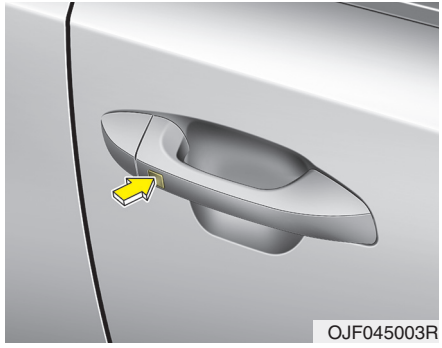
OXM043002

With a smart key, you can lock or unlock a door (and trunk (tailgate)) and even start the engine without inserting the key.

The functions of the buttons on a smart key are similar to the remote keyless entry. (Refer to the “Remote keyless entry” in this chapter.)

Carrying the smart key, you may lock and unlock the vehicle doors (and trunk (tailgate)). Also, you may start the engine. Refer to the following, for more details.

Locking



OJF045003R

Pressing the button of the front outside door handles with all doors (and trunk (tailgate)) closed and any door unlocked, locks all the doors (and trunk (tailgate)). The hazard warning lights will blink once to indicate that all doors (and trunk (tailgate)) are locked. The button will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7 ~ 1m (28 ~ 40 in) from the outside door handle. If you want to make sure that a door has locked or not, you should check the door lock button inside the vehicle or pull the outside door handle.

Even though you press the button, the doors will not lock and the chime sounds if any of the following occurs:

- The smart key is in the vehicle.
- The ENGINE START/STOP button is in the ACC or ON position.
- Any door except the trunk (tailgate) is opened.

Unlocking

Pressing the button of the front outside door handles with all doors (and trunk (tailgate)) closed and locked, unlocks all the doors (and trunk (tailgate)). The hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that all doors (and trunk (tailgate)) are unlocked. The button will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7 ~ 1m (28 ~ 40 in) from the outside door handle.

When the smart key is recognized in the area of 0.7 ~ 1m (28 ~ 40 in) from the front outside door handle, other people can also open a door without possession of the smart key.

Trunk (tailgate) unlocking

If you are within 0.7 ~ 1m (28 ~ 40 in) from the outside trunk (tailgate) handle, with your smart key in possession, the trunk (tailgate) will unlock and open when you press the trunk (tailgate) handle switch.

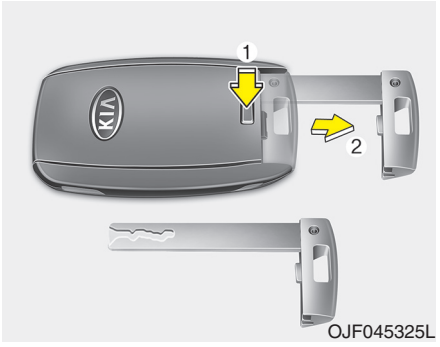
The hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that the trunk (tailgate) is unlocked.

Also, once the trunk (tailgate) is opened and then closed, the trunk (tailgate) will lock automatically.

Start-up

You can start the engine without inserting the key. For detailed information refer to “Starting the engine with a smart key” in chapter 6.

Restrictions in handling keys



When leaving keys with parking lot and valet attendants, the following procedures will ensure that your vehicle’s glove box compartment can not be opened in your absence.

1. Press and hold the release button (1) and remove the mechanical key (2).
2. Close and then lock the glove box using the mechanical key.
3. Leave the smart key with the attendant. The glove box can not be opened without the mechanical key.

Transmitter precautions

The transmitter will not work if any of the following occurs:

- The ignition key is in the ignition switch. (for folding key)
- Another vehicle's smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.
- You exceed the operating distance limit (about 10 m [30 feet]).
- The battery in the transmitter is weak.
- Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.
- The weather is extremely cold.
- The transmitter is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.
- If the transmitter is in close proximity to your cell phone or smart phone, the signal from the transmitter could be blocked by normal operation of your cell phone or smart phone. This is especially important when the phone is active such as making call, receiving calls, text messaging, and/or sending/ receiving emails.

  Avoid placing the transmitter and your cell phone or smart phone in the same pants or jacket pocket and maintain adequate distance between the two devices.

When the transmitter does not work correctly, open and close the door with the mechanical key. If you have a problem with the transmitter, we recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

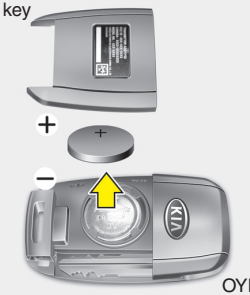
Keep the transmitter away from water or any liquid. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to exposure to water or other liquids, it will not be covered by your manufacturer's vehicle warranty.

⚠ CAUTION

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance, it will not be covered by your manufacturer's vehicle warranty.

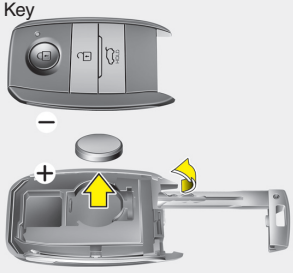
Battery replacement

■ Folding key



OYDDCO2005

■ Smart Key



OXM043005

A transmitter uses a 3 volt lithium battery which will normally last for several years. When replacement is necessary, use the following procedure.

1. Insert a slim tool into the slot and gently pry open the folding key centre cover or pry open the rear cover of the smart key.
2. Replace the battery with a new battery (CR2032). When replacing the battery, make sure the battery position.
3. Install the battery in the reverse order of removal.

For transmitter replacement, we recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.

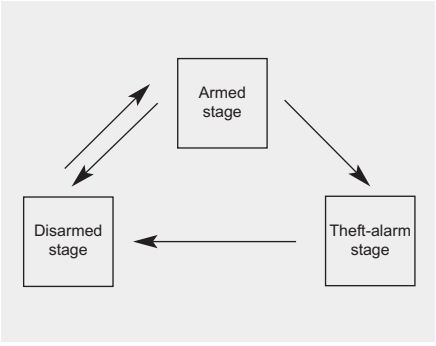
⚠ CAUTION

- ***The keyless entry system transmitter is designed to give you years of trouble-free use, however it can malfunction if exposed to moisture or static electricity. If you are unsure how to use or replace the battery, we recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.***
- ***Using the wrong battery can cause the transmitter to malfunction. Be sure to use the correct battery.***
- ***To avoid damaging the transmitter, don't drop it, get it wet, or expose it to heat or sunlight.***

✻ NOTICE

An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health.
Dispose the battery according to your local law(s) or regulation.

THEFT-ALARM SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



This system is designed to provide protection from unauthorised entry into the vehicle. This system is operated in three stages: the first is the "Armed" stage, the second is the "Theft-alarm" stage, and the third is the "Disarmed" stage. If triggered, the system provides an audible alarm with blinking of the hazard warning lights.

Armed stage

Park the vehicle and stop the engine. Arm the system as described below.

Using the folding key

1. Turn off the engine and remove the ignition key from the ignition switch.
2. Make sure that all doors, the engine bonnet and trunk (tailgate) are closed and latched.
3. Lock the doors by pressing the lock button on the transmitter.

   After completion of the steps above, the hazard warning lights will blink once to indicate that the system is armed.

   If the trunk (tailgate) or engine bonnet remains opened, the hazard warning lights will not operate and theft-alarm will not arm. After this, if the trunk (tailgate) and engine bonnet are closed, the hazard warning lights will blink once and the theft-alarm will arm.

Using the smart key

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Make sure that all doors, the engine bonnet and trunk (tailgate) are closed and latched.
3. • Lock the doors by pressing the button of the front outside door handle with the smart key in your possession.

   After completion of the steps above, the hazard warning lights will operate once to indicate that the system is armed.

   If the trunk (tailgate) or engine bonnet remains opened, the hazard warning lights will not operate and theft-alarm will not arm. After this, if the trunk (tailgate) and engine bonnet are closed, the hazard warning lights will blink once and the theft-alarm will arm.

- Lock the doors by pressing the lock button on the smart key.

  After completion of the steps above, the hazard warning lights will operate once to indicate that the system is armed.

  If the trunk (tailgate) or engine bonnet remains opened, the hazard warning lights will not operate and theft-alarm will not arm. After this, if the trunk (tailgate) and engine bonnet are closed, the hazard warning lights will blink once and the theft-alarm will arm.

Do not arm the system until all passengers have left the vehicle. If the system is armed whilst a passenger(s) remains in the vehicle, the alarm may be activated when the remaining passenger(s) leaves the vehicle. If any door (or trunk (tailgate)) or engine bonnet is opened within 30 seconds after the system enters the armed stage, the system will be disarmed to prevent unnecessary alarm.

Theft-alarm stage

The alarm will be activated if any of the following occurs whilst the system is armed.

- A front or rear door is opened without using the transmitter.
- The trunk (tailgate) is opened without using the transmitter.
- The engine bonnet is opened.

The horn will sound and the hazard warning lights will blink continuously for approximately 27 seconds. Then, an alarm will sound two times with 10 seconds interval. If the alarm situation does not change after the alarm has sounded, it will go off again. To turn off the system, unlock the doors with the transmitter.

Disarmed stage

The system will be disarmed when:

Folding key

- The door unlock button is pressed.
- The engine is started. (within 3 seconds)
- The ignition switch is in the “ON” position for 30 seconds or more.

Smart key

- The door unlock button is pressed.
- The button of the front outside door is pressed whilst carrying the smart key.
- The engine is started. (within 3 seconds)

After the doors are unlocked, the hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that the system is disarmed.

After pressing the unlock button, if any door (or trunk (tailgate)) is not opened within 30 seconds, the system will be rearmed.

✻ NOTICE

- **Without smart key system**
  If the system is not disarmed with the transmitter, insert the key into the ignition switch and start the engine. Then the system will be disarmed.
- **With smart key system**
  If the system is not disarmed with the smart key, open the door with the mechanical key and start the engine. Then the system will be disarmed.
- **If you lose your keys, we recommend that you consult an authorised Kia dealer.**

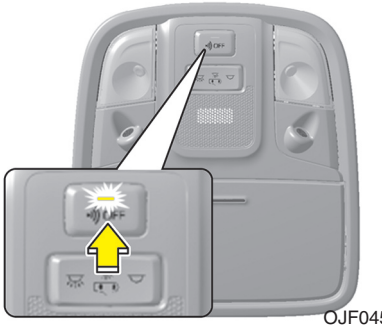
⚠ CAUTION

Do not change, alter or adjust the theft-alarm system because it could cause the theft-alarm system to malfunction and we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised Kia dealer.

Malfunctions caused by improper alterations, adjustments or modifications to the theft-alarm system are not covered by your vehicle manufacturer warranty.

Theft-alarm system (Only UK)

Intrusion/tilt sensor ON/OFF condition (if equipped)



OJF045334L

The intrusion/tilt sensor detects movement inside the vehicle and inclination of the vehicle after locking.

- To cancel the sensor operation, press the sensor ON/OFF button when the system is in the "Disarmed" stage and the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop button is in the OFF position. The button light will turn on to indicate that the sensor is deactivated.
- If you press the button again or turn the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position, the sensor will be activated again.

If the system is armed when the sensor is in the OFF status, the intrusion/tilt sensor will not operate. But, the alarm will be activated when the system meets the "intrusion/tilt sensor off condition" of "Theft alarm" stage. Refer to the follow page.

Deactivate the intrusion/tilt sensor if there are any chances the vehicle tilts by the outward influences.

For example,

- When the vehicle is transported by train, boat or trailer.
- When the vehicle is parked at a parking tower.

Otherwise, the horn may sound inadvertently.

- Make sure all windows are close whilst the sensor operates. If not, the sensor detects the inadvertent movement inside the vehicle (for example, blowing a wind or entering a butterfly) and it makes the horn sounds.
- If boxes are piled high in the vehicle, the sensor may not detect the movement behind the boxes. Also the boxes may drop and it makes the horn sounds.
- If the sensor is stained with foreign matter such as cosmetics, spray type air freshener, or spray type window cleaner, the sensor may not operate normally.

Theft-alarm stage

The alarm will be activated if any of the following occurs whilst the system is armed.

Without the intrusion/tilt sensor (or intrusion/tilt sensor off condition (if equipped))

- A front or rear door is opened without using the transmitter (or smart key).
- The trunk (tailgate) is opened without using the transmitter (or smart key).
- The engine bonnet is opened.

The horn will sound and the hazard warning lights will blink continuously for 30 seconds, unless the system is disarmed. To turn off the system, unlock the doors with the transmitter (or smart key).

Intrusion/tilt sensor on position (if equipped)

- Someone or something moves in the vehicle.
- The inclination of the vehicle is changed to the certain degree.
- A front or rear door is opened without using the transmitter (or smart key).
- The trunk (tailgate) is opened without using the transmitter (or smart key).
- The engine bonnet is opened.

The horn will sound and the hazard warning lights will blink continuously for 30 seconds, unless the system is disarmed. To turn off the system, unlock the doors with the transmitter (or smart key).

Disarmed stage

The system will be disarmed when the door unlock button is pressed.

After the doors are unlocked, the hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that the system is disarmed.

After pressing the unlock button, if any door (or trunk (tailgate)) is not opened within 30 seconds, the system will be rearmed

- If the vehicle is equipped with the remote window up/down system; the windows are also closed.

- If the system is not disarmed with the transmitter, open the door with the key and insert the key into the ignition switch, turn the ignition switch to the ON position and wait for 30 seconds. Then the system will be disarmed.
- If you lose your keys, we recommend that you consult with an authorised Kia dealer.

✻ NOTICE

Do not change, alter or adjust the theft-alarm system because it could cause the theft-alarm system to malfunction and we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised Kia dealer.
Malfunctions caused by improper alterations, adjustments or modifications to the theft-alarm system are not covered by your vehicle manufacturer's warranty.

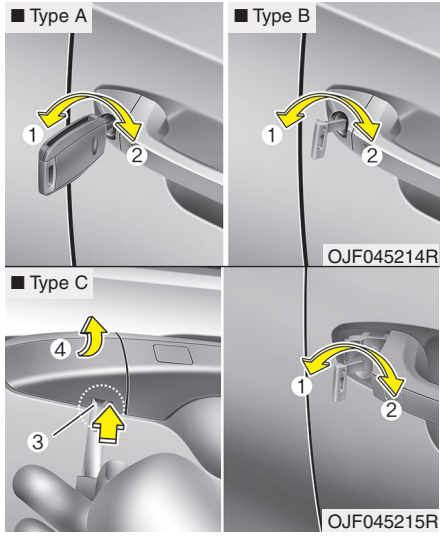
Self-diagnosis (if equipped)

If the hazard warning light blink once when you lock the doors by using the transmitter, it means the intrusion/tilt sensor is working normally.

If the hazard warning light blink and the horn sounds 3 times when you lock the doors by using the transmitter, it means the intrusion/tilt sensor is not working normally. We recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.

DOOR LOCKS

Operating door locks from outside the vehicle



To remove the cover (For Type C):

1. Pull out the door handle (4).
2. Press the lever (3) located inside the bottom part of the cover with a key or flat-head screwdriver.
3. Push out the cover whilst pressing the lever.

⚠ CAUTION

Be careful not to damage the cover whilst removing it or misplace it after removing it.

- Turn the key toward the rear of the vehicle to unlock and toward the front of the vehicle to lock.
- If you Lock(1)/Unlock(2) the driver's door with a key, all vehicle doors will lock/unlock automatically.
- Doors can also be locked and unlocked with the transmitter.
- Once the doors are unlocked, they may be opened by pulling the door handle.
- When closing the door, push the door by hand. Make sure the doors are closed securely.

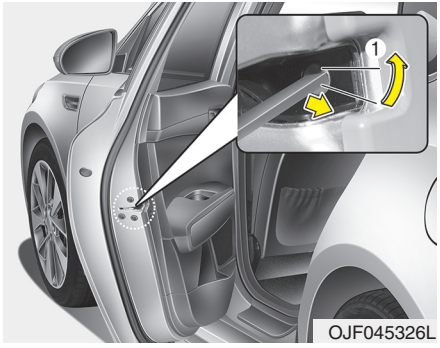
✻ NOTICE

- **In cold and wet climates, door lock and door mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.**
- **If the door is locked/unlocked multiple times in rapid succession with either the vehicle key or door lock switch, the system may stop operating temporarily in order to protect the circuit and prevent damage to system components.**

⚠ WARNING

- **If you don't close the door securely, the door may open again.**
- **Be careful that someone's body and hands are not trapped when closing the door.**

In case of an emergency



If the power door lock switch does not operate electrically, the only way to lock the door(s) is with the mechanical key from the outside key hole.

Doors without the outside key hole, you can lock the door as follows:

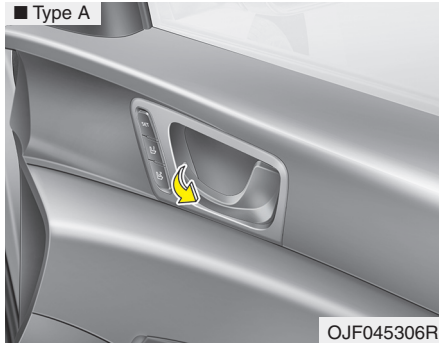
1. Open the door.
2. Insert the key into the emergency door lock hole and turn the key horizontally to lock (1).
3. Close the door securely.

✻ NOTICE

Once the trunk (tailgate) is closed when the power door lock switch does not operate electrically, you will not be able to open the trunk (tailgate).

Operating door locks from inside the vehicle

With the door lock button



Driver's door and front passanger's door

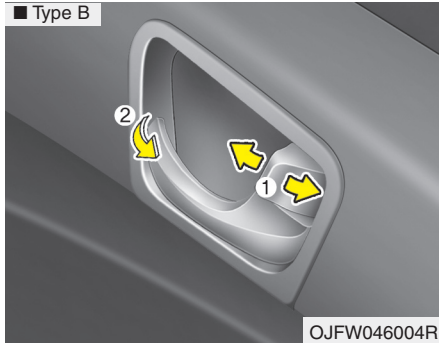
If the inner door handle is pulled when the door is locked, the door will unlock and open.

Rear door

If the inner door handle is pulled once when the door is locked, the door will unlock.

If the inner door handle is pulled once more, the door will open.

■ Type B



- To unlock a door, push the door lock button (1) to the “Unlock” position. The red mark on the button will be visible.
- To lock a door, push the door lock button (1) to the “Lock” position. If the door is locked properly, the red mark on the door lock button will not be visible.
- To open a door, pull the door handle (2) outward.
- If the inner door handle of the driver’s (or front passenger’s) door is pulled when the door lock button is in the lock position, the button will unlock and the door will open. (if equipped)
- Front doors cannot be locked if the ignition key is in the ignition switch and any front door is opened.
- Doors cannot be locked if the smart key is in the vehicle and an door is open.

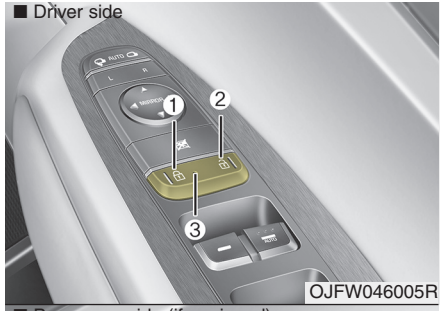
⚠ WARNING - Door lock malfunction

If a power door lock ever fails to function whilst you are in the vehicle, try one or more of the following techniques to exit:

- **Operate the door unlock feature repeatedly (both electronic and manual) whilst simultaneously pulling on the door handle.**
- **Operate the other door locks and handles, front and rear.**
- **Lower a front window and use the key to unlock the door from outside.**
- **Move to the cargo area and open the trunk (tailgate).**

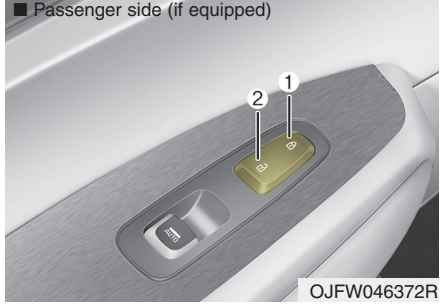
With central door lock switch

■ Driver side



OJFW046005R

■ Passenger side (if equipped)



OJFW046372R

Operate by pressing the central door lock switch.

- When pressing the right portion(1) for driver side or the upper portion(1) for passenger side (if equipped) of the switch, all vehicle doors will lock.
- When pressing the left portion(2) for driver side or the lower portion(2) for passenger side (if equipped) of the switch, all vehicle doors will unlock.
- If the key is in the ignition switch (or if the smart key is in the vehicle) and any door is opened, the doors will not lock even though the right portion(1) for driver side or upper portion(1) for passenger side (if equipped) of the central door lock switch is pressed.
- If either the front or rear door is opened by using the inside door handle, the indicator light (3) will blink (if equipped).
- If the unlock switch (2) is used to unlock the door, indicator (3) light will turn off (if equipped).

⚠ WARNING - Doors

- **The doors should always be fully closed and locked whilst the vehicle is in motion to prevent accidental opening of the door. Locked doors will also discourage potential intruders when the vehicle stops or slows down.**
- **Be careful when opening doors and watch for vehicles, motorcycles, bicycles or pedestrians approaching the vehicle in the path of the door. Opening a door when something is approaching can cause damage or injury.**

⚠ WARNING - Unlocked vehicles

Leaving your vehicle unlocked can invite theft or possible harm to you or others from someone hiding in your vehicle whilst you are gone. Always remove the ignition key, engage the parking brake, close all windows and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle unattended.

⚠ WARNING - Unattended children

An enclosed vehicle can become extremely hot, causing death or severe injury to unattended children or animals who cannot escape the vehicle. Furthermore, children might operate features of the vehicle that could injure them, or they could encounter other harm, possibly from someone gaining entry to the vehicle. Never leave children or animals unattended in your vehicle.

Deadlocks (if equipped)

Some vehicles are equipped with a deadlock system. Deadlocks prevent opening of a door from either inside or outside the vehicle once the deadlocks have been activated providing an additional measure of vehicle security.

To lock the vehicle using the deadlock function, the doors must be locked by using the transmitter or smart key. To unlock the vehicle, the transmitter or smart key must be used again.

⚠ WARNING

Do not lock the doors with the transmitter or the smart key with anybody left in the vehicle. The passenger in the vehicle cannot unlock the doors with the door lock button. For example, if the door is locked with the transmitter, the passenger in the vehicle cannot unlock the door without the transmitter.

Door lock/unlock features

Impact sensing door unlock system (if equipped)

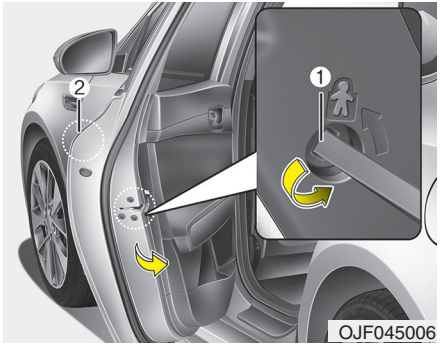
All doors will automatically unlock when an impact causes the air bags to deploy.

Speed sensing door lock system (if equipped)

All doors will automatically lock after the vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h.

You can activate or deactivate the auto door lock/unlock features in the vehicle. Refer to "User setting" in this chapter.

Child-protector rear door lock



The child safety lock is provided to help prevent children from accidentally opening the rear doors from inside the vehicle. The rear door safety locks should be used whenever children are in the vehicle.

The child safety lock is located on the edge of each rear door. When the child safety lock is in the lock position (1), the rear door will not open if the inner door handle (2) is pulled.

To lock the child safety lock, insert a key (or screwdriver) into the hole and turn it to the lock position.

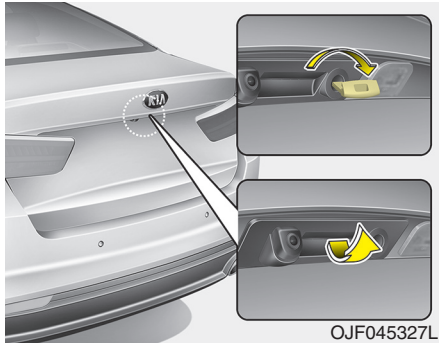
To allow a rear door to be opened from inside the vehicle, unlock the child safety lock.

⚠ WARNING - Rear door locks

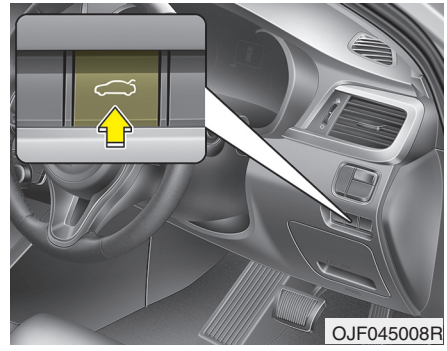
If children accidentally open the rear doors whilst the vehicle is in motion, they could fall out and be severely injured or killed. To prevent children from opening the rear doors from the inside, the rear door safety locks should be used whenever children are in the vehicle.

TRUNK (FOR SEDAN)

Opening the trunk


OJF045327L

1. Make sure the shift lever is in P (Park, for automatic transaxle/dual clutch transmission) or first gear or R (Reverse, for manual transaxle) and set the parking brake.
2. Then do one of the following :
   - Press the Remote key or Smart Key Trunk Unlock button for more than one second.
   - Press the button on the trunk itself with the Smart Key in your possession.
   - Use the mechanical key.


OJF045008R

- To open the trunk from inside the vehicle, push the trunk lid release button.

✻ NOTICE

In cold and wet climates, trunk lock and trunk mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.

⚠ WARNING

The trunk (tailgate) swings upward. Make sure no objects or people are near the rear of the vehicle when opening the trunk.

⚠ CAUTION

Make certain that you close the trunk before driving your vehicle. Possible damage may occur to the attached hardware if the trunk is not closed prior to driving.

Closing the trunk

To close, lower the trunk lid, then press down on it until it locks. To be sure the trunk lid is securely fastened, always check by trying to pull it up again.

⚠ WARNING

The trunk lid should be always kept completely closed whilst the vehicle is in motion. If it is left open or ajar, poisonous exhaust gases may enter the car and serious illness or death may result.

✻ NOTICE

If the trunk is closed with the smart key in it, the chime will sound for approximately 3 seconds and the trunk will reopen.

⚠ WARNING - Exhaust fumes

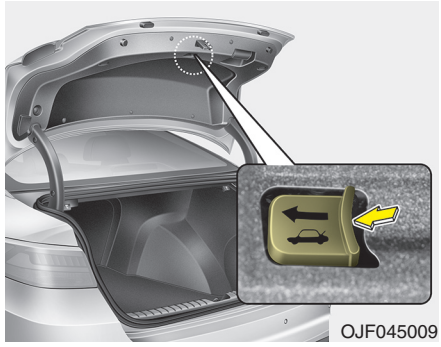
If you drive with the trunk open, you will draw dangerous exhaust fumes into your vehicle which can cause serious injury or death to vehicle occupants.

If you must drive with the trunk open, keep the air vents and all windows open so that additional outside air comes into the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING - Rear cargo area

Occupants should never ride in the rear cargo area where no restraints are available. To avoid injury in the event of an accident or sudden stops, occupants should always be properly restrained.

Emergency trunk safety release (if equipped)

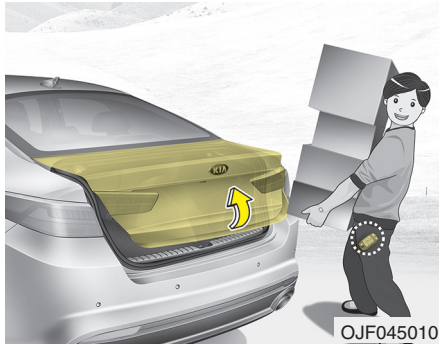

OJF045009

Your vehicle is equipped with an emergency trunk release lever located inside the trunk. If someone is inadvertently locked in the trunk, moving the handle in the direction of the arrow will release the trunk latch mechanism and open the trunk.

⚠ WARNING

- **For emergencies, be fully aware of the location of the emergency trunk safety release lever in this vehicle and how to open the trunk if you are accidentally locked in the trunk.**
- **No one should be allowed to occupy the trunk at any time. The trunk is a very dangerous location in the event of a crash.**
- **Use the release lever for emergencies only. Use extreme caution, especially whilst the vehicle is in motion.**

SMART TRUNK (FOR SEDAN, IF EQUIPPED)


OJF045010

On a vehicle equipped with a smart key, the trunk can be opened with no-touch activation using the Smart Trunk system.

How to use the Smart Trunk

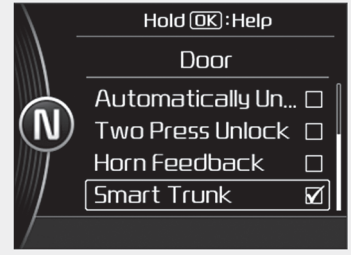
The trunk can be opened with no-touch activation satisfying all the conditions below.

- After 15 seconds when all doors are closed and locked
- Positioned in the detecting area for more than 3 seconds.

✻ NOTICE

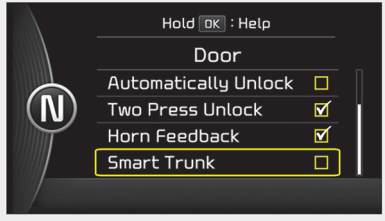
- **The Smart Trunk does not operate when:**
  - **The smart key is detected within 15 seconds after the doors are closed and locked, and is continuously detected.**
  - **The smart key is detected within 15 seconds after the doors are closed and locked, and 1.5 m from the front door handles. (for vehicles equipped with Welcome Light)**
  - **A door is not locked or closed.**
  - **The smart key is in the vehicle.**

■ Normal



OJF045282L

■ Supervision

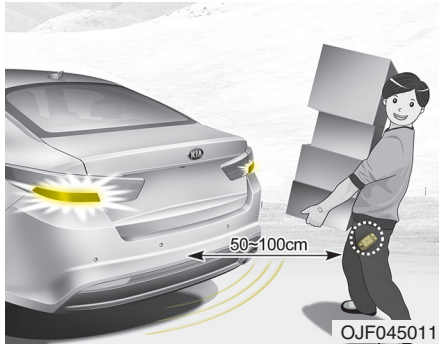


OJF045283L

1. Setting

To activate the Smart Trunk, go to User Settings Mode and select Smart Trunk on the LCD display.

For more details, refer to "LCD Display" in this chapter.

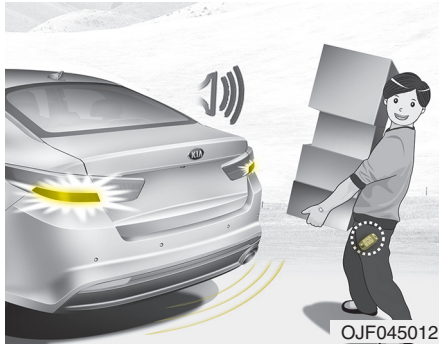


2. Detect and Alert

If you are positioned in the detecting area (50 ~100 cm behind the vehicle) carrying a smart key, the hazard warning lights will blink and chime will sound for about 3 seconds to alert you the smart key has been detected and the trunk will open.

✻ NOTICE

Do not approach the detecting area if you do not want the trunk to open. If you have unintentionally entered the detecting area and the hazard warning lights and chime starts to operate, leave the detecting area with the smart key. The trunk will stay closed.



3. Automatic opening

The hazard warning lights will blink and chime will sound 2 times and then the trunk will slowly open.

⚠ WARNING

- **Make certain that you close the trunk before driving your vehicle.**
- **Make sure there are no people or objects around the trunk-before opening or closing the trunk.**
- **Make sure objects in the rear cargo area do not come out when opening the trunk on the slope way. It may cause serious injury.**
- **Make sure to deactivate the Smart trunk function when washing your vehicle.**

  Otherwise, the trunk may open inadvertently.
- **The key should be kept out of reach of children. Children may inadvertently open the Smart Trunk whilst playing around the rear area of the vehicle.**

How to deactivate the Smart Trunk function using the smart key



OYDECO2004CN

1. Door lock
2. Door unlock
3. Trunk open

If you press any button of the smart key during the Detect and Alert stage, the Smart Trunk function will be deactivated.

Make sure to be aware of how to deactivate the Smart Trunk function for emergency situations.

✻ NOTICE

- **If you press the door unlock button (2), the Smart Trunk function will be deactivated temporarily. But, if you do not open any door for 30 seconds, the smart trunk function will be activated again.**
- **If you press the trunk open button (3) for more than 1 second, the trunk opens.**
- **If you press the door lock button (1) or trunk open button (3) when the Smart Trunk function is not in the Detect and Alert stage, the smart trunk function will not be deactivated.**
- **In case you have deactivated the Smart Trunk function by pressing the smart key button and opened a door, the smart trunk function can be activated again by closing and locking all doors.**

Detecting area



- The Smart Trunk operates with a welcome alert if the smart key is detected within 50~100 cm from the trunk.
- The alert stops at once if the smart key is positioned outside the detecting area during the Detect and Alert stage.

✻ NOTICE

- **The Smart Trunk function will not work if any of the following occurs:**
  - **The smart key is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.**
  - **The smart key is near a mobile two way radio system or a mobile phone.**
  - **Another vehicle's smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.**
- **The detecting range may decrease or increase when :**
  - **One side of the tyre is raised to replace a tyre or to inspect the vehicle.**
  - **The vehicle is slantingly parked on a slope or unpaved road, etc.**

TAILGATE

⚠ WARNING - Exhaust fumes

If you drive with the tailgate opened, you will draw dangerous exhaust fumes into your vehicle which can cause serious injury or death to vehicle occupants.

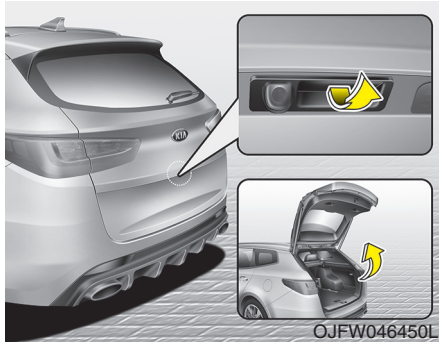
If you must drive with the tailgate opened, keep the air vents and all windows open so that additional outside air comes into the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING - Rear cargo area

Occupants should never ride in the rear cargo area where no restraints are available. To avoid injury in the event of an accident or sudden stops, occupants should always be properly restrained.

Non-power tailgate

Opening the tailgate



- The tailgate is locked or unlocked when all doors are locked or unlocked with the key, transmitter, smart key or central door lock/unlock switch.
- Only the tailgate is unlocked if the tailgate unlock button on the transmitter or smart key is pressed for approximately 1 second.
- If unlocked, the tailgate can be opened by pressing the handle and pulling it up.
- Once the tailgate is opened and then closed, the tailgate locks automatically. (All doors must be locked.)

✻ NOTICE

In cold and wet climates, door lock and door mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.

⚠ WARNING

The tailgate swings upward. Make sure no objects or people are near the rear of the vehicle when opening the tailgate.

⚠ CAUTION

Make certain that you close the tailgate before driving your vehicle. Possible damage may occur to the tailgate lift cylinders and attaching hardware if the tailgate is not closed prior to driving.

Closing the tailgate



Lower and push down the tailgate firmly. Make sure that the tailgate is securely latched.

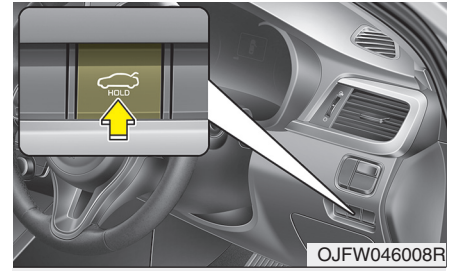
⚠ WARNING

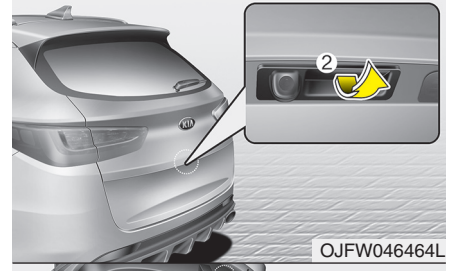
Make sure your hands, feet and other parts of your body are safely out of the way before closing the tailgate.

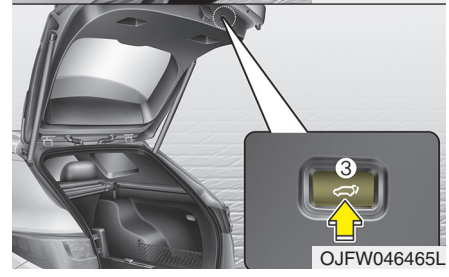
⚠ CAUTION

Make sure nothing is near the tailgate latch and striker whilst closing the tailgate. It may damage the tailgate's latch.

Power tailgate (if equipped)







(1) Power tailgate open/close button
(2) Power tailgate handle switch
(3) Power tailgate close button

✻ NOTICE

If ignition switch is ON position, the power tailgate can operate when the automatic shift lever is in P (Park) or manual shift lever is in N (Neutral).

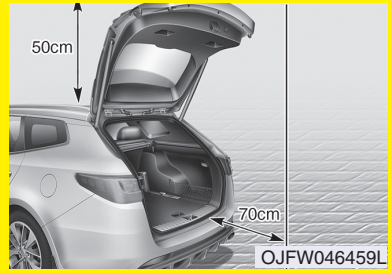
⚠ WARNING

Never leave children or animals unattended in your vehicle. Children or animals might operate the power tailgate that could result in injury to themselves or others, or damage the vehicle.

✻ NOTICE

Do not put heavy stuffs on the power tailgate when you operate the power tailgate. Additional weight on tailgate could cause damages to the system.

⚠ WARNING



Make sure that there are no people or objects in the path of the power tailgate (or smart tailgate) prior to use. Serious injury, damage to the vehicle or damage to surrounding objects may result if contact with the power tailgate (or smart tailgate) occurs.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not close or open the power tailgate manually. This may cause damage to the power tailgate. If it is necessary to close or open the power tailgate manually when the battery is discharged or disconnected, do not apply excessive force.

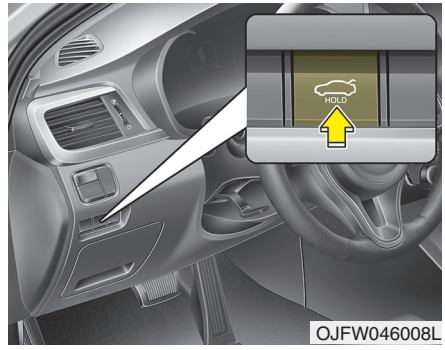
Opening the tailgate



OJFW046462L

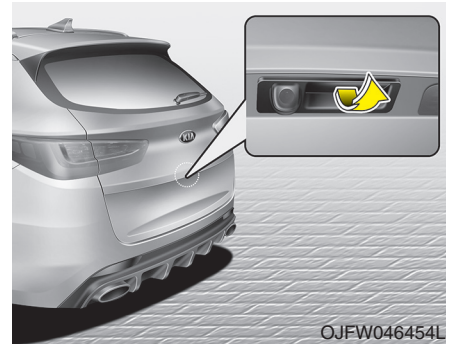
The power tailgate will open automatically by doing one of the following:

- Press the tailgate unlock button on the smart key for approximately one second.



OJFW046008L

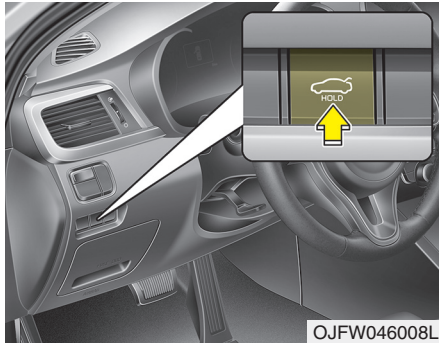
- Press the power tailgate open button for approximately one second.
- For emergency stop whilst power tailgate operating, press the power tailgate open/close button shortly.



OJFW046454L

- Press the tailgate handle switch carrying the smart key with you.

Closing the tailgate



- Press the power tailgate close button for approximately one second when the tailgate is opened.

  The tailgate will close and lock automatically.
- For emergency stop whilst power tailgate operating, press the power tailgate open/close button shortly.



- Press the power tailgate close button for approximately one second when the tailgate is opened.

  The tailgate will close and lock automatically.

Power tailgate non-opening conditions

The power tailgate will not open or close automatically, when the vehicle is moving more than 3km/h (2mph).

⚠ WARNING

The chime will sound continuously if you drive over 3km/h (2mph) with the tailgate opened. Stop your vehicle immediately at a safe place and check if your tailgate is opened.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not operate the power tailgate more than 5 times continuously.

It may damage the power tailgate system. If you operate the power tailgate more than 5 times continuously, the chime will sound 3 times and the power tailgate will not operate. At this time, stop operating the tailgate and leave it for more than 1 minute.

✻ NOTICE

- **The power tailgate can be operated when the engine is not running. However the power tailgate operation consumes large amounts of vehicle electric power. To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not operate it excessively e.g.: more than approximately 10 times repeatedly.**
- **To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the power tailgate in the open position for a long lime.**
- **Do not modify or repair any part of the power tailgate by yourself. We recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.**
- **When jacking up the vehicle to change a tyre or repair the vehicle, do not operate the power tailgate. This could cause the power tailgate to operate improperly.**
- **In cold and wet climates, the power tailgate may not work properly due to freezing conditions.**

Automatic reversal



During power opening and closing if the power tailgate is blocked by an object or part of the body, the power tailgate will detect the resistance.

- If the resistance is detected whilst opening the tailgate, it will stop and move in the opposite direction.
- If the resistance is detected whilst closing the tailgate, it will stop and move in the opposite direction.

However, if the resistance is weak such as from an object that is thin or soft, or the tailgate is near the latched position, the automatic stop and reversal may not detect the resistance.

If the automatic reversal feature operates continuously more than twice during opening or closing operation, the power tailgate may stop at that position. At this time, close the tailgate manually and operate the tailgate automatically again.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never intentionally place any object or part of your body in the path of the power tailgate to make sure the automatic reversal operates.**
- **Never operate power tailgate attached with any heavy objects (ex. Bicycles). It could damage the power tailgate.**

How to reset the power tailgate

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, or if the related fuse has been replaced or disconnected, for the power tailgate to operate normally, reset the power tailgate as follow:

1. Automatic Transaxle/Dual clutch transmission

   Put the shift lever in P (Park). Manual Transaxle :

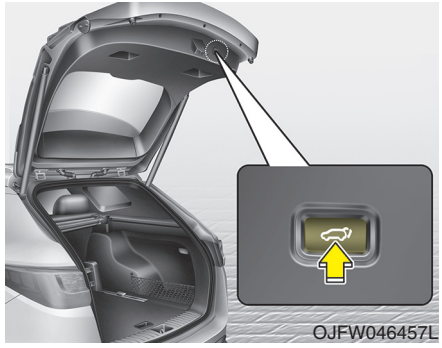
   Put the shift lever in N (Neutral).
2. Whilst Pressing the tailgate close button, press the tailgate handle switch for more than 3 seconds. (the chime will sound)
3. Close the tailgate manually.

If the power tailgate does not work properly after the above procedure, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

✻ NOTICE

If the power tailgate does not operate normally, check again if the gear position is in right position.

Power tailgate opening height user setting

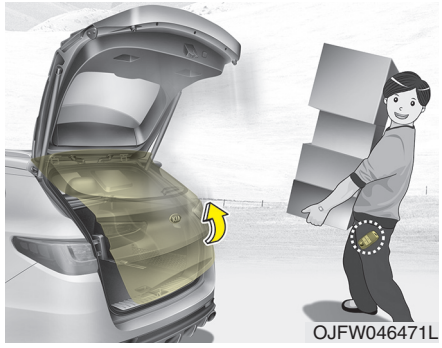

OJFW046457L

The driver may set the height of a fully opened tailgate by following the below instruction.

1. Position the tailgate manually to the height you prefer.
2. Press the tailgate close button for more than 3 seconds.
3. Close the tailgate manually after hearing the buzzer sound.

The tailgate will open to the height the driver has set up.

Smart tailgate (if equipped)


OJFW046471L

On the vehicle equipped with a smart key, the tailgate can be opened with no-touch activation using the Smart tailgate system.

How to use the Smart Tailgate

The tailgate can be opened with no-touch activation satisfying all the conditions below.

- After 15 seconds when all doors are closed and locked
- Positioned in the detecting area for more than 3 seconds.

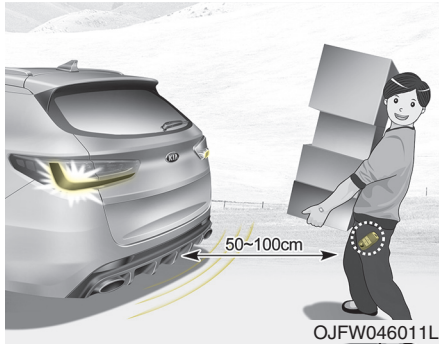
✻ NOTICE

- **The Smart Tailgate does not operate when:**
  - **The smart key is detected within 15 seconds after the doors are closed and locked, and is continuously detected.**
  - **The smart key is detected within 15 seconds after the doors are closed and locked, and 1.5 m from the front door handles. (for vehicles equipped with Welcome Light)**
  - **A door is not locked or closed.**
  - **The smart key is in the vehicle.**

1. Setting

To activate the Smart Tailgate, go to User Settings Mode and select Smart Tailgate on the LCD display.

❈ For more details, refer to "LCD Display" in this chapter.

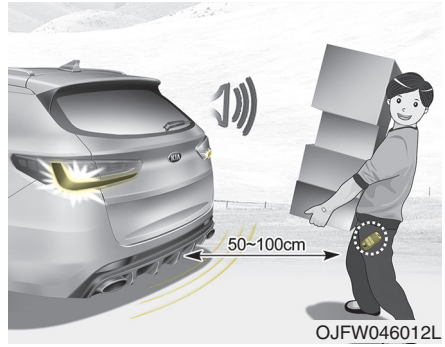


2. Detect and Alert

If you are positioned in the detecting area (50 ~100 cm behind the vehicle) carrying a smart key, the hazard warning lights will blink and chime will sound for about 3 seconds to alert you the smart key has been detected and the tailgate will open.

✻ NOTICE

Do not approach the detecting area if you do not want the tailgate to open. If you have unintentionally entered the detecting area and the hazard warning lights and chime starts to operate, leave the detecting area with the smart key. The tailgate will stay closed.



3. Automatic opening

The hazard warning lights will blink and chime will sound 2 times and then the tailgate will slowly open.

⚠ WARNING

- **Make certain that you close the tailgate before driving your vehicle.**
- **Make sure there are no people or objects around the tailgate before opening or closing the tailgate.**
- **Make sure objects in the rear cargo area do not come out when opening the tailgate on the slope way. It may cause serious injury.**
- **Make sure to deactivate the Smart tailgate function when washing your vehicle.**

  Otherwise, the tailgate may open inadvertently.
- **The key should be kept out of reach of children. Children may inadvertently open the Smart Tailgate whilst playing around the rear area of the vehicle.**

How to deactivate the Smart Tailgate function using the smart key

■ Smart key



OUM046433L

1. Door lock
2. Door unlock
3. Tailgate open

If you press any button of the smart key during the Detect and Alert stage, the Smart Tailgate function will be deactivated.

Make sure to be aware of how to deactivate the Smart Tailgate function for emergency situations.

✻ NOTICE

- **If you press the door unlock button (2), the Smart Tailgate function will be deactivated temporarily. But, if you do not open any door for 30 seconds, the Smart Tailgate function will be activated again.**
- **If you press the tailgate open button (3) for more than 1 second, the tailgate opens.**
- **If you press the door lock button (1) or tailgate open button (3) when the Smart Tailgate function is not in the Detect and Alert stage, the Smart Tailgate function will not be deactivated.**
- **In case you have deactivated the Smart Tailgate function by pressing the smart key button and opened a door, the Smart Tailgate function can be activated again by closing and locking all doors.**

Detecting area



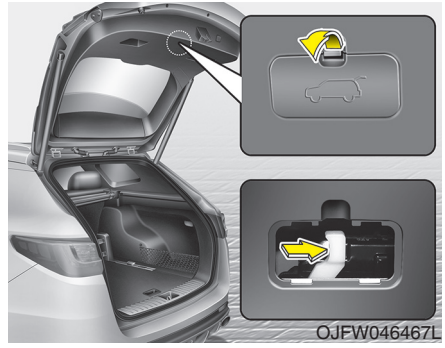
OJFW046469L

- The Smart Tailgate operates with a welcome alert if the smart key is detected within 50~100 cm from the tailgate.
- The alert stops at once if the smart key is positioned outside the detecting area during the Detect and Alert stage.

✻ NOTICE

- **The Smart Tailgate function will not work if any of the following occurs:**
  - **The smart key is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.**
  - **The smart key is near a mobile two way radio system or a mobile phone.**
  - **Another vehicle's smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.**
- **The detecting range may decrease or increase when :**
  - **One side of the tyre is raised to replace a tyre or to inspect the vehicle.**
  - **The vehicle is slantingly parked on a slope or unpaved road, etc.**

Emergency tailgate safety release



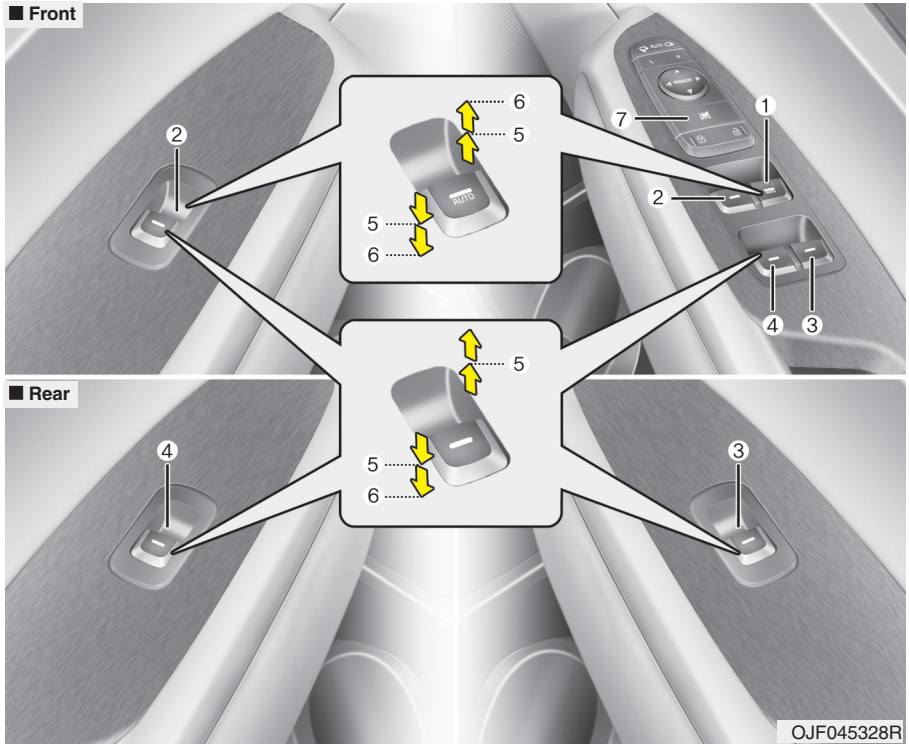
Your vehicle is equipped with the emergency tailgate safety release lever located on the bottom of the tailgate. When someone is inadvertently locked in the luggage compartment. The tailgate can be opened by doing as follows:

1. Remove the cover.
2. Push the release lever to the right.
3. Push up the tailgate.

⚠ WARNING

- **For emergencies, be fully aware of the location of the emergency tailgate safety release lever in the vehicle and how to open the tailgate if you are accidentally locked in the luggage compartment.**
- **No one should be allowed to occupy the luggage compartment of the vehicle at any time. The luggage compartment is a very dangerous location in the event of a crash.**
- **Use the release lever for emergencies only. Use with extreme caution, especially whilst the vehicle is in motion.**

WINDOWS



(1) Driver's door power window switch
(2) Front passenger's door power window switch
(3) Rear door (right) power window switch
(4) Rear door (left) power window switch
(5) Window opening and closing*
(6) Automatic power window up*/ down*
(7) Power window lock button

* if equipped

✻ NOTICE

In cold and wet climates, power windows may not work properly due to freezing conditions.

Power windows

The ignition switch must be in the ON position for power windows to operate.

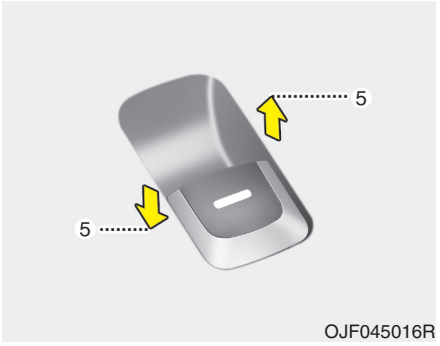
Each door has a power window switch that controls the door's window. The driver has a power window lock button which can block the operation of passenger windows. The power windows can be operated for approximately 30 seconds after the ignition key is removed or turned to the ACC or LOCK position. However, if the front doors are opened, the power windows cannot be operated even within the 30 second period.

The driver's door has a master power window switch that controls all the windows in the vehicle.

✻ NOTICE

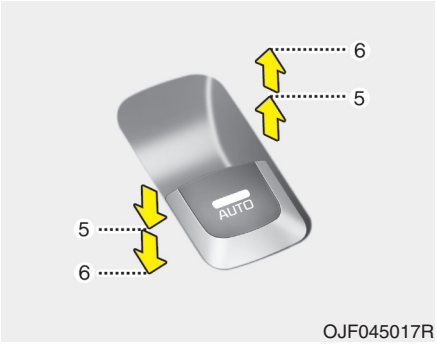
Whilst driving with the rear windows down or with the sunroof (if equipped) in an open (or partially open position), your vehicle may demonstrate a wind buffeting or pulsation noise. This noise is a normal occurrence and can be reduced or eliminated by taking the following actions. If the noise occurs with one or both of the rear windows down, partially lower both front windows approximately one inch. If you experience the noise with the sunroof open, slightly reduce the size of the sunroof opening.

Window opening and closing



Type A

To open or close a window, press down or pull up the front portion of the corresponding switch to the first detent position (5).

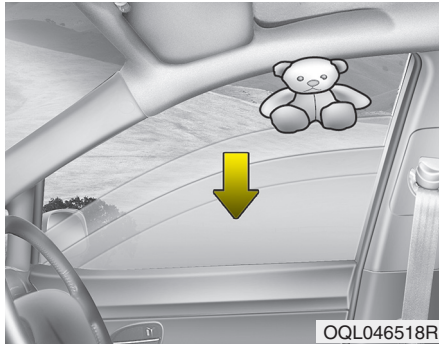


Type B - Auto up/down window (if equipped)

Pressing or pulling up the power window switch momentarily to the second detent position (6) completely lowers or raises the window even when the switch is released. To stop the window at the desired position whilst the window is in operation, pull up or press down and release the switch.

If the power window does not operate normally, the automatic power window system must be reset as follows:

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
2. Close the window and continue pulling up the power window switch for at least 1 second after the window is completely closed.



Automatic reversal (For Type B)

If the upward movement of the window is blocked by an object or part of the body, the window will detect the resistance and will stop upward movement. The window will then lower approximately 30 cm (11.8 in.) to allow the object to be cleared.

If the window detects the resistance whilst the power window switch is pulled up continuously, the window will stop upward movement then lower approximately 2.5 cm (1 in.).

And if the power window switch is pulled up continuously again within 5 seconds after the window is lowered by the automatic window reversal feature, the automatic window reversal will not operate.

✻ NOTICE

The automatic reverse feature for the window is only active when the "auto up" feature is used by fully pulling up the switch. The automatic reverse feature will not operate if the window is raised using the halfway position on the power window switch.

⚠ WARNING

Always check for obstructions before raising any window to avoid injuries or vehicle damage. If an object less than 4 mm (0.16 in.) in diameter is caught between the window glass and the upper window channel, the automatic reverse window may not detect the resistance and will not stop and reverse direction.

Power window lock button



The driver can disable the power window switches on the rear passengers' doors by pressing the power window lock button to the lock position (pressed).

When the power window lock button is pressed :

- The driver's master control can operate the front passenger's power window but cannot operate the rear passengers' power windows.
- The front passenger's control can operate the front passenger's power window.
- The rear passengers' control cannot operate the rear passenger's power window.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***To prevent possible damage to the power window system, do not open or close two windows or more at the same time. This will also ensure the longevity of the fuse.***
- ***Never try to operate the main switch on the driver's door and the individual door window switch in opposite directions at the same time. If this is done, the window will stop and cannot be opened or closed.***

⚠ WARNING - Windows

- **NEVER leave the keys in your vehicle with unsupervised children, when the engine is running.**
- **NEVER leave any child unattended in the vehicle. Even very young children may inadvertently cause the vehicle to move, entangle themselves in the windows, or otherwise injure themselves or others.**
- **Always double check to make sure all arms, hands, head and other obstructions are safely out of the way before closing a window.**

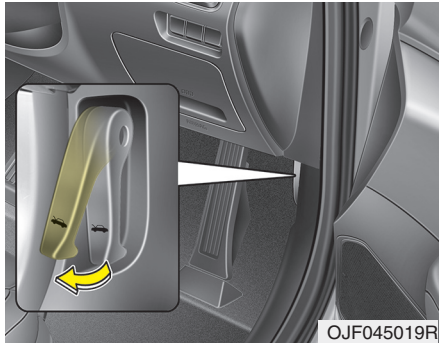
(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Do not allow children play with the power windows. Keep the driver's door power window lock button in the LOCK position (pressed). Serious injury can result from unintentional window operation by the child.**
- **Do not extend heads or any limbs outside the window whilst the vehicle is in motion.**

BONNET

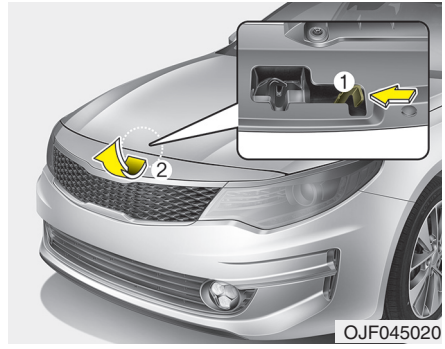
Opening the bonnet



1. Pull the release lever to unlatch the bonnet. The bonnet should pop open slightly.

⚠ WARNING

Open the bonnet after turning off the engine on a flat surface, shifting the shift lever to the P(Park) position for automatic transaxle/dual clutch transmission and to the 1st(First) gear or R(Reverse) for manual transaxle, and setting the parking brake.



2. Go to the front of the vehicle, raise the bonnet slightly, push the secondary latch (1) left side and lift the bonnet (2).
3. Raise the bonnet. It will completely rise by itself after it has been raised about halfway.

Closing the bonnet

1. Before closing the bonnet, check the following:
   - All filler caps in the engine compartment must be correctly installed.
   - Gloves, rags or any other combustible material must be removed from the engine compartment.
2. Lower the bonnet halfway and push down to securely lock in place.

⚠ WARNING

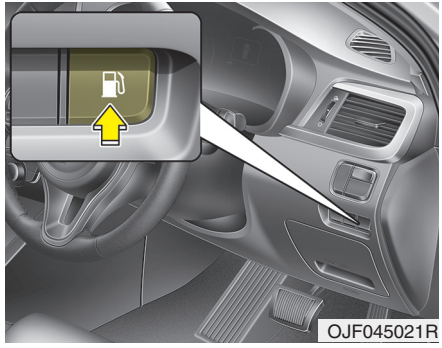
- **Before closing the bonnet, ensure that all obstructions are removed from the bonnet opening. Closing the bonnet with an obstruction present in the bonnet opening may result in property damage or severe personal injury.**
- **Do not leave gloves, rags or any other combustible material in the engine compartment. Doing so may cause a heat-induced fire.**

⚠ WARNING

- **Always double check to be sure that the bonnet is firmly latched before driving away. If it is not latched, the bonnet could open whilst the vehicle is being driven, causing total loss of visibility, which might result in an accident.**
- **Do not move the vehicle with the bonnet raised. The view will be blocked and the bonnet could fall or be damaged.**

FUEL FILLER LID

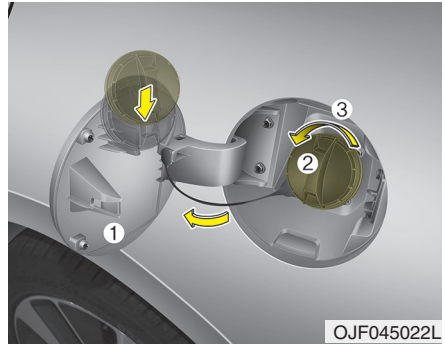
Opening the fuel filler lid



The fuel filler lid must be opened from inside the vehicle by pushing the fuel filler lid button.

✻ NOTICE

If the fuel filler lid does not open because ice has formed around it, tap lightly or push on the lid to break the ice and release the lid. Do not pry on the lid. If necessary, spray around the lid with an approved de-icer fluid (do not use radiator anti-freeze) or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.



1. Stop the engine.
2. To open the fuel filler lid, push the fuel filler lid opener button.
3. Pull open the fuel filler lid (1).
4. To remove the cap, turn the fuel filler cap (2) counterclockwise (3).
5. Refuel as needed.

Closing the fuel filler lid

1. To install the cap, turn it clockwise until it “clicks”. This indicates that the cap is securely tightened.
2. Close the fuel filler lid and push it lightly and make sure that it is securely closed.

⚠ WARNING - Refuelling

- **If pressurized fuel sprays out, it can cover your clothes or skin and subject you to the risk of fire and burns. Always remove the fuel cap carefully and slowly. If the cap is venting fuel or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until the condition stops before completely removing the cap.**
- **Do not "top off" after the nozzle automatically shuts off when refuelling.**
- **Always check that the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.**

⚠ WARNING - Refuelling dangers

Automotive fuels are flammable materials. When refuelling, please note the following guidelines carefully. Failure to follow these guidelines may result in severe personal injury, severe burns or death by fire or explosion.

- **Read and follow all warning posted at the gas station facility.**
- **Before refuelling note the location of the Emergency Petrol Shut-Off, if available, at the gas station facility.**
- **Before touching the fuel nozzle, you should eliminate potentially dangerous static electricity discharge by touching another metal part of the vehicle, a safe distance away from the fuel filler neck, nozzle, or other gas source.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Do not get back into a vehicle once you have begun refuelling since you can generate static electricity by touching, rubbing or sliding against any item or fabric (polyester, satin, nylon, etc.) capable of producing static electricity. Static electricity discharge can ignite fuel vapours resulting in rapid burning. If you must re-enter the vehicle, you should once again eliminate potentially dangerous static electricity discharge by touching a metal part of the vehicle, away from the fuel filler neck, nozzle or other petrol source.**
- **When using an approved portable fuel container, be sure to place the container on the ground prior to refuelling. Static electricity discharge from the container can ignite fuel vapours causing a fire.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

Once refuelling has begun, contact with the vehicle should be maintained until the filling is complete.

Use only approved portable plastic fuel containers designed to carry and store petrol.

- **Do not use mobile phones whilst refuelling. Electric current and/or electronic interference from mobile phones can potentially ignite fuel vapours causing a fire.**
- **When refuelling, always shut the engine off. Sparks produced by electrical components related to the engine can ignite fuel vapours causing a fire. Once refuelling is complete, check to make sure the filler cap and filler door are securely closed, before starting the engine.**

(Continued)

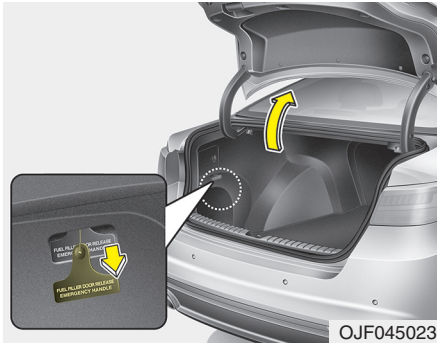
(Continued)

- **DO NOT use matches or a lighter and DO NOT SMOKE or leave a lit cigarette in your vehicle whilst at a gas station especially during refuelling. Automotive fuel is highly flammable and can, when ignited, result in fire.**
- **If a fire breaks out during refuelling, leave the vicinity of the vehicle, and immediately contact the manager of the gas station and then contact the local fire department. Follow any safety instructions they provide.**

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Make sure to refuel your vehicle according to the "Fuel requirements" suggested in chapter 1.***
- ***If the fuel filler cap requires replacement, please make sure that you use parts designed for replacement in your vehicle. An incorrect fuel filler cap can result in a serious malfunction of the fuel system or emission control system. For more detailed information, we recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.***
- ***Do not spill fuel on the exterior surfaces of the vehicle. Any type of fuel spilled on painted surfaces may damage the paint.***
- ***After refuelling, make sure the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.***

Emergency fuel filler lid release



If the fuel filler lid does not open using the remote fuel filler lid release, you can open it manually. Remove the panel in the cargo area. Pull the handle out slightly.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not pull the handle excessively, otherwise the luggage compartment area trim or release handle may be damaged.

PANORAMA SUNROOF (IF EQUIPPED)


OJF045024

If your vehicle is equipped with a sunroof, you can slide or tilt your sunroof with the sunroof control lever located on the overhead console.

The sunroof can be operated for approximately 30 seconds after the ignition key is removed or turned to the ACC or LOCK position. However, if the front doors are opened, the sunroof cannot be opened even within the 30 seconds period.

- In cold and wet climates, the sunroof may not work properly due to freezing conditions.
- After the vehicle is washed or in a rainstorm, be sure to wipe off any water that is on the sunroof before operating it.

⚠ CAUTION - Sunroof control lever

Do not continue to move the sunroof control lever after the sunroof is fully opened, closed, or tilted. Damage to the motor or system components could occur.

⚠ CAUTION

Make sure the sunroof is fully closed when leaving your vehicle. If the sunroof is opened, rain or snow may leak through the sunroof and wet the interior as well as cause theft.

⚠ WARNING - Sunroof break

The sunroof, which is made of glass, may break if the sufficient impact is applied. In this case, in an accident, any improperly-belted occupant may be tossed out of the vehicle through the sunroof, possibly resulting injury. To minimise all the possible accident risk, all occupants must be properly belted and, in case of a child, be fastened in a proper child restraint.

Sunroof open warning



OJF045216L

If the driver removes the ignition key (smart key: turns off the engine) when the sunroof is not fully closed, the warning chime will sound for approximately 7 seconds and a message will appear on the LCD display.

Close the sunroof securely when leaving your vehicle.

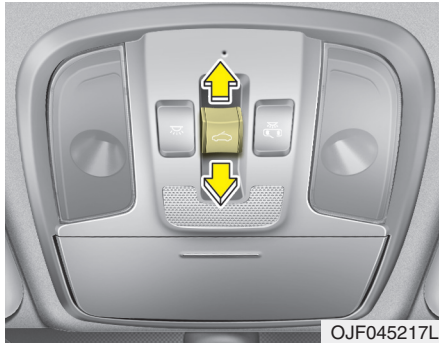
⚠ WARNING

- **Never adjust the sunroof or sunshade whilst driving. This could result in loss of control and an accident that may cause death, serious injury, or property damage.**
- **If you would like to carry items on the roof using a cross bar, do not operate the sunroof.**
- **When carrying cargo on the roof, do not load heavy items above the sunroof or glass roof.**
- **Do not allow children to operate the sunroof.**

⚠ CAUTION

Do not extend any luggage out side the sunroof whilst driving.

Sunshade



OJF045217L

To open the sunshade

Pull the sunroof control lever backward to the 1st detent position.

To close the sunshade when the sunroof glass is closed

Push the sunroof control lever forward or pull it down to the 1st detent position.

To stop the sliding at any point, press the sunshade control switch momentarily.

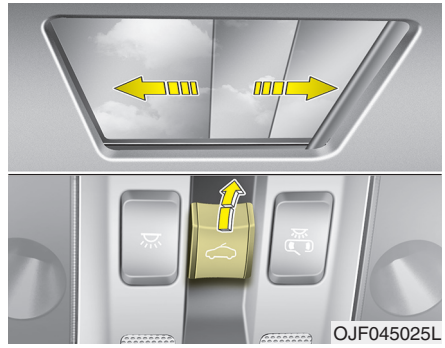
✻ NOTICE

Wrinkles formed on the sunshade as material characteristic are normal.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not pull or push the sunshade by hand. It could cause sunshade failure.***
- ***Close the sunroof when driving through dusty roads. Dust may cause a malfunction of the vehicle system.***

Sliding the sunroof



When the sunshade is closed

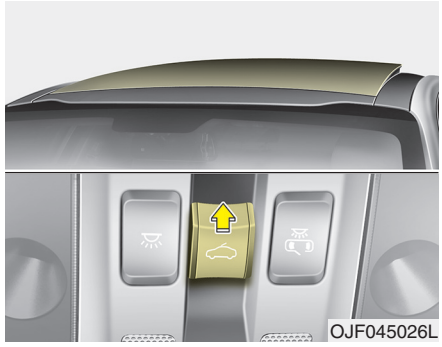
Pull the sunroof control lever backward to the 2nd detent position, the sunshade and sunroof glass will slide all the way open. To stop the sunroof movement at any point, push the sunroof control lever momentarily.

When the sunshade is opened

Pull the sunroof control lever backward to the 1st or 2nd detent position, the sunroof glass will slide all the way open. To stop the sunroof movement at any point, push the sunroof control lever momentarily.

❊ The front part of the sunroof glass can only be opened and closed.

Tilting the sunroof


OJF045026L

When the sunshade is closed

Push the sunroof control lever upward, the sunshade will slide halfway open then the sunroof glass will tilt.

To stop the sunroof movement at any point, push the sunroof control lever momentarily.

When the sunshade is opened

Push the sunroof control lever upward, the sunroof glass will tilt.

To stop the sunroof movement at any point, push the sunroof control lever momentarily.

Closing the sunroof

To close the sunroof glass with the sunshade

Push the sunroof control lever forward or downward to the 2nd detent position. The sunroof glass and sunshade will close automatically.

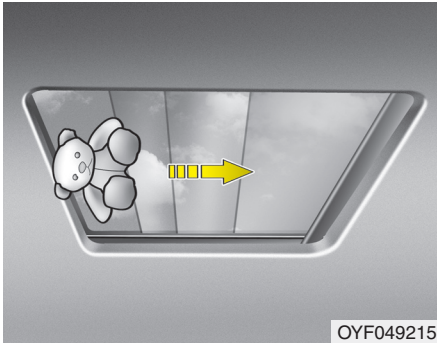
To stop the sunroof movement at any point, push the sunroof control lever momentarily.

To close the sunroof glass only

Push the sunroof control lever forward. The sunroof glass will close automatically.

To stop the sunroof movement at any point, push the sunroof control lever momentarily.

Automatic reversal


OYF049215

If an object or part of the body is detected whilst the sunroof glass or sunshade is closing automatically, it will reverse the direction, and then stop.

The auto reverse function does not work if a tiny obstacle is between the sliding glass or sunshade and the sunroof sash. You should always check that all passengers and objects are away from the sunroof before closing it.

⚠ WARNING - Sunroof

- **Be careful that no head, hands and body parts are obstructed by a closing sunroof.**
- **Do not extend the face, neck, arms or body outside the sunroof whilst driving.**
- **Make sure your hands and head are safely out of the way before closing a sunroof.**
- **A panorama sunroof is made of glass, therefore it may break in an accident. If you do not have your seat belt on, you may stick out of the broken glass and get injured or killed. For all passengers safety, have an appropriate protection on. (ex. seat belt, CRS, etc.)**

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Periodically remove any dirt that may accumulate on the guide rail.***
- ***If you drive with the sunroof opened right after a car wash or rain, water may get inside the vehicle.***

⚠ CAUTION - Sunroof motor damage

If you try to open the sunroof when the temperature is below freezing or when the sunroof is covered with snow or ice, the glass or the motor could be damaged.

Resetting the sunroof

Whenever the vehicle battery is disconnected or discharged, you must reset your sunroof system as follows:

1. Start the engine.
2. Close the sunshade and sunroof completely if opened.
3. Release the sunroof control lever.
4. Push the sunroof control lever forward in the direction of close (about 10 seconds) until the sunshade slightly moves. Then, release the lever.
5. Push the sunroof control lever forward in the direction of close, until the sunroof operates as follows again:

   Sunshade Open → Glass Tilt Open → Glass Slide Open → Glass Slide Close → Sunshade Close

   Then, release the lever.

When this is complete, the sunroof system has been reset.

✻ NOTICE

If you do not reset the sunroof, it may not work properly.

STEERING WHEEL

Electric power steering

Power steering uses the motor to assist you in steering the vehicle. If the engine is off or if the power steering system becomes inoperative, the vehicle may still be steered, but it will require increased steering effort.

The motor driven power steering is controlled by the power steering control unit which senses the steering wheel torque and vehicle speed to command the motor.

The steering effort becomes heavier as the vehicle's speed increases and becomes lighter as the vehicle's speed decreases for better control of the steering wheel.

Should you notice any change in the effort required to steer during normal vehicle operation, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

✻ NOTICE

The following symptoms may occur during normal vehicle operation:

- **The EPS warning light does not illuminate.**
- **The steering effort is high immediately after turning the ignition switch on. This happens as the EPS system performs the diagnostics. When the diagnostics is completed, the steering effort will return to its normal condition.**
- **A click noise may be heard from the EPS relay after the ignition switch is turned to the ON or LOCK position.**
- **Motor noise may be heard when the vehicle is at a stop or at a low driving speed.**
- **The steering effort can suddenly increase, if the operation of the EPS system is stopped to prevent serious accidents when EPS control unit detects malfunction of the EPS system by self-diagnosis.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **The steering effort increases if the steering wheel is rotated continuously when the vehicle is not in motion. However, after a few minutes, it will return to its normal conditions.**
- **If the Electronic Power Steering System does not operate normally, the warning light will illuminate on the instrument cluster. The steering wheel may become difficult to control or operate abnormally. We recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.**
- **When you operate the steering wheel in low temperature, abnormal noise could occur. If temperature rises, the noise will disappear. This is a normal condition.**

Tilt & telescopic steering

A tilt and telescopic steering wheel allows you to adjust the steering wheel before you drive. You can also raise it to give your legs more room when you exit and enter the vehicle.

The steering wheel should be positioned so that it is comfortable for you to drive, whilst permitting you to see the instrument panel warning lights and gauges.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never adjust the angle of the steering wheel whilst driving. You may lose steering control and cause severe personal injury, death or accidents.**
- **After adjusting, push the steering wheel both up and down to be certain it is locked in position.**

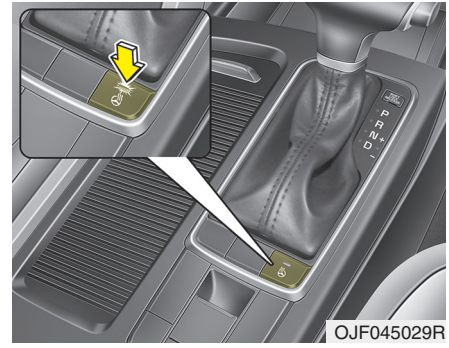


To change the steering wheel angle, pull down the lock release lever (1), adjust the steering wheel to the desired angle (2) and height (3), then pull up the lock-release lever (4) to lock the steering wheel in place. Be sure to adjust the steering wheel to the desired position before driving.

✻ NOTICE

After adjustment, sometimes the lock-release lever may not lock the steering wheel.
It is not a malfunction. This occurs when two gears engage. In this case, adjust the steering wheel again and then lock the steering wheel.

Heated steering wheel (if equipped)



With the ignition switch in the ON position, pressing the heated steering wheel button warms the steering wheel. The indicator on the button will illuminate.

To turn the heated steering wheel off, press the button once again. The indicator on the button will turn off.

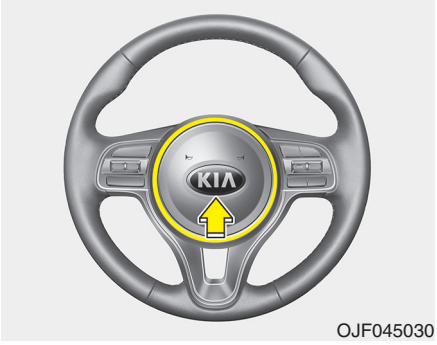
✻ NOTICE

The heated steering wheel will turn off automatically approximately 30 minutes after the heated steering wheel is turned on.
If you turn off the ignition within 30 minutes after pressing the steering wheel heater button, from next ignition ON, the heater will be off.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not install any grip to operate the steering wheel. This causes damage to the heated steering wheel system.

Horn



OJF045030

To sound the horn, press the area indicated by the horn symbol on your steering wheel (see illustration). The horn will operate only when this area is pressed. Check the horn regularly to be sure it operates properly.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not strike the horn severely to operate it, or hit it with your fist. Do not press on the horn with a sharp-pointed object.***
- ***When cleaning the steering wheel, do not use an organic solvent such as thinner, benzene, alcohole and petrol. Doing so may damage the steering wheel.***

MIRRORS

Inside rearview mirror

Adjust the rearview mirror so that the centre view through the rear window is seen. Make this adjustment before you start driving.

⚠ WARNING - Rear visibility

Do not place objects in the rear seat or cargo area which would interfere with your vision through the rear window.

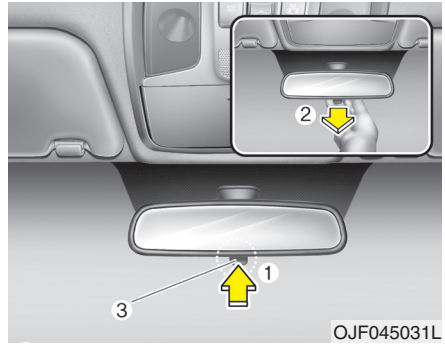
⚠ WARNING

Do not adjust the rearview mirror whilst the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident which could cause death, serious injury or property damage.

⚠ WARNING

Do not modify the inside mirror and don't install a wide mirror. It could result in injury, during an accident or deployment of the air bag.

Day/night rearview mirror (if equipped)



Make this adjustment before you start driving and whilst the day/night lever (3) is in the day position.

Pull the day/night lever (3) toward you to reduce the glare from the headlights of the vehicles behind you during night driving.

Remember that you lose some rearview clarity in the night position.

❈ (1) : Day, (2) : Night

Electrochromic mirror (ECM) (if equipped)

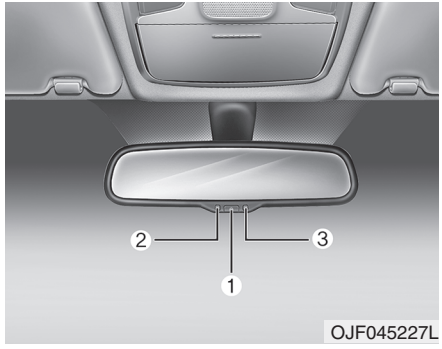
The electric rearview mirror automatically controls the glare from the headlights of the vehicles behind you in nighttime or low light driving conditions. The sensor mounted in the mirror senses the light level around the vehicle, and automatically controls the headlight glare from the vehicles behind you.

When the engine is running, the glare is automatically controlled by the sensor mounted in the rearview mirror.

Whenever the shift lever is shifted into reverse (R), the mirror will automatically go to the brightest setting in order to improve the drivers view behind the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

When cleaning the mirror, use a paper towel or similar material dampened with glass cleaner. Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror. It may cause the liquid cleaner to enter the mirror housing.



To operate the electric rearview mirror:

- The mirror defaults to the ON position whenever the ignition switch is turned on.
- Press the ON/OFF button (1) to turn the automatic dimming function off. The mirror indicator light (2) will turn off.

  Press the ON/OFF button (1) to turn the automatic dimming function on. The mirror indicator light (2) will illuminate.

✻(2) : Indicator, (3) : Sensor

Outside rearview mirror

Be sure to adjust the mirror angles before driving.

Your vehicle is equipped with both left-hand and right-hand outside rearview mirrors. The mirrors can be adjusted remotely with the remote switch. The mirror heads can be folded back to prevent damage during an automatic car wash or when passing through a narrow street.

⚠ WARNING - Rearview mirrors

- **The outside rearview mirror is convex. Objects seen in the mirror are closer than they appear.**
- **Use your interior rearview mirror or direct observation to determine the actual distance of following vehicles when changing lanes.**

⚠ CAUTION

Do not scrape ice off the mirror face; this may damage the surface of the glass. If ice should restrict the movement of the mirror, do not force the mirror for adjustment. To remove ice, use a deicer spray, or a sponge or soft cloth with warm water.

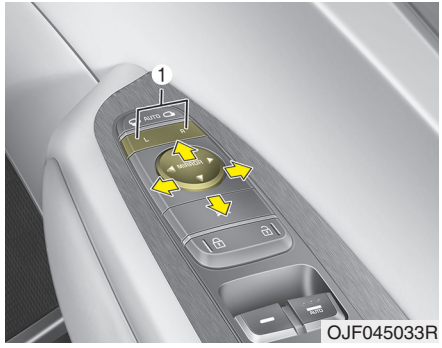
⚠ CAUTION

If the mirror is jammed with ice, do not adjust the mirror by force. Use an approved spray de-icer (not radiator antifreeze) to release the frozen mechanism or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.

⚠ WARNING

Do not adjust or fold the outside rearview mirrors whilst the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident which could cause death, serious injury or property damage.

Remote control



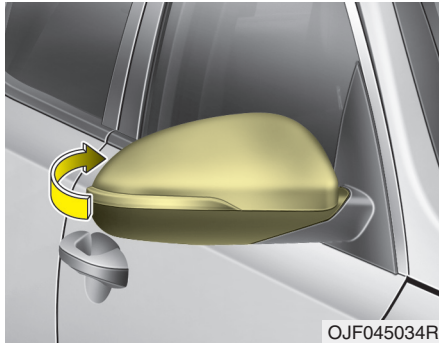
The electric remote control mirror switch allows you to adjust the position of the left and right outside rearview mirrors. To adjust the position of either mirror, press the R or L button (1) to select the right side mirror or the left side mirror, then press a corresponding point (▲) on the mirror adjustment control to position the selected mirror up, down, left or right.

After adjustment, press the R or L button again to prevent the inadvertent adjustment.

⚠ CAUTION

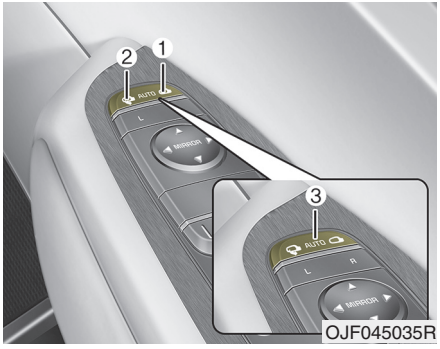
- ***The mirrors stop moving when they reach the maximum adjusting angles, but the motor continues to operate whilst the switch is pressed. Do not press the switch longer than necessary, the motor may be damaged.***
- ***Do not attempt to adjust the outside rearview mirror by hand. Doing so may damage the parts.***

Folding the outside rearview mirror



Manual type

To fold the outside rearview mirror, grasp the housing of the mirror and then fold it toward the rear of the vehicle.



Electric type

The outside rearview mirror can be folded or unfolded by pressing the switch as below.

Left (1) : The mirror will unfold.

Right (2) : The mirror will fold.

Centre (AUTO, 3) :

The mirror will fold or unfold automatically as follows:

- Without smart key system
  - The mirror will fold or unfold when the door is locked or unlocked by the transmitter.
- With smart key system
  - The mirror will fold or unfold when the door is locked or unlocked by the smart key.
  - The mirror will fold or unfold when the door is locked or unlocked by the button on the outside door handle.
  - The mirror will unfold when you approach the vehicle (all doors closed and locked) with a smart key in possession. (if equipped)

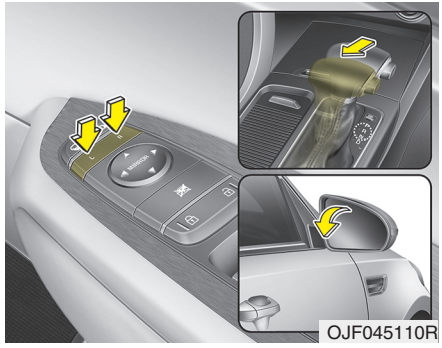
⚠ CAUTION

The electric type outside rearview mirror operates even though the ignition switch is in the LOCK position. However, to prevent unnecessary battery discharge, do not adjust the mirrors longer than necessary whilst the engine is not running.

⚠ CAUTION

In case it is an electric type outside rearview mirror, don't fold it by hand. It could cause motor failure.

Reverse parking aid function (if equipped)



When you shift the shift lever to the R (Reverse) position, the outside rearview mirror(s) will move downward to aid reverse parking. According to the position of the outside rearview mirror switch, the outside rearview mirror(s) will operate as follows:

Left or Right

When the remote control outside rearview mirror switch is in the left or right position, both outside rearview mirrors will move downward.

Neutral

When neither switch is selected, the outside rearview mirrors will not move.

The outside rearview mirrors will automatically revert to their original positions under the following conditions:

1. The ignition switch is changed to ACC or OFF position
2. The shift lever is moved to any position except R (Reverse).
3. The remote control outside rearview mirror switch is not selected.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

■ **Type A**



■ **Type B**



1. Tachometer
2. Speedometer
3. Engine coolant temperature gauge
4. Fuel gauge
5. Warning and indicator lights
6. LCD display

❈ The actual cluster in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.
For more details, refer to the "Gauges" in this chapter.

OJF045100L/OJF045101L

■ **Type C**



■ **Type D**



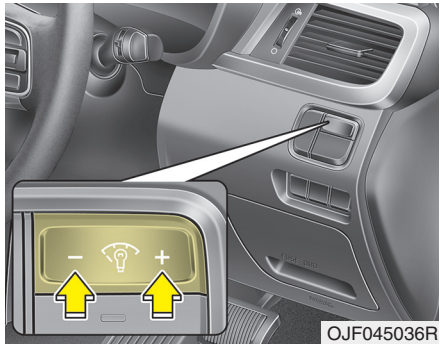
1. Tachometer
2. Speedometer
3. Engine coolant temperature gauge
4. Fuel gauge
5. Warning and indicator lights
6. LCD display

❈ The actual cluster in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.
For more details, refer to the "Gauges" in this chapter.

OJF045361L/OJF045362L

Instrument Cluster Control

Adjusting Instrument Cluster Illumination (if equipped)



⚠ WARNING

Never adjust the instrument cluster whilst driving. This could result in loss of control and lead to an accident that may cause death, serious injury, or property damage.

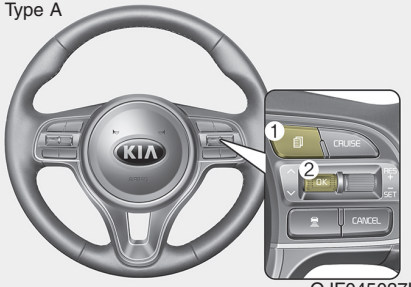
The brightness of the instrument panel illumination is changed by pressing the illumination control button ("+" or "-") when the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop button is ON, or the tail lights are turned on.



- If you hold the illumination control button ("+" or "-"), the brightness will be changed continuously.
- If the brightness reaches to the maximum or minimum level, an alarm will sound.

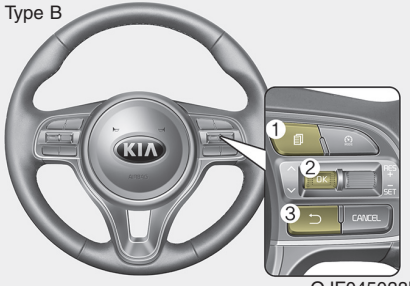
LCD Display Control

■ Type A



OJF045037L

■ Type B



OJF045038L

The LCD display modes can be changed by using the control buttons on the steering wheel.

[Type A]

(1) 🗐 : MODE button for changing modes

(2) ∧/∨/OK : SELECT scroll switch for setting the selected item and RESET scroll switch for resetting items

[Type B]

(1) 🗐 : MODE button for changing modes

(2) ∧/∨/OK : SELECT scroll switch for setting the selected item and RESET scroll switch for resetting items

(3) ⮌ : RETURN button for move the previous mode or item (if equipped)

❇ For the LCD modes, refer to “LCD Display” in this chapter.

Gauges

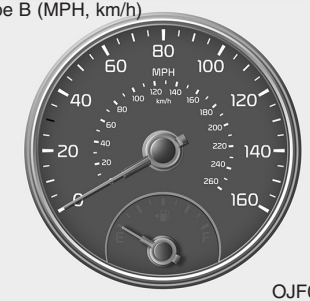
Speedometer

■ Type A (km/h)



OJF045102

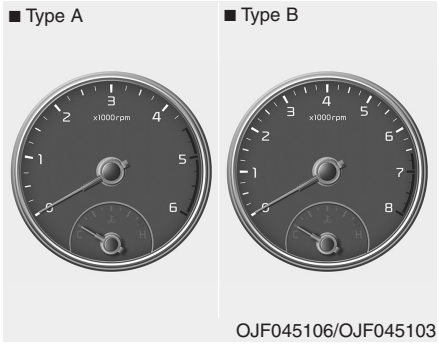
■ Type B (MPH, km/h)



OJF045102L

The speedometer indicates the speed of the vehicle and is calibrated in miles per hour (mph) and/or kilometers per hour (km/h).

Tachometer



OJF045106/OJF045103

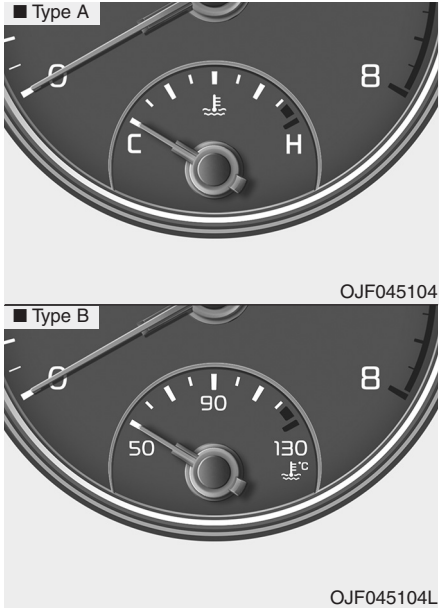
The tachometer indicates the approximate number of engine revolutions per minute (rpm).

Use the tachometer to select the correct shift points and to prevent lugging and/or over-revving the engine.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not operate the engine within the tachometer's RED ZONE. This may cause severe engine damage.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge



OJF045104

OJF045104L

This gauge indicates the temperature of the engine coolant when the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop button is ON.

⚠ CAUTION

If the gauge pointer moves beyond the normal range area toward the "130 or H" position, it indicates overheating that may damage the engine.

Do not continue driving with an overheated engine. If your vehicle overheats, refer to "If the Engine Overheats" in chapter 7.

⚠ WARNING

Never remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot. The engine coolant is under pressure and could severely burn. Wait until the engine is cool before adding coolant to the reservoir.

Fuel Gauge



OJF045105



OJF045105L

This gauge indicates the approximate amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank.

✻ NOTICE

- **The fuel tank capacity is given in chapter 9.**
- **The fuel gauge is supplemented by a low fuel warning light, which will illuminate when the fuel tank is nearly empty.**
- **On inclines or curves, the fuel gauge pointer may fluctuate or the low fuel warning light may come on earlier than usual due to the movement of fuel in the tank.**

⚠ WARNING - Fuel Gauge

Running out of fuel can expose vehicle occupants to danger.

You must stop and obtain additional fuel as soon as possible after the warning light comes on or when the gauge indicator comes close to the "0 or E (Empty)" level.

⚠ CAUTION

Avoid driving with an extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire damaging the catalytic converter.

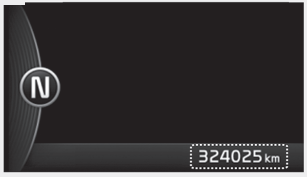
Odometer

■ Type A



OJF045133

■ Type B



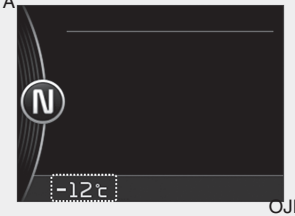
OJF045134

The odometer Indicates the total distance that the vehicle has been driven and should be used to determine when periodic maintenance should be performed.

- Odometer range : 0 ~ 999999 kilometers or miles.

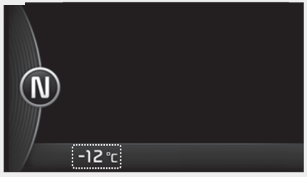
Outside Temperature

■ Type A



OJF045135

■ Type B



OJF045136

This gauge indicates the current outside air temperatures by 1°C (1°F).

- Temperature range : -40°C ~ 60°C (-40°F ~ 140°F)

The outside temperature on the display may not change immediately like a general thermometer to prevent the driver from being inattentive.

The temperature unit can be changed by using the "User Settings" mode of the LCD display.

❊ For more details, refer to "LCD Display" in this chapter.

Transaxle Shift Indicator

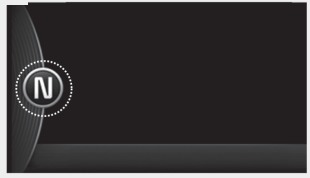
Automatic Transaxle Shift Indicator (if equipped)

■ Type A



OJF045138

■ Type B



OJF045137

This indicator displays which automatic transaxle shift lever is selected.

- Park : P
- Reverse : R
- Neutral : N
- Drive : D
- Sports Mode : 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6

■ Type A ■ Type B



OJF045218L

Automatic Transaxle Shift Indicator in Sports Mode (if equipped)

In the Sports Mode, this indicator informs which gear is desired whilst driving to save fuel.

- Shifting up :
  ▲2, ▲3, ▲4, ▲5, ▲6
- Shifting down :
  ▼1, ▼2, ▼3, ▼4, ▼5

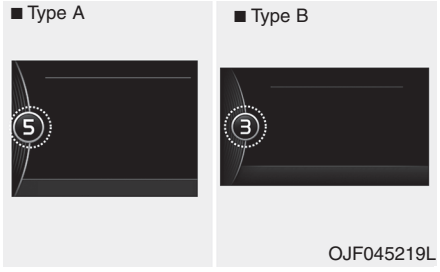
For example

▲3: Indicates that shifting up to the 3rd gear is desired (currently the shift lever is in the 2nd or 1st gear).

▼4: Indicates that shifting down to the 4th gear is desired (currently the shift lever is in the 5th or 6th gear).

When the system is not working properly, the indicator is not displayed.

Manual Transaxle Shift Indicator (if equipped)



This indicator informs which gear is desired whilst driving to save fuel.

- Shifting up :
  ▲2, ▲3, ▲4, ▲5, ▲6
- Shifting down :
  ▼1, ▼2, ▼3, ▼4, ▼5

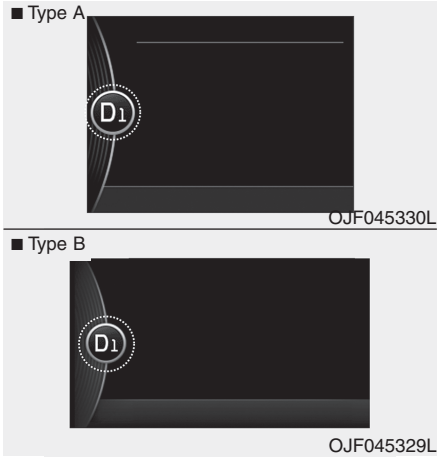
For example

▲3: Indicates that shifting up to the 3rd gear is desired (currently the shift lever is in the 2nd or 1st gear).

▼4: Indicates that shifting down to the 4th gear is desired (currently the shift lever is in the 5th or 6th gear).

When the system is not working properly, the indicator is not displayed.

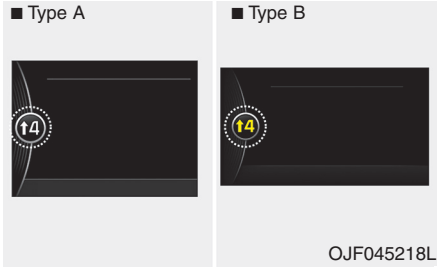
Dual clutch transmission shift indicator (if equipped)



This indicator displays which shift lever is selected.

- Park : P
- Reverse : R
- Neutral : N
- Drive : D
- Sports Mode : D1, D2, D3, D4, D5, D6, D7

Dual clutch transmission shift indicator (if equipped)



In the Sports Mode, this indicator informs which gear is desired whilst driving to save fuel.

- Shifting up : ▲2, ▲3, ▲4, ▲5, ▲6, ▲7
- Shifting down : ▼1, ▼2, ▼3, ▼4, ▼5, ▼6

For example

▲3 : Indicates that shifting up to the 3rd gear is desired (currently the shift lever is in the 2nd or 1st gear).

▼3 : Indicates that shifting down to the 3rd gear is desired (currently the shift lever is in the 4th, 5th, 6th or 7th gear).

When the system is not working properly, the indicator is not displayed.

LCD DISPLAY (IF EQUIPPED)

LCD Modes

Modes	Symbol	Explanation
Trip Computer		This mode displays driving information like the tripmeter, fuel economy, and so on. For more details, refer to “Trip Computer” in this chapter.
Turn By Turn (if equipped)		This mode displays the state of the navigation.
ASCC/LDWS/LKAS (if equipped)		This mode displays the state of the Advanced Smart Cruise Control (ASCC) and Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) and Lane Keeping Assist System(LKAS). For more details, refer to "Advanced Smart Cruise Control (ASCC)" or "Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)" and "Lane Keeping Assist System(LKAS)" in chapter 6.
A/V (if equipped)		This mode displays the state of the A/V system.
Service		This mode informs of service interval (mileage or days) and pressure status of each tyre.
		This mode informs of warning messages related to Low tyre pressure or malfunction of Blind Spot Detection system (BSD) and so on.
User Settings		On this mode, you can change settings of the doors, lamps and so on.

❈ For controlling the LCD modes, refer to "LCD Display Control" in this chapter.

Service Mode

Tyre Pressure (if equipped)



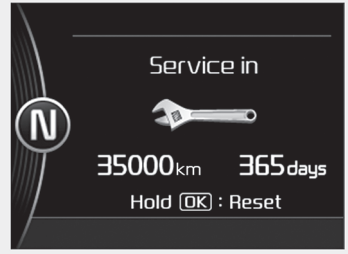
OJF045292L

This mode displays the pressure status of each tyre.

You can change the tyre pressure unit in "User settings" mode.

❊ For more details, refer to "User Settings mode" in this chapter.

Service Interval

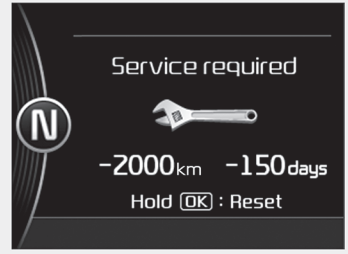


OJF045144L

Service in

It displays when you need a scheduled maintenance service (mileage or days).

If the remaining mileage or time reaches 1,500 km (1,500 mi.) or 30 days, "Service in" message is displayed for several seconds each time you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.



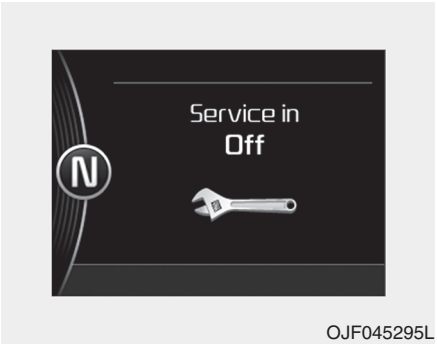
OJF045294L

Service required

If you do not have your vehicle serviced according to the already inputted service interval, "Service required" message is displayed for several seconds each time you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.

To reset the service interval to the mileage and days you inputted before:

- Activate the reset mode by pressing the OK button (reset) for more than 5 second, then press the OK button (reset) again for more than 1 second (Europe).
- Press the OK button (reset) for more than 1 second (Except Europe).



OJF045295L

Service in OFF

If the service interval is not set, "Service in OFF" message is displayed on the LCD display.

✻ NOTICE

If any of the following conditions occurs, the mileage and days may be incorrect.

- **The battery cable is disconnected.**
- **The fuse switch is turned off.**
- **The battery is discharged.**

Master Warning Mode (if equipped)

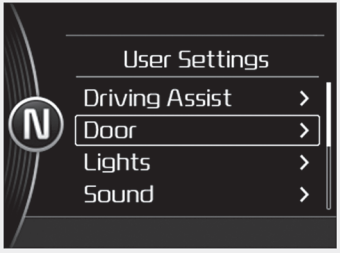
- This warning light informs the driver the following situations
  - Blind Spot Detection (BSD) malfunction (if equipped)
  - Advanced Smart Cruise Control (ASCC) malfunction (if equipped)
  - Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) malfunction (if equipped)
  - Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) malfunction (if equipped)
  - Speed Limit Information Function (SLIF) malfunction (if equipped)
  - Electronic Control Suspension (ECS) malfunction (if equipped)
  - High Beam Assist (HBA) malfunction (if equipped)
  - Lamp malfunction
  - Service reminder and so on.

The Master Warning Light illuminates if one or more of the above warning situations occur. At this time, the LCD Modes Icon will change from (⚙) to (⚠).

If the warning situation is solved, the master warning light will be turned off and the LCD Modes Icon will be changed back to its previous icon (⚙).

User Settings Mode

Description



OJF045148L

On this mode, you can change setting of the doors, lamps, and so on.

Driving Assist (if equipped)

- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS, if equipped) :
  - Lane Departure Warning : To activate the lane departure warning function.
  - Standard LKA : To activate the standard LKA mode of LKAS function.
  - Active LKA : To activate the active LKA mode of LKAS function

❈For more details, refer to “LKAS (Lane Keeping Assist System)” in chapter 6.

- Smart Cruise Control Response (if equipped) :
  - Choose the sensitivity (slow, normal, fast) of the smart cruise control.

❈For more details, refer to “Advanced Smart Cruise Control System” in chapter 6.

- Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB, if equipped) :
  - To activate or deactivate the AEB system.

❈For more details, refer to “Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB)” in chapter 6.

- Forward Collision Warning (FCW, if equipped)
  - Choose the sensitivity of the forward collision warning.

  (Late/Normal/Early)

❈For more details, refer to “Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB)” in chapter 6.

- Rear Cross Traffic Alert (if equipped)
  - If this item is checked, the rear cross traffic alert function will be activated.

❈For more details, refer to “Blind Spot Detection System” in chapter 6.

- Speed Limit Information Function (if equipped)
  - If this item is checked, the speed limit information function will be activated.

❈For more details, refer to “Speed Limit Information Function” in chapter 6.

Door/Trunk(Tailgate)

- Automatically Lock :
  - Off : The auto door lock operation will be deactivated.
  - Enable on Speed : All doors will be automatically locked when the vehicle speed exceeds 15km/h (9.3mph).
  - Enable on Shift : All doors will be automatically locked if the automatic transaxle/dual clutch transmission shift lever is shifted from the P (Park) position to the R (Reverse), N(Neutral), or D (Drive) position.
- Automatically Unlock :
  - Off : The auto door unlock operation will be cancelled.
  - Vehicle Off/On key out : All doors will be automatically unlocked when the ignition key is removed from the ignition switch or the Engine Star/Stop button is set to the OFF position.
  - Driver Door Unlock : All doors will be automatically unlocked if the driver's door is unlocked.
  - On Shift to P : All doors will be automatically unlocked if the automatic transaxle/dual clutch transmission shift lever is shifted to the P (Park) position.
- Door Lock Sound (if equipped) :
  - If this item checked, the door lock sound function will be activated when locking doors
- Smart Trunk (if equipped) :
  - To activate or deactivate the Smart Trunk system.

❈For more details, refer to “Smart Trunk” in this chapter.

- Power Tailgate (if equipped)
  - If this item is checked, the power tailgate function will be activated.

❈For more details, refer to “Power Tailgate” in this chapter.

• Smart Tailgate (if equipped)

- If this item is checked, the smart tailgate function will be activated.

  If the power tailgate function is not activated, you cannot activate this function.

❈For more details, refer to “Smart Tailgate” in this chapter.

Light

• One Touch Turn Signal :

- Off: The one touch turn signal function will be deactivated.
- 3, 5, 7 Flashes : The lane change signals will blink 3, 5 or 7 times when the turn signal lever is moved slightly.

❈For more details, refer to “Light” in this chapter.

• Head Lamp Delay :

- If this item checked, the head lamp delay function will be activated.

• Welcome Light (if equipped) :

- If this item checked, the welcome light function will be activated.

Sound

• Park Assist System Vol. (if equipped) :

- Adjust the Park Assist System volume. (Level 1 ~ 3)

❈For more details, refer to “Parking Assist System” in this chapter.

• BSD (Blind Spot Detection) Sound (if equipped) :

- If this item checked, the blind spot detection sound will be activated.

❈For more details, refer to “Blind Spot Detection System” in chapter 6.

• Welcome Sound (if equipped) :

- If this item checked, the welcome sound function will be activated.

Service interval

- Service Interval :

  On this mode, you can activate the service interval function with mileage (km or mi.) and period (months).

  - Off : The service interval function will be deactivated.
  - On :You can set the service interval (mileage and months).

❈For more details, refer to “Service Mode” in this chapter.

Convenience

- Steering Easy Access (if equipped)
  - None : The seat easy access function will be deactivated.
  - Normal/Extended : When you turn off the engine, the driver’s seat will automatically move rear 7.6 cm (Enhanced) for you to enter or exit the vehicle more comfortably.

  If you change the Engine Start/Stop Button from OFF position to the AC function, the driver’s seat will return to the original position.

❈For more details, refer to “Driver Position Memory System” in chapter 3

- Steering Position
  - If this item is checked, the warning function regarding the steering wheel alignment will be activated.

❈For more details, refer to “Warning Messages” in this chapter.

- Wireless smart phone charging system (if equipped)
  - If this item checked, the Wireless smart phone charging system will be activated.

Other features

- Fuel Economy Auto Reset
  - If this item checked, the average fuel economy will reset automatically after refuelling or after ignition.
- Auto rear wiper (if equipped)
  - If this item is checked, the rear wiper will automatically activated when the front wiper is in ON position and shift lever is in R (reverse) position.
- Fuel Economy Unit
  - Choose the fuel economy unit. (Km/L, L/100Km)
- Temperature Unit
  - Choose the temperature unit. (°C,°F)
- Tyre Pressure Unit (if equipped)
  - Choose the tyre pressure unit. (psi, kPa, bar)
- Language
  - Choose the language.

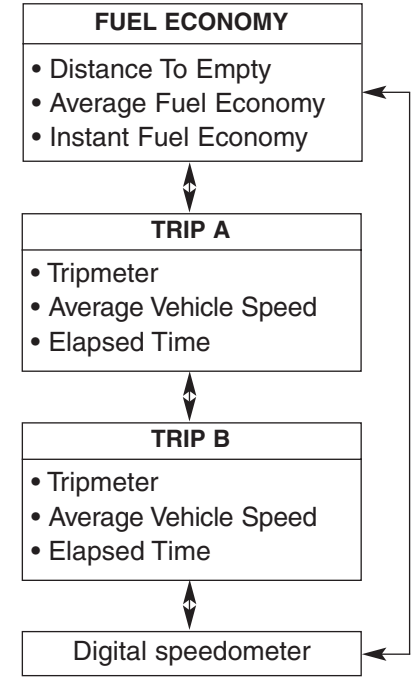
Trip modes (Trip computer)

The trip computer is a microcomputer-controlled driver information system that displays information related to driving.

✻ NOTICE

Some driving information stored in the trip computer (for example Average Vehicle Speed) resets if the battery is disconnected.

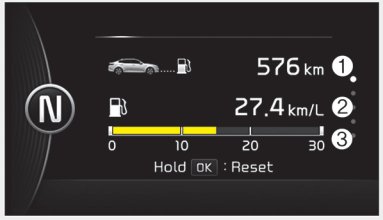
Trip modes



To change the trip mode, scroll the MOVE scroll switch (∧/∨) in the trip computer mode.

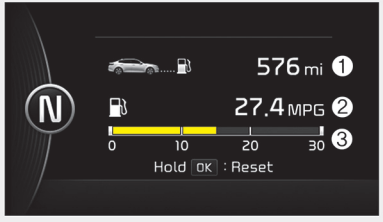
Fuel Economy

■ Type A



OJF045220L

■ Type B



OJFA045220

Distance To Empty (1)

- The distance to empty is the estimated distance the vehicle can be driven with the remaining fuel.
  - Distance range: 1~9,999 km or 1~9,999 mi.
- If the estimated distance is below 1 km (1 mi.), the trip computer will display "---" as distance to empty.

✻ NOTICE

- **If the vehicle is not on level ground or the battery power has been interrupted, the distance to empty function may not operate correctly.**
- **The distance to empty may differ from the actual driving distance as it is an estimate of the available driving distance.**
- **The trip computer may not register additional fuel if less than 6 litres (1.6 gallons) of fuel are added to the vehicle.**
- **The fuel economy and distance to empty may vary significantly based on driving conditions, driving habits, and condition of the vehicle.**

Average Fuel Economy (2)

- The average fuel economy is calculated by the total driving distance and fuel consumption since the last average fuel economy reset.
  - Fuel economy range: 0.0 ~ 99.9 L/100km or MPG
- The average fuel economy can be reset both manually and automatically.

Manual reset

To clear the average fuel economy manually, press the OK button (reset) on the steering wheel for more than 1 second when the average fuel economy is displayed.

Automatic reset

To make the average fuel economy be reset automatically whenever refuelling, select the "Fuel economy auto reset" mode in User Setting menu of the LCD display (Refer to "LCD Display").

- OFF - You may set to default manually by using the trip switch reset button.
- When driving - The vehicle will automatically set to default once 4 hours pass after the Ignition is in OFF.
- When refuelling - After refuelling more than 6 litres and driving over 1km/h, the vehicle will reset to default automatically.

✻ NOTICE

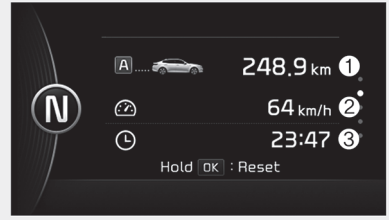
The average fuel economy is not displayed for more accurate calculation if the vehicle does not drive more than 10 seconds or 50 meters (0.03 miles) since the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop button is turned to ON.

Instant Fuel Economy (3)

- This mode displays the instant fuel economy during the last few seconds when the vehicle speed is more than 10 km/h (6.2 MPH).
  - Fuel economy range: 0.0 ~ 30 L/100km or 0.0 ~ 50.0 MPG

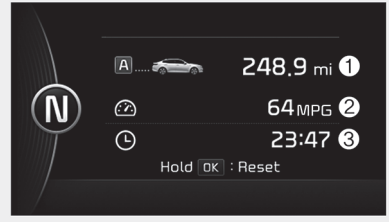
Trip A/B

■ Type A



OJF045221L

■ Type B



OJFA045221

Tripmeter (1)

- The tripmeter is the total driving distance since the last tripmeter reset.
  - Distance range: 0.0 ~ 9999.9 km or mi.
- To reset the tripmeter, press the OK button (reset) on the steering wheel for more than 1 second when the tripmeter is displayed.

Average Vehicle Speed (2)

- The average vehicle speed is calculated by the total driving distance and driving time since the last average vehicle speed reset.
  - Speed range: 0 ~ 260 km/h or 0 ~ 160 MPH
- To reset the average vehicle speed, press the OK button (reset) on the steering wheel for more than 1 second when the average vehicle speed is displayed.

✻ NOTICE

- **The average vehicle speed is not displayed if the driving distance has been less than 50 meters (0.03 miles) or the driving time has been less than 10 seconds since the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop button was turned to ON.**
- **Even if the vehicle is not in motion, the average vehicle speed keeps calculating, as long as whilst the engine is running.**

Elapsed Time (3)

- The elapsed time is the total driving time since the last elapsed time reset.
  - Time range (hh:mm): 00:00 ~ 99:59
- To reset the elapsed time, press the OK button (reset) on the steering wheel for more than 1 second when the elapsed time is displayed.

✻ NOTICE

Even if the vehicle is not in motion, the elapsed time keeps calculating, as long as the engine is running.

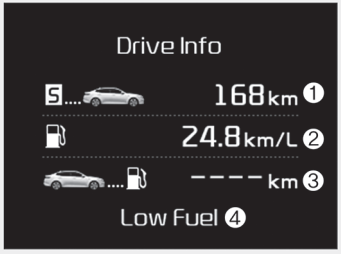
Digital speedometer



OJF045222L

This mode displays the current speed of the vehicle.

One time driving information mode



OJFW046473L

This display shows trip distance (1), average fuel economy (2) and the vehicle can be driven with the remaining fuel (3).

This information is displayed for a few seconds when you turn off the engine and then goes off automatically. The information provided is calculated according to each trip.

If the estimated distance is below 1km (1mi.), the distance to empty (3) will display as "---".

When low fuel warning light illuminates in the cluster, the refuel message (4) will appear.

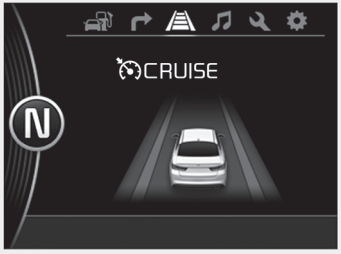
Turn By Turn Mode (if equipped)



OJF045223L

This mode displays the state of the navigation.

ASCC/LDWS/LKAS (if equipped)

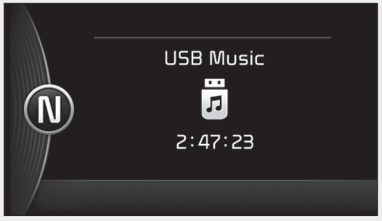


OJF045296L

This mode displays the state of the Advanced Smart Cruise Control (ASCC), Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) and Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS).

❈ For more information, refer to “Advanced Smart Cruise Control (ASCC)”, “Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) and Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)” in chapter 6.

A/V Mode (if equipped)

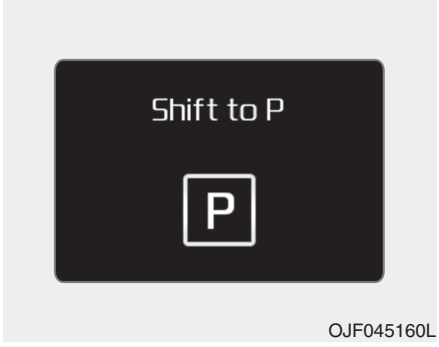


OJF045142L

This mode displays the state of the A/V system.

Warning Messages (if equipped)

Shift to P (for smart key system and automatic transaxle/dual clutch transmission)



OJF045160L

- This warning message illuminates if you try to turn off the engine without the shift lever in P (Park) position.
- At this time, the Engine Start/Stop Button turns to the ACC position (If you press the Engine Start/Stop Button once more, it will turn to the ON position).

Low Key Battery (for smart key system)



OJF045154L

- This warning message illuminates if the battery of the smart key is discharged when the Engine Start/Stop Button changes to the OFF position.

Press START button whilst turning wheel (for smart key system)



OJF045286L

- This warning message illuminates if the steering wheel does not unlock normally when the Engine Start/Stop Button is pressed.
- It means that you should press the Engine Start/Stop Button whilst turning the steering wheel right and left.

Steering wheel unlocked (for smart key system)



OJF045287L

- This warning message illuminates if the steering wheel does not lock when the Engine Start/Stop Button changes to the OFF position.

Check steering wheel lock system (for smart key system)



OJF045288L

- This warning message illuminates if the steering wheel does not lock normally when the Engine Start/Stop Button changes to the OFF position.

Press brake pedal to start engine (for smart key system and automatic transaxle/dual clutch transmission)



OJF045164L

- This warning message illuminates if the Engine Start/Stop Button changes to the ACC position twice by pressing the button repeatedly without depressing the brake pedal.
- It means that you should depress the brake pedal to start the engine.

Press clutch pedal to start engine (for smart key system and manual transaxle)



OJF045168L

- This warning message illuminates if the Engine Start/Stop Button changes to the ACC position twice by pressing the button repeatedly without depressing the clutch pedal.
- It means that you should depress the clutch pedal to start the engine.

Key not in vehicle (for smart key system)



OJF045150L

- This warning message illuminates if the smart key is not in the vehicle when you press the Engine Start/Stop Button.
- It means that you should always have the smart key with you.

Key not detected (for smart key system)



OJF045152L

- This warning message illuminates if the smart key is not detected when you press the Engine Start/Stop Button.

Press start button again (for smart key system)



OJF045156L

- This warning message illuminates if you can not operate the Engine Start/Stop Button when there is a problem with the Engine Start/Stop Button system.
- It means that you could start the engine by pressing the Engine Start/ Stop Button once more.
- If the warning illuminates each time you press the Engine Start/Stop Button, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

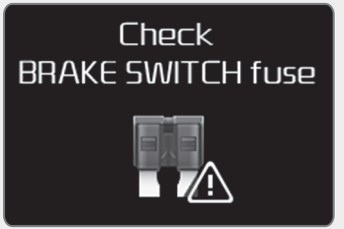
Press start button with key (for smart key system)



OJF045158L

- This warning message illuminates if you press the Engine Start/Stop Button whilst the warning message “Key not detected” is illuminating.
- At this time, the immobiliser indicator light blinks.

Check BRAKE SWITCH fuse (for smart key system and automatic transaxledual clutch transmission)



OJF045169L

- This warning message illuminates if the brake switch fuse is disconnected.
- It means that you should replace the fuse with a new one. If that is not possible, you can start the engine by pressing the Engine Start/Stop Button for 10 seconds in the ACC position.

Shift to P or N to start engine (for smart key system and automatic transaxle/dual clutch transmission)



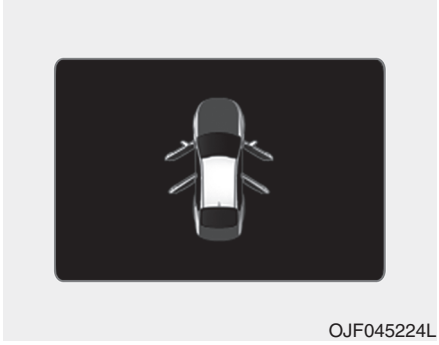
OJF045162L

- This warning message illuminates if you try to start the engine with the shift lever not in the P (Park) or N (Neutral) position.

✻ NOTICE

You can start the engine with the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position. But, for your safety, we recommend that you start the engine with the shift lever in the P (Park) position.

Door, Bonnet, Trunk (Tailgate) Open



OJF045224L

- It means that any door, bonnet, or trunk (Tailgate) is open.

Sunroof Open (if equipped)



OJF045216L

- This warning message illuminates if you turn off the engine and then open the driver's door when the sunroof is open.

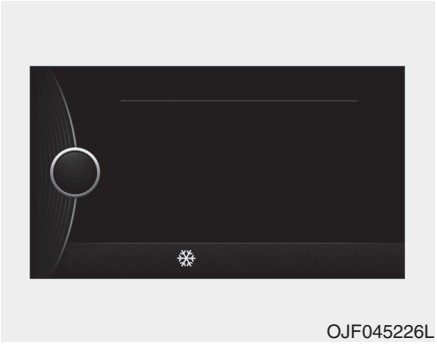
Window Open



OJF045225L

This warning message illuminates if you turn off the engine when any window is open.

Icy Road Warning Light (if equipped)



OJF045226L

This warning light is to warn the driver the road may be icy.

When the following conditions occur, the warning light (including Outside Temperature Gauge) blinks 5 times and then illuminates, and also warning chime sounds once.

- The temperature on the Outside Temperature Gauge is below approximately 4°C (40°F).

✻ NOTICE

If the icy road warning light appears whilst driving, you should drive more attentively and safely refraining from over-speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden braking or sharp turning, etc.

Align steering wheel



OJF045176L

- This warning message illuminates if you start the engine when the steering wheel is turned to more than 90 degrees to the left or right.
- It means that you should turn the steering wheel and make the angle of the steering wheel be less than 30 degrees.

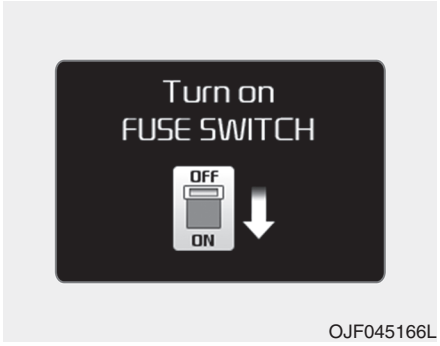
Low Washer Fluid (if equipped)



OJF045146L

- This warning message illuminates on the service reminder mode if the washer fluid level in the reservoir is nearly empty.
- It means that you should refill the washer fluid.

Turn on FUSE SWITCH (if equipped)



OJF045166L

- This warning message illuminates if the fuse switch under the steering wheel is OFF.
- It means that you should turn the fuse switch on.

For more details, refer to “Fuses” in chapter 8.

Check exhaust system (Diesel Particulate Filter warning for Diesel engine)



OJF045289L

This warning message illuminates if the DPF system has a malfunction. at this time, DPF warning light also blinks.

In this case, we recommend that you have the DPF system checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

For more details, refer to “warning lights” in this chapter.

Check headlights (if equipped)



OJF045178L

This warning message illuminates if there is a malfunction (burned-out bulb or circuit malfunction) with the head lights (high and low beam). In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

✻ NOTICE

- **When replacing the bulb, use the same wattage bulb.**
  For more information, refer to “BULB WATTAGE” in chapter 9.
- **If the different wattage bulb is equipped with the vehicle, this warning message is not displayed.**

Check high beam assist system (if equipped)

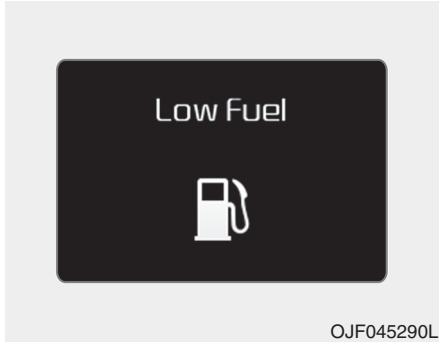


OJF045194L

- This warning message illuminates if the high beam assist system has a malfunction.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

Low Fuel

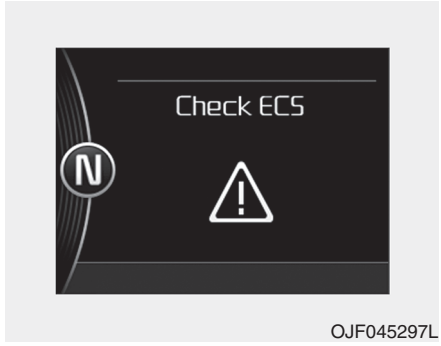


OJF045290L

- This warning message illuminates if the fuel tank is nearly empty.
  - When the low fuel level warning light is illuminates.

  Add fuel as soon as possible.

Check ECS (if equipped)



OJF045297L

- This warning message illuminates if there is a malfunction with the Electronic Control Suspension (ECS) system. We recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

❊ For more details, refer to "Electronic Control Suspension (ECS)" in chapter 6.

✻ NOTICE - ECS Warning Message

When there is a malfunction with the Electronic Stability Control (ESC), the Electronic Control Suspension (ECS) warning message may illuminate as well as the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light.

Check AEB system (if equipped)



OJF045291L

- This warning message illuminates if there is a malfunction with the Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) system. We recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

❈ For more details, refer to "Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) system" in chapter 6.

Check Smart Phone Wireless Charger (if equipped)



OJF045312L

If a smart phone is still left on the wireless charging pad unattended, even when the ignition is in ACC OFF and the instrument panel's one time driving information mode has finished, a warning message will lit up on the instrument panel.

❈ For more details, refer to "Smart Phone Wireless Charger" in this chapter.

WARNING AND INDICATOR LIGHTS

Warning lights

✻ NOTICE - Warning lights

Make sure that all warning lights are OFF after starting the engine. If any light is still ON, this indicates a situation that needs attention.

Air bag Warning Light



This warning light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 6 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the SRS.

  In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

Seat Belt Warning Light



This warning light informs the driver that the seat belt is not fastened.

✻ For more details, refer to the “Seat Belts” in chapter 3.

Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Light



This warning light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds
  - It remains on if the parking brake is applied.
- When the parking brake is applied.
- When the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low.
  - If the warning light illuminates with the parking brake released, it indicates the brake fluid level in reservoir is low.

If the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low:

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. With the engine stopped, check the brake fluid level immediately and add fluid as required (For more details, refer to “Brake Fluid” in chapter 8). Then check all brake components for fluid leaks. If any leak on the brake system is still found, the warning light remains on, or the brakes do not operate properly, do not drive the vehicle.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle towed to an authorised Kia dealer and inspected.

Dual-diagonal braking system

Your vehicle is equipped with dual-diagonal braking systems. This means you still have braking on two wheels even if one of the dual systems should fail.

With only one of the dual systems working, more than normal pedal travel and greater pedal pressure are required to stop the vehicle.

Also, the vehicle will not stop in as short a distance with only a portion of the brake system working.

If the brakes fail whilst you are driving, shift to a lower gear for additional engine braking and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

⚠ WARNING - Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Light

Driving the vehicle with a warning light ON is dangerous. If the Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Light illuminates with the parking brake released, it indicates that the brake fluid level is low.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light



This warning light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the ABS (The normal braking system will still be operational without the assistance of the anti-lock brake system).

  In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

Electronic Brake force Distribution (EBD) System Warning Light



These two warning lights illuminate at the same time whilst driving:

- When the ABS and regular brake system may not work normally.

  In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING - Electronic Brake force Distribution (EBD) System Warning Light

When both ABS and Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Lights are on, the brake system will not work normally and you may experience an unexpected and dangerous situation during sudden braking.

In this case, avoid high speed driving and abrupt braking.

We recommend you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Kia dealer as soon as possible.

✻ NOTICE - Electronic Brake force Distribution (EBD) System Warning Light

When the ABS Warning Light is on or both ABS and Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Lights are on, the speedometer, odometer, or trip-meter may not work. Also, the EPS Warning Light may illuminate and the steering effort may increase or decrease.

In this case, we recommend you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Kia dealer as soon as possible.

Electronic Power Steering (EPS) Warning Light (if equipped)



This warning light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It remains on until the engine is started.
- When there is a malfunction with the EPS.

  In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)



This warning light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It remains on until the engine is started.
- When there is a malfunction with the emission control system.

  In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION - Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)

Driving with the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) on may cause damage to the emission control systems which could effect drivability and/or fuel economy.

⚠ CAUTION - Petrol Engine

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) illuminates, potential catalytic converter damage is possible which could result in loss of engine power.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Kia dealer as soon as possible.

⚠ CAUTION - Diesel Engine

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) blinks, some error related to the injection quantity adjustment occurs which could result in loss of engine power, combustion noise and poor emission.

In this case, we recommend that you have the engine control system inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

Charging System Warning Light



This warning light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It remains on until the engine is started.
- When there is a malfunction with either the alternator or electrical charging system.

If there is a malfunction with either the alternator or electrical charging system:

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. Turn the engine off and check the alternator drive belt for looseness or breakage.

   If the belt is adjusted properly, there may be a problem in the electrical charging system.

   In every case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Kia dealer as soon as possible.

Engine Oil Pressure Warning Light



This warning light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It remains on until the engine is started.
- When the engine oil pressure is low.

If the engine oil pressure is low:

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. Turn the engine off and check the engine oil level (For more details, refer to “Engine Oil” in section 8). If the level is low, add oil as required.

   If the warning light remains on after adding oil or if oil is not available, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Kia dealer as soon as possible.

⚠ CAUTION - Engine Oil Pressure Warning Light

- ***If the engine does not stop immediately after the Engine Oil Pressure Warning Light is illuminated, severe damage could result.***
- ***If the warning light stays on whilst the engine is running, it indicates that there may be serious engine damage or malfunction. In this case,***
  1. ***Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.***
  2. ***Turn off the engine and check the oil level. If the oil level is low, fill the engine oil to the proper level.***
  3. ***Start the engine again. If the warning light stays on after the engine is started, turn the engine off immediately. In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.***

Engine Oil Level Warning Light (if equipped)



This warning light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position
  - It remains on until the engine is started.
- When the engine oil level should be checked.

If the engine oil level is low:

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. Turn the engine off and check the engine oil level (For more details, refer to “Engine Oil” in chapter 8). If the level is low, Slowly pour the recommended oil little by little into a funnel. (Oil refill capacity : approximately 0.6 ~ 1.6 *l*)

   Use only the specified engine oil. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" in Chapter 9.)

Do not overfill the engine oil to ensure the oil level is not above F mark on the dipstick.

If the warning light remains on after adding oil or if oil is not available, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Kia dealer as soon as possible.

✻ NOTICE

- **If you travel approximately 50 km ~100 km after the engine warms up, after adding the engine oil, the warning light will go off (for Petrol engine).**
- **Open and close the bonnet (Diesel engine only), or cycle the ignition from OFF to ON 3 times within 10 seconds, the warning light will go off immediately. However, when you turn off the warning light without adding the engine oil, the light will come on again after travelling approximately 50 ~ 100 km after the engine warms up.**

Low Fuel Level Warning Light



This warning light illuminates:

When the fuel tank is nearly empty.

If the fuel tank is nearly empty:

Add fuel as soon as possible.

⚠ CAUTION - Low Fuel Level

Driving with the Low Fuel Level warning light on or with the fuel level below "0 or E" can cause the engine to misfire and damage the catalytic converter (if equipped).

Low Tyre Pressure Warning Light (if equipped)



This warning light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When one or more of your tyres are significantly underinflated (The location of the underinflated tyres are displayed on the LCD display).

✻ For more details, refer to "Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)" in chapter 7.

This warning light remains on after blinking for approximately 60 seconds or repeats blinking and off at the intervals of approximately 3 seconds:

- When there is a malfunction with the TPMS.

  In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Kia dealer as soon as possible.

❊ For more details, refer to “Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)” in chapter 7.

⚠ WARNING - Safe Stopping

- **The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tyre damage caused by external factors.**
- **If you notice any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator pedal, apply the brakes gradually with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.**

Fuel Filter Warning Light (Diesel Engine)



This warning light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When water has accumulated inside the fuel filter.

  In this case, remove the water from the fuel filter.

❊ For more details, refer to “Fuel Filter” in chapter 8.

⚠ CAUTION - Fuel Filter Warning Light

- ***When the Fuel Filter Warning Light illuminates, engine power (vehicle speed & idle speed) may decrease.***
- ***If you keep driving with the warning light on, engine parts (injector, common rail, high pressure fuel pump) may be damaged. If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Kia dealer as soon as possible.***

Overspeed Warning Light (if equipped)



This warning light blinks:

- When you drive the vehicle more than 120 km/h.
  - This is to prevent you from driving your vehicle with overspeed.
  - The overspeed warning chime also sound for approximately 5 seconds.

LED Headlamp Warning Light (if equipped)



This warning light illuminates:

- Once you set the Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the LED headlamp.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

This warning light blinks:

- When there is a malfunction with a LED headlamp related part.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION - LED Headlamp Warning Light

Continuous driving with the LED Headlamp Warning Light on or blinking can reduce LED headlamp (low beam) life.

Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) Warning light (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates:

- When there is a malfunction with the AEB.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

Master Warning Light



This indicator light illuminates:

- When there is a malfunction on the pre-safe seat belt, electronic control suspension, or advanced smart cruise control or other systems etc. To identify the details of the warning, look at the LCD display.

Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFLS) Warning Light (if equipped)



This warning light blinks:

- When there is a malfunction with the AFLS.

If there is a malfunction with the AFLS:

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. Turn the engine off and restart the engine. If the warning light remains on, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) Warning Light (if equipped)

EPB

This warning light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the EPB.

  In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

✻ NOTICE - Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) Warning Light

The Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) Warning Light may illuminates when the Electronic Stability control (ESC) Indicator Light comes on to indicates that the ESC is not working properly (This does not indicate malfunction of the EPB).

Exhaust system (DPF) warning light (Diesel Engine)



This warning light illuminates:

- When there is a malfunction with Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) system.
- When this warning light illuminates, it may turn off after driving the vehicle:
  - at more than 60km/h (37 mph), or
  - at more than 2nd gear with 1500 ~ 2000 engine rpm for a certain time (for about 25 minutes).

If the this warning light blink in spite of the procedure (at this time LCD warning message will be displayed), we recommend that you have the DPF system checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION - Diesel Engine with DPF (if equipped)

If you continue to drive with the DPF warning light blinking for a long time, the DPF system can be damaged and fuel consumption can worsen.

Indicator Lights

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the ESC system.

  In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

This indicator light blinks:

Whilst the ESC is operating.

❈ For more details, refer to "Electronic Stability Control (ESC)" in chapter 6.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) OFF Indicator Light (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When you deactivate the ESC system by pressing the ESC OFF button.

❈ For more details, refer to "Electronic Stability Control (ESC)" in chapter 6.

Auto stop indicator (if equipped)



This indicator will illuminate when the engine enters the Idle Stop mode of the ISG (Idle Stop and Go) system.

When the automatic starting occurs, the auto stop indicator on the cluster will blink for 5 seconds.

❈ For more details, refer to the ISG (Idle Stop and Go) system in chapter 6.

✻ NOTICE

When the engine automatically starts by the ISG system, some warning lights (ABS, ESC, ESC OFF, EPS or Parking brake warning light) may turn on for a few seconds.
This happens because of the low battery voltage. It does not mean the system is malfunctioning.

Immobiliser Indicator Light (Without Smart Key) (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates:

- When the vehicle detects the immobiliser in your key properly whilst the ignition switch is ON.
  - At this time, you can start the engine.
  - The indicator light goes off after starting the engine.

This indicator light blinks:

- When there is a malfunction with the immobiliser system.

  In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

Immobiliser Indicator Light (With Smart Key) (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates for up to 30 seconds:

- When the vehicle detects the smart key in the vehicle properly whilst the Engine Start/Stop Button is ACC or ON.
  - At this time, you can start the engine.
  - The indicator light goes off after starting the engine.

This indicator light blinks for a few seconds:

- When the smart key is not in the vehicle.
  - At this time, you can not start the engine.

This indicator light illuminates for 2 seconds and goes off:

- When the vehicle can not detect the smart key which is in the vehicle whilst the Engine Start/Stop Button is ON.

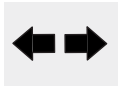
  In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

This indicator light blinks:

- When the battery of the smart key is weak.
  - At this time, you can not start the engine. However, you can start the engine if you press the Engine Start/Stop Button with the smart key. (For more details, refer to “Starting the Engine” in chapter 6).
- When there is a malfunction with the immobiliser system.

  In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

Turn Signal Indicator Light



This indicator light blinks:

- When you switch on the turn signal light on.

If any of the following occurs, there may a malfunction with the turn signal system. In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

- The indicator light does not blink but illuminates.
- The indicator light blinks more rapidly.
- The indicator light does not illuminate at all.

Low Beam Indicator Light (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates:

- When the headlights are on.

High Beam Indicator Light



This indicator light illuminates:

- When the headlights are on and in the high beam position
- When the turn signal lever is pulled into the Flash-to-Pass position.

Light ON Indicator Light



This indicator light illuminates:

- When the tail lights or headlights are on.

Front Fog Indicator Light (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates:

- When the front fog lights are on.

Rear Fog Indicator Light (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates:

- When the rear fog lights are on.

High beam assist indicator (if equipped)



This warning light illuminates :

- When the high-Beam is on with the light switch in the AUTO light position.
- If your vehicle detects oncoming or preceding vehicles, the high beam assist system will switch the high beam to low beam automatically.

❈ For more details, refer to “High beam assist” in chapter 4.

Glow Indicator Light (Diesel Engine)



This indicator light illuminates:

- When the engine is being preheated with the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button in the ON position.
  - The engine can be started after the glow indicator light goes off.
  - The illumination time varies with the engine coolant temperature, air temperature, and battery condition.

If the indicator light remains on or blinks after the engine has warmed up or whilst driving, there may a malfunction with the engine preheating system.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

✻ NOTICE - Engine Preheating

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds after the preheating is completed, set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the LOCK or OFF position for 10 seconds and then to the ON position in order to preheat the engine again.

Cruise Indicator Light (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates:

- When the cruise control system is enabled.

❈ For more details, refer to “Cruise Control System” in chapter 6.

Cruise SET Indicator Light (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates:

- When the cruise control speed is set.

❈ For more details, refer to “Cruise Control System” in chapter 6.

AUTO HOLD Indicator Light (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates:

- [White] When you activate the auto hold system by pressing the AUTO HOLD button.
- [Green] When you stop the vehicle completely by depressing the brake pedal with the auto hold system activated.
- [Yellow] When there is a malfunction with the auto hold system.

  In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

❈ For more details, refer to “Auto Hold” in chapter 6.

Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Indicator Light (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates:

- [White] When the lane departure warning system does not detect the lane line.
- [Green] When you activate the lane departure warning system by pressing the LDWS button.
- [Yellow] When there is a malfunction with the lane departure warning system.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

❈ For more details, refer to “Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)” in chapter 6.

LKAS (Lane Keeping Assistant System) Indicator (if equipped)



The LKAS indicator will illuminate when you turn the lane keeping assistant system on by pressing the LKAS button.

If there is a problem with the system, the yellow LKAS indicator will illuminate.

❈ For more details, refer to "LKAS" in chapter 6.

ECO Indicator Light (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates :

- When the Active ECO system is activated by pressing the DRIVE mode button.
- The ECO indicator (green) will illuminate to show that the Active ECO is operating.

❈ For more details, refer to “Drive Mode Integrated Control System" in chapter 6.

SPORT Mode Indicator Light (if equipped)



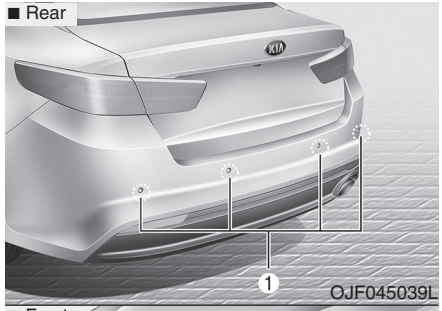
This indicator light illuminates:

- When you select “SPORT” mode as drive mode.

❈ For more details, refer to “Drive Mode” in chapter 6.

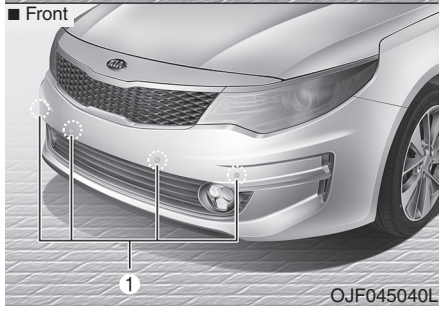
PARKING ASSIST SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

■ Rear



OJF045039L

■ Front



OJF045040L

The parking assist system assists the driver during movement of the vehicle by chiming if any object is sensed within the distance of 100 cm (39 in.) in front and 120 cm (47 in.) behind the vehicle.

This system is a supplemental system and it is not intended to nor does it replace the need for extreme care and attention of the driver.

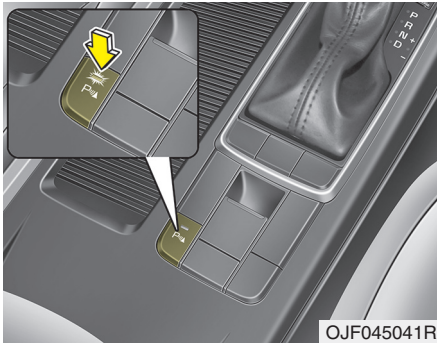
The sensing range and objects detectable by the sensors (①) are limited. Whenever moving pay as much attention to what is in front and behind of you as you would in a vehicle without a parking assist system.

⚠ WARNING

The parking assist system should only be considered as a supplementary function. The driver must check the front and rear view. The operational function of the parking assist system can be affected by many factors and conditions of the surroundings, so the responsibility rests always with the driver.

Operation of the parking assist system

Operating condition



OJF045041R

- This system activates when the parking assist system button is pressed with the ignition switch ON.
- The indicator of the parking assist system button turns on automatically and activates the parking assist system when you shift the gear to the R (Reverse) position. It will turn off automatically when you drive above 30km/h(18.6 mph) (If SPAS equipped)

- The sensing distance whilst backing up is approximately 120 cm (47 in.) when you are driving less than 10 km/h (6.2 mph).
- The sensing distance whilst moving forward is approximately 100 cm (39 in.) when you are driving less than 10 km/h (6.2 mph).
- When more than two objects are sensed at the same time, the closest one will be recognized first.
- The side sensors are activated when you shift the gear to the R (Reverse) position.
- If the vehicle speed is above 20km/h, the system automatically turns off. To activate again, push the button.

✻ NOTICE

It may not operate if it's distance from the object is already less than approximately 25 cm when the system is ON.

Type of warning indicator and sound

: with Warning sound

Distance from object		Warning indicator		Warning sound
		When driving forward	When driving rearward	
100cm~61cm	Front		-	Buzzer beeps intermittently
120cm~61cm	Rear	-		Buzzer beeps intermittently
60cm~31cm	Front			Buzzer beeps frequently
	Rear	-		Buzzer beeps frequently
30cm	Front			Buzzer sounds continuously
	Rear	-		Buzzer sounds continuously

✻ NOTICE

- **The actual warning sound and indicator may differ from the illustration according to objects or sensor status.**
- **Do not wash the vehicle's sensor with high pressure water.**

⚠ CAUTION

- ***This system can only sense objects within the range and location of the sensors;***

  It can not detect objects in other areas where sensors are not installed. Also, small or slim objects, such as poles or objects located between sensors may not be detected by the sensors.

  Always visually check behind the vehicle when backing up.
- ***Be sure to inform any drivers of the vehicle that may be unfamiliar with the system regarding the systems capabilities and limitations.***

Non-operational conditions of parking assist system

Parking assist system may not operate normally when:

1. Moisture is frozen to the sensor. (It will operate normally when moisture melts.)
2. Sensor is covered with foreign matter, such as snow or water, or the sensor cover is blocked. (It will operate normally when the material is removed or the sensor is no longer blocked.)
3. The parking assist button is off.

There is a possibility of parking assist system malfunction when:

1. Driving on uneven road surfaces such as unpaved roads, gravel, bumps, or gradient.
2. Objects generating excessive noise such as vehicle horns, loud motorcycle engines, or truck air brakes can interfere with the sensor.
3. Heavy rain or water spray.
4. Wireless transmitters or mobile phones present near the sensor.
5. Sensor is covered with snow.

Detecting range may decrease when:

1. Outside air temperature is extremely hot or cold.
2. Undetectable objects smaller than 1 m and narrower than 14 cm in diameter.

The following objects may not be recognized by the sensor:

1. Sharp or slim objects such as ropes, chains or small poles.
2. Objects, which tend to absorb sensor frequency such as clothes, spongy material or snow.

✻ NOTICE

1. The warning may not sound sequentially depending on the speed and shapes of the objects detected.
2. The parking assist system may malfunction if the vehicle bumper height or sensor installation has been modified. Any non-factory installed equipment or accessories may also interfere with the sensor performance.
3. Sensor may not recognize objects less than 30 cm from the sensor, or it may sense an incorrect distance. Use with caution.
4. When the sensor is frozen or stained with snow or water, the sensor may be inoperative until the stains are removed using a soft cloth.
5. Do not push, scratch or strike the sensor with any hard objects that could damage the surface of the sensor. Sensor damage could occur.

✻ NOTICE

This system can only sense objects within the range and location of the sensors, it can not detect objects in other areas where sensors are not installed. Also, small or slim objects, or objects located between sensors may not be detected.
Always visually check in front and behind the vehicle when driving.
Be sure to inform any drivers in the vehicle that may be unfamiliar with the system regarding the systems capabilities and limitations.

⚠ WARNING

Pay close attention when the vehicle is driven close to objects on the road, particularly pedestrians, and especially children. Be aware that some objects may not be detected by the sensors, due to the objects distance, size or material, all of which can limit the effectiveness of the sensor. Always perform a visual inspection to make sure the vehicle is clear of all obstructions before moving the vehicle in any direction.

Self-diagnosis

When you shift the gear to the R (Reverse) position and if one or more of the below occurs you may have a malfunction in the rear parking assist system.

- You don't hear an audible warning sound or if the buzzer sounds intermittently.
-  (blinks) is displayed. (if equipped)

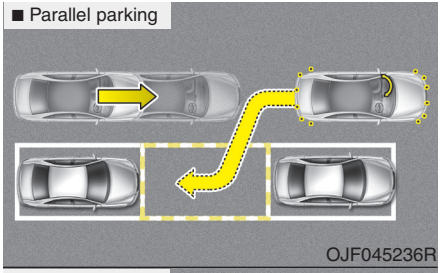
If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING

Your new vehicle warranty does not cover any accidents or damage to the vehicle or injuries to its occupants related to a parking assist system. Always drive safely and cautiously.

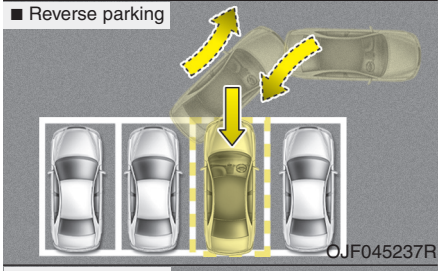
SMART PARKING ASSIST SYSTEM (SPAS) (IF EQUIPPED)

■ Parallel parking



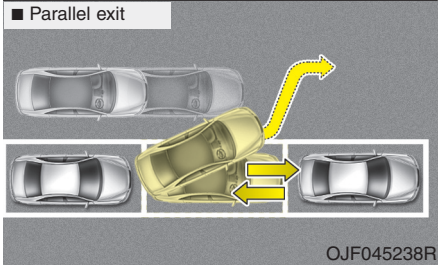
OJF045236R

■ Reverse parking



OJF045237R

■ Parallel exit



OJF045238R

The Smart Parking Assist System helps drivers park their vehicle by using sensors to measure parking spaces, control the steering wheel to semi-automatically park the vehicle and provide instruction on the LCD display to help through parking.

Additionally, the system provides assistance when leaving (parallel exit) a parking space.

❈ The volume for the Smart Parking Assist System can be adjusted. Refer to "User setting" in this chapter.

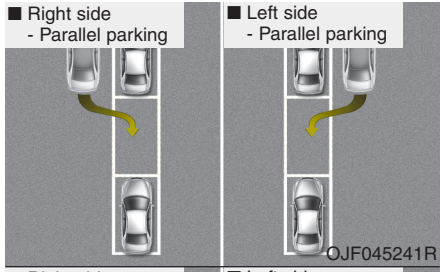
✻ NOTICE

- **The vehicle will not stop for pedestrians or objects that may be in its path, so the driver must monitor the manoeuvre.**
- **Use the system only in parking lots and places used for parking.**
- **The system does not work if there is no car parked in front of the parking space you are planning to park or if it is a diagonal parking space.**
- **After parking your vehicle using the system, the vehicle may not be parked at the exact spot you have wished. For example, the space between your vehicle and wall may not be the distance you have desired.**
- **Deactivate the system and park your vehicle manually, when the situation requires parking manually.**
- **The Parking Assist System's front and rear warning sound activates when the Smart Parking Assist System is activated.**
- **After searching for a parking space is completed, the Smart Parking Assist System will be cancelled if the Parking Assist System is cancelled by pressing the button to the OFF position.**

⚠ WARNING

- **The Smart Parking Assist System should only be considered as a supplementary function. The driver must check the front and rear view for objects. The operational function of the Smart Parking Assist System can be affected by many factors and conditions of the surroundings, so the responsibility rests always with the driver.**
- **The system may not operate normally if the vehicle needs wheel alignment adjustment. Have the vehicle checked by an authorised Kia dealer.**
- **If you use a different tyre or wheel size rather than the size recommended by the Kia dealer, the system may not work properly. Always use the same size tyre and wheel.**
- **If you use additional frame on the license plate, SPAS may generate abnormal warning sound.**

Operating condition



The system will help park the vehicle in the middle or back of a parked vehicle. Use the system when all the below conditions are met.

- When the parking space is a straight line
- When parallel parking or reverse (perpendicular) parking is required
- When there is a parked vehicle
- When there is enough space to move the vehicle

Non-operating condition

Never use the Smart Parking Assist System in the below conditions.

- Curved parking space
- Inclined roads
- A vehicle loaded with longer or wider cargo compared to the vehicle
- Diagonal parking space
- Heavy snow or rain
- Near a circular pillar or narrow pillar, or a pillar surrounded by objects such as fire extinguisher, etc.
- The sensor is positioned incorrectly by an impact to the bumper
- Bumpy roads
- A vehicle equipped with a snow chain or spare tyre
- Tyre pressure lower or higher than the standard tyre pressure
- A trailer connected to the vehicle
- Slippery or uneven road
- Big vehicles such as buses or trucks parked
- Sensor covered with foreign matter, such as snow or water
- Moisture frozen on the sensor
- A motorcycle or bicycle parked
- A obstacle such as a trash can, bicycle, shopping cart, etc. is near
- Heavy wind
- Wheel changed to an unauthorised size
- A problem with the wheel alignment
- A accessory installed on the detective area the of sensors (such as number plate holder)
- Vehicle leaned severely to one side
- Strong sunlight or very cold weather
- Ultrasonic interference from other vehicle's. Such as horn sounds of other vehicles, motorcycle's engine noise, air brake noise of heavy vehicles and with the other vehicle's parking assist system working.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use the Smart Parking Assist System in the following conditions for unexpected results may occur and cause a serious accident.

1. Parking on inclines



The driver must apply the accelerator and brake pedal when parking on inclines. If the driver is unfamiliar with applying the accelerator and brake pedal, a vehicle accident may occur.

(Continued)

(Continued)

2. Parking in snow

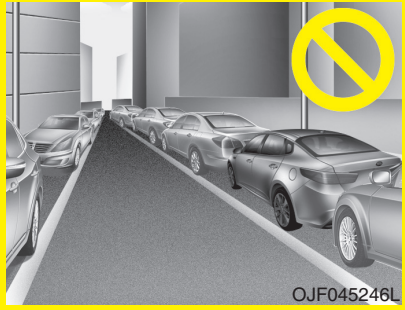


Snow may interfere with sensor operation or the system may cancel if the road is slippery whilst parking. Also, if the driver is unfamiliar with applying the accelerator and brake pedal, a car accident may occur.

(Continued)

(Continued)

3. Parking in narrow space

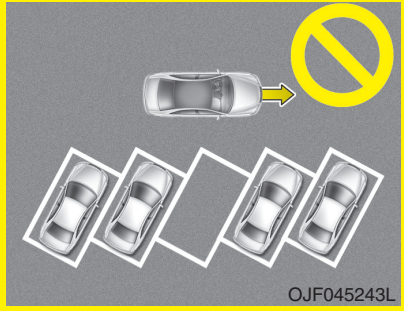


The system may not search for parking spaces if the space is too narrow. Even if the system is operating, always be careful.

(Continued)

(Continued)

4. Parking diagonal



The system is a supplemental for parallel parking or perpendicular parking. Diagonal line parking is not available. Even if the vehicle is able to enter the space, do not operate the Smart Parking Assist System. The system will attempt parallel parking or reverse (perpendicular) parking.

(Continued)

(Continued)

5. Parking in uneven road

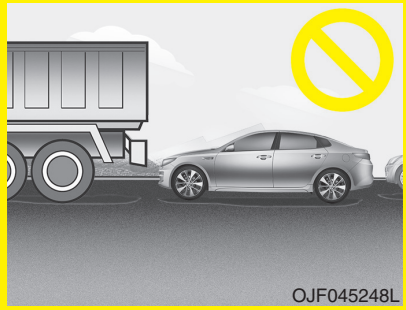


Parking in uneven roads, the driver needs to properly apply the pedal (clutch, accelerator or brake). If not, the system may cancel when the vehicle slips or an accident may occur.

(Continued)

(Continued)

6. Parking behind a truck



An accident may occur when parking behind a vehicle higher than yours. For example, bus, truck, etc.

Do not solely rely on the Smart Parking Assist System.

(Continued)

(Continued)

7. Obstacle in parking space

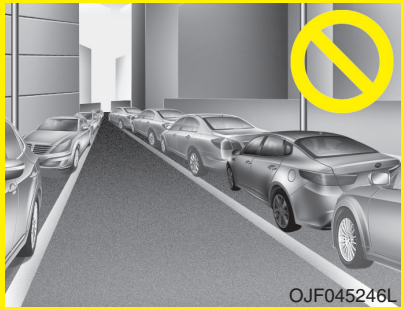


Obstacle such as a pillar may interfere with the system when looking for a parking space. Even though, a parking space is available the system may not detect a parking space.

(Continued)

(Continued)

8. Leaving a parking space near a wall



When leaving a parking space that is narrow and near a wall, the system may not work properly. When leaving a parking space similar to the above picture, the driver must watch out for obstacles whilst leaving.

How the system works (Parking Mode)

1. Activate the Smart Parking Assist System

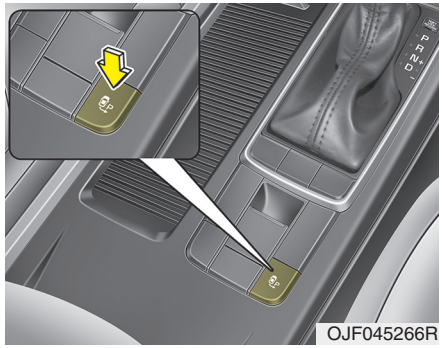
   The shift lever should be placed in D (Drive), N (Neutral, above 5kph).
2. Select parking mode
3. (Optional) Search for parking space (slowly move forward.)
4. (Optional) Search complete (automatic search by sensor.)
5. Steering wheel control
   (1) Shift according to the instruction on the LCD display.
   (2) Drive slowly with the brake pedal applied.
6. Parking complete
7. If necessary, manually adjust position of vehicle.

If the system already recognized parking space before activating the Smart Parking Assist System, you can proceed from 4stage (Search complete)

✻ NOTICE

- **Before activating the system check if the conditions are possible to use the system.**
- **For your safety, always apply the brake pedal except for when driving.**

1. Activate Smart Parking Assist System


OJF045266R

- Press the Smart Parking Assist System button (the button indicator will illuminate).
- The Parking Assist System will be activated.

  A warning sound will be heard if an obstacle is detected.
- Press the Smart Parking Assist System button again for more than 2 seconds to turn off the system.
- The Smart Parking Assist System defaults to the OFF position whenever the ignition switch is turned on.

2. Select Parking Mode

- Select parallel mode or reverse mode by pressing the Smart Parking Assist System button with the shift lever in D (Drive), N (Neutral, above 5kph) and the brake pedal depressed.
- If the system already recognized parking space before activating the Smart Parking Assist System, you can see “Parking search” or “Space found”.
- The right side parallel mode is selected automatically when the Smart Parking Assist System is activated.
- The mode changes from parallel mode (right → left) to reverse mode (right → left) whenever the Smart Parking Assist System button is pressed. (for LHD)
- The mode changes from parallel mode (left → right) to reverse mode (left → right) whenever the Smart Parking Assist System button is pressed. (for RHD)
- If the button is pressed again, the system will turn off.

3. Search for parking space (optional)

■ Right side
- Parallel parking



OJF045250L

■ Left side
- Parallel parking



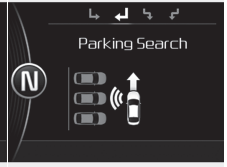
OJF045251L

■ Right side
- Reverse parking



OJF045252L

■ Left side
- Reverse parking



OJF045253L

- Slowly drive forward maintaining the distance of approximately 50cm ~ 150cm (19.6in.~59.0in.) with the parked vehicles. The side sensors will search for a parking space.
- If the vehicle speed is over 20km/h, a message will appear to notify you to reduce speed.

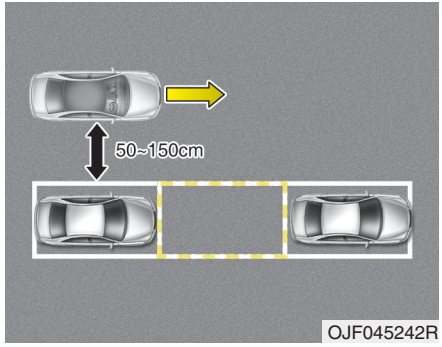
- If vehicle speed is over 30km/h, the system will be cancelled.

✻ NOTICE

- **Turn on the hazard warning flasher if it is crowded with other vehicles.**
- **If the parking lot is small, slowly drive more nearer to the parking space.**
- **The search for a parking space will be completed only when there is enough space for the vehicle to move to park.**

✻ NOTICE

- **When searching for a parking space, the system may not be able to find a parking space if there is no vehicle parked, a parking space is available after driving by or a parking space is available before driving by.**
- **The system may not operate normally in the following conditions:**
  (1) When the sensors are frozen
  (2) When the sensors are dirty
  (3) When it snows or rains heavily
  (4) When a pillar or object is near



✻ NOTICE

Slowly drive forward maintaining the distance of approximately 50cm ~ 150cm (19.6in.~59.0in.) with the parked vehicles. If it is not within the distance, the system may not be able to search for a parking space.

⚠ CAUTION

After searching for a parking space is completed, continue using the system after checking the surrounding area.

Especially, check the distance of the outside rearview mirror and objects whilst using the system to prevent careless accidents.

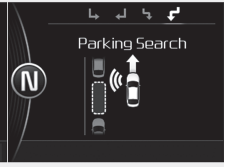
4. Recognizing parking space (optional)

■ Right side
- Parallel parking



OJF045254L

■ Left side
- Parallel parking



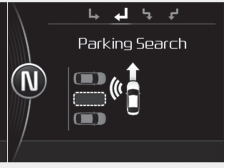
OJF045255L

■ Right side
- Reverse parking



OJF045256L

■ Left side
- Reverse parking



OJF045257L

When a parking space is found, a blank box will appear like the above picture. Drive forward slowly, then the “Shift to R” message will appear.

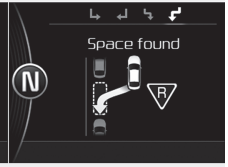
5. Search complete

■ Right side
- Parallel parking



OJF045258L

■ Left side
- Parallel parking



OJF045259L

■ Right side
- Reverse parking



OJF045260L

■ Left side
- Reverse parking



OJF045261L

Whilst driving forward to search for a parking space, the above message will appear with a beep sound if the search is complete. Stop the vehicle and shift to the R (Reverse) position.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Always drive slowly with the brake pedal applied.***
- ***If the parking space is too small the system may be cancelled at the Steering wheel control stage. Do not park your vehicle if the space is too small.***

6. Steering wheel control



OJF045345L

- The above message will appear if the shift lever is in R (Reverse). The steering wheel will be controlled automatically.
- The system will be cancelled if you firmly hold the steering wheel whilst it is controlled automatically.
- The system will be cancelled if vehicle speed is over 7km/h(4.3mph).

⚠ WARNING

Do not put your hands between the steering wheel whilst it is being automatically controlled.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Always drive slowly with the brake pedal applied.***
- ***Always check for objects around your vehicle before driving.***
- ***If the vehicle does not move even though the brake pedal is not depressed, check the surrounding before depressing the accelerator pedal. Be sure not to speed over 7km/h(4.3mph).***

✻ NOTICE

- **If you do not follow the instructions provided, you may fail to park your vehicle.**
  However, if the Parking Assist System warning sound (distance from object is within 30cm: continuous beep) occurs, slowly drive the vehicle to the reverse direction of the detected object after checking the surrounding.
- **Always check the surrounding before driving your vehicle if the Parking Assist System warning sound (distance from object is within 30cm: continuous beep) is heard for the object is close to your vehicle. If the vehicle gets too close to the object, the warning will not sound.**

To cancel the system whilst parking

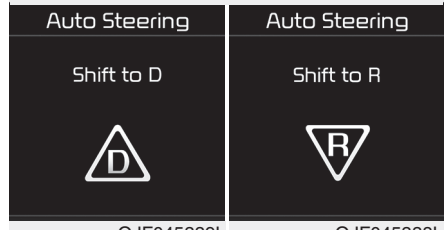
- Press the Smart Parking Assist System button and hold until the system is cancelled.
- Press long the Smart parking assist system button Whilst the system is searching for a parking space.
- Press shortly the Smart parking assist system button whilst the steering wheel is controlled.

■ Manual transaxle



OJF045337L OJF045338L

■ Automatic transaxle



OJF045339L OJF045338L

Gear shift whilst steering wheel control

When the above message appears with a beep sound, shift the gear and drive the vehicle with the brake pedal depressed.

⚠ CAUTION

Always check the surrounding before releasing the brake pedal.

⚠ WARNING

Always be careful whilst parking for other vehicles or pedestrians.

7. Smart Parking Assist System completed



OJF045340L

Complete parking your vehicle according to the instructions on the LCD display. If required, manually control the steering wheel and complete parking your vehicle.

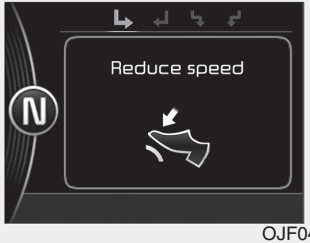
✻ NOTICE

The brake pedal must be depressed by the driver whilst parking your vehicle.

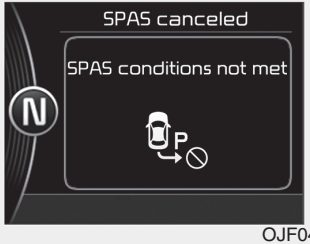
Additional instructions (messages)



OJF045341L



OJF045342L



OJF045343L

When the Smart Parking Assist System is operating, a message may appear regardless of the parking order.

The messages will appear according to the circumstances. Follow the instructions provided whilst parking your vehicle with the Smart Parking Assist System.

✻ NOTICE

- **In the below conditions the system will be cancelled. Park your vehicle manually.**
  - When the ABS is activated
  - When the TCS/ESC is turned off
- **When vehicle speed is above 20km/h whilst searching for a parking space a message "Reduce speed" will appear.**
- **In the below condition the system will not activate**
  - When the TCS/ESC is turned off

System malfunction



OJF045344L

- If there is a problem with the system, when the system is turned on, the above message will appear. Also, the indicator on the button will not light up and a beep sound will be heard 3 times.
- If there is a problem with only the Smart Parking Assist System, the Parking Assist System will operate after 2 seconds.

  If you notice any problem, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

How the system works (Exit mode)

The Exit Mode operates in the below condition:

- When vehicle speed is below 5 km/h the first time after the engine has been started.
- After parallel parking is completed with the Smart Parking Assist System.

1. Activate the Smart Parking Assist System

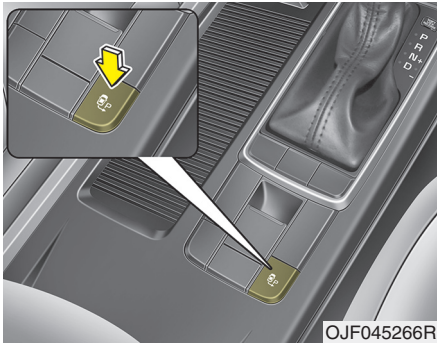
   The shift lever should be placed in P (Park) or N (Neutral).
2. Select Exit Mode
3. Check surroundings
4. Steering wheel control
   (1) Shift according to the instruction on the LCD display.
   (2) Drive slowly with the brake pedal applied.
5. Exiting complete

   If necessary, manually adjust position of vehicle.

✻ NOTICE

- **Before activating the system check if the conditions are possible to use the system.**
- **For your safety, always apply the brake pedal except for when driving.**

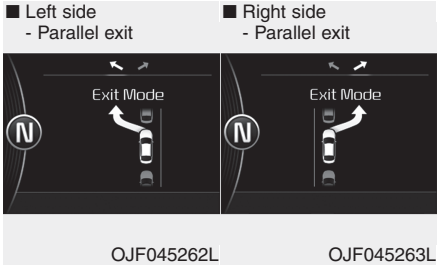
1. Activate Smart Parking Assist System


OJF045266R

- Press the Smart Parking Assist System button (the button indicator will illuminate).
- The Parking Assist System will be activated.

  A warning sound will be heard if an obstacle is detected.
- Press the Smart Parking Assist System button again for more than 2 seconds to turn off the system.
- The Smart Parking Assist System defaults to the OFF position whenever the ignition switch is turned on.

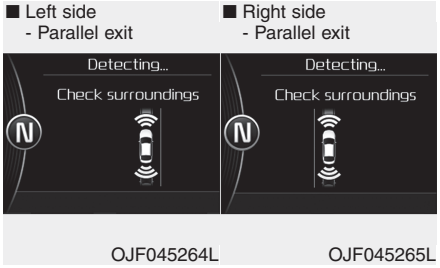
2. Select Exit Mode



OJF045262L OJF045263L

- Select the mode by pressing the Smart Parking Assist System button with the shift lever in P (Park) or N (Neutral) and the brake pedal depressed.
- For LHD vehicle, the left side parallel mode is select-ed automatically when the Smart Parking Assist System is activated.
- For RHD vehicle, to select the right side parallel mode press the Smart Parking Assist System button once more.
- If the button is pressed again, the system will turn off.

3. Check surroundings



OJF045264L OJF045265L

The Smart Parking Assist System checks the front and rear space to exit the vehicle from the parking space.

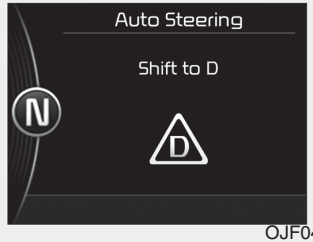
✻ NOTICE

- **When checking surroundings, if the front or rear vehicle (or object) is too near, the system may not work properly.**
- **The system may not operate normally in the following conditions:**
  (1) When the sensors are frozen
  (2) When the sensors are dirty
  (3) When it snows or rains heavily
  (4) When a pillar or object is near
- **When exiting the parking space if an obstacle is detected that may cause an accident, the system may cancel.**
- **If the space is too small to exit the system may cancel.**

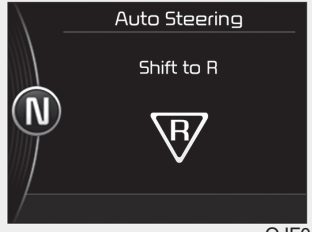
⚠ CAUTION

- ***If searching surroundings is completed, continue using the system after checking the surrounding area.***
- ***The Exit mode may be activated unintentionally, when the shift lever is in P (Park) or N (Neutral) if the Smart parking assist system button is pressed.***

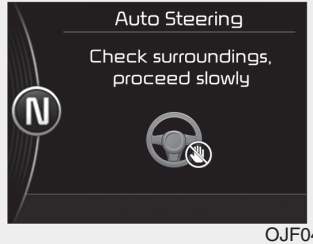
4. Steering wheel control



OJF045339L



OJF045338L



OJF045345L

- The above message will appear if the shift lever is in D (Drive) or R (Reverse) according to the distance of the front and rear object from the sensor.

  The steering wheel will be controlled automatically.
- The system will be cancelled if you firmly hold the steering wheel whilst it is controlled automatically.
- The system will be cancelled if vehicle speed is over 7km/h (4.3mph).

⚠ WARNING

Do not put your hands between the steering wheel whilst it is being automatically controlled.

To cancel the system whilst exiting

Press the Parking Assist System or Smart Parking Assist System button.

⚠ CAUTION

Always drive slowly with the brake pedal applied.

5. Exiting Complete



OJF045346L

When assisting the driver exit the parking space is completed the above message will appear.

Turn the steering wheel to the direction you are leaving and manually control the steering wheel whilst leaving the parking space.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***When leaving the parking space turn the steering wheel as much as you can to the direction you are leaving, and then drive the vehicle slowly by depressing the vehicle.***
- ***Always check the surrounding before driving your vehicle if the Parking Assist System warning sound is continuously heard.***
- ***The system will be cancelled for safety reasons if the vehicle is parked at a small space near a wall.***

Additional instructions (messages)



OJF045341L



OJF045343L

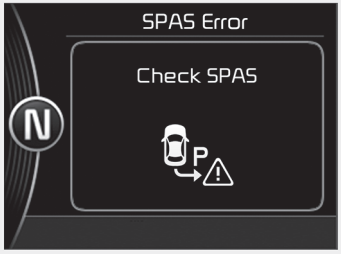
When the Smart Parking Assist System is operating, a message may appear regardless of the exiting order.

The messages will appear according to the circumstances. Follow the instructions provided whilst parking your vehicle with the Smart Parking Assist System.

✻ NOTICE

- **In the below conditions the system will be cancelled. Park your vehicle manually.**
  - When the ABS is activated
  - When the TCS/ESC is turned off
- **In the below condition the system will not activate**
  - When the TCS/ESC is turned off

System malfunction



OJF045344L

- If there is a problem with the system, when the system is turned on, the above message will appear.

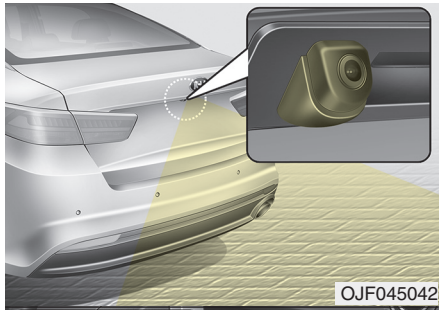
  Also, the indicator on the button will not light up and a beep sound will be heard 3 times.
- If there is a problem with only the Smart Parking Assist System, the Parking Assist System will operate after 2 seconds.

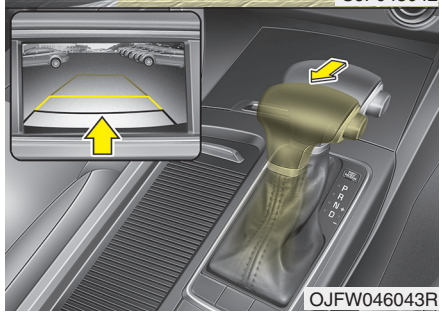
If you notice any problem, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

The system may not work properly by providing incorrect messages when the sensors are interfered by other vehicle sensors and noise, or it is on a road that interferes with receiving signals.

REARVIEW CAMERA (IF EQUIPPED)





The rearview camera will activate when the back-up light is ON with the ignition switch ON and the shift lever in the R (Reverse) position.

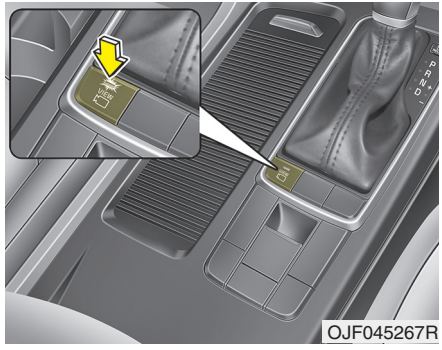
This system is a supplemental system that shows behind the vehicle through the rearview display mirror whilst backing-up.

⚠ WARNING

- **This system is a supplementary function only. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the inside/outside rearview mirror and the area behind the vehicle before and whilst backing up because there is a dead zone that can't be seen by the camera.**
- **Always keep the camera lens clean. If lens is covered with foreign matter, the camera may not operate normally.**

❈ If your vehicle is equipped with AVN(Audio, Video and Navigation) system, rearview display will show behind the vehicle through the AVN monitor whilst backing-up. Refer to a separately supplied manual for detailed information.

SURROUND VIEW MONITORING SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



This is the parking support system to show around circumstance when you park the vehicle in monitor. When you push the button in [ON] position, it is operated. To cancel the system, push again.

Operating conditions

- When ignition is ON
- When the transaxle is on D, N or R
- When the vehicle speed is not over 15 km/h (9 mph)

- When the vehicle speed is over 15 km/h (9 mph), the SVM system is turned off. If the vehicle speed is not over 15 km/h (9 mph) after turning off the SVM by over speed, the SVM is not turned on. To operate again, push the button.
- When the vehicle moves backwards, regardless of On/Off of button and vehicle speed, the SVM is operated.
- When the trunk (tailgate) and driver/passenger door are opened and the outside mirror is folded, the warning is illuminated in SVM system.
- If the SVM system is not normally operated, we recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.

* SVM : Surround View Monitoring

LIGHTING

Battery saver function

- The purpose of this feature is to prevent the battery from being discharged. The system automatically turns off the parking lights when the driver removes the ignition key and opens the driver-side door.
- With this feature, the parking lights will turn off automatically if the driver parks on the side of the road at night.

  If necessary, to keep the lights on when the ignition key is removed, perform the following:

  1) Open the driver-side door.
  2) Turn the parking lights OFF and ON again using the light switch on the steering column.

⚠ CAUTION

If the driver gets out of the vehicle through other doors (except driver's door), the battery saver function does not operate. Therefore, It causes the battery to be discharged. In this case, make sure to turn off the lamp before getting out of the vehicle.

Headlight escort function (if equipped)

If you turn the ignition switch to the ACC or OFF position with the headlights ON, the headlights remain on for about 5 minutes. However, if the driver's door is opened and closed, the headlights are turned off after 15 seconds.

The headlights can be turned off by pressing the lock button on the transmitter (or smart key) twice or turning the light switch to the OFF position.

Daytime running light (if equipped)

The Daytime Running Lights (DRL) can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day. DRL can be helpful in many different driving conditions, and it is especially helpful after dawn and before sunset.

The DRL system will turn the dedicated lamp OFF when:

1. The headlight or fog lamp switch is ON.
2. The engine is OFF.

Smart cornering lamp (if equipped)

Whilst driving the corner, for your sight and safety, the smart cornering lamp is turned on automatically. The system will operate automatically as follows.

- When turning the headlight on
- When the angle of steering wheel is over 25~35 (it is differed from vehicle speed)
- When the vehicle speed is over 3 km/h
- When driving forward

❋ Traffic Change (For Europe)

The low beam light distribution is asymmetric. If you go abroad to a country with opposite traffic direction, this asymmetric part will dazzle oncoming car driver. To prevent dazzle, ECE regulation demand several technical solutions (ex. automatic change system, adhesive sheet, down aiming). This headlamps are designed to adjust in user setting mode in cluster.

Lighting control

■ Type A



OUM044053L

■ Type B



OUM044053R

The light switch has a Headlight and a Parking light position.

To operate the lights, turn the knob at the end of the control lever to one of the following positions:

(1) OFF position

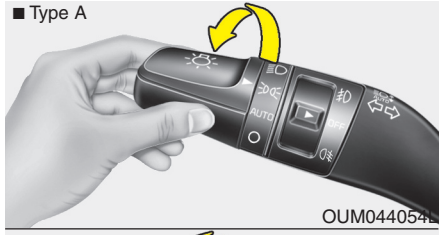
(2) Auto light / AFLS position

(3) Parking light position

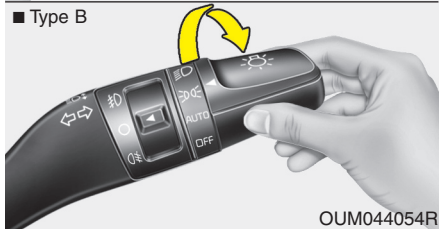
(4) Headlight position

Parking light position ( )

■ Type A



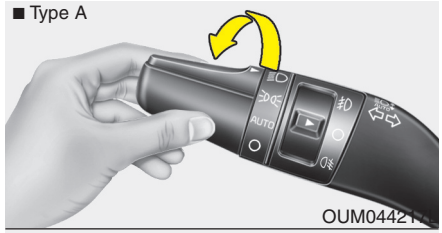
■ Type B



When the light switch is in the parking light position (3rd position), the tail, license and instrument panel lights will turn ON.

Headlight position ( )

■ Type A



■ Type B



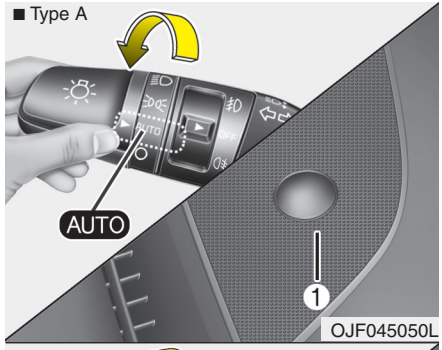
When the light switch is in the headlight position (4th position), the head, tail, license and instrument panel lights will turn ON.

✻ NOTICE

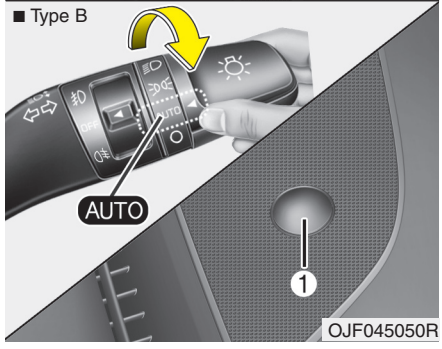
The ignition switch must be in the ON position to turn on the headlights.

Auto light/AFLS position (if equipped)

■ Type A



■ Type B



When the light switch is in the AUTO light position, the taillights and headlights will be turned ON or OFF automatically depending on the amount of light outside the vehicle.

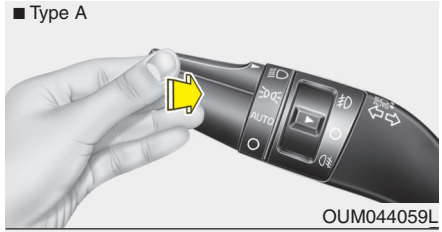
If your vehicle is equipped with the adaptive front lighting system (AFLS), it will also operate when the headlamp is ON.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Never place anything over the sensor (1) located on the instrument panel. This will ensure better auto-light system control.***
- ***Don't clean the sensor using a window cleaner. The cleaner may leave a light film which could interfere with sensor operation.***
- ***If your vehicle has window tint or other types of metallic coating on the front windscreen, the Auto light system may not work properly.***

High beam operation

■ Type A



OUM044059L

■ Type B



OUM044059R

To turn on the high beam headlamp, push the lever away from you. The lever will return to its original position.

The high beam indicator will light when the headlight high beams are switched on.

To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the lights on for a prolonged time whilst the engine is not running.

⚠ WARNING

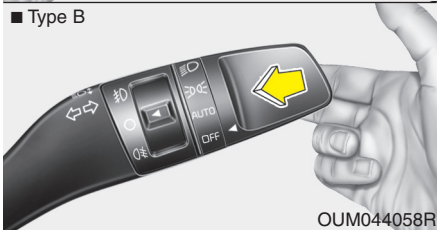
Do not use high beam when there are other vehicles. Using high beam could obstruct the other driver's vision.

■ Type A



OUM044058L

■ Type B

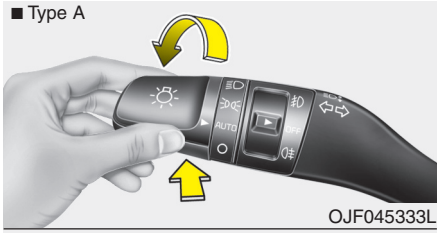


OUM044058R

To flash the headlights, pull the lever towards you. It will return to the normal (low beam) position when released. The headlight switch does not need to be on to use this flashing feature.

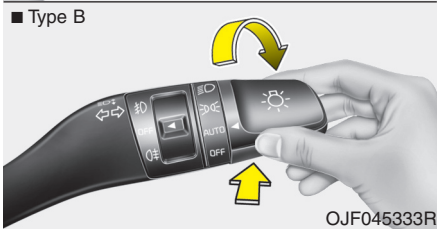
High Beam Assist (if equipped)

■ Type A



OJF045333L

■ Type B



OJF045333R

The High Beam Assist is a system that automatically adjusts the headlamp range (switches between high beam and low beam) according to the brightness of other vehicles and road conditions.

Operating condition

1. Place the light switch in the AUTO position.
2. Turn on the high beam by pushing the lever away from you.

   The High Beam Assist (AUTO) indicator will illuminate.
3. The High Beam Assist will turn on when vehicle speed is above 45kph (28mph).
   - If the lever is pushed away when the High Beam Assist is operating, the High Beam Assist will turn off and the high beam will be on continuously. The High Beam Assist (AUTO) indicator will turn off.
   - If the lever is pulled towards you when the high beam is on with operating High Beam Assist, the High Beam Assist will turn off.
4. If the light switch is placed to the headlamp position, the High Beam Assist will turn off and the low beam will be on continuously.

The high beam switches to low beam in the below conditions.

- When the High Beam Assist is off.
- When the light switch is not in the AUTO position.
- When the headlamp is detected from the on-coming vehicle.
- When the tail lamp is detected from the front vehicle.
- When the surrounding is bright enough high beams are not needed.
- When streetlights or other lights are detected.
- When vehicle speed is below 35km/h (22 mph).
- When headlamp / taillamp of bicycle/motorcycle is detected.

⚠ CAUTION

The system may not operate normally in the below conditions.

- ***When the light from the on-coming or front vehicle is not detected because of lamp damage, hidden from sight, etc.***
- ***When the lamp of the on-coming or front vehicle is covered with dust, snow or water.***
- ***When the light from the on-coming or front vehicle is not detected because of exhaust fume, smoke, fog, snow, etc.***
- ***When the front window is covered with foreign matters such as ice, dust, fog, or is damaged.***
- ***When there is a similar shape lamp with the front vehicle's lamps.***
- ***When it is hard to see because of fog, heavy rain or snow.***
- ***When the headlamp is not repaired or replaced at an authorised dealer.***

(continued)

(continued)

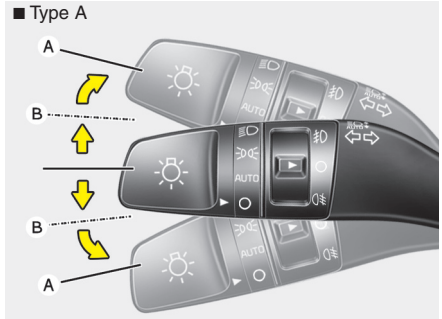
- *When headlamp aiming is not properly adjusted.*
- *When driving on a narrow curved road or rough road.*
- *When driving downhill or uphill.*
- *When only part of the vehicle in front is visible on a crossroad or curved road.*
- *When there is a traffic light, reflecting sign, flashing sign or mirror.*
- *When the road conditions are bad such as being wet or covered with snow.*
- *When the front vehicle's headlamps are off but the fog lamps on.*
- *When a vehicle suddenly appears from a curve.*
- *When the vehicle is tilted from a flat tyre or being towed.*
- *When the LDWS (lane departure warning system) or LKAS (Lane keeping assist system) warning light illuminates. (if equipped)*

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not place any accessories, stickers or tint the windscreen.**
- **Have the windscreen glass replaced from an authorised dealer.**
- **Do not remove or impact related parts of the High Beam Assist system.**
- **Be careful that water doesn't get into the High Beam Assist unit.**
- **Do not place objects on the dashboard that reflects light such as mirrors, white paper, etc. The system may malfunction if sunlight is reflected.**
- **At times, the Smart High Beam system may not work properly, always check the road conditions for your safety. When the system does not operate normally, manually change between the high beam and low beam.**

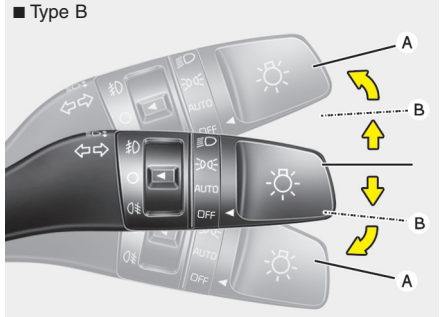
Turn signals and lane change signals

■ Type A



OUM044060L

■ Type B



OUM044060R

The ignition switch must be on for the turn signals to function. To turn on the turn signals, move the lever up or down (A). The green arrow indicators on the instrument panel indicate which turn signal is operating. They will self-cancel after a turn is completed. If the indicator continues to flash after a turn, manually return the lever to the OFF position.

To signal a lane change, move the turn signal lever slightly and hold it in position (B). The lever will return to the OFF position when released.

If an indicator stays on and does not flash or if it flashes abnormally, one of the turn signal bulbs may be burned out and will require replacement.

One-touch lane change function (if equipped)

To activate an one-touch lane change function, move the turn signal lever slightly for less than 0.7 second and then release it. The lane change signals will blink 3 times.

✻ NOTICE

If an indicator flash is abnormally quick or slow, a bulb may be burned out or have a poor electrical connection in the circuit.

Front fog light (if equipped)

■ Type A



OUM044061L

■ Type B



OUM044061R

Fog lights are used to provide improved visibility when visibility is poor due to fog, rain or snow, etc. The fog lights will turn on when the fog light switch (1) is turned on after the parklight is turned on.

To turn off the fog lights, turn the fog light switch (1) to the OFF position.

⚠ CAUTION

When in operation, the fog lights consume large amounts of vehicle electrical power. Only use the fog lights when visibility is poor.

Rear fog light (if equipped)

■ Type A



OUM044329L

■ Type B



OUM044329R

To turn the rear fog lights on, turn the headlight switch to the headlight on position and turn the rear fog light switch (1) to the on position.

The rear fog lights turn on when the rear fog light switch is turned on after the front fog light switch is turned on and the headlight switch is in the parklight position.

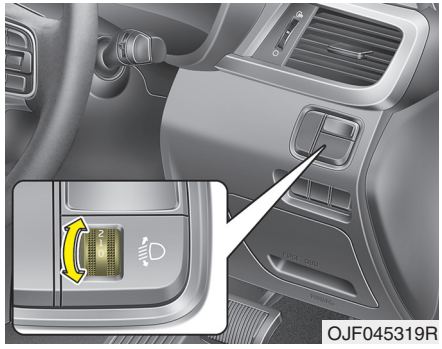
To turn the rear fog lights off, turn the rear fog light switch to the on position again or turn the headlight switch off.

✻ NOTICE

To turn on the rear fog light switch, the ignition switch must be in the ON position.

Headlight levelling device (if equipped)

Manual type



To adjust the headlight beam level according to the number of passengers and loading weight in the luggage area, turn the beam levelling switch.

The higher the number of the switch position, the lower the headlight beam level. Always keep the headlight beam at the proper levelling position, or headlights may dazzle other road users.

Listed below are the examples of proper switch settings. For loading conditions other than those listed below, adjust the switch position so that the beam level may be the nearest as the condition obtained according to the list.

Loading condition	Switch position
Driver only	0
Driver + Front passenger	0
Full passengers (including driver)	1
Full passengers (including driver) + Maximum permissible loading	2
Driver + Maximum permissible loading	3

Automatic type

It automatically adjusts the headlight beam level according to the number of passengers and loading weight in the luggage area.

And it offers proper headlight beam under various conditions.

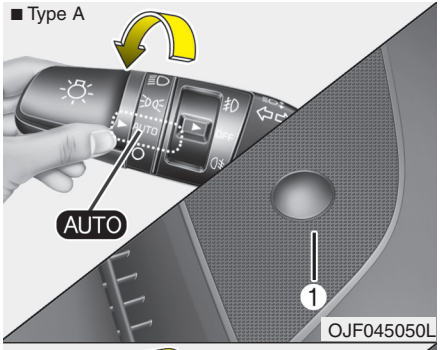
⚠ WARNING

If it does not work properly even though your car is inclined backward according to passenger's posture, or the headlight beam is irradiated to the high or low position, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

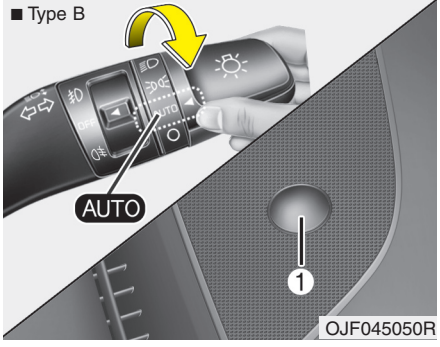
Do not attempt to inspect or replace the wiring yourself.

AFLS (Adaptive Front Lighting System) (if equipped)

■ Type A



■ Type B



Adaptive front lighting system uses the steering angle and vehicle speed, to keep your field of vision wide by swiveling and levelling the headlamp.

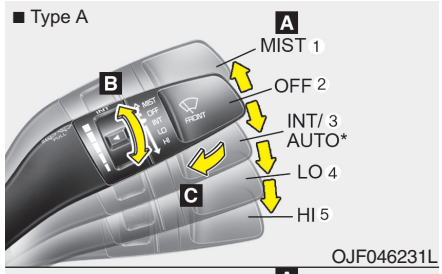
Change the switch to the AUTO position when the engine is running. The adaptive front lighting system will operate when the headlamp is ON. To turn off the AFLS, change the switch to other positions. After turning the AFLS off, headlamp swiveling no longer occurs, but levelling operates continuously.

If the AFLS malfunction indicator comes on, the AFLS is not working properly. Drive to the nearest safe location and restart the engine. If the indicator continuously remains on, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

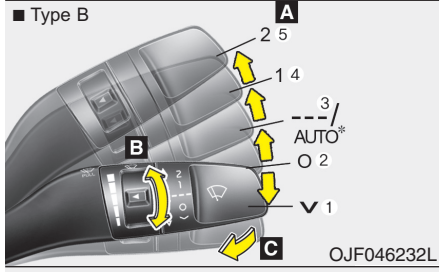
WIPERS AND WASHERS

Windscreen wiper/washer

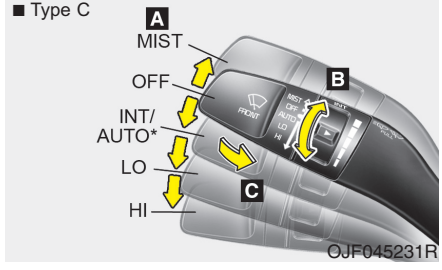
■ Type A



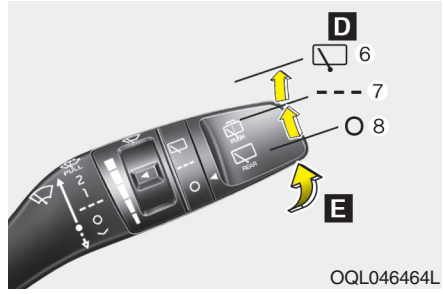
■ Type B



■ Type C



Rear window wiper / washer (wagon)



A : Wiper speed control (front)

(1) MIST/ ∨ – Single wipe
(2) OFF / O – Off
(3) INT / --- – Intermittent wipe
AUTO* – Auto control wipe
(4) LO / 1 – Low wiper speed
(5) HI / 2 – High wiper speed

B : Intermittent control wipe time adjustment

C : Wash with brief wipes (front)*

D : Rear wiper/washer control*

(6) HI / – Continuous wipe
(7) LO / --- – Intermittent wipe*
(8) OFF / O – Off

E : Wash with brief wipes (rear)*

* if equipped

Windscreen wipers

Operates as follows when the ignition switch is turned ON.

(1) MIST/ ∨ : For a single wiping cycle, move the lever to this (MIST/ ∨) position and release it. The wipers will operate continuously if the lever is held in this position.

(2) OFF / O : Wiper is not in operation

(3) INT / --- : Wiper operates intermittently at the same wiping intervals. Use this mode in light rain or mist. To vary the speed setting, turn the speed control knob.

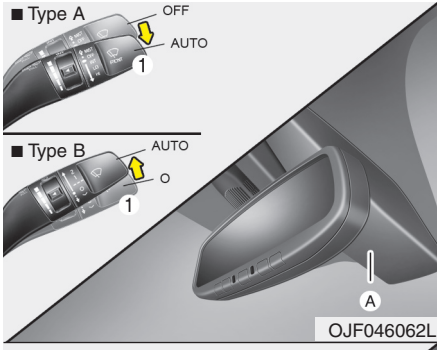
(4) LO / 1 : Normal wiper speed

(5) HI / 2 : Fast wiper speed

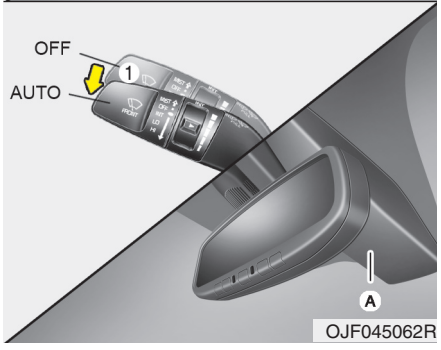
✻ NOTICE

If there is heavy accumulation of snow or ice on the windscreen, defrost the windscreen for about 10 minutes, or until the snow and/or ice is removed before using the windscreen wipers to ensure proper operation. If you do not remove the snow and/or ice before using the wiper and wash-er, it may damage the Wiper and washer system.

Auto control (if equipped)



OJF046062L



OJF045062R

The rain sensor (A) located on the upper end of the windscreen glass senses the amount of rainfall and controls the wiping cycle for the proper interval. The more it rains, the faster the wiper operates. When the rain stops, the wiper stops.

To vary the speed setting, turn the speed control knob (1).

If the wiper switch is set in AUTO mode when the ignition switch is ON, the wiper will operate once to perform a self-check of the system. Set the wiper to OFF (O) position when the wiper is not in use.

⚠ CAUTION

When the ignition switch is ON and the windscreen wiper switch is placed in the AUTO mode, use caution in the following situations to avoid any injury to the hands or other parts of the body:

- ***Do not touch the upper end of the windscreen glass facing the rain sensor.***
- ***Do not wipe the upper end of the windscreen glass with a damp or wet cloth.***
- ***Do not put pressure on the windscreen glass.***

⚠ CAUTION

- ***When washing the vehicle, set the wiper switch in the OFF (O) position to stop the auto wiper operation.***

  The wiper may operate and be damaged if the switch is set in the AUTO mode whilst washing the vehicle.
- ***Do not remove the sensor cover located on the upper end of the driver side windscreen glass. Damage to system parts could occur and may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.***
- ***When starting the vehicle in winter, set the wiper switch in the OFF (O) position. Otherwise, wipers may operate and ice may damage the windscreen wiper blades. Always remove all snow and ice and defrost the windscreen properly prior to operating the windscreen wipers.***

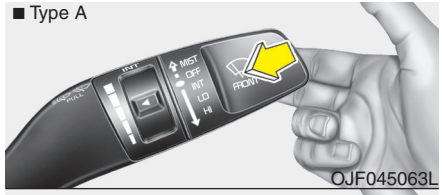
(Continued)

(Continued)

- ***When tinting the windscreen, be careful of any fluid getting into the sensor located in the top centre of the front windscreen. It may damage the related parts.***

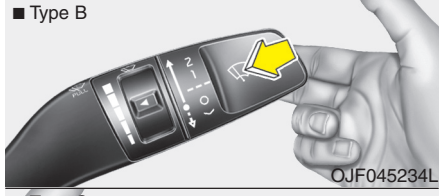
Windscreen washers

■ Type A



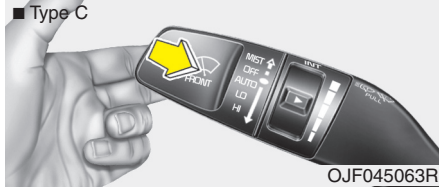
OJF045063L

■ Type B



OJF045234L

■ Type C



OJF045063R

In the OFF (O) position, pull the lever gently toward you to spray washer fluid on the windscreen and to run the wipers 1-3 cycles.

Use this function when the windscreen is dirty.

The spray and wiper operation will continue until you release the lever.

If the washer does not work, check the washer fluid level. If the fluid level is not sufficient, you will need to add appropriate non-abrasive windscreen washer fluid to the washer reservoir.

The reservoir filler neck is located in the front of the engine compartment on the driver side.

⚠ CAUTION

To prevent possible damage to the washer pump, do not operate the washer when the fluid reservoir is empty.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use the washer in freezing temperatures without first warming the windscreen with the defrosters; the washer solution could freeze on the windscreen and obscure your vision.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***To prevent possible damage to the wipers or windscreen, do not operate the wipers when the windscreen is dry.***
- ***To prevent damage to the wiper blades, do not use petrol, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.***
- ***To prevent damage to the wiper arms and other components, do not attempt to move the wipers manually.***
- ***To prevent possible damage to the wipers and washer system, use anti-freezing washer fluids in the winter season or cold weather.***

Headlight washer (if equipped)

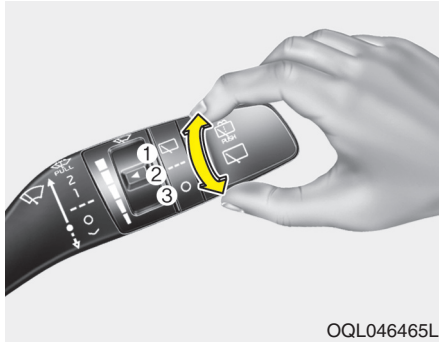
If your vehicle is equipped with the headlight washer it will operate at the same time when you operate the windscreen washer. However, if this function is operated once, the headlight washer will not operate within 15 minutes. It will operate when the headlight is ON and the ignition switch or engine start/stop button is in the ON position.

The washer fluid will be sprayed on to the headlights.

✻ NOTICE

- **Check the headlight washers periodically to confirm that the washer fluid is being sprayed properly onto the headlight lenses.**
- **The headlight washer can be operated 15 minutes after being operated last time.**

Rear window wiper and washer switch



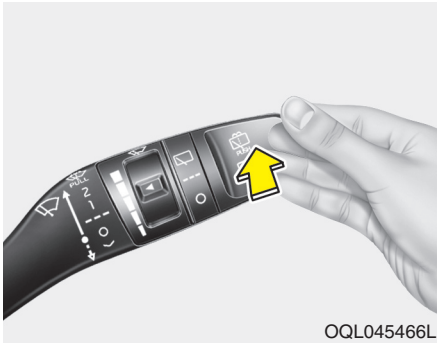
OQL046465L

The rear window wiper and washer switch is located at the end of the wiper and washer switch lever. Turn the switch to the desired position to operate the rear wiper and washer.

(1) HI / ▽ - Normal wiper operation

(2) LO / --- - Intermittent wiper operation (if equipped)

(3) OFF / O - Wiper is not in operation



Push the lever away from you to spray rear washer fluid and to run the rear wipers 1~3 cycles. The spray and wiper operation will continue until you release the lever.

INTERIOR LIGHT

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use the interior lights for extended periods when the engine is not running.

It may cause battery discharge.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use the interior lights when driving in the dark. Accidents could happen because the view may be obscured by interior lights.

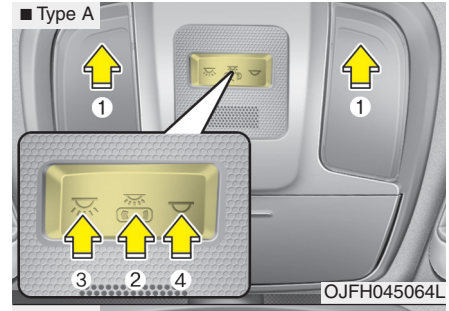
Automatic turn off function (if equipped)

The interior lights automatically turn off approximately 20 minutes after the ignition switch is turned off.

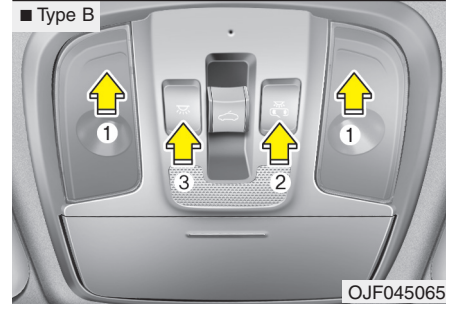
If your vehicle is equipped with the theft alarm system, the interior lights automatically turns off approximately 3 seconds after the system is armed stage.

Map lamp

■ Type A



■ Type B



• (2) :

- The map lamp and room lamp comes on when a door is opened. The lamps go out after approximately 30 seconds.
- The map lamp and room lamp comes on for approximately 30 seconds when doors are unlocked with a transmitter or smart key as long as the doors are not opened.
- The map lamp and room lamp will stay on for approximately 20 minutes if a door is opened with the ignition switch in the ACC or LOCK/OFF position.
- The map lamp and room lamp will stay on continuously if the door is opened with the ignition switch in the ON position.
- The map lamp and room lamp will go out immediately if the ignition switch is changed to the ON position or all doors are locked.
- To turn off the DOOR mode, press the DOOR button (2) once again (not pressed).

✻ NOTICE

The DOOR mode and ROOM mode can not be selected at a time.

Front Room Lamp:

• Type A

(3): Press this switch to turn the front and rear room lamps on.

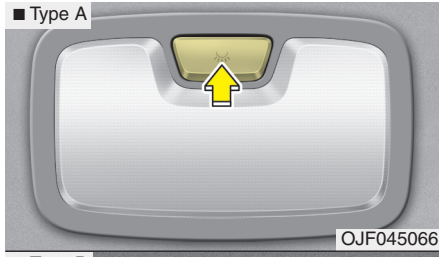
(4): Press this switch to turn the front and rear room lamps off.

• Type B

(3): Press this switch to turn the front and rear room lamps on and off.

Room lamp

■ Type A



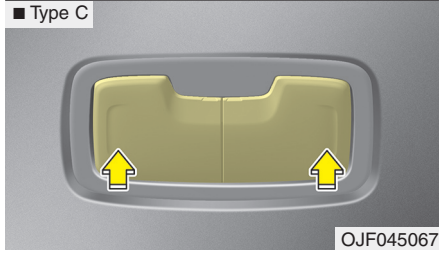
OJF045066

■ Type B



OJF045068

■ Type C

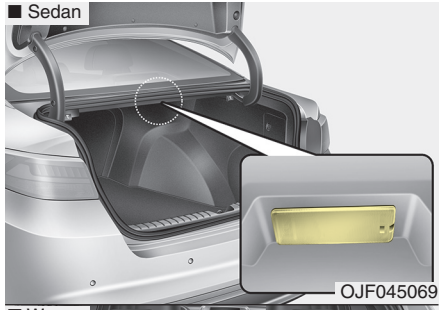


OJF045067

• : The light stays on at all times.

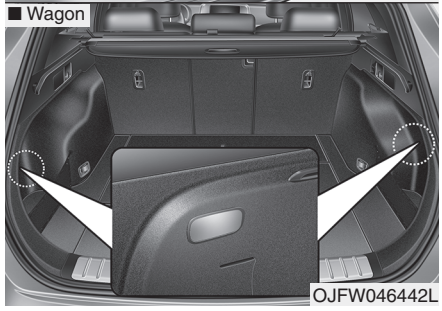
Trunk (tailgate) room lamp (if equipped)

■ Sedan



OJF045069

■ Wagon



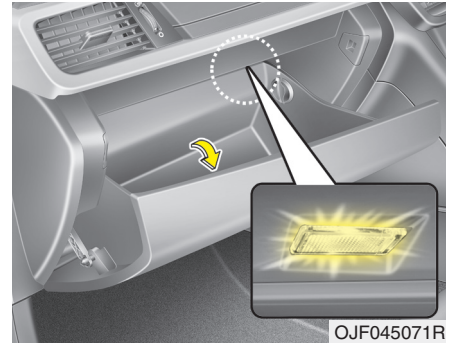
OJFW046442L

The trunk (tailgate) room lamp comes on when the trunk (tailgate) is opened.

⚠ CAUTION

The trunk (tailgate) room lamp comes on as long as the trunk (tailgate) lid opens. To prevent unnecessary charging system drain, close the trunk lid securely after using the trunk (tailgate) room.

Glove box lamp



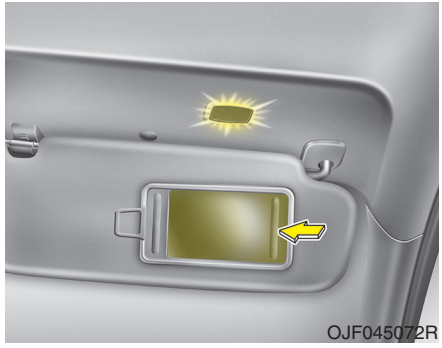
OJF045071R

The glove box lamp comes on when the glove box is opened.

⚠ CAUTION

To prevent unnecessary charging system drain, close the glove box securely after using the glove box.

Vanity mirror lamp (if equipped)

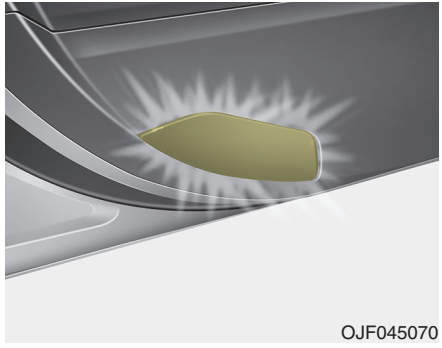

OJF045072R

Opening the lid of the vanity mirror will automatically turn on the mirror light.

⚠ CAUTION - Vanity mirror lamp

Always have the switch in the off position when the vanity mirror lamp is not in use. If the sunvisor is closed without the lamp off, it may discharge the battery or damage the sunvisor.

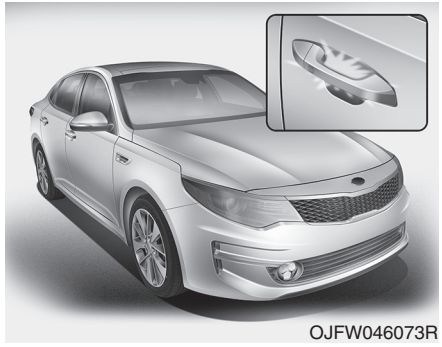
Door courtesy lamp (if equipped)


OJF045070

The door courtesy lamp comes ON when the door is opened to assist entering or exiting the vehicle. It also serves as a warning to passing vehicles that the vehicle door is open.

WELCOME SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

Welcome light (if equipped)



OJFW046073R

When all the doors (and trunk (tailgate)) are locked and closed, the room lamp will come on for about 15 seconds if any of the below is performed.

- Without smart key system
  - When the door unlock button is pressed on the transmitter.
- With the smart key system
  - When the vehicle is approached with the smart key in possession.

Escort welcome (if equipped)

When the headlight (light switch in the headlight or AUTO position) is on and all doors (and trunk (tailgate)) are locked and closed, the position light and headlight will come on for 15 seconds if any of the below is performed.

- Without smart key system
  - When the door unlock button is pressed on the transmitter.
- With the smart key system
  - When the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key.

At this time, if you press the door lock or unlock button, the position light and headlight will turn off immediately.

Interior light

When the interior light switch is in the DOOR position and all doors (and trunk (tailgate)) are locked and closed, the room lamp will come on for 30 seconds if any of the below is performed.

- Without smart key system
  - When the door unlock button is pressed on the transmitter.
- With the smart key system
  - When the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key.
  - When the button of the outside door handle is pressed.

At this time, if you press the door lock or unlock button, the room lamp will turn off immediately.

DEFROSTER

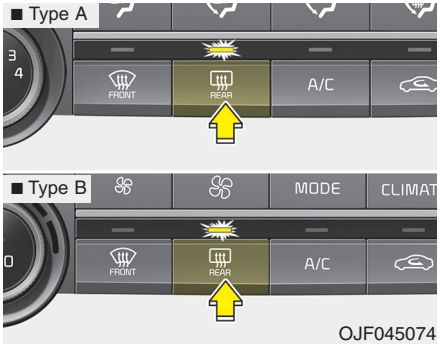
⚠ CAUTION

To prevent damage to the conductors bonded to the inside surface of the rear window, never use sharp instruments or window cleaners containing abrasives to clean the window.

✻ NOTICE

If you want to defrost and defog the front windscreen, refer to "Windscreen defrosting and defogging" in this section.

Rear window defroster



The defroster heats the window to remove frost, fog and thin ice from the rear window, whilst the engine is running.

To activate the rear window defroster, press the rear window defroster button located in the centre facia switch panel. The indicator on the rear window defroster button illuminates when the defroster is ON.

If there is heavy accumulation of snow on the rear window, brush it off before operating the rear defroster.

The rear window defroster automatically turns off after approximately 20 minutes or when the ignition switch is turned off. To turn off the defroster, press the rear window defroster button again.

Outside rearview mirror defroster (if equipped)

If your vehicle is equipped with the outside rearview mirror defrosters, they will operate at the same time you turn on the rear window defroster.

Wiper deicer (if equipped)

If your vehicle is equipped with the wiper deicer, it will operate at the same time you turn on the rear window defroster.

CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM

System operation

Ventilation

1. Set the mode to the position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.

Heating

1. Set the mode to the position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
5. If dehumidified heating is desired, turn the air conditioning system (if equipped) on.

Operation Tips

- To keep dust or unpleasant fumes from entering the vehicle through the ventilation system, temporarily set the air intake control to the recirculated air position. Be sure to return the control to the fresh air position when the irritation has passed to keep fresh air in the vehicle. This will help keep the driver alert and comfortable.
- Air for the heating/cooling system is drawn in through the grilles just ahead of the windscreen. Care should be taken that these are not blocked by leaves, snow, ice or other obstructions.
- To prevent interior fog on the windscreen, set the air intake control to the fresh air position and fan speed to the desired position, turn on the air conditioning system, and adjust the temperature control to desired temperature.
- If the windscreen fogs up, set the mode to the or position.

⚠ CAUTION

Operating the blower when the ignition switch is in the ON position could cause the battery to discharge. Operate the blower when the engine is running.

Air conditioning

Kia air conditioning systems are filled with R-134a or R-1234yf refrigerant.

1. Start the engine. Push the air conditioning button.
2. Set the mode to the position.
3. Set the air intake control to the outside air or recirculated air position.
4. Adjust the fan speed control and temperature control to maintain maximum comfort.

Your vehicle is filled with R-134a or R-1234yf according to the regulation in your country at the time of production. You can find out which air conditioning refrigerant is applied to your vehicle on the label located inside of the bonnet. Refer to chapter 9 for the location of the air conditioning refrigerant label.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***The refrigerant system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians to insure proper and safe operation.***
- ***The refrigerant system should be serviced in a well-ventilated place.***
- ***The air conditioning evaporator (cooling coil) shall never be repaired or replaced with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle and new replacement MAC evaporators shall be certified (and labeled) as meeting SAE Standard J2842.***

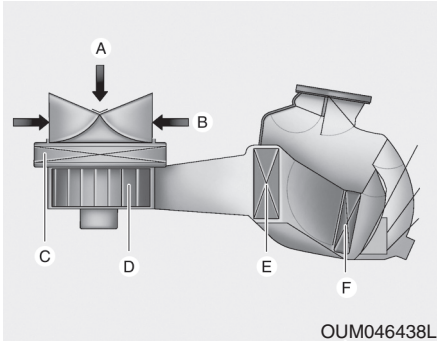
✻ NOTICE

- **When using the air conditioning system, monitor the temperature gauge closely whilst driving up hills or in heavy traffic when outside temperatures are high. Air conditioning system operation may cause engine overheating. Continue to use the blower fan but turn the air conditioning system off if the temperature gauge indicates engine overheating.**
- **When opening the windows in humid weather air conditioning may create water droplets inside the vehicle. Since excessive water droplets may cause damage to electrical equipment, air conditioning should only be used with the windows closed.**

Air conditioning system operation tips

- If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows for a short time to let the hot air inside the vehicle escape.
- Use air conditioning to reduce humidity and moisture inside the vehicle on rainy or humid days.
- During air conditioning system operation, you may occasionally notice a slight change in engine speed as the air conditioning compressor cycles. This is a normal system operation characteristic.
- Use the air conditioning system every month only for a few minutes to ensure maximum system performance.
- When using the air conditioning system, you may notice clear water dripping (or even puddling) on the ground under the passenger side of the vehicle. This is a normal system operation characteristic.
- Operating the air conditioning system in the recirculated air position provides maximum cooling, however, continual operation in this mode may cause the air inside the vehicle to become stale.
- During cooling operation, you may occasionally notice a misty air flow because of rapid cooling and humid air intake. This is a normal system operation characteristic.

Climate control air filter



OUM046438L

A : Outside air
B : Recirculated air
C : Climate control air filter
D : Blower
E : Evaporator core
F : Heater core

The climate control air filter installed behind the glove box filters the dust or other pollutants that come into the vehicle from the outside through the heating and air conditioning system.

If dust or other pollutants accumulate in the filter over a period of time, the air flow from the air vents may decrease, resulting in moisture accumulation on the inside of the windscreen even when the outside (fresh) air position is selected. If this happens, we recommend that the climate control air filter be replaced by an authorised Kia dealer.

✻ NOTICE

- **Replace the filter according to the Maintenance Schedule.**
  If the car is being driven in severe conditions such as dusty, rough roads, more frequent climate control air filter inspections and changes are required.
- **When the air flow rate suddenly decreases, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.**

Air Conditioning refrigerant label

Example

■ Type A



OUM066034L

■ Type B



OUM066035L

❊ The actual Air Conditioning refrigerant label in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Each symbols and specification on air conditioning refrigerant label means as below ;

1. Classification of refrigerant
2. Amount of refrigerant
3. Classification of Compressor lubricant

You can find out which air conditioning refrigerant is applied your vehicle at the label inside of the engine room.

Refer to chapter 9 for more detail location of air conditioning refrigerant label.

Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant

When the amount of refrigerant is low, the performance of the air conditioning is reduced. Overfilling also has a bad influence on the air conditioning system.

Therefore, if abnormal operation is found, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING - Vehicles equipped with R-134a



Because the refrigerant is at very high pressure, the air conditioning system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians. It is important that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant is used.

Otherwise, it may cause damage to the vehicle and personal injury.

⚠ WARNING - Vehicles equipped with R-1234yf





Because the refrigerant is mildly inflammable and at very high pressure, the air conditioning system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians. It is important that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant is used.

Otherwise, it may cause damage to the vehicle and personal injury.

Manual climate control system (if equipped)

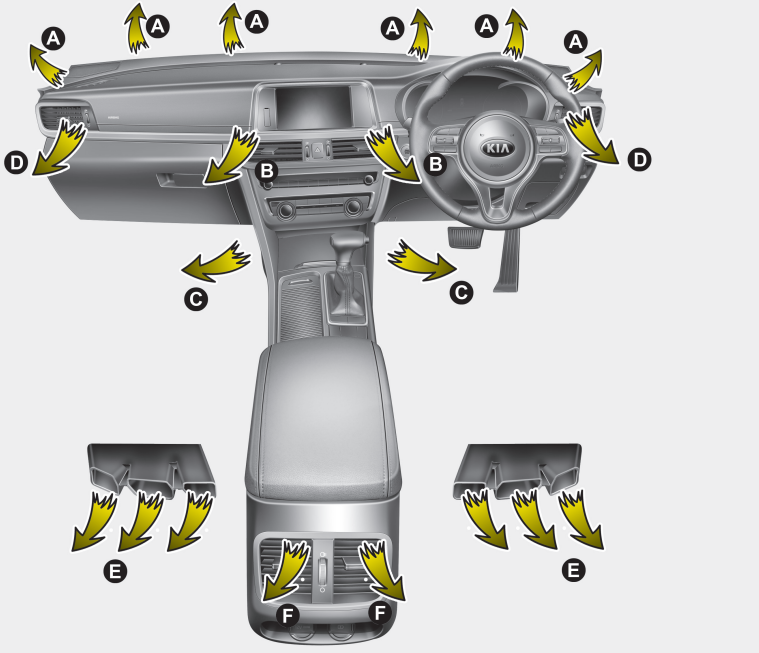


System Overview

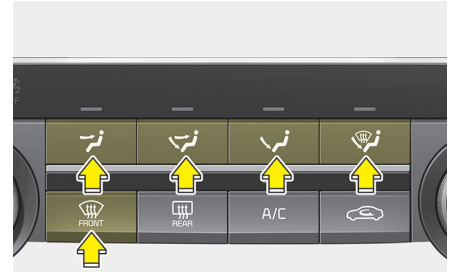
1. Fan speed control knob
2. Front windscreen defroster button
3. Rear window defroster button
4. Air conditioning button
5. Air intake control button
6. Mode selection button
7. Temperature control knob

OJF045059R

Mode selection



OJF045076R



OJF045075

The mode selection knob controls the direction of the air flow through the ventilation system.

Air can be directed to the floor, dashboard outlets, or windscreen. Five symbols are used to represent MAX A/C, Face, Bi-Level, Floor, Floor-Defrost and Defrost air position.

The MAX A/C mode is used to cool the inside of the vehicle faster.



Face-Level (B, D, F)

Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face. Additionally, each outlet can be controlled to direct the air discharged from the outlet.



Bi-Level (B, C, D, E, F)

Air flow is directed towards the face and the floor.



Floor-Level (A, C, D, E, F)

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor, with a small amount of the air being directed to the windscreen and side window defrosters.



Floor/Defrost-Level (A, C, D, E, F)

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor and the windscreen with a small amount directed to the side window defrosters.

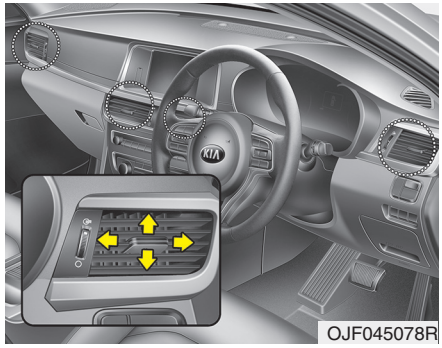


Defrost-Level (A, D)

Most of the air flow is directed to the windscreen with a small amount of air directed to the side window defrosters.

✻ NOTICE - 2nd row outlet vents (E,F)

- **The air flow of the 2nd row outlet vents is controlled by the front climate control system and delivered through the inside air duct of the floor (E, F).**
- **The air flow of the 2nd row outlet vents (E, F) may be weaker than the instrument panel vents for the long air duct.**

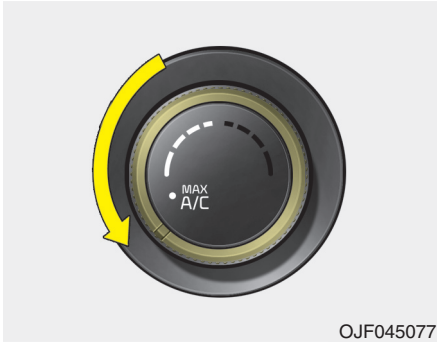


Instrument panel vents

The outlet vents can be opened or closed separately using the thumbwheel.

Also, you can adjust the direction of air delivery from these vents using the vent control lever as shown.

MAX A/C selection

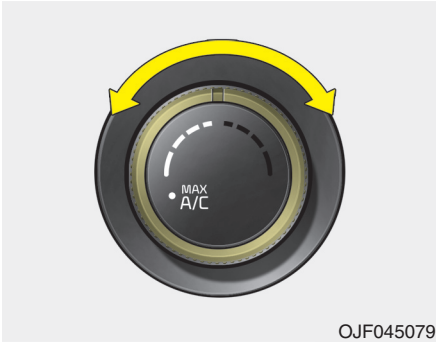


The MAX A/C mode is used to cool the inside of the vehicle faster.

Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face.

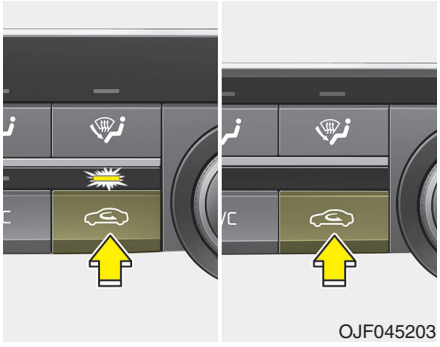
In this mode, the air conditioning and the recirculated air position will be selected automatically.

Temperature control



The temperature control knob allows you to control the temperature of the air flowing from the ventilation system. To change the air temperature in the passenger compartment, turn the knob to the right position for warm and hot air or left position for cooler air.

Air intake control



The air intake control is used to select the outside (fresh) air position or recirculated air position.

To change the air intake control position, press the control button.

Recirculated air position



With the recirculated air position selected, air from the passenger compartment will be drawn through the heating system and heated or cooled according to the function selected.

Outside (fresh) air position



With the outside (fresh) air position selected, air enters the vehicle from outside and is heated or cooled according to the function selected.

✻ NOTICE

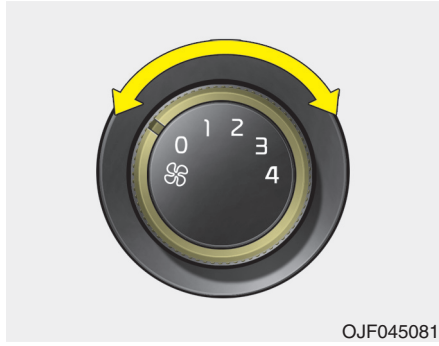
Prolonged operation of the heater in the recirculated air position (without air conditioning selected) may cause fogging of the windscreen and side windows and the air within the passenger compartment may become stale.

In addition, prolonged use of the air conditioning with the recirculated air position selected will result in excessively dry air in the passenger compartment.

⚠ WARNING

- **Continue using the climate control system in the recirculated air position may allow humidity to increase inside the vehicle which may fog the glass and obscure visibility.**
- **Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating system on. It may cause serious harm or death due to a drop in the oxygen level and/or body temperature.**
- **Continue using the climate control system in the recirculated air position can cause drowsiness or sleepiness, and loss of vehicle control. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position as much as possible whilst driving.**

Fan speed control



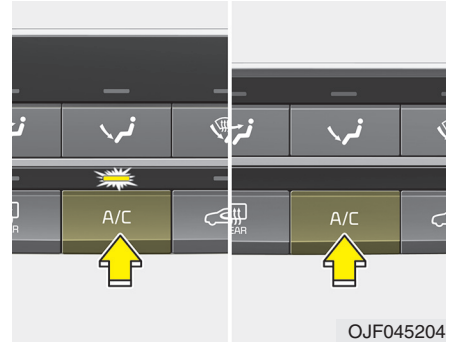
OJF045081

The ignition switch must be in the ON position for fan operation.

The fan speed control knob allows you to control the fan speed of the air flowing from the ventilation system. To change the fan speed, turn the knob to the right for higher speed or left for lower speed.

Setting the fan speed control knob to the “0” position turns off the fan.

Air conditioning

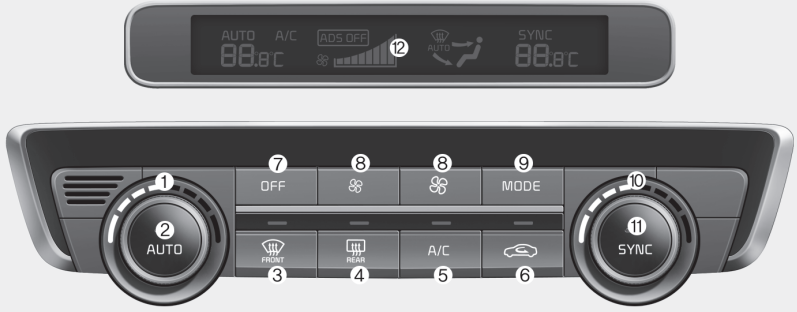


OJF045204

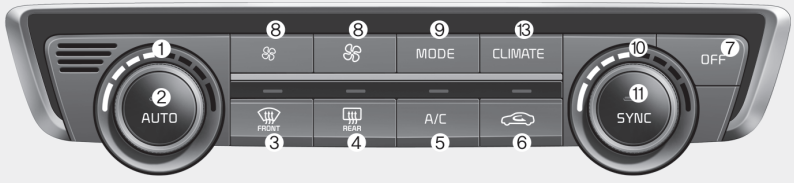
Press the A/C button to turn the air conditioning system on (indicator light will illuminate). Press the button again to turn the air conditioning system off.

Automatic climate control system (if equipped)

■ **Type A**



■ **Type B**

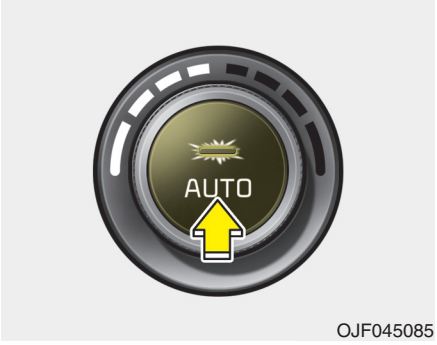


System Overview

1. Passenger's temperature control knob
2. AUTO (automatic control) button
3. Front windscreen defroster button
4. Rear window defroster button
5. Air conditioning button
6. Air intake control button
7. OFF button
8. Fan speed control button
9. Mode selection button
10. Driver's temperature control knob
11. SYNC temperature control selection button
12. Climate control display
13. Climate information screen selection button

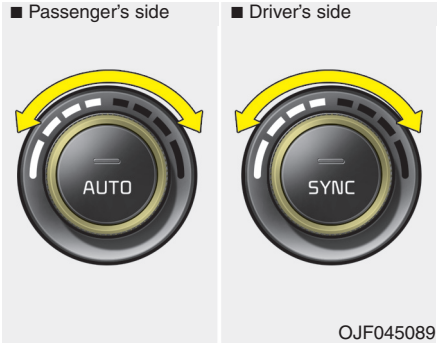
OJF045083R/OJF045084R

Automatic heating and air conditioning



OJF045085

1. Press the AUTO button. The modes, fan speeds, air intake and air-conditioning will be controlled automatically according to the temperature setting.



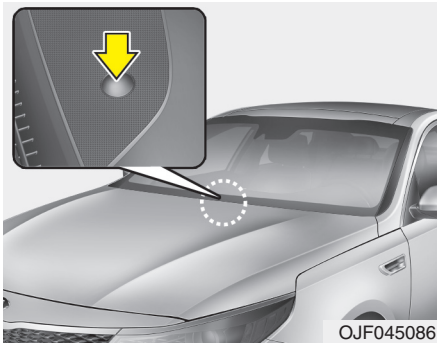
OJF045089

2. Turn the temperature control knob to the desired temperature.

✻ NOTICE

- **To turn the automatic operation off, select any button or switch of the following:**
  - **Mode selection button**
  - **Air conditioning button**
  - **Front windscreen defroster button (Press the button one more time to deselect the front windscreen defroster function. The 'AUTO' sign will illuminate on the information display once again.)**
  - **Air intake control button**
  - **Fan speed control button**

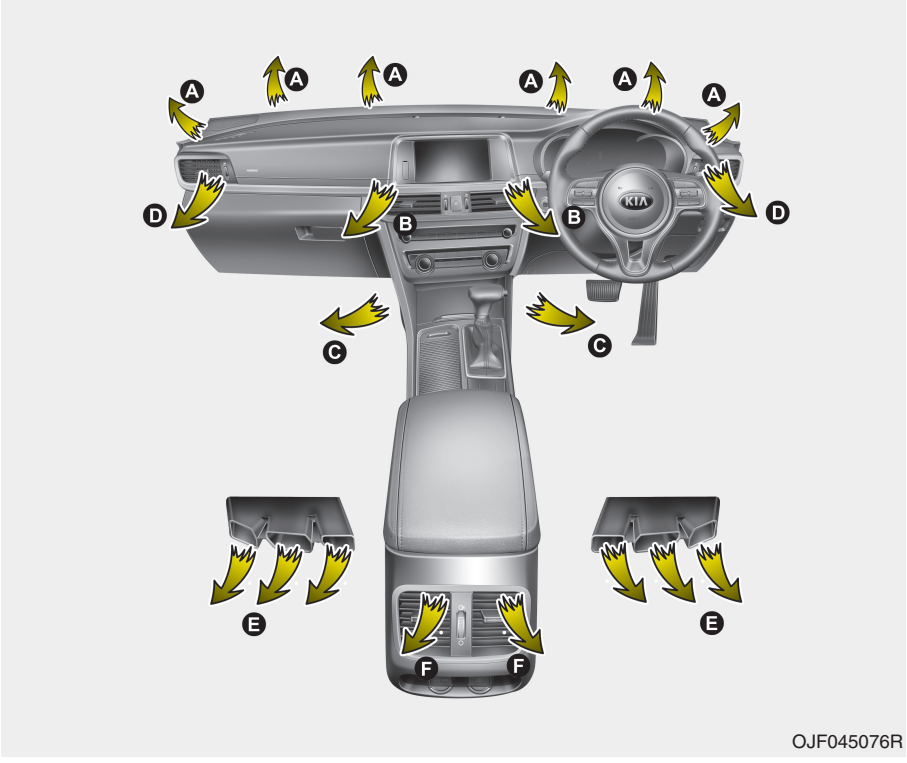
  The selected function will be controlled manually whilst other functions operate automatically.
- **For your convenience and to improve the effectiveness of the climate control, use the AUTO button and set the temperature to 22°C/71°F (23°C/73°F- Except Europe).**

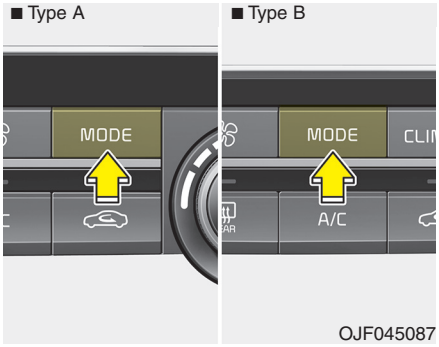


✻ NOTICE

Never place anything over the sensor located on the instrument panel to ensure better control of the heating and cooling system.

Mode selection





The mode selection button controls the direction of the air flow through the ventilation system.

The air flow outlet port is converted as follows:



Face-Level

Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face. Additionally, each outlet can be controlled to direct the air discharged from the outlet.

Floor-Level

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor, with a small amount of the air being directed to the windscreen and side window defrosters.

Bi-Level

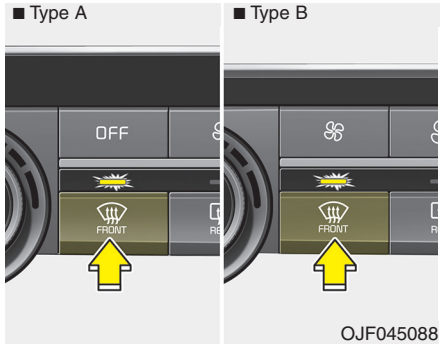
Air flow is directed towards the face and the floor.

Floor/Defrost-Level

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor and the windscreen with a small amount directed to the side window defrosters.

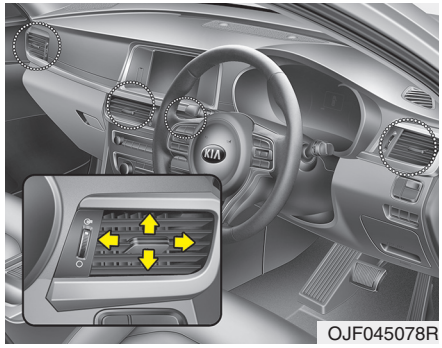
✻ NOTICE - 2nd row outlet vents (E,F)

- **The air flow of the 2nd row outlet vents is controlled by the front climate control system and delivered through the inside air duct of the floor (E, F).**
- **The air flow of the 2nd row outlet vents (E, F) may be weaker than the instrument panel vents for the long air duct.**



Defrost-Level

Most of the air flow is directed to the windscreen with a small amount of air directed to the side window defrosters.

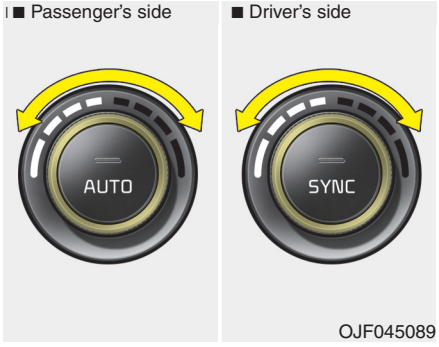


Instrument panel vents

The outlet vents can be opened or closed separately using the thumbwheel.

Also, you can adjust the direction of air delivery from these vents using the vent control lever as shown.

Temperature control



The temperature will increase to the maximum (HI) by turning the knob to the extreme right.

The temperature will decrease to the minimum (Lo) by turning the knob to the extreme left.

When turning the knob, the temperature will increase or decrease by 0.5°C/1°F. When set to the lowest temperature setting, the air conditioning will operate continuously.



Adjusting the driver and passenger side temperature equally

- Press the "SYNC" button to adjust the driver and passenger side temperature equally.

  The passenger side temperature will be set to the same temperature as the driver side temperature.
- Turn the driver side temperature control knob. The driver and passenger side temperature will be adjusted equally.

Adjusting the driver and passenger side temperature individually

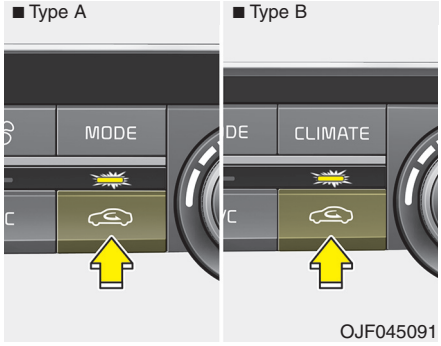
- Press the "SYNC" button again to adjust the driver and passenger side temperature individually. The illumination of button turns off.
- Operate the driver side temperature control knob to adjust the driver side temperature.
- Operate the passenger side temperature control knob to adjust the passenger side temperature.

Temperature conversion (°C ↔ °F) (if equipped)

You can switch the temperature mode between Centigrade to Fahrenheit as follows;

Whilst pressing the OFF button, depress the AUTO button for 3 seconds or more. The display will change from Centigrade to Fahrenheit, or from Fahrenheit to Centigrade.

Air intake control



This is used to select the outside (fresh) air position or recirculated air position.

To change the air intake control position, push the control button.

Recirculated air position



With the recirculated air position selected, air from the passenger compartment will be drawn through the heating system and heated or cooled according to the function selected.

Outside (fresh) air position



With the outside (fresh) air position selected, air enters the vehicle from outside and is heated or cooled according to the function selected.

✻ NOTICE

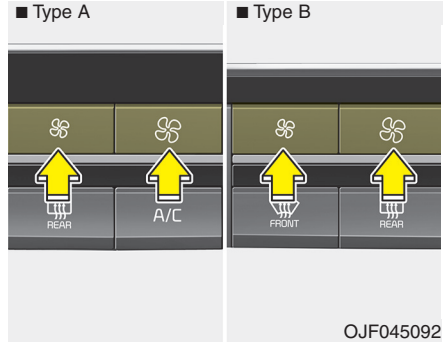
Prolonged operation of the heater in the recirculated air position (without air conditioning selected) may cause fogging of the windscreen and side windows and the air within the passenger compartment may become stale.

In addition, prolonged use of the air conditioning with the recirculated air position selected will result in excessively dry air in the passenger compartment.

⚠ WARNING

- **Continue using the climate control system in the recirculated air position may allow humidity to increase inside the vehicle which may fog the glass and obscure visibility.**
- **Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating system on. It may cause serious harm or death due to a drop in the oxygen level and/or body temperature.**
- **Continue using the climate control system in the recirculated air position can cause drowsiness or sleepiness, and loss of vehicle control. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position as much as possible whilst driving.**

Fan speed control

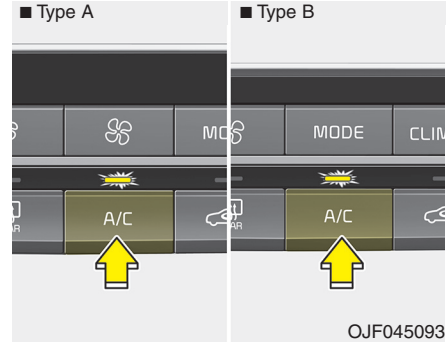


The fan speed can be set to the desired speed by pushing the fan speed control button.

The higher the fan speed is, the more air is delivered.

Pressing the OFF button turns off the fan.

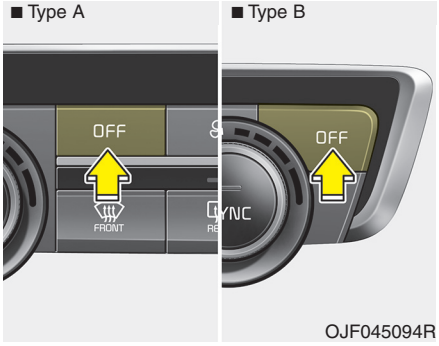
Air conditioning



Press the A/C button to turn the air conditioning system on (indicator light will illuminate).

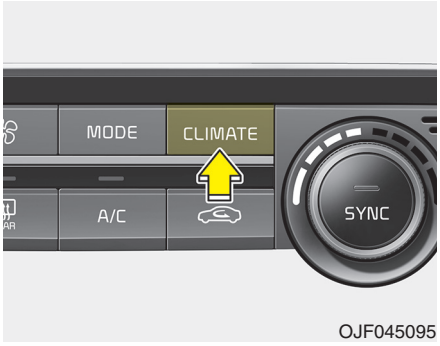
Press the button again to turn the air conditioning system off.

OFF mode



Press the front blower OFF button to turn off the front air climate control system. However, you can still operate the mode and air intake buttons as long as the ignition switch is in the ON position.

Climate information screen selection (if equipped)

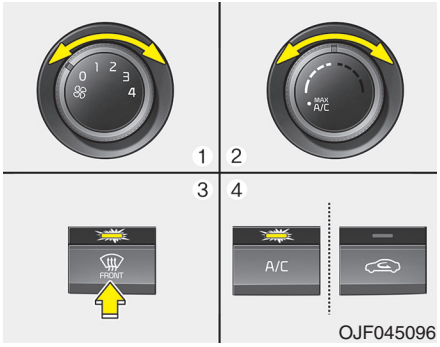


Press the climate information screen selection button to display climate information on the screen.

WINDSCREEN DEFROSTING AND DEFOGGING

Manual climate control system

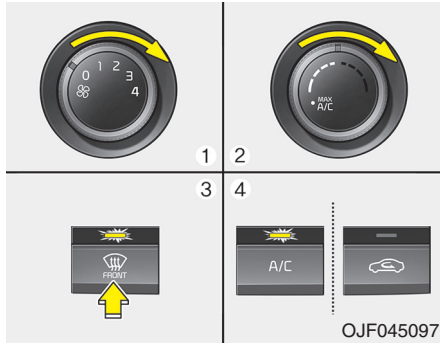
To defog inside windscreen



1. Set the fan speed to the desired position.
2. Select desired temperature.
3. Select the or position.
4. The outside (fresh) air will be selected Automatically. Air conditioning will also be selected automatically.

If the air conditioning and/or outside (fresh) air position are not selected automatically, press the corresponding button manually.

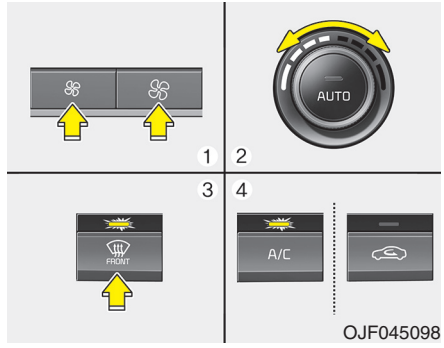
To defrost outside windscreen



1. Set the fan speed to the highest position.
2. Set the temperature to the extreme hot position.
3. Select the position.
4. The outside (fresh) air and air conditioning will be selected automatically.

Automatic climate control system

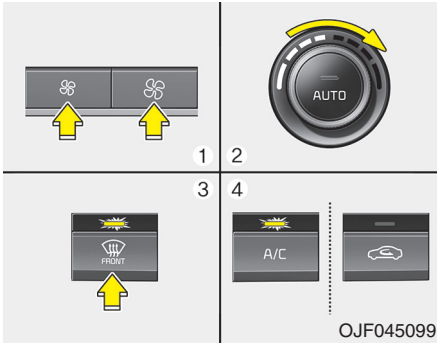
To defog inside windscreen



1. Set the fan speed to the desired position.
2. Select desired temperature.
3. Press the defroster button ( ).
4. The air conditioning will turn on according to the detected ambient temperature and outside (fresh) air position will be selected automatically.

If the air conditioning and outside (fresh) air position are not selected automatically, adjust the corresponding button manually. If the position is selected, lower fan speed is adjusted to a higher fan speed.

To defrost outside windscreen



1. Set the fan speed to the highest position.
2. Set the temperature to the extreme hot (HI) position.
3. Press the defroster button ( ).
4. The air conditioning will turn on according to the detected ambient temperature and outside (fresh) air position will be selected automatically.

Operation tips

- For maximum defrosting, set the temperature control to the extreme right/hot position and the fan speed control to the highest speed.
- If warm air to the floor is desired whilst defrosting or defogging, set the mode to the floor-defrost position.
- Before driving, clear all snow and ice from the windscreen, rear window, outside rear view mirrors, and all side windows.
- Clear all snow and ice from the bonnet and air inlet in the cowl grill to improve heater and defroster efficiency and to reduce the probability of fogging up the inside of the windscreen.

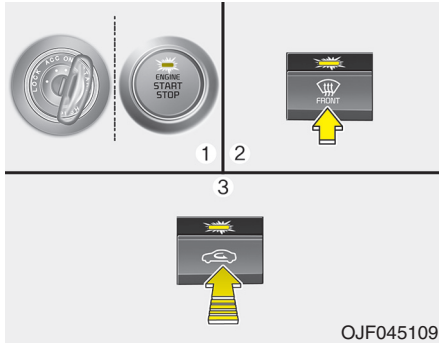
⚠ WARNING - Windscreen heating

Do not use the or position during cooling operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and the windscreen could cause the outer surface of the windscreen to fog up, causing loss of visibility. In this case, set the mode selection to the position and fan speed control to the lower speed.

Defogging logic (if equipped)

To reduce the probability of fogging up the inside of the windscreen, the air intake or air conditioning are controlled automatically according to certain conditions such as or position. To cancel or return the defogging logic, do the following.

Manual climate control system

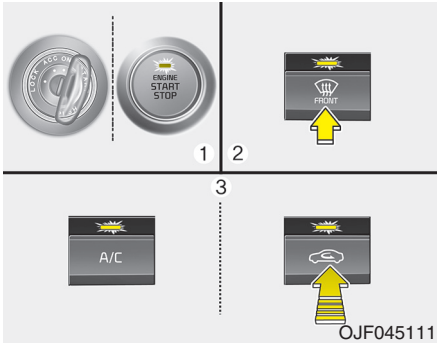


1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
2. Press the defroster button ( ).
3. Within 10 seconds after pressing the defroster button, press the air intake control button at least 5 times within 3 seconds.

The indicator on the air intake button will blink 3 times. It indicates that the defogging logic is cancelled or returned to the programmed status.

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, it resets to the defog logic status.

Automatic climate control system

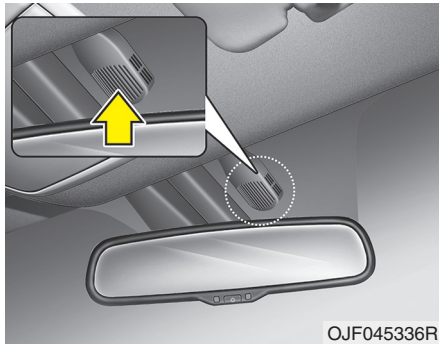


1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
2. Press the defroster button ( ).
3. Whilst pressing the air conditioning button (A/C), press the air intake control button at least 5 times within 3 seconds.

The indicator on the air intake button will blink 3 times. It indicates that the defogging logic is cancelled or returned to the programmed status.

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, it resets to the defog logic status.

Auto defogging system (Only for automatic climate control system, if equipped)



Auto defogging reduces the possibility of fogging up the inside of the windscreen by automatically sensing the moisture of inside the windscreen.



This indicator illuminates when the auto defogging system senses the moisture of inside the windscreen and operates.

If more moisture is in the vehicle, higher steps operate as follow.

(For European region)

Step 1 : Blowing air flow toward the windscreen

Step 2 : Increasing air flow toward the windscreen

Step 3 : Operating the air conditioning.

Step 4 : Outside air position

(For except european region)

Step 1 : Outside air position

Step 2 : Operating the air conditioning

Step 3 : Blowing air flow toward the windscreen

Step 4 : Increasing air flow toward the windscreen

To cancel or reset the Auto Defogging System

Press the front windscreen defroster button for 3 seconds when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

When the ADS system is cancelled, Indicator on the button will blink 3 times per 0.5 sec and the position "ADS OFF" will be displayed on the climate control information screen.

When the ADS system is reset, Indicator on the button will blink 6 times per 0.25sec and the position "ADS OFF" will be disappeared on the climate control information screen.

CLEAN AIR (IF EQUIPPED)



When the ignition switch is in the ON position, the clean air function turns on automatically.

Also, the clean air function turns off automatically, when the ignition switch turns to the OFF position.

STORAGE COMPARTMENT

These compartments can be used to store small items.

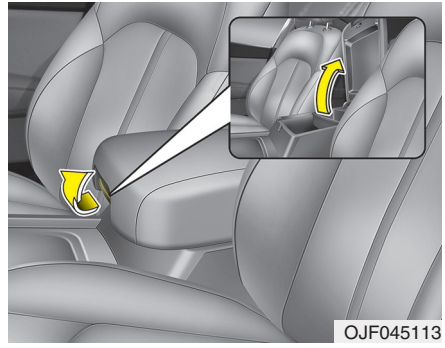
⚠ CAUTION

- ***To avoid possible theft, do not leave valuables in the storage compartment.***
- ***Always keep the storage compartment covers closed whilst driving. Do not attempt to place so many items in the storage compartment that the storage compartment cover cannot close securely.***

⚠ WARNING - Flammable materials

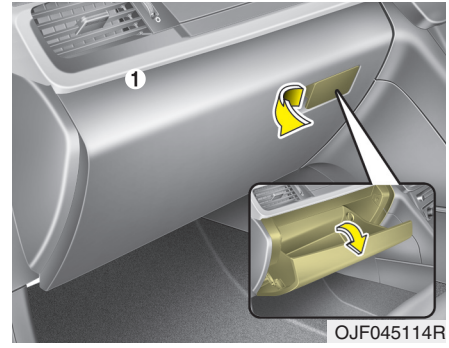
Do not store cigarette lighters, propane cylinders, or other flammable/explosive materials in the vehicle. These items may catch fire and/or explode if the vehicle is exposed to hot temperatures for extended periods.

Centre console storage



To open the centre console storage, pull up the lever.

Glove box



The glove box can be locked and unlocked with a master key. (if equipped)

To open the glove box, pull the lever (1) and the glove box will automatically open. Close the glove box after use.

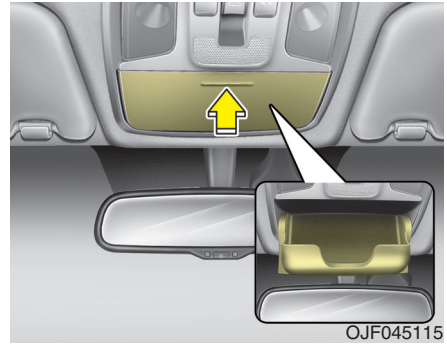
⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury in an accident or sudden stop, always keep the glove box door closed whilst driving.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not keep food in the glove box for a long time.

Sunglass holder

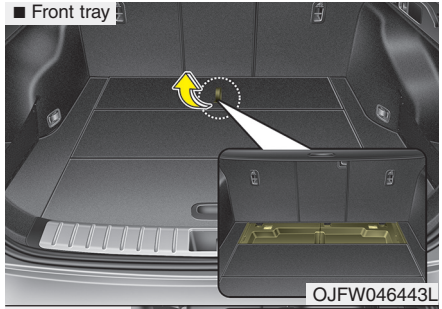


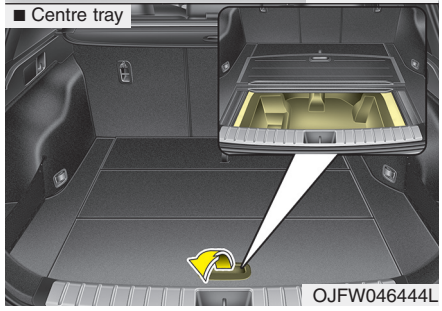
To open the sunglass holder, press the cover and the holder will slowly open. Place your sunglasses with the lenses facing out. To close the sunglass holder, push it up.

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not keep objects except sunglasses inside the sunglass holder. Such objects can be thrown from the holder in the event of a sudden stop or an accident, possibly injuring the passengers in the vehicle.**
- **Do not open the sunglass holder whilst the vehicle is moving. The rear view mirror of the vehicle can be blocked by an opened sunglass holder.**
- **Do not put the glasses forcibly into a sunglass holder to prevent breakage or deformation of the glasses. It may cause personal injury if you try to open it forcibly when the glasses are jammed in the holder.**

Luggage tray (wagon)

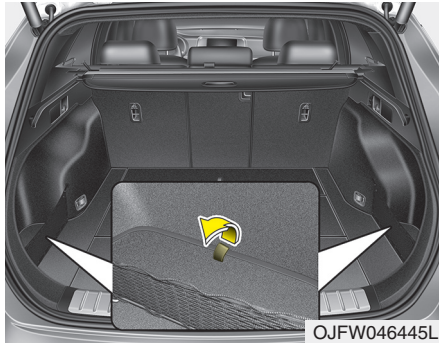




You can place a first aid kit, a reflector triangle (front tray), tools, etc. in the box for easy access.

- Grasp the handle on the top of the cover and lift it.

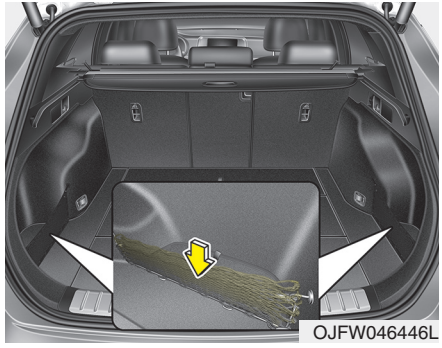
Luggage side tray (wagon)



The luggage side tray can be used for storing small items.

- To open the cover, pull up the handle and lift the cover.

Luggage side partition (wagon)

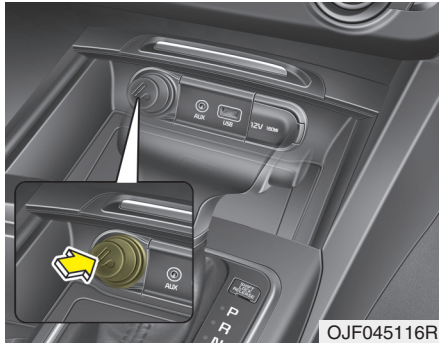


✻ NOTICE

The luggage side partitions can be removed to store long items in the luggage compartment.

INTERIOR FEATURES

Cigarette lighter (if equipped)



OJF045116R

For the cigarette lighter to work, the ignition switch must be in the ACC position or the ON position.

To use the cigarette lighter, push it all the way into its socket. When the element has heated, the lighter will pop out to the “ready” position.

We recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorised Kia dealer.

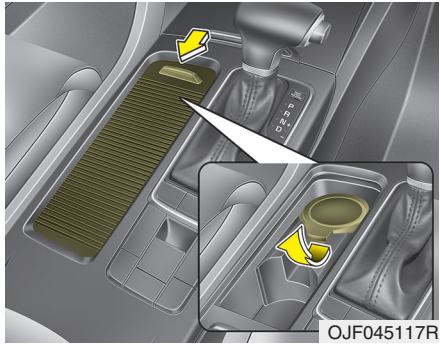
⚠ WARNING

- **Do not hold the lighter in after it is already heated because it will overheat.**
- **If the lighter does not pop out within 30 seconds, remove it to prevent overheating.**
- **Do not insert foreign objects into the socket of the cigarette lighter. It may damage the cigarette lighter.**

⚠ CAUTION

The use of plug-in accessories (shavers, hand-held vacuums, and coffee pots, etc.) may damage the socket or cause electrical failure.

Ashtray (if equipped)



OJF045117R

To use the ashtray, open the cover.

To clean or empty the ashtray, pull it out.

⚠ WARNING - Ashtray use

- **Do not use the vehicle’s ashtrays as waste receptacles.**
- **Putting lit cigarettes or matches in an ashtray with other combustible materials may cause a fire.**

Cup holder

⚠ WARNING - Hot liquids

- **Do not place uncovered cups of hot liquid in the cup holder whilst the vehicle is in motion. If the hot liquid spills, you may burn yourself. Such a burn to the driver could lead to loss of control of the vehicle.**
- **To reduce the risk of a personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or collision, do not place uncovered or unsecured bottles, glasses, cans, etc., in the cup holder whilst the vehicle is in motion.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

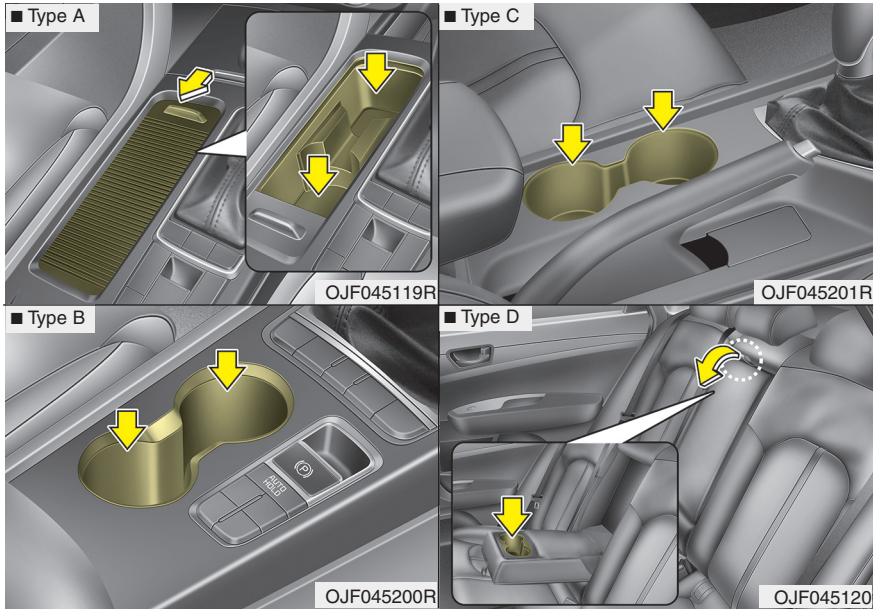
- **If uncovered cups and cans containing any form of liquid are put into the front/centre seat cup holders and the vehicle brakes heavily, the liquid may flow into the narrow openings around cup holders and console, and soak into the vehicle's internal electrical system. To avoid subsequent system malfunction, always firmly cover any container holding liquid.**

⚠ WARNING

Keep cans or bottles out of direct sun light and do not put them in a vehicle that is heated up. It may explode.

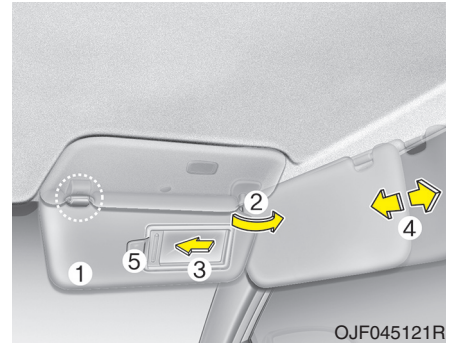
✻ NOTICE

- **Keep your drinks sealed whilst driving to prevent spilling your drink. If liquid spills, it may get into the vehicle's electrical/electronic system and damage electrical/electronic parts.**
- **When cleaning spilled liquids, do not dry the cup holder at high temperature. This may damage the cup holder.**



Cups or small beverage cans may be placed in the cup holders.

Sunvisor



Use the sunvisor to shield direct light through the front or side windows.

To use the sunvisor, pull it downward.

To use the sunvisor for the side window, pull it downward, unsnap it from the bracket (1) and swing it to the side (2).

To use the vanity mirror, pull down the visor and slide the mirror cover (3).

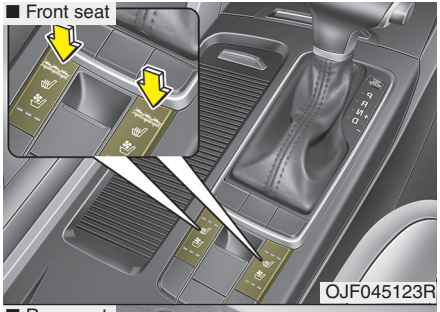
Adjust the sunvisor extension forward or backward (4).

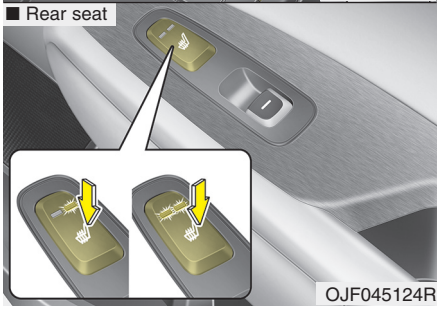
The ticket holder (5) is provided for holding a tollgate ticket. (if equipped)

⚠ **CAUTION - Vanity mirror lamp (if equipped)**

If you use the vanity mirror lamp, turn off the lamp before returning the sunvisor to its original position, otherwise it could result in battery discharge and possible sunvisor damage.

Seat warmer (if equipped)





The seat warmer is provided to warm the front seats during cold weather. With the ignition switch in the ON position, push either of the switches to warm the driver's seat or the front passenger's seat.

During mild weather or under conditions where the operation of the seat warmer is not needed, keep the switches in the "OFF" position.

- Each time you press the switch, the temperature setting of the seat will change as follows :

■ Front seat

OFF→HIGH( )→MIDDLE( )→LOW( )

■ Rear seat

OFF→HIGH( )→LOW( )

- The seat warmer defaults to the OFF position whenever the ignition switch is turned on.

✻ NOTICE

With the seat warmer switch in the ON position, the heating system in the seat turns off or on automatically depending on the seat temperature.

⚠ CAUTION

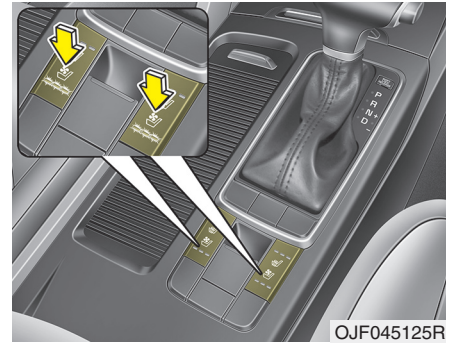
- *When cleaning the seats, do not use an organic solvent such as paint thinner, benzene, alcohol and petrol. Doing so may damage the surface of the heater or seats.*
- *To prevent overheating the seat warmer, do not place anything on the seats that insulates against heat, such as blankets, cushions or seat covers whilst the seat warmer is in operation.*
- *Do not place heavy or sharp objects on seats equipped with seat warmers. Damage to the seat warming components could occur.*
- *Do not change the seat cover. It may damage the seat warmer or airventilation system.*

⚠ WARNING - Seat warmer burns

Passengers should use extreme caution when using seat warmers due to the possibility of excess heating or burns. The seat warmer may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. In particular, the driver must exercise extreme care for the following types of passengers:

1. **Infants, children, elderly or handicapped persons, or hospital outpatients**
2. **Persons with sensitive skin or those that burn easily**
3. **Fatigued individuals**
4. **Intoxicated individuals**
5. **Individuals taking medication that can cause drowsiness or sleepiness (sleeping pills, cold tablets, etc.)**

Air ventilation seat (if equipped)



The temperature setting of the seat changes according to the switch position.

- If you want to warm your seat cushion, press the switch (red colour).
- If you want to ventilate your seat cushion, press the switch (blue colour).
- Each time you press the button, the airflow will change as follows:

OFF→HIGH( )→MIDDLE( )→LOW( )

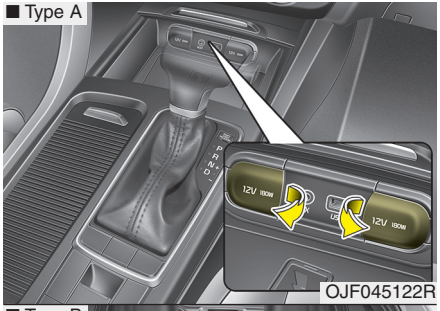
- The seat warmer (with air ventilation) defaults to the OFF position whenever the ignition switch is turned on.

⚠ CAUTION

When cleaning the seats, do not use an organic solvent such as paint thinner, benzene, alcohol and petrol. Doing so may damage the surface of the heater or seats.

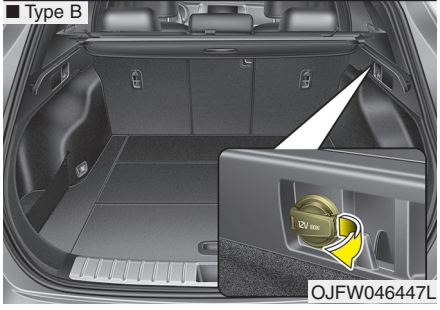
Power outlet (if equipped)

■ Type A



OJF045122R

■ Type B



OJFW046447L

The power outlet is designed to provide power for mobile telephones or other devices designed to operate with vehicle electrical systems. The devices should draw less than 10 amps with the engine running.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Use the power outlet only when the engine is running and remove the accessory plug after use. Using the accessory plug for prolonged periods of time with the engine off could cause the battery to discharge.***
- ***Only use 12V electric accessories which are less than 10A in electric capacity.***
- ***Adjust the air-conditioner or heater to the lowest operating level when using the power outlet.***
- ***Close the cover when not in use.***
- ***Some electronic devices can cause electronic interference when plugged into a vehicle's power outlet. These devices may cause excessive audio static and malfunctions in other electronic systems or devices used in your vehicle.***

(Continued)

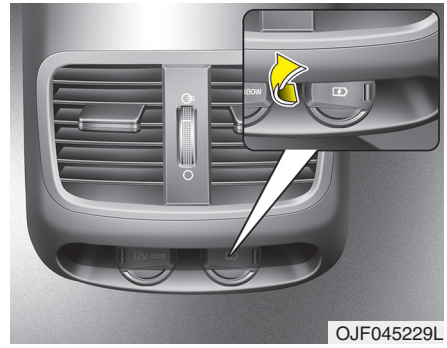
(Continued)

- ***Refrain from using the heater or A/C if you need to use the multipurpose socket. If the heater or A/C has to be used simultaneously, have it to the lowest setting.***
- ***Some add-on electrical equipment will induce electromagnetic interference. This will lead to subsequent malfunction or hinder good reception of the Audio/Video and electrical system.***
- ***Always make sure that electric add-ons are fully plugged into the multipurpose sockets. Insecure contacts may lead to electrical malfunctions.***

⚠ WARNING

Do not put a finger or a foreign element (pin, etc.) into a power outlet and do not touch with a wet hand. You may get an electric shock.

USB charger (if equipped)



OJF045229L

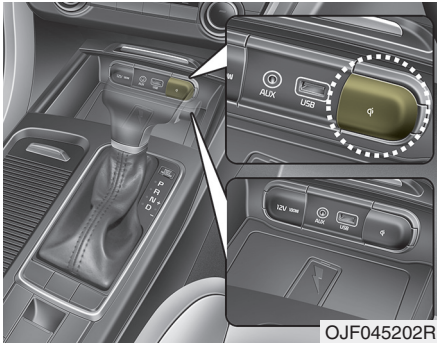
The USB charger is designed to recharge batteries of small size electrical devices using a USB cable. The electrical devices can be recharged when the Engine Start/Stop button is in ACC/ON/START position.

The battery charging state may be monitored on the electrical device.

Disconnect the USB cable from the USB port after use.

- Some devices are not supported for fast charging but will be charged with normal speed.
- Use the USB charger when the engine is running to prevent battery discharge.
- Only devices that fits the USB port can be used.
- The USB charger can be used only for battery charging purposes.
- Battery chargers cannot be charged.

Wireless smart phone charging system (if equipped)



A wireless smart phone charging system located in front of the centre console.

Firmly close all doors, and turn the ignition to ACC or IGN ON. To start wireless charging, place the smart phone equipped with wireless charging function on the wireless charging pad.

For best wireless charging results, place the smart phone on the centre of the charging pad.

The wireless charging system is designed for one smart phone equipped with QI per single usage only. Please refer to the smart phone accessory cover or the smart phone manufacturer homepage to check whether your smart phone supports QI function.

Wireless smart phone charging

1. Remove any object on the smart phone charging pad including the smart key. If there is any foreign object on the pad other than a smart phone, the wireless charging function may not operate properly.
2. Place the smart phone on the centre of the wireless charging pad.
3. The indicator light will change to orange once the wireless charging begins. After the charging is complete, the orange light will change to green.
4. You can choose to turn the wireless charging function to either ON or OFF by selecting the USM on the instrument cluster. (Please refer to “Instrument Cluster” for details).

If the wireless charging does not work, gently move your smart phone around the pad until the charging indicator light turns yellow. Depending on the smart phone, the charging indicator light may not turn green even after the charging is complete.

If the wireless charging is not functioning properly, the orange light will blink and flash for ten seconds then turn off. In such cases, remove the smart phone from the pad and replace it on the pad again, or double check the charging status.

If you leave the smart phone on the charging pad when the vehicle ignition is in OFF, the vehicle will alert you through warning messages and sound (applicable for vehicles with voice guidance function) after the 'Good bye' function on the instrument cluster ends.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Securely close the tray cover when using the wireless smart phone charge function. Otherwise, some liquid held by the cup holder may flow onto the wireless charging pad during sudden stops.***
- ***Close the tray cover when the smart phone is placed in it at all times. If the vehicle is in motion without the tray cover closed, it is more likely that the driver may use the smart phone. The use of smart phones whilst driving may lead to possible injuries and accidents.***
- ***If it is not possible to close the tray cover due to the size of the smart phone, do not use the wireless smart phone charging function at all.***
- ***When the tray cover is broken, do not use the wireless charging function before the tray cover is repaired.***

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ***When the interior temperature of the wireless charging system rises above a set temperature, the wireless charging will cease to function. After the interior temperature drops below the threshold, the wireless charging function will resume.***
- ***If any metallic object such as coins is located between the wireless charging system and the smart phone, the charging may be disrupted. Also, the metallic object may heat up.***
- ***If there is any metallic object between the smart phone and the wireless charging pad, immediately remove the smart phone. Remove the metallic object after it has completely cooled down.***
- ***The wireless charging may not function properly when there is a heavy accessory cover on the smart phone.***

(Continued)

(Continued)

- *The wireless charging will stop when using the wireless smart key search function to prevent radio wave disruption.*
- *The wireless charging will stop when the smart key is moved out of the vehicle with the ignition in ON.*
- *The wireless charging will stop when any of the doors is opened (applicable for vehicles equipped with smart keys).*
- *The wireless charging will stop when the vehicle is turned OFF.*
- *The wireless charging will stop when the smart phone is not in complete contact with the wireless charging pad.*

(Continued)

(Continued)

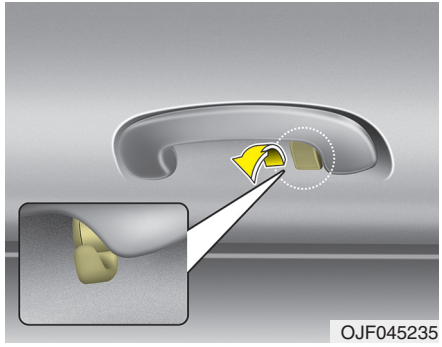
- *Items equipped with magnetic components such as credit card, telephone card, bankbook, any transportation ticket and such may become damaged during wireless charging.*
- *Place the smart phone on the centre of the charge pad for best results. The smart phone may not charge when placed near the rim of the charging pad. When the smart phone does get charged, it may heat up excessively.*
- *For smart phones without built-in wireless charging system, an appropriate accessory has to be equipped.*
- *Smart phones of some manufacturers may display messages on weak current. This is due to the particular characteristic of the smart phone and does not imply a malfunction on wireless charging function.*

(Continued)

(Continued)

- *The indicator light of some manufacturers' smart phones may still be yellow after the smart phone is fully charged. This is due to the particular characteristic of the smart phone and not a malfunction of the wireless charging.*
- *When any smart phone without a wireless charging function or a metallic object is placed on the charging pad, a small noise may sound. This small sound is due to the vehicle discerning compatibility of the object placed on the charging pad. It does not affect your vehicle or the smart phone in any way.*

Clothes hanger (if equipped)



❈ This actual feature may differ from the illustration.

To use the hanger, pull down the upper portion of hanger.

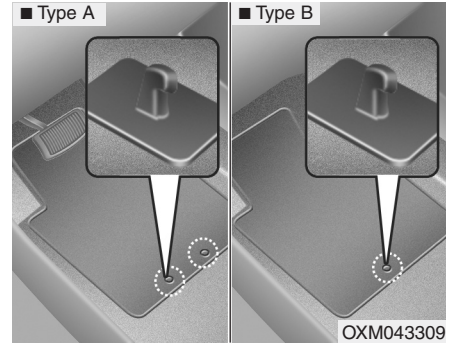
⚠ CAUTION

Do not hang heavy clothes, since those may damage the hook.

⚠ WARNING

Do not hang other objects except clothes. In an accident it may cause vehicle damage or personal injury.

Floor mat anchor(s) (if equipped)



When using a floor mat on the front floor carpet, make sure it attaches to the floor mat anchor(s) in your vehicle. This keeps the floor mat from sliding forward.

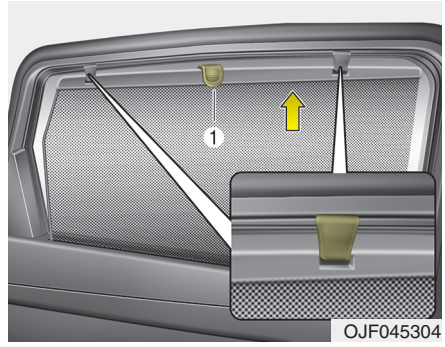
⚠ WARNING

The following must be observed when installing ANY floor mat to the vehicle.

- **Ensure that the floor mats are securely attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchor(s) before driving the vehicle.**
- **Do not use ANY floor mat that cannot be firmly attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchors.**
- **Do not stack floor mats on top of one another (e.g. all-weather rubber mat on top of a carpeted floor mat). Only a single floor mat should be installed in each position.**

IMPORTANT - Your vehicle was manufactured with driver's side floor mat anchors that are designed to securely hold the floor mat in place. To avoid any interference with pedal operation, Kia recommends that the Kia floor mat designed for use in your vehicle be installed.

Side curtain (if equipped)



To use the side curtain:

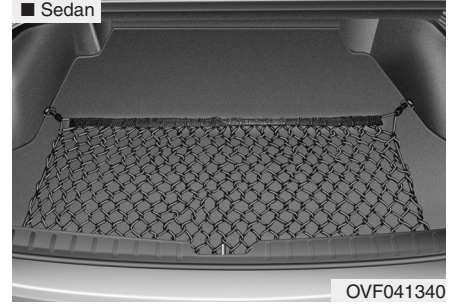
1. Lift the curtain by the hook (1).
2. Hang the curtain on both sides of the hook.

Luggage net (holder) (if equipped)

■ Wagon



■ Sedan



To keep items from shifting in the cargo area, you can use the four holders located in the cargo area to attach the luggage net.

If necessary, we recommend that you contact your authorised Kia dealer to obtain a luggage net.

✻ NOTICE

Vehicles equipped with a luggage rail system may use the shackles to hook the luggage net.

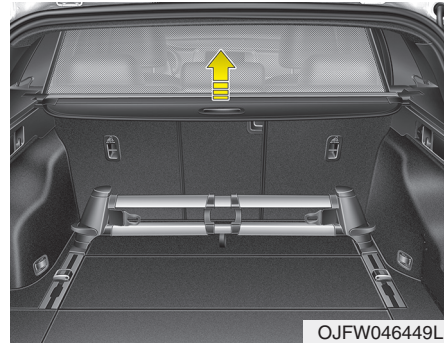
⚠ CAUTION

To prevent damage to the goods or the vehicle, care should be taken when carrying fragile or bulky objects in the luggage compartment.

⚠ WARNING

To avoid eye injury, DO NOT overstretch the luggage net. ALWAYS keep your face and body out of the luggage net's recoil path. DO NOT use the luggage net when the strap has visible signs of wear or damage.

Barrier net (wagon) (if equipped)

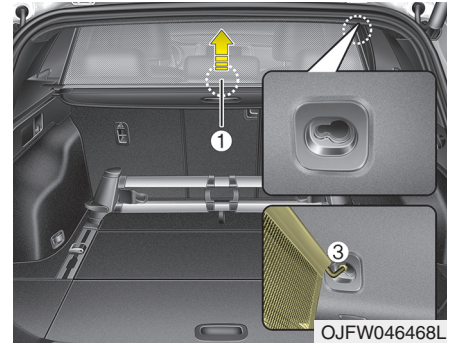

OJFW046449L

When you load cargo on the rear seat or rear cargo area, you must install the barrier net behind the front seatback or rear seatback.

It is designed to help protect the heads of the occupants by preventing objects from flying forward in frontal collisions.

There are two hook holders on both side of the headliner over the headrests for upper side fixation.

To use the barrier net



OJFW046468L

1. Pull up the net by the handle in the centre (1).
2. Compress the one side net upper shaft to lengh direction before insert the hook into the large hole (2) until it reaches the very top.
3. Then secure it by sliding it into the small hole (3).
4. Hold the hooked side and then with the other hand, hook the other side of the net.

⚠ CAUTION

Be careful not the scratch the side panel when inserting the hook into the hole.

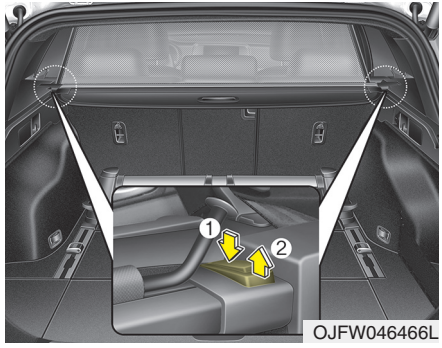
⚠ WARNING

- **Do not put passengers in the rear seat or cargo area behind the barrier net.**
- **Do not put passenger in the rear centre seat when the barrier net is installed behind the rear seats. The barrier net may interfere with use of the rear centre safety belt.**
- **Do not load cargo in the area higher than the barrier net's upper end.**
- **Do not load heavy cargo in the area higher than the seatback to avoid accident even if the barrier net is installed.**
- **Do not load cargo which has sharp edge that can pass through the barrier net.**
- **Do not apply excessive force to the barrier net by hanging on to the net or by suspending heavy cargo and so on.**

When the barrier net is not in use :

1. Remove the hook by pulling it through the large holes.
2. Slide the net down.

To remove the barrier net

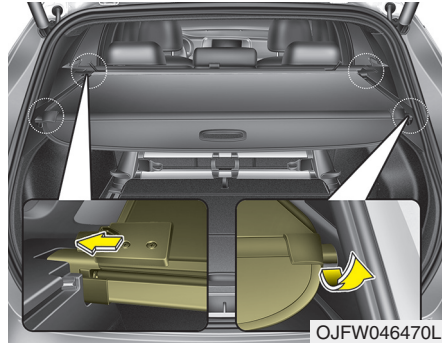


1. Press the lock release button(1) located at the end of both sides.
2. Whilst pressing the button(1), pull out the barrier net(2).

✻ NOTICE

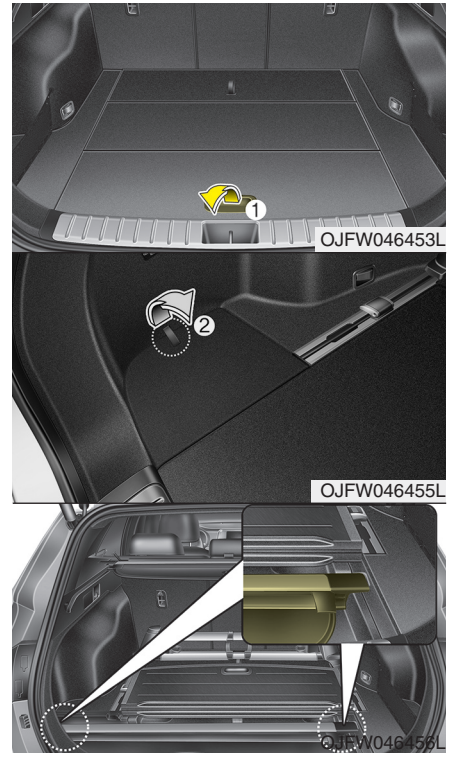
The cargo security screen must be removed first to remove the barrier net.

Cargo security screen (Wagon) (if equipped)



Use the cargo security screen to hide items stored in the cargo area.

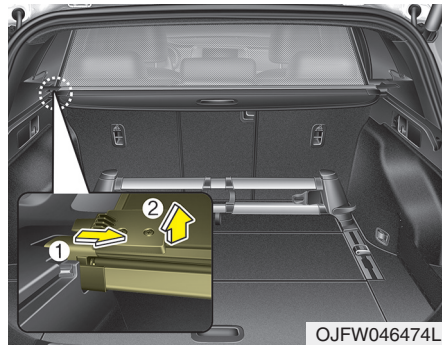
To use the cargo security screen, pull the handle backward and insert the edges into the slots.



When not in use cargo security screen, follow below steps.

1. Pull up the luggage cover using the handle(1).
2. Pull up a triangle-shaped cover (2).
3. Place the cargo security screen on the lower portion of the cargo area.

To remove the cargo security screen



1. Push in the guide pin(1).
2. Whilst pushing the lever, pull out the cargo security screen (2).

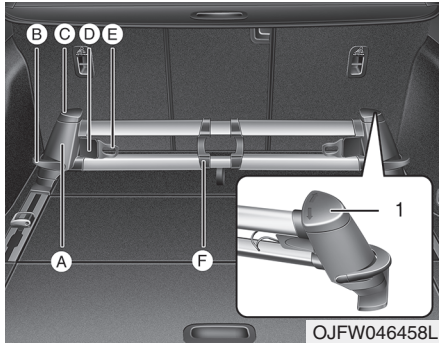
⚠ WARNING

- **Do not place objects on the cargo security screen. Such objects may be thrown about inside the vehicle and possibly injure vehicle occupants during an accident or when braking.**
- **Never allow anyone to ride in the luggage compartment. It is designed for luggage only.**
- **Maintain the balance of the vehicle and locate the weight as far forward as possible.**

⚠ CAUTION

Since the cargo security screen may be damaged or malformed, do not put the luggage on it when it is used.

Luggage rail system (wagon)



The luggage rail system may prevent the luggage from sliding around in the luggage compartment.

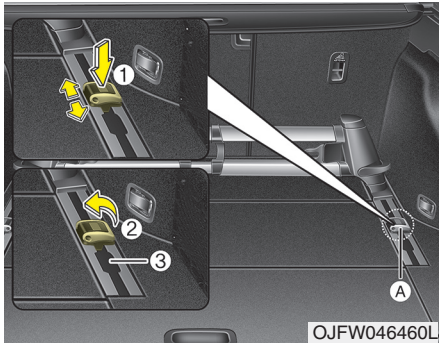
Build in segmentation bar

- Put both pillars (A) from the segmentation bar in the openings from the rail.
- To move the segmentation bar, put your hand on the side of the pillar and push down the lever arm (B).
- Make sure the pillars click into place.
- To release the belt, turn the upper element (C) to the left or right until it clicks.
- Now you can pull the belt (D) and secure your luggage by putting the belt around the luggage and put the hook (E) into the middle of the segmentation bar (F).
- For bulky luggage, you can hook both hooks into each other.
- To make sure the belt locks, put the upper element (C) back into the lock position (1).

⚠ CAUTION

- ***The segmentation bar must be mounted and demounted with both pillars simultaneously.***
- ***Max. load: 30 kg with one belt***
  40 kg with two belts

Applying the shackle on the guide rail



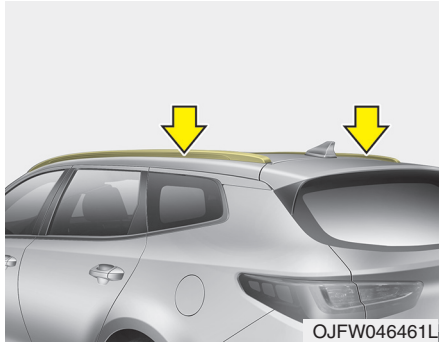
- Put the shackle (A) in the position where the shackle is put in the rail.
- To move the shackle, press the button (1) and move the shackle along the rail.
- Make sure the shackle is clicked into place.
- To fix the luggage, pull up the hook (2) in the middle cargo bay.
- Now you can mount e.g. belt to fix the luggage in the hook.
- The shackle cannot be used in the position where the shackle is put in and out of the rail (3).

⚠ CAUTION

Tensile force : max. 30 kgf. for 1 shackle

EXTERIOR FEATURES

Roof rack (wagon) (if equipped)



If the vehicle has a roof rack, you can load cargo on top of your vehicle.

Crossbars and fixing components needed to install the roof rack on your vehicle may be obtained from an authorised Kia dealer or other qualified shop.

✻ NOTICE

- **The crossbars (if equipped) should be placed in the proper load carrying positions prior to placing items onto the roof rack.**
- **If the vehicle is equipped with a sunroof, be sure not to position cargo onto the roof rack in such a way that it could interfere with sunroof operation.**
- **When the roof rack is not being used to carry cargo, the crossbars may need to be repositioned if wind noise is detected.**

⚠ CAUTION

- ***When carrying cargo on the roof rack, take the necessary precautions to make sure the cargo does not damage the roof of the vehicle.***
- ***When carrying large objects on the roof rack, make sure they do not exceed the overall roof length or width.***
- ***When you are carrying cargo on the roof rack, do not operate the sunroof (if equipped).***

⚠ WARNING

- **The following specification is the maximum weight that can be loaded onto the roof rack. Distribute the load as evenly as possible across the crossbars (if equipped) and roof rack and secure the load firmly.**

  Loading cargo or luggage in excess of the specified weight limit on the roof rack may damage your vehicle.
- **The vehicle centre of gravity will be higher when items are loaded onto the roof rack. Avoid sudden starts, braking, sharp turns, abrupt manoeures or high speeds that may result in loss of vehicle control or rollover resulting in an accident.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Always drive slowly and turn corners carefully when carrying items on the roof rack. Severe wind updrafts, caused by passing vehicles or natural causes, can cause sudden upward pressure on items loaded on the roof rack. This is especially true when carrying large, flat items such as wood panels or mattresses. This could cause the items to fall off the roof rack and cause damage to your vehicle or others around you.**
- **To prevent damage or loss of cargo whilst driving, check frequently before or whilst driving to make sure the items on the roof rack are securely fastened.**

Audio system

Audio system 5-2
- Antenna 5-2
- Steering wheel audio controls 5-3
- AUX, USB port 5-4
- How vehicle audio works 5-4

Audio (Without Touch Screen) 5-7
- Feature of Your Audio 5-8
- Radio Mode (Type A-1, Type A-2 with RDS) 5-25
- Radio Mode (Type A-3, Type A-4) 5-27
- Media Mode 5-28
- Phone Mode 5-35
- Voice Recognition Mode 5-38
- Setup Mode (Type A-1, Type A-2) 5-45
- Setup Mode (Type A-3, Type A-4) 5-53
- Setup Mode (Type A-3, Type A-4, For Colombia Model) 5-60

Audio (With Touch Screen) 5-68
- Feature of Your Audio 5-69
- Radio Mode (Type B-1) 5-81
- Radio Mode (Type B-2) 5-84
- Media Mode 5-86
- Phone Mode 5-101
- *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology (Type B-1) 5-102
- *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology (Type B-2) 5-109
- *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology (Type B-2, For Colombia Model) 5-116
- Voice Recognition Mode 5-123
- Setup Mode (Type B-1) 5-131
- Setup Mode (Type B-2) 5-140
- Setup Mode (Type B-2, For Colombia Model) 5-148
- Rear View Camera 5-155

Declaration of Conformity 5-156
- FCC 5-156
- CE for EU 5-158
- NCC for Taiwan 5-160
- MOC for Israel 5-161
- ANATEL for Brazil 5-162

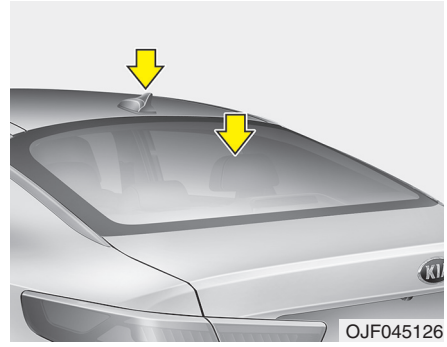
AUDIO SYSTEM

✻ NOTICE

If you install an after market HID head lamp, your vehicle's audio and electronic device may malfunction.

✻ If your vehicle is equipped with AVN(Audio, Video and Navigation) system, refer to a separately supplied manual for detailed information.

Antenna



Glass antenna

Your vehicle uses a glass antenna to receive both AM and FM signals.

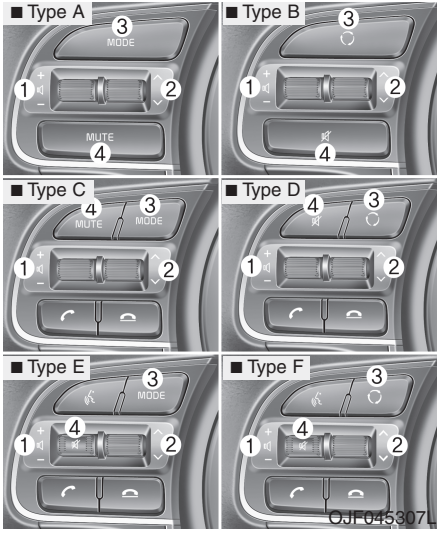
Shark fin antenna (if equipped)

The shark fin antenna will receive the transmit data.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not clean the inside of the rear window glass or quarter glass with a cleaner or use a scraper to remove any foreign deposits as this may cause damage to the antenna elements.***
- ***Avoid adding metallic coating such as Ni, Cd, and so on. These can interfere with AM/FM reception.***
- ***To prevent damage to the rear glass antenna, never use sharp instruments or window cleaner containing abrasives to clean the window. Clean the inside surface of the rear glass window with a piece of soft cloth.***
- ***When putting a sticker on the inside surface of the rear window, be careful not to damage to the rear glass antenna.***
- ***Do not put sharp instruments nearby the rear glass antenna.***
- ***Tinted rear window may affect the proper functioning of the antenna.***

Steering wheel audio controls (if equipped)



The steering wheel may incorporate audio control buttons.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not operate audio remote control buttons simultaneously.

VOLUME (+ / –) (1)

- Press the lever upward (+) to increase the volume.
- Press the lever downward (–) to decrease the volume.

SEEK/PRESET (∧ / ∨) (2)

The SEEK/PRESET lever has different functions based on the system mode. For the following functions the lever should be pressed for 0.8 seconds or more.

RADIO mode

It will function as the AUTO SEEK select button.

CD/USB/iPod® mode

It will function as the FF/REW button.

If the SEEK/PRESET button is pressed for less than 0.8 seconds, it will work as follows in each mode.

RADIO mode

It will function as the PRESET STATION buttons.

CD/USB/iPod® mode

It will function as TRACK UP/DOWN button.

MODE ( ) (3)

Press the button to change audio source.

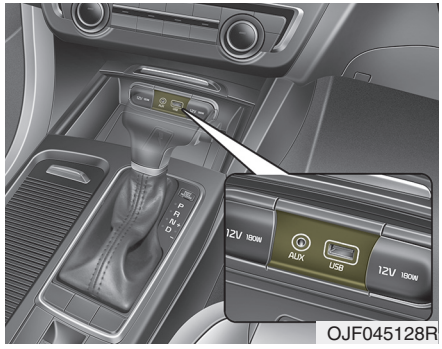
FM ➟ AM ➟ CD ➟ USB/iPod® ➟ AUX ➟ MY MUSIC ➟ *Bluetooth®* wireless technology audio

MUTE ( ) (4)

- Press the button to mute the sound.
- Press the button to turn off the microphone during a telephone call.

Detailed information for audio control buttons are described in the following pages in this section.

AUX, USB port



You can use an AUX port to connect audio devices and an USB port to plug in an USB or iPod®.

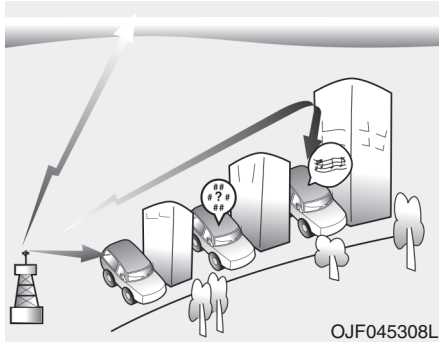
✻ NOTICE

When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet, noise may occur during playback. If this happens, use the power source of the portable audio device.

***** iPod® is a trademark of Apple Inc.

How vehicle radio works

FM reception

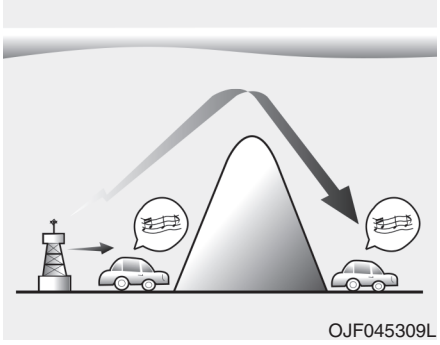


AM and FM radio signals are broadcast from transmitter towers located around your city. They are intercepted by the radio antenna on your vehicle. This signal is then received by the radio and sent to your vehicle speakers.

When a strong radio signal has reached your vehicle, the precise engineering of your audio system ensures the best possible quality reproduction. However, in some cases the signal coming to your vehicle may not be strong and clear.

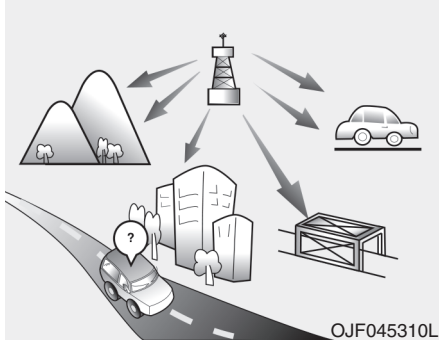
This can be due to factors, such as the distance from the radio station, closeness of other strong radio stations or the presence of buildings, bridges or other large obstructions in the area.

AM (MW, LW) reception

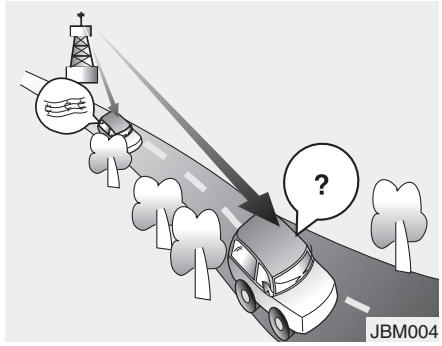


AM broadcasts can be received at greater distances than FM broadcasts. This is because AM radio waves are transmitted at low frequencies. These long, low frequency radio waves can follow the curvature of the earth rather than travelling straight out into the atmosphere. In addition, they curve around obstructions so that they can provide better signal coverage.

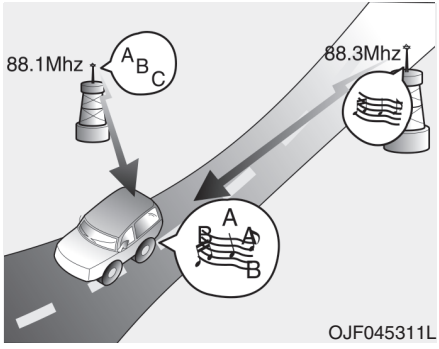
FM radio station



FM broadcasts are transmitted at high frequencies and do not bend to follow the earth's surface. Because of this, FM broadcasts generally begin to fade at short distances from the station. Also, FM signals are easily affected by buildings, mountains, or other obstructions. These can result in certain listening conditions which might lead you to believe a problem exists with your radio. The following conditions are normal and do not indicate radio trouble:



- Fading - As your vehicle moves away from the radio station, the signal will weaken and sound will begin to fade. When this occurs, we suggest that you select another stronger station.
- Flutter/Static - Weak FM signals or large obstructions between the transmitter and your radio can disturb the signal causing static or fluttering noises to occur. Reducing the treble level may lessen this effect until the disturbance clears.



- Station Swapping - As a FM signal weakens, another more powerful signal near the same frequency may begin to play. This is because your radio is designed to lock onto the clearest signal. If this occurs, select another station with a stronger signal.
- Multi-Path Cancellation - Radio signals being received from several directions can cause distortion or fluttering. This can be caused by a direct and reflected signal from the same station, or by signals from two stations with close frequencies. If this occurs, select another station until the condition has passed.

Using a mobile phone or a two-way radio

When a mobile phone is used inside the vehicle, noise may be produced from the audio system. This does not mean that something is wrong with the audio equipment. In such a case, use the mobile phone at a place as far as possible from the audio equipment.

⚠ CAUTION

When using a communication system such as a mobile phone or a radio set inside the vehicle, a separate external antenna must be fitted. When a mobile phone or a radio set is used with an internal antenna alone, it may interfere with the vehicle's electrical system and adversely affect safe operation of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use a mobile phone whilst driving. Stop at a safe location to use a mobile phone.

AUDIO (Without Touch Screen)

■ Type A-1



(With *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology)

■ Type A-2



JFA55000LU/JFA55001LU

Feature of Your Audio



(1) **EJECT**

- Ejects the disc.

(2) **RADIO (Type A-1)**

- Changes to FM/AM mode.
- Each time the button is pressed, the mode is changed in order of FM1 ➟ FM2 ➟ FMA ➟ AM ➟ AMA.

(3) **MEDIA**

- Changes to CD, USB(iPod®), AUX, My Music*, BT Audio* mode.
- Each time the button is pressed, the mode is changed in order of CD, USB(iPod®), AUX, My Music*, BT Audio*.

*if equipped

(4) **PHONE (Type A-1)**

- Operates Phone Screen.
- When a phone is not connected, the connection screen is displayed.

(5) **SEEK TRACK**

- Radio mode : Automatically searches for broadcast frequencies.
- CD, USB, iPod®, My Music* mode
  - Shortly press the button : Moves to next or previous song (file).
  - Press and hold the button : Rewinds or fast-forwards the current song.

*if equipped

(6) **POWER/VOL** knob

- Power knob : Turns power On/Off by pressing the knob.
- Volume knob : Sets volume by turning the knob left/right.



(7) **[1] ~ [6]** (Preset)

- Radio mode : Saves frequencies (channels) or receives saved frequencies (channels).
- CD, USB, iPod®, My Music* mode
  - **[RPT]** : Repeat
  - **[RDM]** : Random

In the Radio, Media, Setup, and Menu pop up screen, the number menu is selected.

*if equipped



(8) **DISP**

- Each time the button is shortly pressed, sets Screen Off ➟ Screen On ➟ Screen Off.
- Audio operation is maintained and only the screen will be turned Off.
- In the Screen Off state, press any button to turn the Screen On again.

(9) **TA/SCAN**

- Radio mode
  - Shortly press the button : TA On/Off.
  - Press and hold the button : Previews each broadcast for 5 seconds each.
- CD, USB, My Music* mode
  - Press and hold the button : Previews each song (file) for 10 seconds each.
  - Press and hold the button again to continue listening to the current song (file).

*if equipped

(10) **SETUP/CLOCK**

- Shortly press the button : Moves to the Display, Sound, Clock, Phone, System setting modes.
- Press and hold the button : Move to the Time setting screen.

(11) **MENU**

- Displays menus for the current mode.
- iPod® List : Move to parent category.

(12) **FOLDER**

- MP3 CD / USB mode : Folder Search.

(13) **TUNE** knob

- Radio mode : Changes frequency by turning the knob left/right.
- CD, USB, iPod®, My Music* mode : Searches songs (files) by turning the knob left/right.

  When the desired song is displayed, press the knob to play the song.
- Moves focus in all selection menus and selects menus.

*if equipped



(14) **FM (Type A-2)**

- Changes to FM mode.
- Each time the button is pressed, the mode changed in order of FM1 ➟ FM2 ➟ FMA.

(15) **AM (Type A-2)**

- Changes to AM ➟ AMA mode.

■ Type A-3



(With *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology)

■ Type A-4



JFA55002LU/JFA55003LU

Feature of Your Audio



(1) **EJECT**

- Ejects the disc.

(2) **RADIO (Type A-3)**

- Changes to FM/AM mode.
- Each time the button is pressed,the mode is changed in order of FM1 ➟ FM2 ➟ AM.

(3) **MEDIA**

- Changes to CD, USB(iPod®), AUX, My Music*, BT Audio* mode.
- Each time the button is pressed, the mode is changed in order of CD, USB(iPod®), AUX, My Music*, BT Audio*.

*if equipped

(4) **PHONE (Type A-3)**

- Operates Phone Screen.
- When a phone is not connected, the connection screen is displayed.

(5) **SEEK TRACK**

- Radio mode : Automatically searches for broadcast frequencies.
- CD, USB, iPod®, My Music* mode
  - Shortly press the button : Moves to next or previous song (file).
  - Press and hold the button : Rewinds or fast-forwards the current song.

*if equipped

(6) **POWER/VOL** knob

- Power knob : Turns power On/Off by pressing the knob.
- Volume knob : Sets volume by turning the knob left/right.



(7) **[1] ~ [6]** (Preset)

- Radio mode : Saves frequencies (channels) or receives saved frequencies (channels).
- CD, USB, iPod®, My Music* mode
  - **[RPT]** : Repeat
  - **[RDM]** : Random

In the Radio, Media, Setup, and Menu pop up screen, the number menu is selected.

*if equipped



(8) **DISP**

- Each time the button is shortly pressed, sets Screen Off ➟ Screen On ➟ Screen Off.
- Audio operation is maintained and only the screen will be turned Off.
- In the Screen Off state, press any key to turn the Screen On again.

(9) **SCAN**

- Radio mode
  - Press the button : Previews each broadcast for 5 seconds each.
- CD, USB, My Music* mode
  - Press the button : Previews each song (file) for 10 seconds each.
  - Press the button again to continue listening to the current song (file).

*if equipped

(10) **SETUP/CLOCK**

- Shortly press the button : Moves to the Display, Sound, Clock, Phone, System setting modes.
- Press and hold the button : Move to the Time setting screen.

(11) **MENU**

- Displays menus for the current mode.
- iPod® List : Move to parent category.

(12) **FOLDER**

- MP3 CD / USB mode : Folder Search.

(13) **TUNE** knob

- Radio mode : Changes frequency by turning the knob left/right.
- CD, USB, iPod®, My Music* mode : Searches songs (files) by turning the knob left/right.

  When the desired song is displayed, press the knob to play the song.
- Moves focus in all selection menus and selects menus.

*if equipped



(14) **FM (Type A-4)**

- Changes to FM mode.
- Each time the button is pressed, the mode changed in order of FM1 ➟ FM2.

(15) **AM (Type A-4)**

- Changes to AM mode.

✻ NOTICE - Using the Discs

- If the temperature inside the car is too high, open the car windows to ventilate before using the system.
- It is illegal to copy and use MP3/WMA files without permission. Use CDs that are created only by lawful means.
- Do not apply volatile agents, such as benzene and thinner, normal cleaners and magnetic sprays made for analogue disc onto CDs.
- To prevent the disc surface from getting damaged, hold CDs by the edges or the centre hole only.
- Clean the disc surface with a piece of soft cloth before playback (wipe it from the centre to the outside edge).
- Do not damage the disc surface or attach pieces of sticky tape or paper.
- Make certain only CDs are inserted into the CD player (Do not insert more than one CD at a time).
- Keep CDs in their cases after use to protect them from scratches or dirt.
- Depending on the type of CD-R/CD-RW CDs, certain CDs may not operate normally according to manufacturing companies or making and recording methods. In such circumstances, continued use may cause malfunctions to your audio system.

✻ NOTICE - Playing an Incompatible Copy Protected Audio CD

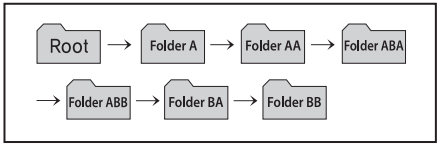
Some copy protected CDs, which do not comply with international audio CD standards (Red Book), may not play on your car audio. Please note that inabilities to properly play a copy protected CD may indicate that the CD is defective, not the CD player.

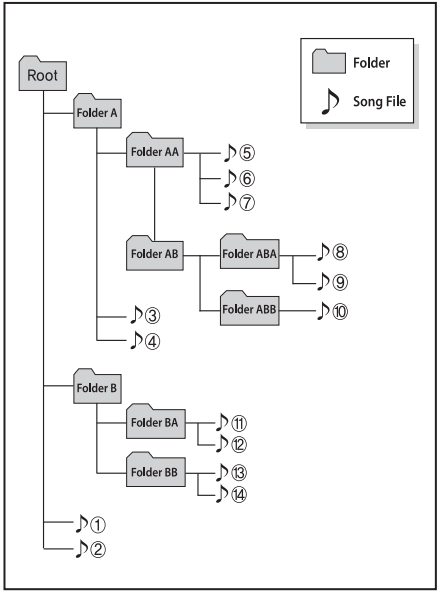
NOTE:

Order of playing files (folders) :

1. **Song playing order : ① to ⑭ sequentially.**
2. **Folder playing order :**

✻ If no song file is contained in the folder, that folder is not displayed.





⚠ WARNING

- **Do not stare at the screen whilst driving. Staring at the screen for prolonged periods of time could lead to traffic accidents.**
- **Do not disassemble, assemble, or modify the audio system. Such acts could result in accidents, fire, or electric shock.**
- **Using the phone whilst driving may lead to a lack of attention of traffic conditions and increase the likelihood of accidents. Use the phone feature after parking the vehicle.**
- **Heed caution not to spill water or introduce foreign objects into the device. Such acts could lead to smoke, fire, or product malfunction.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Please refrain from use if the screen is blank or no sound can be heard as these signs may indicate product malfunction. Continued use in such conditions could lead to accidents (fires, electric shock) or product malfunctions.**
- **Do not touch the antenna during thunder or lightening as such acts may lead to lightning induced electric shock.**
- **Do not stop or park in parking-restricted areas to operate the product. Such acts could lead to traffic accidents.**
- **Use the system with the vehicle ignition turned on. Prolonged use with the ignition turned off could result in battery discharge.**

⚠ WARNING

Driving whilst distracted can result in a loss of vehicle control that may lead to an accident, severe personal injury, and death. The driver's primary responsibility is in the safe and legal operation of a vehicle, and use of any handheld devices, other equipment, or vehicle systems which take the driver's eyes, attention and focus away from the safe operation of a vehicle or which are not permissible by law should never be used during operation of the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

- *Operating the device whilst driving could lead to accidents due to a lack of attention to external surroundings. First park the vehicle before operating the device.*
- *Adjust the volume to levels that allow the driver to hear sounds from outside of the vehicle. Driving in a state where external sounds cannot be heard may lead to accidents.*
- *Pay attention to the volume setting when turning the device on. A sudden output of extreme volume upon turning the device on could lead to hearing impairment. (Adjust the volume to a suitable levels before turning off the device.)*

(Continued)

(Continued)

- *If you want to change the position of device installation, please inquire with your place of purchase or service maintenance centre. Technical expertise is required to install or disassemble the device.*
- *Turn on the car ignition before using this device. Do not operate the audio system for long periods of time with the ignition turned off as such operations may lead to battery discharge.*
- *Do not subject the device to severe shock or impact. Direct pressure onto the front side of the monitor may cause damage to the LCD or touch screen.*

(Continued)

(Continued)

- *When cleaning the device, make sure to turn off the device and use a dry and smooth cloth. Never use tough materials, chemical cloths, or solvents (alcohol, benzene, thinners, etc.) as such materials may damage the device panel or cause colour/quality deterioration*
- *Do not place beverages close to the audio system. Spilling beverages may lead to system malfunction.*
- *In case of product malfunction, please contact your place of purchase or After Service centre.*
- *Placing the audio system within an electromagnetic environment may result in noise interference.*

✻ NOTICE - Using the USB Device

- To use an external USB device, make sure the device is not connected when starting up the vehicle. Connect the device after starting up.
- If you start the engine when the USB device is connected, it may damage the USB device. (USB flashdrives are very sensitive to electric shock.)
- If the engine is started up or turned off whilst the external USB device is connected, the external USB device may not work.
- The System may not play inauthentic MP3 or WMA files.

1) It can only play MP3 files with the compression rate between 8Kbps ~ 320Kbps.
2) It can only play WMA music files with the compression rate between 8Kbps ~ 320Kbps.

- Take precautions for static electricity when connecting or disconnecting the external USB device.
- An encrypted MP3 PLAYER is not recognizable.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Depending on the condition of the external USB device, the connected external USB device can be unrecognizable.
- When the formatted byte/sector setting of External USB device is not either 512BYTE or 2048BYTE, then the device will not be recognized.
- Use only a USB device formatted to FAT 12/16/32.
- USB devices without USB I/F authentication may not be recognizable.
- Make sure the USB connection terminal does not come in contact with the human body or other objects.
- If you repeatedly connect or disconnect the USB device in a short period of time, it may break the device.
- You may hear a strange noise when connecting or disconnecting a USB device.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- If you disconnect the external USB device during playback in USB mode, the external USB device can be damaged or may malfunction. Therefore, disconnect the external USB device when the audio is turned off or in another mode. (e.g, Radio, CD)
- Depending on the type and capacity of the external USB device or the type of the files stored in the device, there is a difference in the time taken for recognition of the device.
- Do not use the USB device for purposes other than playing music files.
- Playing videos through the USB is not supported.
- Use of USB accessories such as rechargers or heaters using USB I/F may lower performance or cause trouble.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **If you use devices such as a USB hub purchased separately, the vehicle's audio system may not recognize the USB device. In that case, connect the USB device directly to the multimedia terminal of the vehicle.**
- **If the USB device is divided by logical drives, only the music files on the highest-priority drive are recognized by car audio.**
- **Devices such as MP3 Player/ Mobile phone/Digital camera can be unrecognizable by standard USB I/F can be unrecognizable.**
- **Charging through the USB may not be supported in some mobile devices.**
- **USB HDD or USB types liable to connection failures due to vehicle vibrations are not supported. (i-stick type)**
- **Some non-standard USB devices (METAL COVER TYPE USB) can be unrecognizable.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Some USB flash memory readers (such as CF, SD, micro SD, etc.) or external-HDD type devices can be unrecognizable.**
- **Music files protected by DRM (DIGITAL RIGHTS MANAGEMENT) are not recognizable.**
- **The data in the USB memory may be lost whilst using this audio. Always back up important data on a personal storage device.**
- **Please avoid using USB memory products which can be used as key chains or mobile phone accessories as they could cause damage to the USB jack. Please make certain only to use plug type connector products.**



✻ NOTICE - Using the iPod® Device

- Some iPod® models may not support communication protocol and files may not properly play.
  Supported iPod® models:
  - iPhone® 3GS/4
  - iPod® touch 1st~4th generation
  - iPod® nano 1st~6th generation
  - iPod® classic
- The order of search or playback of songs in the iPod® can be different from the order searched in the audio system.
- If the iPod® disabled due to its own malfunction, reset the iPod®. (Reset: Refer to iPod® manual)
- An iPod® may not operate normally on low battery.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Some iPod® devices, such as the iPhone®, can be connected through the Bluetooth® Wireless Technology interface. The device must have audio Bluetooth® Wireless Technology capability (such as for stereo headphone *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology). The device can play, but it will not be controlled by the audio system.
- To use iPod® features within the audio, use the cable provided upon purchasing an iPod® device.
- Skipping or improper operation may occur depending on the characteristics of your iPod®/iPhone® device.
- If your iPhone® is connected to both the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology and USB, the sound may not be properly played. In your iPhone®, select the Dock connector or *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology to change the sound output (source).

(Continued)

(Continued)

- When connecting iPod® with the iPod® Power Cable, insert the connector to the multimedia socket completely. If not inserted completely, communications between iPod® and audio may be interrupted.
- When adjusting the sound effects of the iPod® and the audio system, the sound effects of both devices will overlap and might reduce or distort the quality of the sound.
- Deactivate (turn off) the equalizer function of an iPod® when adjusting the audio system's volume, and turn off the equalizer of the audio system when using the equalizer of an iPod®.
- When not using iPod® with car audio, detach the iPod® cable from iPod®. Otherwise, iPod® may remain in accessory mode, and may not work properly.
- Beside support 1M cable when purchasing iPod®/iPhone® products, Long Cable cannot be recognized.

✻ NOTICE - Using the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Mobile Phone

- ***Bluetooth***® **Wireless Technology Handsfree refers to a device which allows the user to conveniently make phone calls with *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology mobile phones through the audio system.**
- ***Bluetooth***® **Wireless Technology allows devices to be connected in a short distance, including hands-free devices, stereo headsets, wireless remote controllers, etc. For more information, visit the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology website at www.Bluetooth.com. Before using *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology audio features.**
- **The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth® SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Kia is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners. A Bluetooth® enabled cell phone is required to use *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ***Bluetooth***® **Wireless Technology features supported within the vehicle are as follows. Some features may not be supported depending on your *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device.**
  - **Answering and placing *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Handsfree calls**
  - **Menu operation during call (Switch to Private, Switch to call waiting, Outgoing volume)**
  - **Download Call History**
  - **Download Mobile Phone book**
  - **Phone book/Call History Auto Download**
  - ***Bluetooth***® **Wireless Technology device auto connection**
  - ***Bluetooth***® **Wireless Technology Audio**
- **Before using *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology related features of the audio system, refer your phone's User's Manual for phone-side *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology operations.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **The phone must be paired to the audio system to use *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology related features.**
- **Pairing and connecting a Bluetooth® Wireless Technology enabled mobile phone will work only when the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology option within your mobile phone has been turned on. (Methods of turning on the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology enabled feature may differ depending on the mobile phone.)**
- **Do not use a mobile phone or perform *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology settings (e.g. pairing a phone) whilst driving.**
- **Even if the phone supports *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology, the phone will not be found during device searches if the phone has been set to hidden state or the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology power is turned off. Disable the hidden state or turn on the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology power prior to searching/connecting with the car audio system.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **You will not be able to use the hands-free feature when your phone (in the car) is outside of the mobile service area (e.g. in a tunnel, in a underground, in a mountainous area, etc.).**
- **If the mobile phone signal is poor or the vehicles interior noise is too loud, it may be difficult to hear the other person's voice during a call.**
- **Do not place the phone near or inside metallic objects, otherwise communications with *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology system or mobile service stations can be disturbed.**
- **Placing the audio system within an electromagnetic environment may result in noise interference.**
- **Some mobile phones or other devices may cause interference noise or malfunction to audio system. In this case, store the device in a different location may resolve the condition.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Whilst a phone is connected through *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology your phone may discharge quicker than usual for additional *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology-related operations.**
- **If Priority is set upon vehicle ignition (IGN/ACC ON), the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone will be automatically connected. Even if you are outside, the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone will be automatically connected once you are in the vicinity of the vehicle. If you do not want to automatically connect your *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone, try the following.**

1) **Turn off the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature in your mobile phone.**
2) **Turn off the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature in your car audio system.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

  - **To turn off the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature in your car audio system, go to [SETUP] > [Phone] and [turn off] the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature.**

- ***Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology connection may become intermittently disconnected in some mobile phones. Follow these steps to try again.**

1) **Turn the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology function within the mobile phone off/on and try again.**
2) **Turn the mobile phone power Off/On and try again.**
3) **Completely remove the mobile phone battery, reboot, and then again.**
4) **Reboot the audio system and try again.**
5) **Delete all paired devices, pair and try again.**

- **It is possible to pair up to five *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology devices to the car system.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Phone contact names should be saved in English or they may not be displayed correctly.**
- **The Handsfree call volume and quality may differ depending on the mobile phone.**
- **Only one *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device can be connected at a time.**
- **In some mobile phones, starting the ignition whilst talking through *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology enabled handsfree call will result in the call becoming disconnected. (Switch the call back to your mobile phone when starting the ignition.)**
- **If the mobile phone is not paired or connected, it is not possible to enter Phone mode. Once a phone is paired or connected, the guidance screen will be displayed**

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Bluetooth® Wireless Technology Handsfree is a feature that enables drivers to practice safe driving. Connecting the car audio system with a Bluetooth® Wireless Technology phone allows the user to conveniently make calls, receive calls, and manage the phone book. Before using the Bluetooth® Wireless Technology , carefully read the contents of this user's manual.***
- ***Excessive use or operations whilst driving may lead to negligent driving practices and be the cause of accidents.***
- ***Do not operate the device excessively whilst driving.***
- ***Viewing the screen for prolonged periods of time is dangerous and may lead to accidents.***
- ***When driving, view the screen only for short periods of time.***

✻ NOTICE - Using the Voice Recognition

- **The voice recognition feature of this product supports recognition of the commands listed within this user's manual.**
- **Whilst using voice recognition, operating the steering wheel controls or the device will terminate voice recognition and allow you to manually operate desired functions.**
- **Position the microphone above the head of the driver's seat. For superior performance, maintain good posture when saying voice commands.**
- **Voice recognition may not function properly due to outside noise. The following conditions can affect the performance of Voice Recognition:**
  - **When the windows and sunroof are open**
  - **When the heating/cooling system is on**
  - **When passing a tunnel**
  - **When driving on rugged and uneven roads**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **After downloading *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone book, the system requires some times to convert the phone book into voice information. During this time, voice recognition may not operate properly.**
- **Upon inputting your phone book, special symbols and numbers cannot be recognized by voice. For example, "# John Doe%&" will be recognized as "John Doe".**

Radio Mode (Type A-1, Type A-2 with RDS)

With the Radio Mode Button



SEEK

Press the **[SEEK TRACK]** button.

- Shortly pressing the button : Changes the frequency.
- Pressing and holding the button : Automatically searches for the next frequency.

Preset SEEK

Press the **[1]** ~ **[6]** button.

- Shortly pressing the button : Plays the frequency saved in the corresponding button.
- Pressing and holding the button : Pressing and holding the desired button from **[1]** ~ **[6]** will save the currently playing broadcast to the selected button and sound a BEEP.

SCAN

Press the **[TA/SCAN]** button.

- Pressing and holding the button : The broadcast frequency increases and previews each broadcast for 5 seconds each. After scanning all frequencies, returns and plays the current broadcast frequency.

Selecting through manual search

Turn the **TUNE** knob left/right to adjust the frequency.

Traffic Announcement (TA)

Shortly pressing the **[TA/SCAN]** button : Set [On/Off] TA (Traffic Announcement) mode.

MENU : Radio



Within **[MENU]** button are the AST (Auto Store) and Info functions.

AST (Auto Store) : [1] Button

Select AST (Auto Store) to save frequencies with superior reception to presets **[1]** ~ **[6]**. If no frequencies are received, then the most recently received frequency will be broadcast.

Saves only to the Preset memory **[1] ~ [6]** of FMA or AMA mode.

AF (Alternative Frequency) : [2] Button

The Alternative Frequency option can be turned On/Off.

Region : [3] Button

The Region option can be turned On/Off.

News : [4] Button

The News option can be turned On/Off.

Radio Mode (Type A-3, Type A-4)

With the Radio Mode Button



SEEK

Press the **[SEEK TRACK]** button

- Shortly pressing the button : Changes the frequency.
- Pressing and holding the button : Automatically searches for the next frequency.

Preset SEEK

Press the **[1]** ~ **[6]** button

- Shortly pressing the button : Plays the frequency saved in the corresponding button.
- Pressing and holding the button : Pressing and holding the desired button from **[1]** ~ **[6]** will save the currently playing broadcast to the selected button and sound a BEEP.

SCAN

Press the **[SCAN]** button

- Shortly pressing the button : The broadcast frequency increases and previews each broadcast for 5 seconds each. After scanning all frequencies, returns and plays the current broadcast frequency.
- Pressing and holding the button : Previews the broadcasts saved in Preset **[1]** ~ **[6]** for 5 seconds each.

Selecting through manual search

Turn the **TUNE** knob left/right to adjust the frequency.

MENU : Radio



Within **[MENU]** button are the AST (Auto Store) and Info functions.

AST (Auto Store) : [1] Button

Select AST(Auto Store) to save frequencies with superior reception to presets **[1]** ~ **[6]**. If no frequencies are received, then the most recently received frequency will be broadcast.

Media Mode

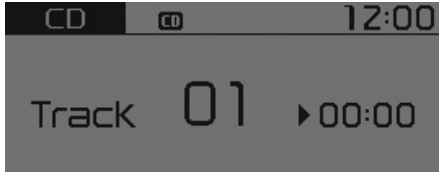
With the Media Mode Button

Press the **[MEDIA]** button to change the mode in order of CD ➟ USB(iPod®) ➟ AUX ➟ My Music* ➟ BT Audio*.

*if equipped

The folder/file name is displayed on the screen.

■ Audio CD Mode



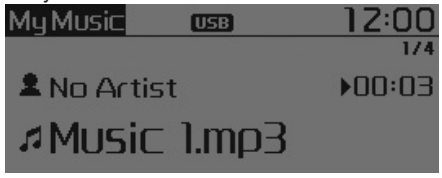
■ MP3 CD Mode



■ USB Mode



■ My Music Mode



The CD is automatically played when a CD is inserted.

The USB music is automatically played when a USB is connected.

Repeat

Whilst song (file) is playing ▶ **[RPT]** button

Audio CD, MP3 CD, USB, iPod®, My Music* mode : RPT on screen

- To repeat one song (Shortly pressing the button) : Repeats the current song.

MP3 CD, USB mode : FLD.RPT on screen

- To repeat folder (pressing twice) : repeats all files within the current folder.

Press the **[RPT]** button again to turn off repeat.

*if equipped

Random

Whilst song (file) is playing ▶ **[RDM]** button

Audio CD, My Music* mode : RDM on screen

- Random (Shortly pressing the button) : Plays all songs in random order.

MP3 CD, USB mode : FLD.RDM on screen

- Folder Random (Shortly pressing the button) : Plays all files within the current folder in random order.

MP3 CD, USB mode : ALL RDM on screen

- Random (pressing twice) : Plays all files in random order.

iPod® mode : RDM on screen

- Random (Shortly pressing the button) : Plays all files in random order.

Press the **[RDM]** button again to turn off random.

*if equipped

Changing Song/File

Whilst song (file) is playing ▶ **[SEEK TRACK ∨]** button

- Shortly pressing the button : Plays the current song from the beginning.

If the **[SEEK TRACK ∨]** button is pressed again within 1 second, the previous song is played.

- Pressing and holding the button : Rewinds the song.

Whilst song (file) is playing ▶ **[SEEK TRACK ∧]** button

- Shortly pressing the button : Plays the next song.
- Pressing and holding the button : Fast forwards the song.

Scan (With RDS)

- Pressing and holding the **[TA/SCAN]** button : Scans all songs for 10 seconds starting from the next song.
- Pressing and holding the **[TA/SCAN]** button again to turn off.
- The SCAN function is not supported in iPod® mode.

Scan (Without RDS)

- Shortly pressing the **[SCAN]** button : Scans all songs from the next song for 10 seconds each.
- Press the **[SCAN]** button again to turn off.
- The SCAN function is not supported in iPod® mode.

Folder Search
(Only MP3 CD, USB mode)

Whilst file is playing ▶ **[FOLDER ∧]** button

- Searches the next folder.

Whilst file is playing ▶ **[FOLDER ∨]** button

- Searches the parent folder.

If a folder is selected by pressing the **TUNE** knob, the first file within the selected folder will be played.

Searching Songs (File)

- Turning **TUNE** knob : Searches for songs (files).
- Pressing **TUNE** knob : Plays selected song (file).

MENU : Audio CD



Press the Audio CD mode **[MENU]** button to set the Repeat, Random, Information features.

Repeat : [1] Button

Repeat the current song.

Press RPT again to turn off.

Random : [2] Button

Randomly play songs within the CD.

Press RDM again to turn off.

Information : [3] Button

Display information of the current song.

Press the **[MENU]** button to turn off info display.

MENU : MP3 CD / USB



Press the MP3 CD / USB mode **[MENU]** button to set the Repeat, Folder Random, Folder Repeat, All Random, Information and Copy features.

Repeat : [1] Button

Repeat the current song.

Press RPT again to turn off.

Folder Random : [2] Button

Randomly play songs within the current folder.

Press F.RDM again to turn off.

Folder Repeat : [3] Button

Repeat songs within the current folder.

Press F.RPT again to turn off.

All Random : [4] Button

Randomly play all songs within the CD / USB.

Press A.RDM again to turn off.

Information : [5] Button

Display information of the current song.

Press the **[MENU]** button to turn off info display.

Copy : [6] Button (if equipped)

This is used to copy the current song into My Music. You can play the copied Music in My Music mode.

If another button is pressed whilst copying is in progress, a pop up asking you whether to cancel copying is displayed.

If another media is connected or inserted (USB, CD, iPod®, AUX) whilst copying is in progress, copying is cancelled.

Music will not be played whilst copying is in progress.

MENU : iPod®



In iPod® mode, press the **[MENU]** button to set the Repeat, Random, Information and Search features.

Repeat : [1] Button

Repeat the current song.

Press RPT again to turn repeat off.

Random : [2] Button

Plays all songs within the currently playing category in random order.

Press RDM again to turn off.

Information : [3] Button

Displays information of the current song.

Press the **[MENU]** button to turn off info display.

Search : [4] Button

Displays iPod® category list.

Searching iPod® category is **[MENU]** button pressed, move to parent category.

MENU : AUX

■ Type A-1, Type A-2



■ Type A-3, Type A-4



AUX is used to play external MEDIA currently connected with the AUX terminal.

AUX mode will automatically start when an external device is connected with the AUX terminal.

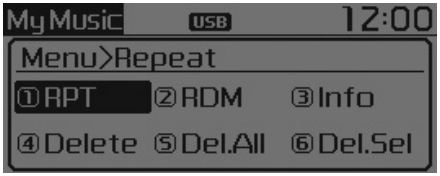
If an external device is connected, you can also press the **[MEDIA]** button to change to AUX mode.

AUX mode cannot be started unless there is an external device connected to the AUX terminal.

✻ NOTICE - Using the AUX

Fully insert the AUX cable into the AUX terminal for use.

MENU : My Music (if equipped)



In My Music mode, press the **[MENU]** button to set the Repeat, Random, Information, Delete, Delete All and Delete Selection features.

Repeat : [1] Button

Repeats the currently playing song.

Press RPT again to turn repeat off.

Random : [2] Button

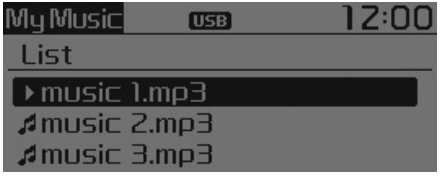
Plays all songs in random order.

Press RDM again to turn random off.

Information : [3] Button

Displays information of the current song.

Press the **[MENU]** button to turn off info display.



Delete : [4] Button

- Deletes currently playing file

  In the play screen, pressing delete will delete the currently playing song.
- Deletes file from list

① Select the file you wish to delete by using the **TUNE** knob.

② Press the **[MENU]** button and select the delete menu to delete the selected file

Delete All : [5] Button

Deletes all songs of My Music.

Delete Selection : [6] Button

Songs within My Music are selected and deleted.



① Select the songs you wish to delete from the list.



② After selecting, press the **[MENU]** button and select the delete menu.

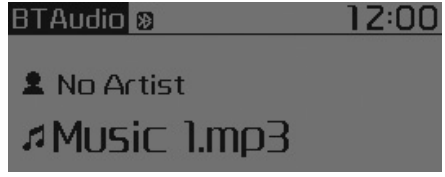
✻ NOTICE - Using the My Music

- **Even if memory is available, a maximum of 6,000 songs can be stored.**
- **The same song can be copied up to 1,000 times.**
- **Memory info can be checked in the System menu of Setup.**

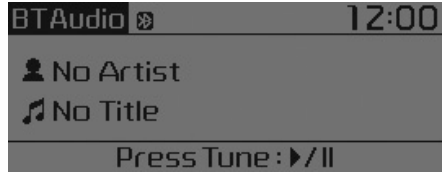
MENU : Bluetooth® Wireless Technology Audio (if equipped)

If BT Audio is selected, *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology audio will start playing.

Audio may not automatically start playing in some mobile phones.



■ For Colombia Model



Play / Pause : Press the **TUNE** knob to play and pause the current song.

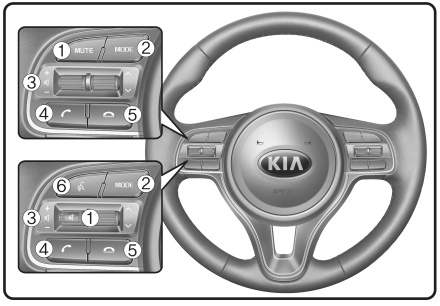
The previous song / next song / play / pause functions may not be supported in some mobile phones.

⚠ WARNING

Driving whilst distracted can result in a loss of vehicle control that may lead to an accident, severe personal injury, and death. The driver's primary responsibility is in the safe and legal operation of a vehicle, and use of any handheld devices, other equipment, or vehicle systems which take the driver's eyes, attention and focus away from the safe operation of a vehicle or which are not permissible by law should never be used during operation of the vehicle.

Phone Mode (if equipped)

Making a call using the Steering wheel controls



❈ The actual features in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

(1) Mutes the microphone during a call.

(2) Press the button to change audio source.

(Without RDS)

FM ➟ AM ➟ CD ➟ USB(iPod®) ➟ AUX ➟ My Music ➟ BT Audio.

(With RDS)

FM1 ➟ FM2 ➟ FMA ➟ AM ➟ AMA ➟ CD ➟ USB(iPod®) ➟ AUX ➟ My Music ➟ BT Audio.

(3) Raises or lowers speaker volume.

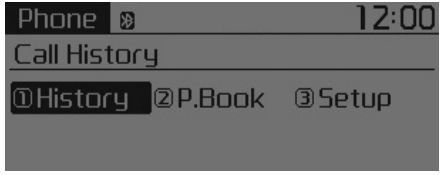
(4) Places and transfers calls.

- Check call history and making call
  - Shortly press the **[Call]** button on the steering wheel controls.
  - The call history list will be displayed on the screen.
  - Press the **[Call]** button again to connect a call to the selected number.
- Redialing the most recently called number
  - Press and hold the **[Call]** button on the steering wheel controls.
  - The most recently called number is redialed.

(5) Ends calls or cancels functions.

(6) Activates voice recognition.

MENU : Phone (Type A-1)



Press the **[PHONE]** button to display three menus (Call History, Phone Book, Phone Setup).

History : [1] Button

The call history is displayed and can be used to select a number and make a call.

If call history does not exist, a screen asking whether to download call history is displayed. (The download feature may not be supported in some mobile phones)

P.Book : [2] Button

The phone book is displayed and can be used to select a number and make a call.

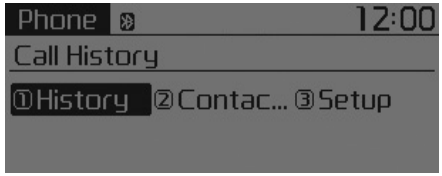
If more than one number is saved to one phone book, then a screen showing the mobile phone number, Home and office number is displayed. Select the desired number to make the call.

If phone book does not exist, a screen asking whether to download phone book is displayed. (The download feature may not be supported in some mobile phones)

Setup : [3] Button

The *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology mobile phone setup screen is displayed. For more information, refer to “Phone Setup”.

MENU : Phone (Type A-3)



Press the **[PHONE]** button to display three menus (Call History, Contacts, Phone Setup).

History : [1] Button

The call history is displayed and can be used to select a number and make a call.

If call history does not exist, a screen asking whether to download call history is displayed. (The download feature may not be supported in some mobile phones)

Contacts : [2] Button

The contacts are displayed and can be used to select a number and make a call.

If more than one number is saved to one contact, then a screen showing the mobile phone number, Home and office number is displayed. Select the desired number to make the call.

If contacts do not exist, a screen asking whether to download contacts are displayed. (The download feature may not be supported in some mobile phones)

Setup : [3] Button

The *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology mobile phone setup screen is displayed. For more information, refer to “Phone Setup”.

MENU : Phone
(Type A-3, For Colombia Model)



Press the **[PHONE]** button to display four menus (Favorite, Call History, Contacts, Phone Setup).

Favorite : [1] Button

Up to 20 frequently used contacts saved for easy access

History : [2] Button

The call history is displayed and can be used to select a number and make a call.

If call history does not exist, a screen asking whether to download call history is displayed. (The download feature may not be supported in some mobile phones)

Contacts : [3] Button

The contacts are displayed and can be used to select a number and make a call.

If more than one number is saved to one contact, then a screen showing the mobile phone number, Home and office number is displayed. Select the desired number to make the call.

If contacts do not exist, a screen asking whether to download contacts are displayed. (The download feature may not be supported in some mobile phones)

Setup : [4] Button

The *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology mobile phone setup screen is displayed. For more information, refer to “Phone Setup”.

Voice Recognition Mode (if equipped)

Using Voice Recognition

- To start voice command, shortly press the button on the steering wheel controls.
- If voice command is in [Normal Mode], then the system will say “Please say a command. Ding”
- If voice command is in [Expert Mode], then the system will only say a “Ding-”
- Setting Voice command [Normal Mode]/[Expert Mode] :

  Press the **[PHONE]** button ▶ Select [System] ▶ Select [VRS Mode] ▶ Set [Normal Mode]/ [Expert Mode]
- Say the voice command.

✻ NOTICE

For proper voice recognition, say the voice command after the guidance message and the “Ding” sound.

Skipping the Guidance Message



Whilst the guidance message is being stated, shortly press the button to discontinue the guidance message and sound the “Ding”.

After the “Ding”, say the voice command.

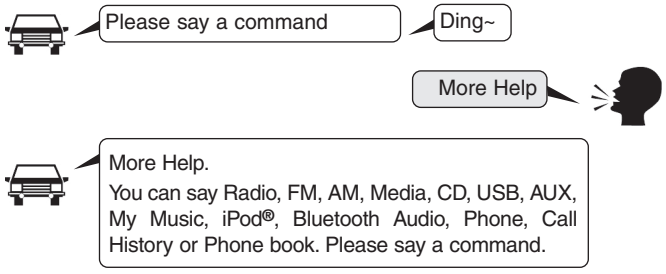
Ending Voice Recognition

- Whilst using voice command, press and hold the button to end voice command.
- Whilst using voice command, pressing the steering wheel controls or a different button will end voice command.
- In a state where the system is waiting for your voice command, say “cancel” or “end” to end voice command.
- In a state where the system is waiting for your voice command, shortly press the button to end voice command.

Illustration on Using Voice Recognition

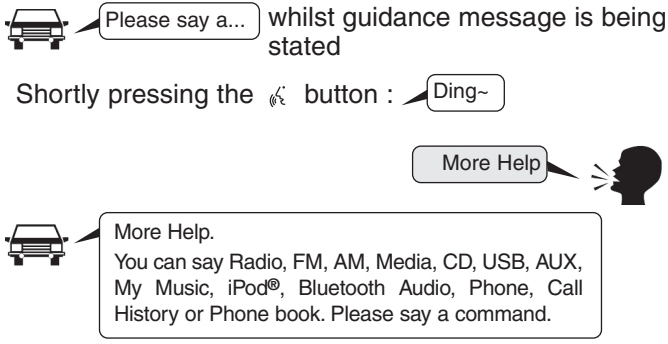
Starting Voice Recognition

Shortly pressing the button :



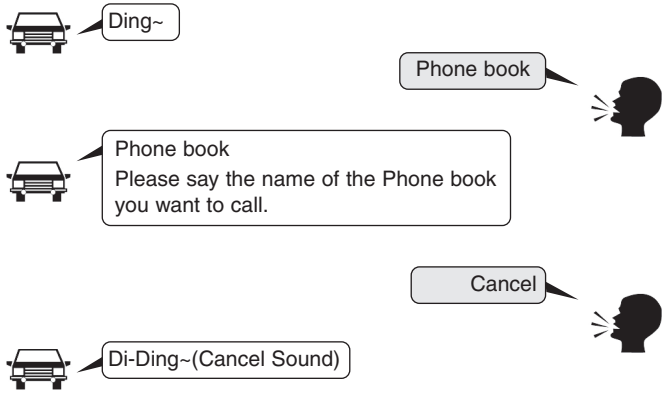
Skipping Voice Recognition

Shortly pressing the button :



Ending Voice Recognition

Shortly pressing the button :



Voice Command List

Common Commands

These commands can be used in most operations.

(However a few commands may not be available during certain operations)

Command	Function
More Help	Provides guidance on commands that can be used anywhere in the system.
Help	Provides guidance on commands that can be used within the current mode.
Call<Name>	Calls <Name> saved in phone book Ex) Call “John Smith”
Phone	Provides guidance on Phone related commands. After saying this command, say “Call History”, “Phone book”, “Dial Number” to execute corresponding functions.
Call History	Displays the Call History screen.
Phone book	Displays the phone book screen. After saying this command, say the name of a phone book saved in the phone book to automatically connect the call.
Dial Number	Displays the Dial number screen. After saying this command, you can say the number that you want to call.
Redial	Connects the most recently called number.
Radio	• When listening to the radio, displays the next radio screen. (FM1➟FM2➟FMA➟AM➟AMA) • When listening to a different mode, displays the most recently played radio screen.

Command	Function
FM	• When currently listening to the FM radio, maintains the current state. • When listening to a different mode, displays the most recently played FM screen.
FM1(FM One)	Displays the FM1 screen.
FM2(FM Two)	Displays the FM2 screen.
FMA	Displays the FMA screen.
AM	Displays the AM screen.
AMA	Displays the AMA screen.
FM Preset 1~6	Plays the most recently played broadcast saved in FM Preset 1~6.
AM Preset 1~6	Plays the broadcast saved in AM Preset 1~6.
FM 87.5~107.9	Plays the FM broadcast of the corresponding frequency. ❊ Range can be different by application frequency of corresponding country.
AM 530~1710	Plays the AM broadcast of the corresponding frequency. ❊ Range can be different by application frequency of corresponding country.
TA On	Enables Traffic Announcement.
TA Off	Disables Traffic Announcement.

Command	Function
News On	Enables RDS News feature.
News Off	Disables RDS News feature.
Media	Moves to the most recently played media screen.
Play Track 1~30	If a music CD has been inserted, plays the corresponding track.
CD	Plays the music saved in the CD.
Search CD	Moves to the CD track or file selection screen. • For audio CDs, move to the screen and say the track number to play the corresponding track. • Moves to MP3 CD file selection screen. After manually operate the device to select and play music.
USB	Plays USB music.
Search USB	Moves to USB file selection screen. After manually operate the device to select and play music.
iPod®	Plays iPod® music.
Search iPod®	Moves to the iPod® file selection screen. After, manually operate the device to select and play music.
My Music	Plays the music saved in My Music.
Search My Music	Moves to the My Music file selection screen. After, manually operate the device to select and play music.

Command	Function
AUX (Auxiliary)	Plays the connected external device.
Bluetooth® Audio	Plays the music saved in connected *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device.
Mute	Mutes the radio or music volume.
Pardon?	Repeats the most recent comment.
Cancel (Exit))	Ends voice command.

FM/AM Radio Commands

Commands available during FM, AM radio operation.

Command	Function
Preset 1~6	Plays the broadcast saved in Preset 1~6.
Auto Store	Automatically selects radio broadcast frequencies with superior reception and saves in Presets 1~6.
Preset Save 1~6	Saves the current broadcast frequency to Preset 1~6.
Seek up	Plays the next (higher) receivable broadcast.
Seek down	Plays the previous (lower) receivable broadcast.
Next Preset	Selects the preset number next to the most recently selected preset. (Example: When currently listening to preset no. 3, then preset no. 4 will be selected.)
Previous Preset	Selects the preset number previous to the most recently selected preset. (Example: When currently listening to preset no. 3, then preset no. 2 will be selected.)
Scan	Scans receivable frequencies from the current broadcast and plays for 10 seconds each.
Preset Scan	Moves to the next preset from the current present and plays for 10 seconds each.
AF on	Enables Alternative Frequency feature.
AF off	Disables Alternative Frequency feature.
Region	Enables Region feature.
Region off	Disables Region feature.

Audio CD Commands

Commands available during Audio CD operation.

Command	Function
Random	Randomly plays the tracks within the CD.
Random Off	Cancels random play to play tracks in sequential order.
Repeat	Repeats the current track.
Repeat Off	Cancels repeat play to play tracks in sequential order.
Next Track	Plays the next track.
Previous Track	Plays the previous track.
Scan	Scans the tracks from the next track for 10 seconds each.
Track 1~30	Plays the desired track number.
Information	Displays the information screen of the current track.

MP3 CD / USB Commands

Commands available during USB and MP3 CD operation.

Command	Function
Random	Randomly plays the files within the current folder.
All Random	Randomly plays all saved files.
Random Off	Cancels random play to play files in sequential order.
Repeat	Repeats the current file.
Folder Repeat	Repeats all files in the current folder.
Repeat Off	Cancels repeat play to play files in sequential order.
Next File	Plays the next file.
Previous File	Plays the previous file.
Scan	Scans the tracks from the next files for 10 seconds each.
Information	Displays the information screen of the current file.
Copy	Copies the current file into My Music.

iPod® Commands

Commands available during iPod® operation.

Command	Function
All Random	Randomly plays all saved songs.
Random	Randomly plays the songs within the current category.
Random Off	Cancels random play to play songs in sequential order.
Repeat	Repeats the current song.
Repeat Off	Cancels repeat play to play songs in sequential order.
Next Song	Plays the next song.
Previous Song	Plays the previous song.
Information	Displays the information screen of the current song.

My Music Commands

Commands available during My Music operation.

Command	Function
Random	Randomly plays all saved files.
Random Off	Cancels random play to play files in sequential order.
Repeat	Repeats the current file.
Repeat Off	Cancels repeat play to play files in sequential order.
Next File	Plays the next file.
Previous File	Plays the previous file.
Scan	Scans the files from the next files for 10 seconds each.
Information	Displays the information screen of the current file.
Delete	Deletes the current file. You will bypass an additional confirmation process.
Delete All	Deletes all files saved in My Music. You will bypass an additional confirmation process.

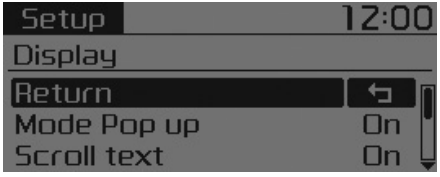
Bluetooth® Wireless Technology Audio Commands

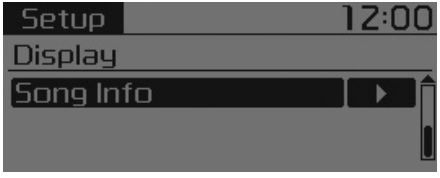
Commands available during *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology audio streaming from mobile phone operation Command Operation.

Command	Function
Play	Plays the currently paused song.
Pause	Pauses the current song.

Setup Mode (Type A-1, Type A-2)

With the Display Button





Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [Display]

Mode Pop up

[Mode Pop up] ▶ Changes [On] selection mode

- During On state, press the **[RADIO]** or **[MEDIA]** button to display the mode change pop up screen.

Scroll text

[Scroll text] ▶ Set [On/Off]

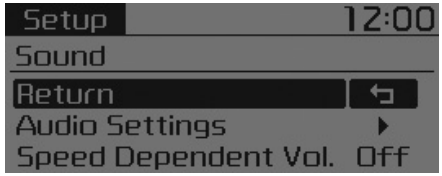
- [On] : Maintains scroll
- [Off] : Scrolls only one (1) time.



Song Info

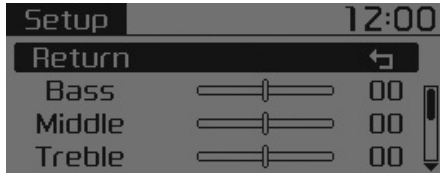
When playing an MP3 file, select the desired display info from 'Folder/File' or 'Album/Artist/Song'.

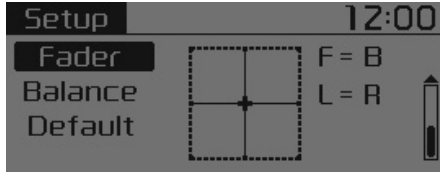
With the Sound Button





Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [Sound]





Audio Settings

This menu allows you to set the 'Bass, Middle, Treble' and the Sound Fader and Balance.

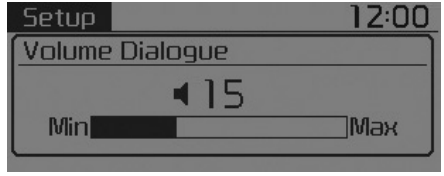
Select [Audio Settings] ▶ Select menu

- Return : Whilst adjusting values, re-pressing the **TUNE** knob will restore the parent menu.
- Bass, Middle, Treble : Selects the sound tone.
- Fader, Balance : Moves the sound fader and balance.
- Default : Restores default settings.

Speed Dependent Volume Control

This feature is used to automatically control the volume level according to the speed of the vehicle.

Select [Speed Dependent Vol.] ▶ Set [Off/On]

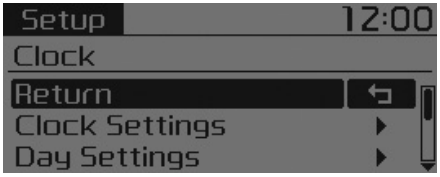


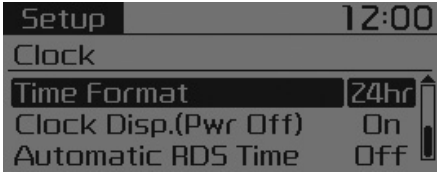
Volume Dialogue (if equipped)

Adjusts voice recognition volume.

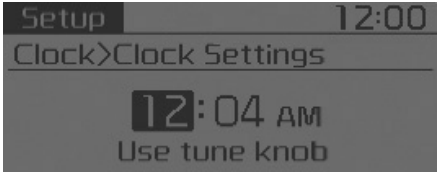
Select [Volume Dialogue]

With the Clock Button





Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [Clock]

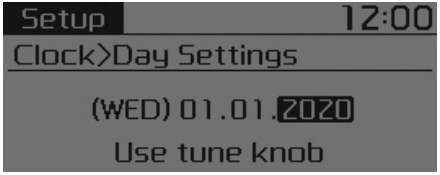


Clock Settings

This menu is used to set the time.

Select [Clock Settings]

Adjust the number currently in focus to set the [hour] and press the **TUNE** knob to set the [minute].



Day Settings

This menu is used to set the date.

Select [Day Settings]

Adjust the number currently in focus to make the settings and press the **TUNE** knob to move to the next setting.

Time Format

This function is used to set the 12/24 hour time format of the audio system.
Select [Time Format] Set 12hr / 24hr

Clock Display when Power is OFF

Select [Clock Disp.(Pwr Off)] ▶ Set [On/Off]

- [On] : Displays time/date on screen
- [Off] : Turn off.

Automatic RDS Time (With RDS)

This option is used to automatically set the time by synchronizing with RDS.

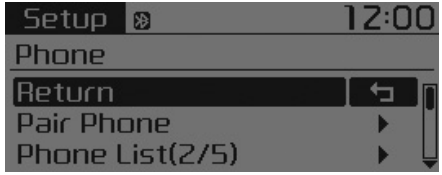
Select [Automatic RDS Time] ▶ Set [On/Off]

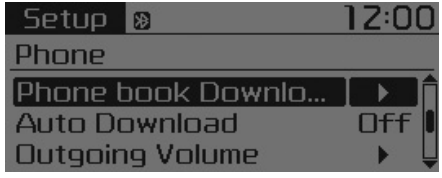
- [On] : Turn on Automatic Time
- [Off] : Turn off.

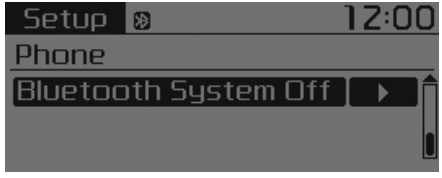
✻ NOTICE

Because some local radio stations do not support an automatic RDS time function, some RDS Transmitters may not provide correct time.
If incorrect time is displayed, set it manually following the Step "Clock Settings" in previous page.

With the Phone Button (if equipped)







Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶
Select [Phone]

Pair Phone

Select [Pair Phone]

⚠ CAUTION

To pair a Bluetooth® Wireless Technology enabled mobile phone, authentication and connection processes are first required. As a result, you cannot pair your mobile phone whilst driving the vehicle. First park your vehicle before use.

① Search for device names as displayed on your mobile phone and connect.

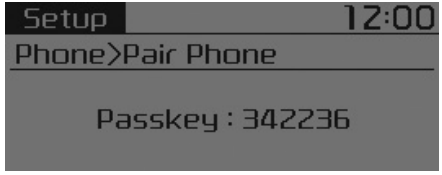
❊ SSP : Secure Simple Pairing



Non SSP supported device :

② After a few moments, a screen is displayed where the passkey is entered.

Enter the passkey “0000” to pair your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device with the car audio system.



SSP supported device :

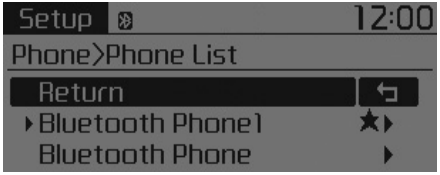
② After a few moments, a screen is displayed 6 digits passkey. Check the passkey on your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device and confirm.

The device name and passkey will be displayed on the screen for up to 3 minutes. If pairing is not completed within the 3 minutes, the mobile phone pairing process will automatically be cancelled.

③ Pairing completion is displayed.

In some mobile phones, pairing will automatically be followed by connection.

It is possible to pair up to five *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology enabled mobile phones.



Phone List

The names of up to 5 paired phones will be displayed.

A [▶] is displayed in front of the currently connected phone.

Select the desired name to setup the selected phone.



• Connecting a phone

Select [Phone List] ▶ Select mobile phone ▶ Select [Connect Phone]

① Select a mobile phone that is not currently connected.

② Connect the selected mobile phone.

③ Connection completion is displayed.

If a phone is already connected, disconnect the currently connected phone and select a new phone to connect.



• Disconnecting a connected phone

Select [Phone List] ▶ Select mobile phone ▶ Select [Disconnect Phone]

① Select the currently connected mobile phone.

② Disconnect the selected mobile phone.

③ Disconnection completion is displayed.

• Changing connection sequence (Priority)

This is used to change the order (priority) of automatic connection for the paired mobile phones.

Select [Phone List] ▶ Select [Priority] ▶ Select No. 1 Priority mobile phone

① Select [Priority].

② From the paired phones, select the phone desired for No.1 priority.

③ The changed priority sequence is displayed.

Once the connection sequence (priority) is changed, the new no. 1 priority mobile phone will be connected.

When the no. 1 priority cannot be connected : Automatically attempts to connect the most recently connected phone.

Cases when the most recently connected phone cannot be connected : Attempts to connect in the order in which paired phones are listed.

The connected phone will automatically be changed to No. 1 priority.

• Delete

Select [Phone List] ▶ Select mobile phone ▶ Select [Delete]

① Select the desired mobile phone.

② Delete the selected mobile phone.

③ Deletion completion is displayed.

When attempting to delete a currently connected phone, the phone is first disconnected.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***When you delete a mobile phone, the mobile phone phone book will also be erased.***
- ***For stable Bluetooth® Wireless Technology communication, delete the mobile phone from the audio and also delete the audio from your mobile phone.***

Phone book Download

This feature is used to download phone book and call histories into the audio system.

Select [Phone book Download]

⚠ CAUTION

- ***The download feature may not be supported in some mobile phones.***
- ***When downloading new phone book, delete all previously saved phone book before starting download.***

Auto Download

When connecting a mobile phone, it is possible to automatically download new phone book and Call Histories.

Select [Auto Download] ▶ Set [On/Off]

Outgoing Volume

This is used to set the volume of your voice as heard by the other party whilst on a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology enabled handsfree call.

Select [Outgoing Volume] ▶ Set volume

Even whilst on a call, the volume can be changed by using the **[SEEK TRACK]** button.

Bluetooth System Off

This feature is used when you do not wish to use the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology system.

Select [Bluetooth System Off].

If a phone is already connected, disconnect the currently connected phone and turn the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology system off.

Using the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology

To use *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology when the system is currently off, follow these next steps.

- Turning On *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology through the **[PHONE]** button.

Press the **[PHONE]** button ▶ Screen Guidance

Moves to the screen where *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology functions can be used and displays guidance.

- Turning On *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology through the **[SETUP/ CLOCK]** button.

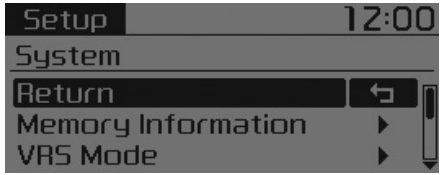
Press the **[SETUP/ CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [Phone]

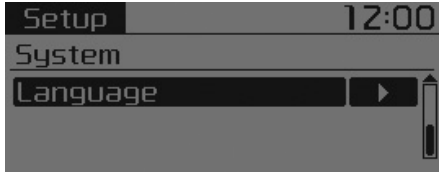
① A screen asking whether to turn on *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology will be displayed.

② On the screen, select [YES] to turn on *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology and display guidance.

If the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology system is turned on, the system will automatically try to connect the most recently connected *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology mobile phone.

With the System Button





Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [System]



Memory Information (if equipped)

Displays currently used memory and total system memory.

Select [Memory Information] ▶ OK

The currently used memory is displayed on the left side whilst the total system memory is displayed on the right side.

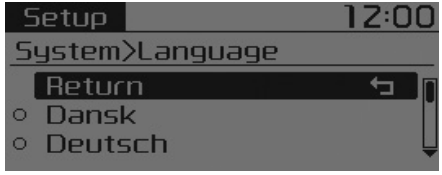
❊ May differ depending on the selected audio.

VRS Mode (if equipped)

This feature is used to change voice command feedback between Normal and Expert modes.

Select [VRS Mode]

- Normal : This mode is for beginner users and provides detailed instructions during voice command operation.
- Expert : This mode is for expert users and omits some information during voice command operation. (When using Expert mode, guidance instructions can be heard through the [Help] or [Menu] commands.



Language

This menu is used to set the display and voice recognition language.

Select [Language]

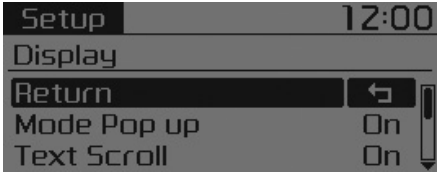
The system will reboot after the language is changed.

- Language support by region.

  Dansk, Deutsch, English(UK), Español, Français, Italiano, Nederlands, Pyccêèé, Polski, Svenska, Türkçe

Setup Mode (Type A-3, Type A-4)

With the Display Button





Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [Display]

Mode Pop up

[Mode Pop up] ▶ Changes [On] selection mode

- During On state, press the **[RADIO]** or **[MEDIA]** button to display the mode change pop up screen.

Text Scroll

[Text Scroll] ▶ Set [On/Off]

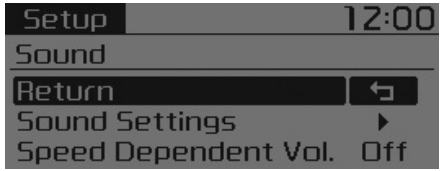
- [On] : Maintains scroll
- [Off] : Scrolls only one (1) time.



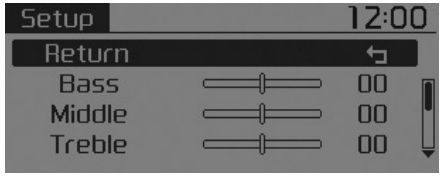
Media Display

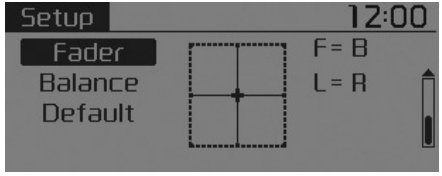
When playing an MP3 file, select the desired display info from 'Folder/File' or 'Album/Artist/Song'.

With the Sound Button



Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [Sound]





Sound Settings

This menu allows you to set the 'Bass, Middle, Treble' and the Sound Fader and Balance.

Select [Sound Settings] ▶ Select menu

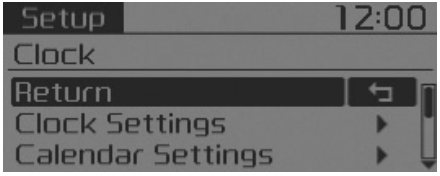
- Return : Whilst adjusting values, re-pressing the **TUNE** knob will restore the parent menu.
- Bass, Middle, Treble : Selects the sound tone.
- Fader, Balance : Moves the sound fader and balance.
- Default : Restores default settings.

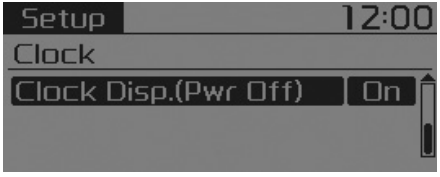
Speed Dependent Volume Control

This feature is used to automatically control the volume level according to the speed of the vehicle.

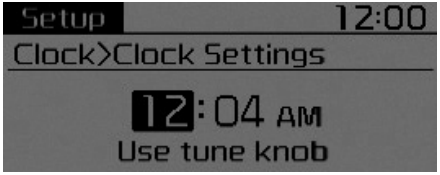
Select [Speed Dependent Vol.] ▶ Set [Off/On]

With the Clock Button





Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [Clock]

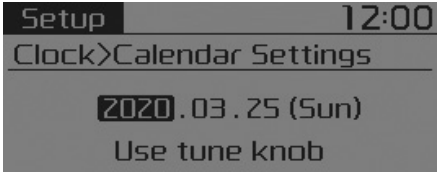


Clock Settings

This menu is used to set the time.

Select [Clock Settings]

Adjust the number currently in focus to set the [hour] and press the **TUNE** knob to set the [minute].



Calendar Settings

This menu is used to set the date.

Select [Calendar Settings]

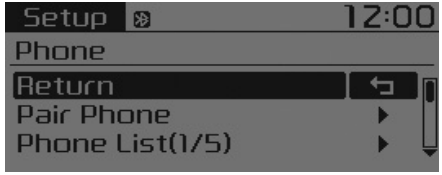
Adjust the number currently in focus to make the settings and press the **TUNE** knob to move to the next setting.

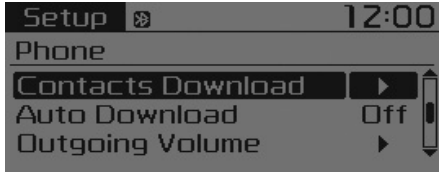
Clock Display when Power is OFF

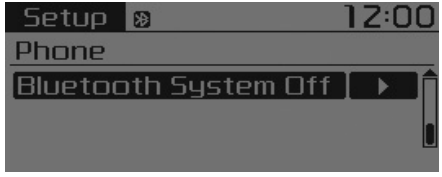
Select [Clock Disp.(Pwr Off)] ▶ Set [On/Off]

- [On] : Displays time/date on screen
- [Off] : Turn off.

With the Phone Button (if equipped)







Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [Phone]

Pair Phone

Select [Pair Phone]

⚠ CAUTION

To pair a Bluetooth® Wireless Technology enabled mobile phone, authentication and connection processes are first required. As a result, you cannot pair your mobile phone whilst driving the vehicle. First park your vehicle before use.

① Search for device names as displayed on your mobile phone and connect.

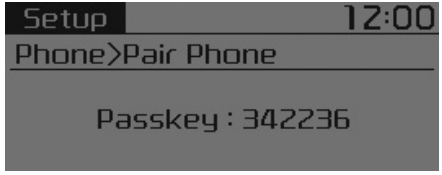
❊ SSP : Secure Simple Pairing



Non SSP supported device :

② After a few moments, a screen is displayed where the passkey is entered.

Enter the passkey “0000” to pair your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device with the car audio system.



SSP supported device :

② After a few moments, a screen is displayed 6 digits passkey.

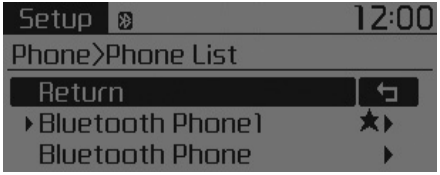
Check the passkey on your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device and confirm.

The device name and passkey will be displayed on the screen for up to 3 minutes. If pairing is not completed within the 3 minutes, the mobile phone pairing process will automatically be cancelled.

③ Pairing completion is displayed.

In some mobile phones, pairing will automatically be followed by connection.

It is possible to pair up to five *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology enabled mobile phones.



Phone List

The names of up to 5 paired phones will be displayed.

A [▶] is displayed in front of the currently connected phone.

Select the desired name to setup the selected phone.



• Connecting a phone

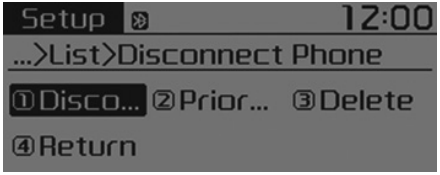
Select [Phone List] ▶ Select mobile phone ▶ Select [Connect Phone]

① Select a mobile phone that is not currently connected.

② Connect the selected mobile phone.

③ Connection completion is displayed.

If a phone is already connected, disconnect the currently connected phone and select a new phone to connect.



• Disconnecting a connected phone

Select [Phone List] ▶ Select mobile phone ▶ Select [Disconnect Phone]

① Select the currently connected mobile phone.

② Disconnect the selected mobile phone.

③ Disconnection completion is displayed.

• Changing connection sequence (Priority)

This is used to change the order (priority) of automatic connection for the paired mobile phones.

Select [Phone List] ▶ Select [Priority] ▶ Select No. 1 Priority mobile phone

① Select [Priority].

② From the paired phones, select the phone desired for No.1 priority.

③ The changed priority sequence is displayed.

Once the connection sequence (priority) is changed, the new no. 1 priority mobile phone will be connected.

When the no. 1 priority cannot be connected: Automatically attempts to connect the most recently connected phone.

Cases when the most recently connected phone cannot be connected: Attempts to connect in the order in which paired phones are listed.

The connected phone will automatically be changed to No. 1 priority.

• Delete

Select [Phone List] ▶ Select mobile phone ▶ Select [Delete]

① Select the desired mobile phone.

② Delete the selected mobile phone.

③ Deletion completion is displayed.

When attempting to delete a currently connected phone, the phone is first disconnected.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***When you delete a mobile phone, the mobile phone contacts will also be erased.***
- ***For stable Bluetooth® Wireless Technology communication, delete the mobile phone from the audio and also delete the audio from your mobile phone.***

Contacts Download

This feature is used to download contacts and call histories into the audio system.

Select [Contacts Download]

⚠ CAUTION

- ***The download feature may not be supported in some mobile phones.***
- ***When downloading new Contacts, delete all previously saved Contacts before starting download.***

Auto Download

When connecting a mobile phone, it is possible to automatically download new Contacts and Call Histories.

Select [Auto Download] ▶ Set [On/Off]

Outgoing Volume

This is used to set the volume of your voice as heard by the other party whilst on a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology enabled handsfree call.

Select [Outgoing Volume] ▶ Set volume

Whilst on a call, the volume can be changed by using the **[SEEK TRACK]** button.

Bluetooth System Off

This feature is used when you do not wish to use the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology system.

Select [Bluetooth System Off]

If a phone is already connected, disconnect the currently connected phone and turn the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology system off.

Using the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology

To use *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology when the system is currently off, follow these next steps.

- Turning On *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology through the **[PHONE]** button

Press the **[PHONE]** button ▶ Screen Guidance

Moves to the screen where *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology functions can be used and displays guidance.

- Turning On *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology through the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button

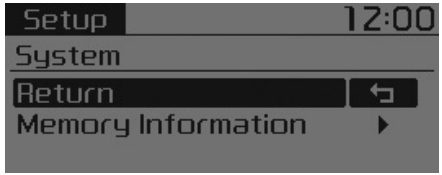
Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [Phone]

① A screen asking whether to turn on *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology will be displayed.

② On the screen, select [YES] to turn on *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology and display guidance.

If the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology system is turned on, the system will automatically try to connect the most recently connected *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology mobile phone.

With the System Button



Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [System]



Memory Information (if equipped)

Displays currently used memory and total system memory.

Select [Memory Information] ▶ OK

The currently used memory is displayed on the left side whilst the total system memory is displayed on the right side.

Setup Mode (Type A-3, Type A-4, For Colombia Model)

With the Display Button



Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [Display]

Mode Pop up

[Mode Pop up] ▶ Changes [On/Off] selection mode

- During On state, press the **[RADIO]** or **[MEDIA]** button to display the mode change pop up screen.



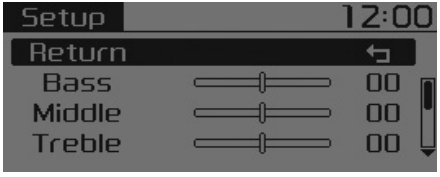
Media Display

When playing an MP3 file, select the desired display info from 'Folder/File' or 'Album/Artist/Song'.

With the Sound Button



Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [Sound]



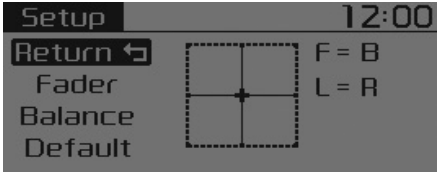


Tone

This menu allows you to set the Bass, Middle, Treble.

Select [Tone]

- Return : Whilst adjusting values, pressing the **TUNE** knob will restore the parent menu.
- Bass, Middle, Treble : Selects the sound tone.
- Default : Restores default settings.

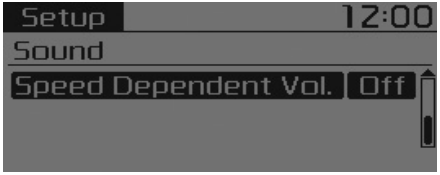


Position

This menu allows you to set the Fader, Balance.

Select [Position]

- Return : Whilst adjusting values, pressing the **TUNE** knob will restore the parent menu.
- Fader, Balance : Selects the sound fader and balance.
- Default : Restores default settings.

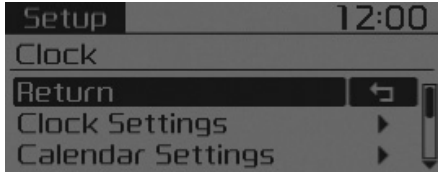


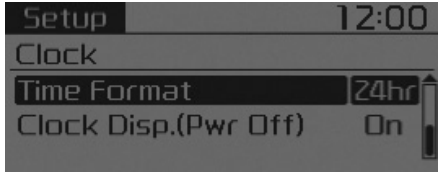
Speed Dependent Volume Control

This feature is used to automatically control the volume level according to the speed of the vehicle.

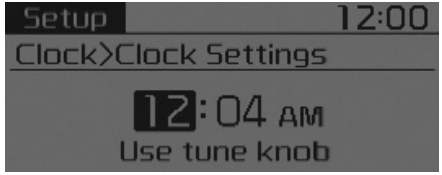
Select [Speed Dependent Vol.] ▶ Set [Off/On]

With the Clock Button





Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [Clock]

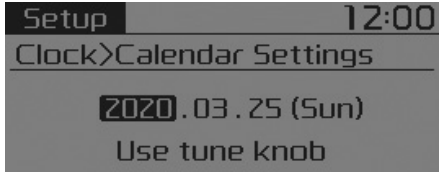


Clock Settings

This menu is used to set the time.

Select [Clock Settings]

Adjust the number currently in focus to set the [hour] and press the **TUNE** knob to set the [minute] and [AM/PM].



Calendar Settings

This menu is used to set the date.

Select [Calendar Settings]

Adjust the number currently in focus to make the settings and press the **TUNE** knob to move to the next setting.

Time Format

This function is used to set the 12/24 hour time format of the audio system.

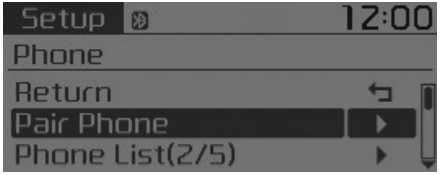
Select [Time Format] Set 12hr / 24hr

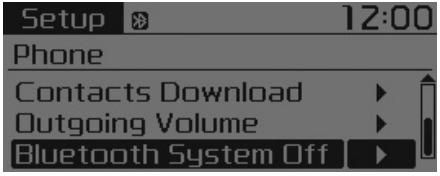
Clock Display when Power is OFF

Select [Clock Disp.(Pwr Off)] ▶ Set [On/Off]

- [On] : Displays time/date on screen
- [Off] : Turn off.

With the Phone Button (if equipped)





Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [Phone]

Pair Phone

Select [Pair Phone]

⚠ CAUTION

To pair a Bluetooth® Wireless Technology enabled mobile phone, authentication and connection processes are first required. As a result, you cannot pair your mobile phone whilst driving the vehicle. First park your vehicle before use.

① Search for device names as displayed on your mobile phone and connect.

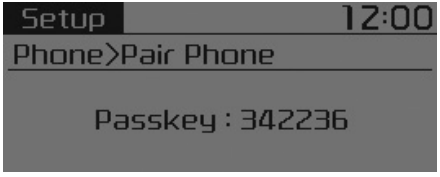
❊ SSP : Secure Simple Pairing



Non SSP supported device :

② After a few moments, a screen is displayed where the passkey is entered.

Enter the passkey “0000” to pair your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device with the car audio system.



SSP supported device :

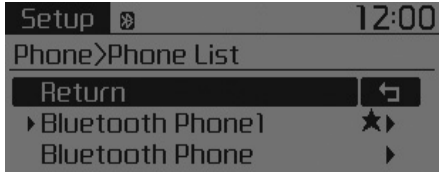
② After a few moments, a screen is displayed 6 digits passkey. Check the passkey on your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device and confirm.

The device name and passkey will be displayed on the screen for up to 3 minutes. If pairing is not completed within the 3 minutes, the mobile phone pairing process will automatically be cancelled.

③ Pairing completion is displayed.

In some mobile phones, pairing will automatically be followed by connection.

It is possible to pair up to five *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology enabled mobile phones.



Phone List

The names of up to 5 paired phones will be displayed.

A [▶] is displayed in front of the currently connected phone.

Select the desired name to setup the selected phone.



• Connecting a phone

Select [Phone List] ▶ Select mobile phone ▶ Select [Connect Phone]

① Select a mobile phone that is not currently connected.

② Connect the selected mobile phone.

③ Connection completion is displayed.

If a phone is already connected, disconnect the currently connected phone and select a new phone to connect.



• Disconnecting a connected phone

Select [Phone List] ▶ Select mobile phone ▶ Select [Disconnect Phone]

① Select the currently connected mobile phone.

② Disconnect the selected mobile phone.

③ Disconnection completion is displayed.

• Changing connection sequence (Priority)

This is used to change the order (priority) of automatic connection for the paired mobile phones.

Select [Phone List] ▶ Select [Priority] ▶ Select No. 1 Priority mobile phone

① Select [Priority].

② From the paired phones, select the phone desired for No.1 priority.

③ The changed priority sequence is displayed.

Once the connection sequence (priority) is changed, the new no. 1 priority mobile phone will be connected.

When the no. 1 priority cannot be connected : Automatically attempts to connect the most recently connected phone.

Cases when the most recently connected phone cannot be connected : Attempts to connect in the order in which paired phones are listed.

The connected phone will automatically be changed to No. 1 priority.

• Delete

Select [Phone List] ▶ Select mobile phone ▶ Select [Delete]

① Select the desired mobile phone.

② Delete the selected mobile phone.

③ Deletion completion is displayed.

When attempting to delete a currently connected phone, the phone is first disconnected.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***When you delete a mobile phone, the mobile phone contacts will also be erased.***
- ***For stable Bluetooth® Wireless Technology communication, delete the mobile phone from the audio and also delete the audio from your mobile phone.***

Contacts Download

This feature is used to download contacts and call histories into the audio system.

Select [Contacts Download]

⚠ CAUTION

- ***The download feature may not be supported in some mobile phones.***
- ***When downloading new Contacts, delete all previously saved Contacts before starting download.***

Outgoing Volume

This is used to set the volume of your voice as heard by the other party whilst on a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology enabled handsfree call.

Select [Outgoing Volume] ▶ Set volume

Whilst on a call, the volume can be changed by using the **[SEEK TRACK]** button.

Bluetooth System Off

This feature is used when you do not wish to use the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology system.

Select [Bluetooth System Off]

If a phone is already connected, disconnect the currently connected phone and turn the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology system off.

Using the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology

To use *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology when the system is currently off, follow these next steps.

- Turning On *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology through the **[PHONE]** button.

Press the **[PHONE]** button ▶ Screen Guidance

Moves to the screen where *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology functions can be used and displays guidance.

- Turning On *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology through the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button.

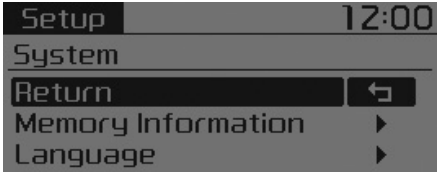
Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [Phone].

① A screen asking whether to turn on *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology will be displayed.

② On the screen, select [YES] to turn on *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology and display guidance.

If the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology system is turned on, the system will automatically try to connect the most recently connected *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology mobile phone.

With the System Button



Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [System] ▶ Select menu

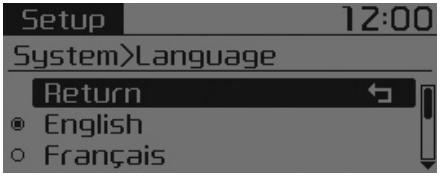


Memory Information (if equipped)

Displays currently used memory and total system memory.

Select [Memory Information] ▶ OK

The currently used memory is displayed on the left side whilst the total system memory is displayed on the right side.



Language

This menu is used to set the display.

Select [Language]

The system will reboot after the language is changed.

- Language support by region.
  English, Français, Español

AUDIO (With Touch Screen)

■ Type B-1



■ Type B-2



(With *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology)

❈ NO **harman/kardon** logo will be shown if harman/kardon feature is not supported.

D4H3G0000EE/D4H3G0001EE

Feature of Your Audio

Head unit



❊ The actual features in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

(1) **EJECT**

- Ejects the disc.

(2) **RADIO (Type B-1)**

- Changes to FM/AM mode.
- Each time the button is pressed, the mode is changed in the order of FM1 ➟ FM2 ➟ FMA ➟ AM ➟ AMA.

(3) **RADIO (Type B-2)**

- Changes to FM/AM mode.
- Each time the button is pressed, the mode is changed in the order of FM1 ➟ FM2 ➟ AM.

(4) **MEDIA**

- Changes to CD, USB(iPod®), AUX, My Music, BT(Bluetooth®) Audio mode.
- Each time the button is pressed, the mode is changed in the order of CD ➟ USB(iPod®) ➟ AUX ➟ My Music ➟ BT(Bluetooth®) Audio.

(5) **PHONE**

- Converts to Phone mode.
- When a phone is not connected, the connection screen is displayed.

(6) **SEEK/TRACK**

When pressed briefly

- Radio mode: Plays previous/next frequency.
- CD, USB, iPod®, My Music, BT(Bluetooth®) Audio mode: Changes the track, Song(file).

When pressed and held

- Radio mode: Continuously changes the frequency. Upon release, plays the current frequency.
- CD, USB, iPod®, My Music mode: Rewinds or fast forwards the track or file.
- During a Handsfree call, controls the call volume.

(7) **POWER/VOL** knob

- Power knob: Turns power On/Off by pressing the knob.
- Volume knob: Sets volume by turning the knob left/right.



(8) **DISP**

- Each time the button is shortly pressed, sets Screen Off ➟ Screen On ➟ Screen Off.
- Audio operation is maintained and only the screen will be turned Off.
- In the Screen Off state, press any button to turn the Screen On again.

(9) **TA/SCAN (Type B-1)**

- Radio mode
  - Shortly press the button: TA On/Off.
  - Press and hold the button: Previews each broadcast for 5 seconds each.
- CD, USB, My Music mode
  - Press and hold the button: Previews each song (file) for 10 seconds each.
  - Press and hold the button again to continue listening to the current song (file).

(10) **SCAN (Type B-2)**

- Radio mode: Previews all receivable broadcasts for 5 seconds each.
- CD, USB, My Music mode: Previews each song (file) for 10 seconds each.

(11) **SETUP**

- Changes to Setup mode.

(12) **CLOCK**

- Displays the time/date/day.

(13) **FOLDER**

- MP3 CD/USB mode: Folder Search.

(14) **TUNE** knob

- Radio mode: Turn to change broadcast frequencies.
- CD, USB, iPod®, My Music mode: Turn to search tracks/channels/files.

⚠ WARNING
- Audio System Safety Warnings

- **Do not stare at the screen whilst driving. Staring at the screen for prolonged periods of time could lead to traffic accidents.**
- **Do not disassemble, assemble, or modify the audio system. Such acts could result in accidents, fire, or electric shock.**
- **Using the phone whilst driving may lead to a lack of attention of traffic conditions and increase the likelihood of accidents. Use the phone feature after parking the vehicle.**
- **Exercise caution not to spill water or introduce foreign objects into the device. Such acts could lead to smoke, fire, or product malfunction.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Please refrain from use if the screen is blank or no sound can be heard as these signs may indicate product malfunction. Continued use in such conditions could lead to accidents (fires, electric shock) or product malfunctions.**
- **Do not touch the antenna during thunder or lightening as such acts may lead to lightning induced electric shock.**
- **Do not stop or park in parking-restricted areas to operate the product. Such acts could lead to traffic accidents.**
- **Use the system with the vehicle ignition turned on. Prolonged use with the ignition turned off could result in battery discharge.**

⚠ WARNING- Distracted Driving

Driving whilst distracted can result in a loss of vehicle control that may lead to an accident, severe personal injury, and death. The driver's primary responsibility is in the safe and legal operation of a vehicle, and use of any handheld devices, other equipment, or vehicle systems which take the driver's eyes, attention and focus away from the safe operation of a vehicle or which are not permissible by law should never be used during operation of the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

- *Operating the device whilst driving could lead to accidents due to a lack of attention to external surroundings. First park the vehicle before operating the device.*
- *Adjust the volume to levels that allow the driver to hear sounds from outside of the vehicle. Driving in a state where external sounds cannot be heard may lead to accidents.*
- *Pay attention to the volume setting when turning the device on. A sudden output of extreme volume upon turning the device on could lead to hearing impairment. (Adjust the volume to a suitable levels before turning off the device.)*

(Continued)

(Continued)

- *If you want to change the position of device installation, please inquire with your place of purchase or service maintenance centre. Technical expertise is required to install or disassemble the device.*
- *Turn on the car ignition before using this device. Do not operate the audio system for long periods of time with the ignition turned off as such operations may lead to battery discharge.*
- *Do not subject the device to severe shock or impact. Direct pressure onto the front side of the monitor may cause damage to the LCD or touch screen.*

(Continued)

(Continued)

- *When cleaning the device, make sure to turn off the device and use a dry and smooth cloth. Never use tough materials, chemical cloths, or solvents (alcohol, benzene, thinners, etc.) as such materials may damage the device panel or cause colour/quality deterioration*
- *Do not place beverages close to the audio system. Spilling beverages may lead to system malfunction.*
- *In case of product malfunction, please contact your place of purchase or After Service centre.*
- *Placing the audio system within an electromagnetic environment may result in noise interference.*

✻ NOTICE - Using Compact Discs

- This device has been manufactured to be compatible with software bearing the following logo marks.
- Do not clean discs with chemical solutions, such as record sprays, antistatic sprays, antistatic liquids, benzene, or thinners.
- After using a disc, put the disc back in its original case to prevent disc scratches.
- Hold discs by their edges or within the centre hole to prevent damage to disc surfaces.
- Do not introduce foreign substances into the disc insert/eject slot. Introducing foreign substances could damage the device interior.
- Do not insert two discs simultaneously.
- When using CD-R/CD-RW discs, differences in disc reading and playing times may occur depending on the disc manufacturer, production method and the recording method used.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Clean fingerprints and dust off the disc surface (coated side) with a soft cloth.
- The use of CD-R/CD-RW discs attached with labels may result in disc slot jams or difficulties in disc removal. Such discs may also result in noise whilst playing.
- Some CD-R/CD-RW discs may not properly operate depending on the disc manufacturer, production method and the recording method used. If problems persist, trying using a different CD as continued use may result in malfunctions.
- The performance of this product may differ depending on the CDRW Drive Software.
- Copy-protected CDs such as Stype CDs may not function in the device. DATA discs cannot be played. (However, such discs may still operate but will do so abnormally.)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Do not use abnormally shaped discs (8cm, heart-shaped, octagon-shaped) as such discs could lead to malfunctions.
- If the disc is straddled on the disc slot without removal for 10 seconds, the disc will automatically be re-inserted into the disc player.
- Only genuine audio CDs are supported. Other discs may result in recognition failure. (e.g. copy CDR, CDs with labels)

MP3 File Information

• Supported Audio Formats

File System	ISO 9660 Level 1
	ISO 9660 Level 2
	Romeo/Juliet (128 characters)
Audio Compression	MPEG1 Audio Layer3
	MPEG2 Audio Layer3
	MPEG2.5 Audio Layer3
	Windows Media Audio Ver 7.X & 8.X

❈ File formats that do not comply with the above formats may not be properly recognized or play without properly displaying file names or other information.

• Support for Compressed Files

1. Supported Bitrates (Kbps)

BIT RATE(kbps)	MPEG1 Layer3	MPEG2 Layer3	MPEG2.5 Layer3	WMA High Range
	32	8	8	48
	40	16	16	64
	48	24	24	80
	56	32	32	96
	64	40	40	128
	80	48	48	160
	96	56	56	192
	112	64	64	
	128	80	80	
	160	96	96	
	192	112	112	
	224	128	128	
	256	144	144	
	320	160	160	

2. Sampling Frequencies (Hz)

MPEG1	MPEG2	MPEG2.5	WMA
44100	22050	11025	32000
48000	24000	12000	44100
3000	16000	8000	48000

• For MP3/WMA compression files, differences in sound quality will occur depending on the bitrate. (Higher sound quality can be experienced with higher bitrates.)

• This device only recognizes files with MP3/WMA extensions. Other file extensions may not be properly recognized.

3. Maximum number of recognized folders and files

- Folder: 255 folders for CD, 2,000 folders for USB
- File: 999 files for CD, 6,000 files for USB

❈ There are no limitations to the number of recognized folder levels

• Language Support
(Unicode Support)

1. English: 94 characters
2. Special characters and Symbols: 986 characters

❈ Korean, English and Chinese are supported.

3. Text Display (Based on Unicode)
   - File name: Maximum 64 English characters
   - Folder name: Max 32 English characters

❈ Using the scroll feature allows you to see the entire name of files with names that are too long to be displayed at once.

• Compatibility by Disc Type

1. Playing MIXED CDs: First plays the audio CD, then plays the compressed file(s).
2. Playing EXTRA CDs: First plays the audio CD, then plays the compressed file(s).
3. Playing multisession CDs: Plays in order of sessions.
   - MIXED CD: CD type in which both MP3 and audio CD files are recognized in one disc.
   - Multisession CD: CD type that includes more than two sessions. Different from Extra CDs, multisession CDs are recorded by sessions and have no media limitation.

• Precautions upon Writing CDs

1. In all cases except when creating multisession discs, check the close session option before creating the disc. Though product malfunctions will not occur, some time may be required for the device to check whether the session state is closed (approximately 25 seconds). (Additional time may also be required depending on the number of folders or files.)
2. Changing the MP3/WMA file extensions or changing files of other extensions to MP3/WMA may result in product malfunction.
3. When naming files with MP3/WMA file extensions, write using only Korean and English. (Korean, English and Chinese are supported.)
4. Unauthorised use or duplication of music files are prohibited by law.
5. Prolonged use of CD-R/CD-RW discs that do not satisfy related standards and/or specifications could result in product malfunction.

✻ NOTICE - Using the USB Devices

- **Connect the USB device after turning on the engine. The USB device may become damaged if it is already connected when the ignition is turned on. The USB device may not operate properly if the car ignition is turned on or off with the USB device connected.**
- **Be careful for static electricity when connecting/disconnecting USB devices.**
- **Encoded MP3 Players will not be recognized when connected as an external device.**
- **When connecting an external USB device, the vehicle's audio system may not recognize the USB depending on what firmware is used by USB device or what files are on the USB.**
- **Only products formatted with byte/sectors under 64Kbyte will be recognized.**
- **This device recognizes USB devices formatted in FAT 12/16/32 file formats. This device does not recognize files in NTFS file format.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Some USB devices may not be supported due to compatibility issues.**
- **Avoid contact between the USB connector and bodily parts or foreign objects.**
- **Repeated connecting/disconnecting of USB devices within short periods of time may result in product malfunction.**
- **A strange noise may occur when disconnecting the USB.**
- **Make sure to connect/disconnect external USB devices with the audio power turned off.**
- **The amount of time required to recognize the USB device may differ depending on the type, size or file formats stored on the USB. Such differences in time are not indications of malfunctions.**
- **The vehicle audio system only supports USB devices designed to play music files.**
- **USB images and videos are not supported.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Do not use the USB I/F to charge batteries or USB accessories that generate heat. Doing so may lead to worsened performance or damage to the audio system.**
- **The audio system may not recognize the USB device if separately purchased USB hubs and extension cables are being used. Connect the USB device directly with the USB port of the vehicle.**
- **When using mass storage USB devices with separate logical drives, only files saved to the root drive can be played.**
- **Files may not properly operate if application programs are installed on the USBs.**
- **The audio system may not operate normally if MP3 Players, mobile phones, digital cameras, or other electronic devices (USB devices not recognized as portable disk drives) are connected with the audio system.**

(Continued)

(Continued)
- Charging through the USB may not work for some mobile devices.
- The device may not support normal operation when using an atypical USB memory device (miniature, keychain, etc.). For best results, use a typical USB device that has a metal case.
- The device may not support normal operation when using formats such as HDD Type, CF, or SD Memory.
- The device will not support files locked by DRM (Digital Rights Management.).
- USB memory sticks used by connecting an Adaptor (SD Type or CF Type) may not be properly recognized.
- The device may not operate properly when using USB HDDs or USBs subject to connection failures caused by vehicle vibrations. (e.g. i-stick type)

(Continued)

(Continued)
- Avoid use of USB memory products that can also be used as key chains or mobile phone accessories. Use of such products may cause damage to the USB jack.



- Connecting an MP3 device or phone through various channels, such as AUX/BT or Audio/USB mode may result in pop noises or abnormal operation.

✻ NOTICE - Using an iPod®
- iPod® is a registered trademark of Apple Inc.
- In order to use the iPod® with your vehicle's audio system, you must use a dedicated iPod® cable. (the cable that is supplied when purchasing iPod®/iPhone® products)
- If the iPod® is connected to the vehicle whilst it is playing, a high pitch sound could occur for approximately 1-2 seconds immediately after connecting. If possible, connect the iPod® to the vehicle with the iPod® stopped/paused.
- When the vehicle ignition is set to ACC or ON, connecting the iPod® through the iPod® cable will charge the iPod® through the car audio system.
- When connecting with the iPod® cable, make sure to fully insert the jack to prevent communication interference.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **When the EQ features of an external device, such as the iPod®, and the audio system are both active, EQ effects could overlap and cause sound deterioration and distortion. Whenever possible, turn off the EQ feature within the external device when it is connected to the audio system.**
- **Noise may occur when an iPod® or AUX device is connected. When such devices are not being used, disconnect the device for storage.**
- **When the iPod® or AUX device power is connected to the power jack, playing the external device may result in noise. In such cases, disconnect the power connection before use.**
- **Skipping or improper operation may occur depending on the characteristics of your iPod®/iPhone® device.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **If your iPhone® is connected to both the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology and USB, the sound may not be properly played. In your iPhone®, select the Dock connector or *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology to change the sound output (source).**
- **iPod® mode cannot be operated when the iPod® cannot be recognized due to the playing of versions that do not support communication protocols, cases of iPod® abnormalities and defects.**
- **For fifth generation iPod® Nano devices, the iPod® may not be recognized when the battery level is low. Please charge the iPod® for use.**
- **The search/play orders shown within the iPod® device may differ from the orders shown within the audio system.**
- **If the iPod® malfunctions due to an iPod® device defect, reset the iPod® and try again. (To learn more, refer to your iPod® manual)**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Some iPod®s may not sync with the System depending on the version. If the Media is removed before the Media is recognized, then the system may not properly restore the previously operated mode. (iPad® charging is not supported.)**
- **Use an iPod® cable shorter than 1 meter in length such as the one originally supplied with a new iPod®, longer cables may lead to the audio system not recognizing the iPod®.**

✻ NOTICE - Using the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio Mode (if equipped)

- *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio Mode can be used only when a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone has been connected.
- *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio Mode will not be available when connecting mobile phones that do not support this feature.
- If a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Phone is being used to play music and receives an incoming or outgoing phone call, then the music will stop.
- Moving the Track up/down whilst playing *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology audio mode may result in pop noises with some mobile phones.
- *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology streaming audio may not be supported in some mobile phones.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- When returning to *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio mode after ending a call, the mode may not automatically restart in some mobile phones.
- Receiving an incoming call or making an outgoing call whilst playing *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio may result in audio interference.

✻ NOTICE - Using the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Mobile Phone (if equipped)

- *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Handsfree refers to a device which allows the user to conveniently make phone calls with *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology mobile phones through the audio system.
- *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology allows devices to be connected in a short distance, including handsfree devices, stereo headsets, wireless remote controllers, etc. For more information, visit the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology website at www.Bluetooth.com. Before using *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology audio features.
- The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth® SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Kia is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners. A Bluetooth® enabled cell phone is required to use *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ***Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology features supported within the vehicle are as follows. Some features may not be supported depending on your *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device.**
  - **Answering and placing *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Handsfree calls**
  - **Menu operation during call (Switch to Private, Switch to call waiting, Outgoing volume)**
  - **Download Call History**
  - **Download Mobile Phone book**
  - **Phone book/Call History Auto Download**
  - ***Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device auto connection**
  - ***Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio**
- **Before using *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology related features of the audio system, refer your phone's User's Manual for phone-side *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology operations.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **The phone must be paired to the audio system to use *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology related features.**
- **Pairing and connecting a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology enabled mobile phone will work only when the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology option within your mobile phone has been turned on. (Methods of turning on the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology enabled feature may differ depending on the mobile phone.)**
- **Do not use a mobile phone or perform *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology settings (e.g. pairing a phone) whilst driving.**
- **Even if the phone supports *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology, the phone will not be found during device searches if the phone has been set to hidden state or the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology has been deactivated. Disable the hidden state or activate the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology prior to searching/connecting with the car audio system.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **You will not be able to use the hands-free feature when your phone (in the car) is outside of the mobile service area. (e.g. in a tunnel, in an underground area, in a mountainous area, etc.)**
- **If the mobile phone signal is poor or the vehicles interior noise is too loud, it may be difficult to hear the other person's voice during a call.**
- **Do not place the phone near or inside metallic objects, otherwise communications with *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology system or mobile service stations can be disturbed.**
- **Placing the audio system within an electromagnetic environment may result in noise interference.**
- **Some mobile phones or other devices may cause interference noise or malfunction to the audio system. In this case, storing the device in a different location may resolve the condition.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Whilst a phone is connected through *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology your phone may discharge quicker than usual for additional *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology-related operations.**
- **If Priority is set upon vehicle ignition (IGN/ACC ON), the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone will be automatically connected. Even if you are outside, the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone will be automatically connected once you are in the vicinity of the vehicle. If you do not want to automatically connect your *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone, try the following.**

1) **Turn off the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature in your mobile phone.**
2) **Turn off the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature in your car audio system.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

  - **To turn off the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature in your car audio system, go to [SETUP] button ▶ [Phone] and [turn off] the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature.**

- ***Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology connection may become intermittently disconnected in some mobile phones. Follow these steps to try again.**

1) **Turn the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology function within the mobile phone off/on and try again.**
2) **Turn the mobile phone power Off/On and try again.**
3) **Completely remove the mobile phone battery, reboot, and then try again.**
4) **Reboot the audio system and try again.**
5) **Delete all paired devices, pair and try again.**

- **It is possible to pair up to five *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology devices to the car system.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Phone contact names should be saved in English or they may not be displayed correctly.**
- **The Handsfree call volume and quality may differ depending on the mobile phone.**
- **Only one *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device can be connected at a time.**
- **In some mobile phones, starting the ignition whilst talking through *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology enabled handsfree call will result in the call becoming disconnected. (Switch the call back to your mobile phone when starting the ignition.)**
- **If the mobile phone is not paired or connected, it is not possible to enter Phone mode. Once a phone is paired or connected, the guidance screen will be displayed.**

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Bluetooth® Wireless Technology Handsfree is a feature that enables drivers to practice safe driving. Connecting the car audio system with a Bluetooth® Wireless Technology phone allows the user to conveniently make calls, receive calls, and manage the phone book. Before using the Bluetooth® Wireless Technology, carefully read the contents of this user's manual.***
- ***Excessive use or operations whilst driving may lead to negligent driving practices and be the cause of accidents.***
- ***Do not operate the device excessively whilst driving.***
- ***Viewing the screen for prolonged periods of time whilst driving is dangerous and may lead to accidents.***
- ***When driving, view the screen only for short periods of time.***

✻ NOTICE - Using the Voice Recognition (if equipped)

- **When using the voice recognition feature, only commands listed within the user's manual are supported.**
- **Be aware that during the operation of the voice recognition system, pressing any button other than the button or touching the screen will terminate the voice recognition mode.**
- **For superior voice recognition performance, position the microphone used for voice recognition above the head of the driver's seat and maintain a proper position when saying commands.**
- **Within the following situations, voice recognition may not function properly due to external sound.**
  - **When the windows and sunroof are open**
  - **When the wind of the cooling/heating device is strong**
  - **When entering and passing through tunnels**

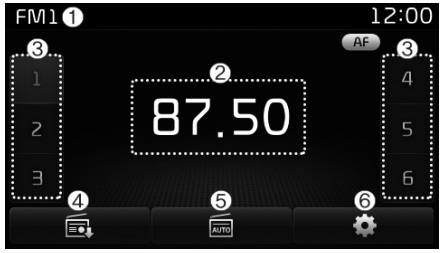
(Continued)

(Continued)

  - **When driving on rugged and uneven roads.**
  - **During severe rain (heavy rains, windstorms)**
- **Phone related voice commands can be used only when a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device is connected.**
- **When making calls by stating a name, the corresponding contact must be downloaded and stored within the audio system.**
- **After downloading the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone book, it takes some time to convert the phone book data into voice information. During this time, voice recognition may not properly operate.**
- **Pronounce the voice commands naturally and clearly as if in a normal conversation.**

Radio Mode (Type B-1)

Radio Mode Display Controls





(1) Mode Display

Displays currently operating mode.

(2) Frequency

Displays the current frequency.

(3) Preset

Displays current preset number [1] ~ [6].

(4) Preset Display

Displays saved presets.

(5) Auto Store

Automatically saves frequencies with superior reception to preset buttons.

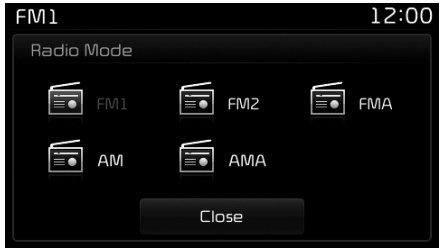
(6) RDS Menu

Displays the RDS Menu.

(7) RDS Info

Displays RDS broadcast information.

With the Radio Mode Button



Pressing the **[RADIO]** button will change the operating mode in the order of FM1 ➟ FM2 ➟ FMA ➟ AM ➟ AMA.

If [Pop-up Mode] is turned on within **[SETUP]** button ▶ [Display], then pressing the **[RADIO]** button will display the Radio Pop-up Mode screen.

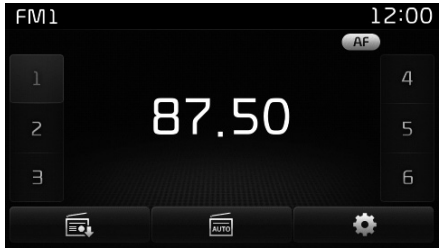
Turn the **TUNE** knob to move the focus. Press the knob to select.

Seek

Press the **[SEEK/TRACK]** button to play the previous/next frequency.

Tune

Turn the **TUNE** knob to select the desired frequency.





Selecting/Saving Presets

Press the [1] ~ [6] to play the desired preset.

Press the [Preset] to display the broadcast information for the frequency saved to each button.

Whilst listening to a frequency you want to save as a preset, press and hold one of the [1] ~ [6] to save the current frequency to the selected preset.

Auto Store

Press the [Auto Store] to automatically save receivable frequencies to preset buttons.

Whilst Auto Store is operating, pressing the [Auto Store] again will cancel Auto Store and restore the previous frequency.



RDS Menu

Press the [RDS Menu] to set the AF (Alternative Frequency), Region and News features.

The RDS Menu is not supported within AM or AMA mode.

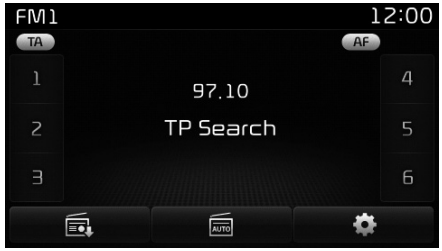
Scan

Press the **[TA/SCAN]** button: Previews each broadcast for 5 seconds each.

Once scan is complete, the previous frequency will be restored.

Whilst Scan is operating, pressing and holding the **[TA/SCAN]** button will cancel scanning.

TA (Traffic Announcement)

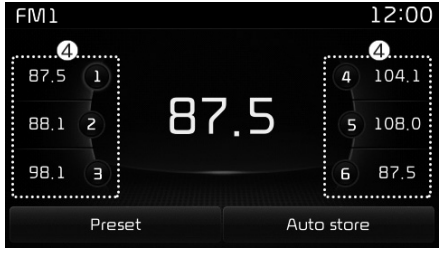


Press the **[TA/SCAN]** button to turn the TA (Traffic Announcement) feature On/Off.

Radio Mode (Type B-2)

Radio Mode Display Controls





(1) Mode Display

Displays currently operating mode.

(2) Frequency

Displays the current frequency.

(3) Preset

Displays current preset number [1] ~ [6].

(4) Preset Display

Displays preset buttons.

(5) Auto store

Automatically saves frequencies with superior reception to Preset buttons.

With the Radio Mode Button



Pressing the **[RADIO]** button will change the operating mode in the order of FM1 ➞ FM2 ➞ AM.

If [Mode Pop-up] is turned on within **[SETUP]** button ▶ [Display], then pressing the **[RADIO]** button will display the Radio Mode Pop-up screen.

Turn the **TUNE** knob to move the focus. Press the knob to select.

Seek

Press the **[SEEK/TRACK]** button to play the previous/next frequency.

Tune

Turn the **TUNE** knob to select the desired frequency.



Selecting /Saving Presets

Press the [Preset] to display the broadcast information for the frequency saved to each button.

Press the [1] ~ [6] to play the desired preset.

Whilst listening to a frequency you want to save as a preset, press and hold one of the [1] ~ [6] preset buttons to save the current frequency to the selected preset.

Auto Store

Press the [Auto store] to automatically save receivable frequencies to preset buttons.

Scan

Press the **[SCAN]** button to preview frequencies with superior reception for 5 seconds each.

Press and hold the **[SCAN]** button to preview presets for 5 seconds each.

Once scan is complete, the previous frequency will be restored.

Whilst Scan is operating, pressing the **[SCAN]** button will cancel scanning.

Media Mode

Media Mode Screen



Pressing the **[MEDIA]** button will change the operating mode in the order of CD ➟ USB(iPod®) ➟ AUX ➟ My Music ➟ BT Audio.

If [Pop-up Mode]/[Mode Pop-up] is turned on within **[SETUP]** button ▶ [Display], then pressing the **[MEDIA]** button will display the Media Pop-up Mode screen.

Turn the **TUNE** knob to move the focus. Press the knob to select.

The media mode pop up screen can be displayed only when there are two or more media modes turned on.

Mode Display on the Status Bar



When a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology, iPod®, USB or AUX device is connected or a CD is inserted, the corresponding mode icon will be displayed.

Icon	Title
	Bluetooth® Wireless Technology
	CD
	USB(iPod®)
	AUX

MENU: Audio CD

Audio CD Mode Display Controls

■ Type B-1



■ Type B-2



(1) Mode

Displays currently operating mode.

(2) Operation State

From Repeat/Random(Shuffle)/Scan, displays the currently operating function.

(3) Track Info

Displays information about the current track.

(4) Play/Pause

Changes the play/pause state.

(5) Play Time

Displays the current play time.

(6) Info

Shows detailed information about the current track.

(7) Random(Shuffle)

Turns the Random(Shuffle) feature on/off.

(8) Repeat

Turns the Repeat feature on/off.

(9) List

Moves to the list screen.

Turn the **TUNE** knob left/right to search for tracks. Once the desired track is displayed, press the knob to select and play.

With the Audio CD Mode

Playing/Pausing CD Tracks

Once an audio CD is inserted, the mode will automatically start and begin playing.

Whilst playing, press the [II] to pause and press [▶] to play.

Only genuine audio CDs are supported. Other discs may result in recognition failure. (e.g. copy CD-R, CDs with labels)

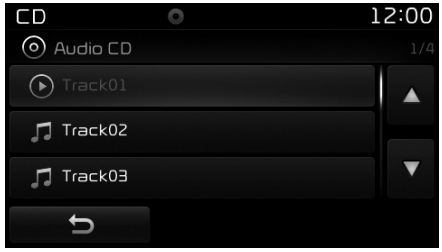
The artist and title information are displayed on the screen if track information is included within the audio CD.

Changing Tracks

Press the **[SEEK/TRACK]** button to move to the previous or next track.

Pressing the **[SEEK/TRACK ∨]** button after the track has been playing for 2 seconds will start the current track from the beginning.

Pressing the **[SEEK/TRACK ∨]** button before the track has been playing for 1 second will start the previous track.



Selecting from the List

Turn the **TUNE** knob left/right to search for the desired track.

Once you find the desired track, press the **TUNE** knob to start playing.

Rewinding/Fast-forwarding Tracks

Whilst playing, press and hold the **[SEEK/TRACK]** button to rewind or fast-forward the current track.

Scan (With RDS)

Press and hold the **[TA/SCAN]** button to play the file 10 seconds of each file.

Press and hold the **[TA/SCAN]** button again to turn off.

Scan (Without RDS)

Press the **[SCAN]** button to play the first 10 seconds of each file.

Press and hold the **[SCAN]** button again to turn off.

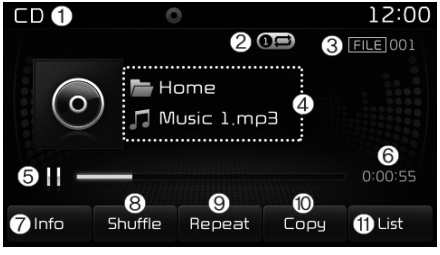
MENU: MP3 CD

MP3 CD Mode Display Controls

■ Type B-1



■ Type B-2



(1) Mode

Displays currently operating mode.

(2) Operation State

From Repeat/Random(Shuffle)/Scan, displays the currently operating function.

(3) File Index

Displays the current file number.

(4) File Info

Displays information about the current file.

(5) Play/Pause

Changes the play/pause state.

(6) Play Time

Displays the current play time.

(7) Info

Shows detailed information about the current file.

When the 'Folder File' option is set as the default display within Display setup, the album/artist/file information are displayed as detailed file information.

When the 'Album Artist Song' option is set as the default display, the folder name/file name are displayed as detailed file information.

The title, artist and album info are displayed only when such information is recorded within the MP3 file ID3 tag.

(8) Random(Shuffle)

Turns the Random(Shuffle) feature on/off.

Each time the button is pressed, the feature changes in the order of Random (Shuffle) Folder ➟ Random (Shuffle) All ➟ Off.

- Random(Shuffle) Folder: Plays all files within the current folder in Random (Shuffle) order.
- Random(Shuffle) All: Plays all files in Random(Shuffle) order.

(9) Repeat

Turns the Repeat feature on/off.

Each time the button is pressed, the feature changes in the order of Repeat ➟ Repeat Folder ➟ Off.

- Repeat: Repeats the current file.
- Repeat Folder: Repeats all files within the current Folder.

(10) Copy

Copies the current file into My Music.

Selecting another feature during copying will display a pop-up asking whether you wish to cancel copying. To cancel, select “Yes”.

(11) List

Moves to the list screen.

Turn the **TUNE** knob left/right to search for files. Once the desired file is displayed, press the knob to select and play.

With the MP3 CD Mode

Playing/Pausing MP3 Files

Once an MP3 disc is inserted the mode will automatically start and being playing.

Whilst playing, press the [II] to pause and press [▶] to play.

If there are numerous files and folders within the disc, reading time could take more than 10 seconds and the list may not be displayed or song searches may not operate. Once loading is complete, try again.

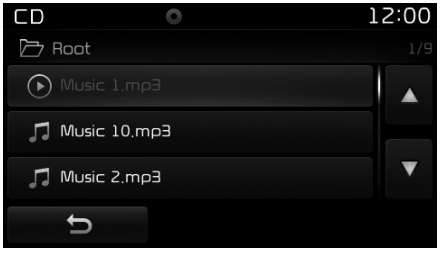
Changing Files

Press the **[SEEK/TRACK]** button to move to the previous or next file.

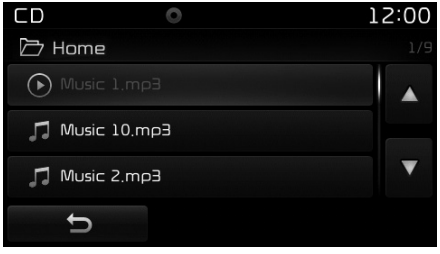
Pressing the **[SEEK/TRACK ∨]** button after the file has been playing for 2 seconds will start the current file from the beginning.

Pressing the **[SEEK/TRACK ∨]** button before the file has been playing for 1 second will start the previous file.

■ Type B-1



■ Type B-2



Selecting from the List

Turn the **TUNE** knob left/right to search for the desired file.

Once you find the desired file, press the **TUNE** knob to start playing.

Rewinding/Fast-forwarding Files

Whilst playing, press and hold the **[SEEK/TRACK]** button to rewind or fast-forward the current file.

Scan (With RDS)

Press and hold the **[TA/SCAN]** button to play the file 10 seconds of each file.

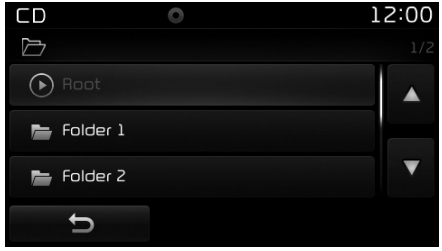
Press and hold the **[TA/SCAN]** button again to turn off.

Scan (Without RDS)

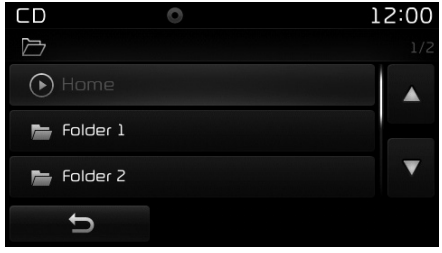
Press the **[SCAN]** button to play the first 10 seconds of each file.

Press the **[SCAN]** button again to turn off.

■ Type B-1



■ Type B-2



Searching Folders

Press the **[FOLDER]** button to select and search folders.

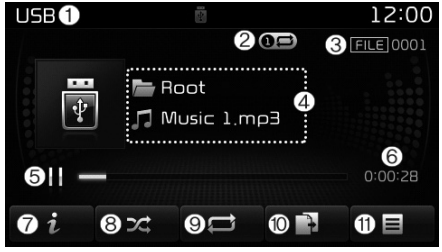
Once the desired folder is displayed, press the **TUNE** knob to select.

The first file within the selected folder will begin playing.

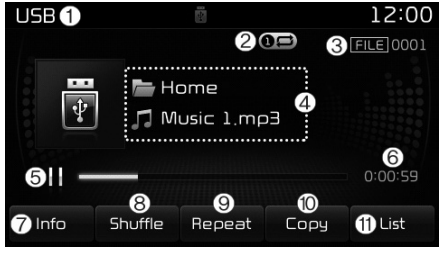
MENU: USB

USB Mode Display Controls

■ Type B-1



■ Type B-2



(1) Mode

Displays currently operating mode.

(2) Operation State

From Repeat/Random(Shuffle)/Scan, displays the currently operating function.

(3) File Index

Displays the current file number.

(4) File Info

Displays information about the current file.

(5) Play/Pause

Changes the play/pause state.

(6) Play Time

Displays the current play time.

(7) Info

Displays detailed information for the current file.

When the 'Folder File' option is set as the default display within Display setup, the album/artist/file information are displayed as detailed file information.

When the 'Album Artist Song' option is set as the default display, the folder name/file name are displayed as detailed file information.

The title, artist and album info are displayed only when such information are recorded within the MP3 file ID3 tag.

(8) Random(Shuffle)

Turns the Random(Shuffle) feature on/off.

Each time the button is pressed, the feature changes in the order of Random(Shuffle) Folder ➟ Random (Shuffle) All ➟ Off.

- Random(Shuffle) Folder: Plays the files in the current folder in random(Shuffle) order.
- Random(Shuffle) All: Plays all files in random(Shuffle) order.

(9) Repeat

Turns the Repeat feature on/off.

Each time the button is pressed, the feature changes in the order of Repeat ➟ Repeat Folder ➟ Off.

- Repeat: Repeats the current file.
- Repeat Folder: Repeats all files within the current folder.

(10) Copy

Copies the current file into My Music.

Selecting another feature during copying will display a pop-up asking whether you wish to cancel copying. To cancel, select “Yes”.

(11) List

Moves to the list screen.

Turn the **TUNE** knob left/right to search for files. Once the desired file is displayed, press the knob to select and play.

With the USB Mode

Playing/Pausing USB Files

Once a USB is connected, the mode will automatically start and begin playing a USB file.

Whilst playing, press the [II] to pause and press [▶] to play.

Loading may require additional time if there are many files and folders within the USB and may result in faulty list display or file search. Normal operations will resume once loading is complete.

The device may not support normal operation when using a USB memory type besides (Metal Cover Type) USB Memory.

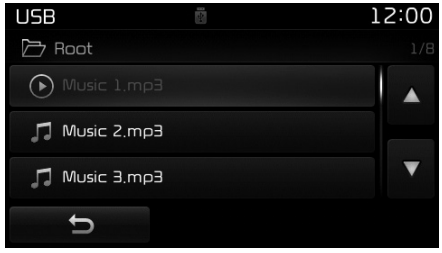
Changing Files

Press the **[SEEK/TRACK]** button to move to the previous or next file.

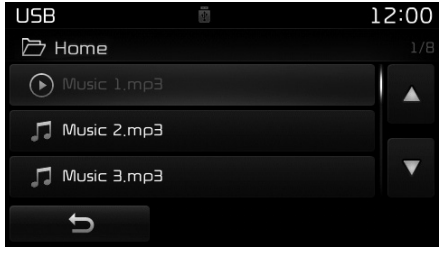
Pressing the **[SEEK/TRACK ∨]** button after the file has been playing for 2 seconds will start the current file from the beginning.

Pressing the **[SEEK/TRACK ∨]** button before the file has been playing for 1 second will start the previous file.

■ Type B-1



■ Type B-2



Selecting from the List

Turn the **TUNE** knob left/right to search for the desired file.

Once you find the desired file, press the **TUNE** knob to start playing.

Rewinding/Fast-forwarding Files

Whilst playing, press and hold the **[SEEK/TRACK]** button to rewind or fast-forward the current file.

Scan (With RDS)

Press and hold the **[TA/SCAN]** buttonto play the file 10 seconds of each file.

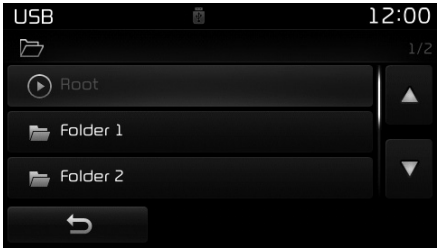
Press and hold the **[TA/SCAN]** button again to turn off.

Scan (Without RDS)

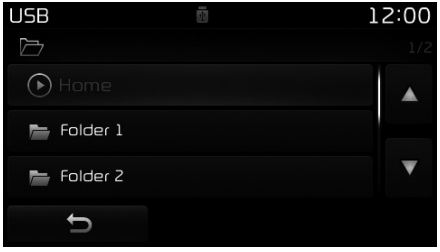
Press the **[SCAN]** button to play the first 10 seconds of each file.

Press the **[SCAN]** button again to turn off.

■ Type B-1



■ Type B-2



Searching Folders

Press the **[FOLDER]** button to select and search folders.

Once the desired folder is displayed, press the **TUNE** knob to select.

The first file within the selected folder will begin playing.

MENU: iPod®

iPod® Mode Display Controls

■ Type B-1



■ Type B-2



(1) Mode

Displays currently operating mode.

(2) Operation State

From Repeat/Random(Shuffle), displays the currently operating function.

(3) Song Index

Displays the current song/total number of songs.

(4) Song Info

Displays information about the current song.

(5) Play/Pause

Changes the play/pause state.

(6) Play Time

Displays the current play time.

(7) Random(Shuffle)

Turns the Random(Shuffle) feature on/off.

- Random(Shuffle) All: Plays all songs in Random(Shuffle) order.

(8) Repeat

Turns the Repeat feature on/off.

- Repeat: Repeats the current song

(9) List

Moves to the list screen.

Turn the **TUNE** knob left/right to search for the desired category.

Once you find the desired category, press the **TUNE** knob to select and play.

With the iPod® Mode

Playing/Pausing iPod® Songs

Once an iPod® is connected, the mode will automatically start and begin playing an iPod® song.

Whilst playing, press the [II] to pause and press [▶] to play.

iPod®s with unsupported communication protocols may not properly operate in the audio system.

Changing Songs

Press the **[SEEK/TRACK]** button to move to the previous or next song.

Pressing the **[SEEK/TRACK ∨]** button after the song has been playing for 2 seconds will start the current song from the beginning.

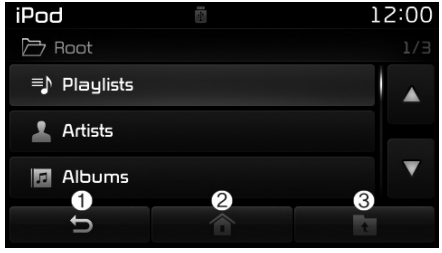
Pressing the **[SEEK/TRACK ∨]** button before the song has been playing for 1 second will start the previous song.

Slight time differences may exist depending your iPod® product.

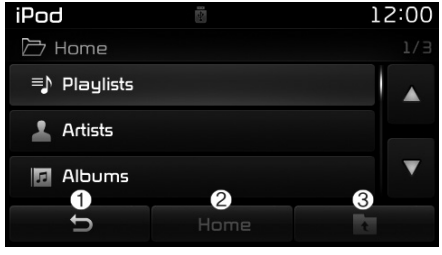
Rewinding/Fast-forwarding Songs

Whilst playing, press and hold the **[SEEK/TRACK]** button to rewind or fast-forward the current song.

■ Type B-1



■ Type B-2



Searching Categories

Turn the **TUNE** knob left/right to search for the desired category.

Once you find the desired category, press the **TUNE** knob to select and play.

There are eight categories that can be searched, including Playlists, Artists, Albums, Genres, Songs, Composers, Audiobooks and Podcasts.

Category Menu

(1) Displays the play screen.

(2) Moves to the iPod® root category screen.

(3) Moves to the previous category.

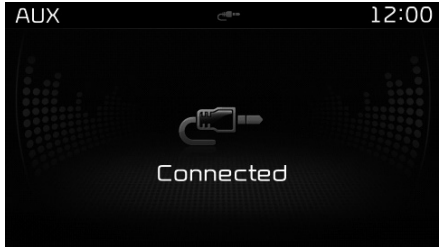
If the search mode is accessed whilst playing a song, the most recently searched category is displayed.

Search steps upon initial connection may differ depending on the type of iPod® device.

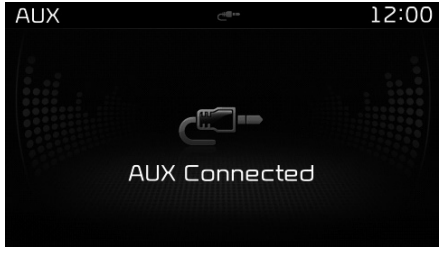
MENU: AUX

AUX Mode Display Controls

■ Type B-1



■ Type B-2



Press the **[MEDIA]** button ▶ Select [AUX].

An external device can be connected to play music.

Connecting an External Device

External audio players (Camcorders, car VCR, etc.) can be played through a dedicated cable.

If an external device connector is connected with the AUX terminal, then AUX mode will automatically operate. Once the connector is disconnected, the previous mode will

be restored.

AUX mode can be used only when an external audio player (camcorder, car VCR, etc.) has been connected.

The AUX volume can be controlled separately from other audio modes.

Connecting a connector jack to the AUX terminal without an external device will convert the system to AUX mode, but only output noise. When an external device is not being used, also remove the connector jack.

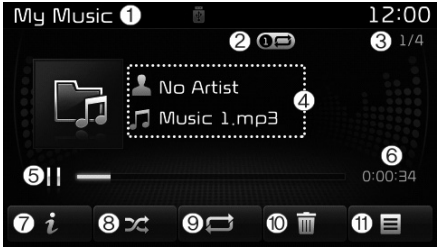
When the external device power is connected to the power jack, playing the external device may output noise. In such cases, disconnect the power connection before use.

Fully insert the AUX cable to the AUX jack upon use.

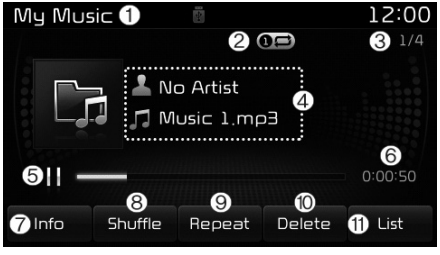
MENU: My Music

My Music Mode Display Controls

■ Type B-1



■ Type B-2



(1) Mode

Displays currently operating mode.

(2) Operation State

From Repeat/Random(Shuffle)/Scan, displays the currently operating function.

(3) File Index

Displays the current file/total number of files.

(4) File Info

Displays information about the current file.

(5) Play/Pause

Changes the play/pause state.

(6) Play Time

Displays the current play time.

(7) Info

Displays detailed information for the current file.

The title, artist and album info are displayed only when such information is recorded within the MP3 file ID3 tag.

(8) Random(Shuffle)

Turns the Random(Shuffle) feature on/off.

(9) Repeat

Turns the Repeat feature on/off.

(10) Delete

Deletes the current file.

(11) List

Moves to the list screen.

Turn the **TUNE** knob left/right to search for files. Once the desired file is displayed, press the knob to select and play.

With the My Music Mode

Playing/Pausing My Music Files

Whilst playing, press the [II] to pause and press [▶] to play.

If there are no files saved within My Music, the [My Music] will be disabled.

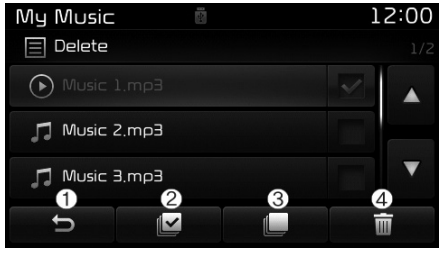
Changing Files

Press the **[SEEK/TRACK]** button to move to the previous or next file.

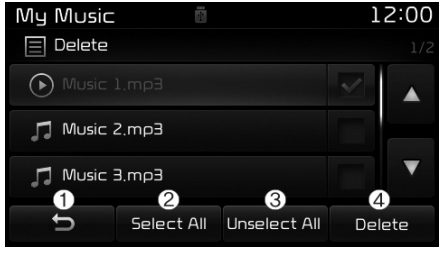
Pressing the **[SEEK/TRACK ∨]** button after the file has been playing for 2 seconds will start the current file from the beginning.

Pressing the **[SEEK/TRACK ∨]** button before the file has been playing for 1 second will start the previous file.

■ Type B-1



■ Type B-2



Selecting from the List

Turn the **TUNE** knob left/right to search for the desired file.

Once you find the desired file, press the **TUNE** knob to start playing.

From the List screen, it is possible to delete files you previously saved into My Music.

List Menu

(1) Moves to the previous screen.

(2) Selects all files.

(3) Deselects all selected files.

(4) Deletes selected files.

After selecting the files you want to delete, press the [Delete] to delete the selected files.

If there is memory available, up to 6,000 files can be saved. Identical files cannot be copied more than 1,000 times.

To check memory information, go to **[SETUP]** button ▶ [System] ▶ [Memory Information].

Rewinding/Fast-forwarding Files

Whilst playing, press and hold the **[SEEK/TRACK]** button to rewind or fast-forward the current file.

Scan (With RDS)

Press and hold the **[TA/SCAN]** button to play the file 10 seconds of each file.

Press and hold the **[TA/SCAN]** button again to turn off.

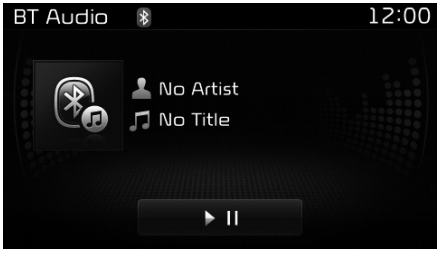
Scan (Without RDS)

Press the **[SCAN]** button to play the first 10 seconds of each file.

Press the **[SCAN]** button again to turn off.

MENU: *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Audio

Using Bluetooth® Wireless Technology Audio Mode



Playing/Pausing *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Audio

Once a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device is connected, the mode will automatically start.

Whilst playing, press the [▶II] to pause and press [▶II] to play.

The play/pause feature may operate differently depending on the mobile phone.

Changing Files

Press the **[SEEK/TRACK]** button to move to the previous or next file.

Setting Connection

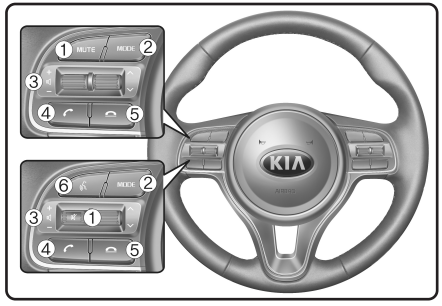
If a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device has not been connected, press the **[SETUP]** button ▶ [Phone] to display the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology connection screen.

It is possible to use the pair phone, connect/disconnect and delete features from your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone.

If music is not yet playing from your mobile device after converting to *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Audio mode, pressing the play button once may start playing the mode. Check to see that music is playing from the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device after converting to *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Audio Mode.

Phone Mode

Making a call using the Steering wheel controls



❈ The actual features in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

(1) Mutes audio volume.

(2) Press the button to change audio source.

FM ➟ AM ➟ CD ➟ USB(iPod®) ➟ AUX ➟ My Music ➟ BT Audio.

(For RDS Model)

FM1 ➟ FM2 ➟ FMA ➟ AM ➟ AMA ➟ CD ➟ USB(iPod®) ➟ AUX ➟ My Music ➟ BT Audio.

(3) Used to control volume.

(4) When pressed shortly

- When pressed in the phone screen, displays call history screen.
- When pressed in the dial screen, makes a call.
- When pressed in the incoming call screen, answers the call.
- When pressed during call waiting, switches to waiting call (Call Waiting).

When pressed and held

- When pressed in the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Handsfree wait mode, redials the last call.
- When pressed during a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Handsfree call, switches call back to mobile phone (Private).
- When pressed whilst calling on the mobile phone, switches call back to *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Handsfree. (Operates only when *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Handsfree is connected)

(5) Ends phone call.

(6) (if equipped)

When pressed shortly

- Starts voice recognition.
- When selecting during a voice prompt, stops the prompt and converts to voice command waiting state.

When pressed and held

- Ends voice recognition.

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology (Type B-1)

When No Devices have been Paired



① Press the **[PHONE]** button or the **[CALL]** button on the steering wheel controls. The following screen is displayed.

② Press the [OK] to enter the Pair Phone screen.



- Device: Name of device as shown when searching from your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device.
- Passkey: Passkey used to pair the device.

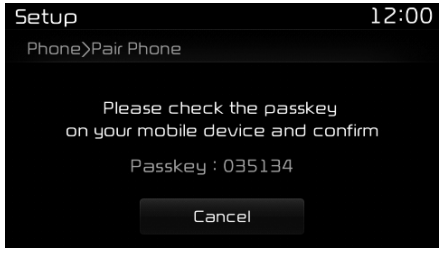
③ From your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device (i.e. Mobile Phone), search and select your car audio system.

❊ SSP: Secure Simple Pairing

Non SSP supported device:

④ After a few moments, a screen is displayed where the passkey is entered.

Enter the passkey “0000” to pair your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device with the car audio system.



SSP supported device:

④ After a few moments, a screen is displayed 6 digits passkey.

Check the passkey on your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device and confirm.

⑤ Once pairing is complete, the following screen is displayed.

Some phones (i.e., iPhone®, Android and Blackberry phones) may offer an option to allow acceptance of all future Bluetooth connection requests by default. Visit http://www.kia. com for additional information on pairing your Bluetooth-enabled mobile phone, and to view a phone compatibility list.

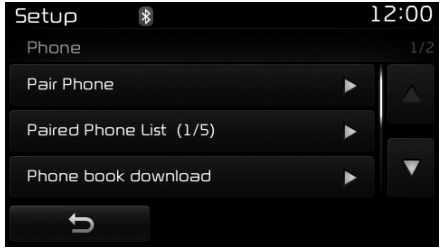
✻ NOTICE



If *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology devices are paired but none are currently connected, pressing the [PHONE] button or the [CALL] button on the steering wheel controls displays the following screen. Press the [Pair] to pair a new device or press the [Connect] to connect a previously paired device.

Pairing through [PHONE] Setup

Press the **[SETUP]** button ▶ Select [Phone].



Pair Phone

The following steps are the same as those described in the section “When No Devices have been Paired” on the previous page.

✻ NOTICE

- **The waiting period during phone pairing will last for one minute. The pairing process will fail if the device is not paired within the given time. If the pairing process fails, you must start the process from the beginning.**
- **Generally, most *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology devices will automatically connect once pairing is complete. However, some devices may require a separate verification process to connect. Check to see whether *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology has been properly connected within your mobile phone.**
- **List of paired *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology devices can be viewed at [SETUP] button ▶ [Phone] ▶ [Paired Phone List].**

Paired Phone List

Press the **[SETUP]** button ▶ Select [Phone] ▶ Select [Paired Phone List].

- Connected Phone: Device that is currently connected.
- Paired Phone: Device that is paired but not connected.



Connecting a Device

From the paired phone list, select the device you want to connect and press the [Connect](1).



Disconnecting a Device

From the paired phone list, select the currently connected device and press the [Disconnect](2).

Deleting a Device

From the paired phone list, select the device you want to delete and press the [Delete](3).

✻ NOTICE

- **When deleting the currently connected device, the device will automatically be disconnected to proceed with the deleting process.**
- **If a paired *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device is deleted, the device's call history and phone book data will also be deleted.**
- **To re-use a deleted device, you must pair the device again.**

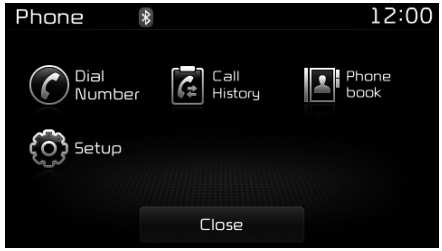
Changing Priority

It is possible to pair up to five *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology devices with the car audio system. The “Change Priority” feature is used to set the connection priority of paired phones. However, the most recently connected phone will always be set as the highest priority.

From the paired phone list, select the phone you want to switch to the highest priority, then press the [Change priority](4). The selected device will be changed to the highest priority.

When a device is currently connected, even if you change the priority to a different device, the currently connected phone will always be set as the highest priority.

Phone Menu Screen



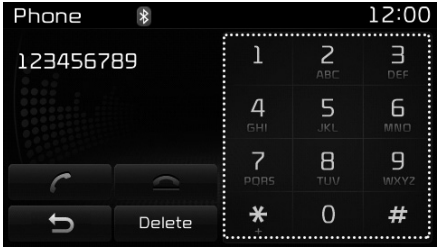
Phone Menus

With a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device connected, press the **[PHONE]** button to display the Phone menu screen.

- Dial Number: Displays the dial screen where numbers can be dialed to make calls.
- Call History: Displays the call history list screen.
- Phone book: Displays the Phone book list screen.
- Setup: Displays Phone related settings.

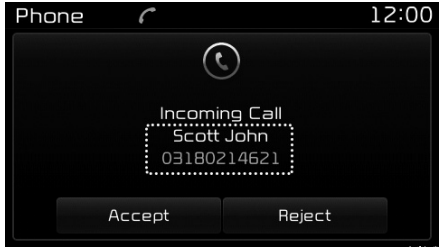
✻ NOTICE

- **If you press the [Call History] but there is no call history data, a prompt is displayed which asks whether to download call history data.**
- **If you press the [Phone book] but there is no phone book data, a prompt is displayed which asks whether to download phone book data.**
- **This feature may not be supported in some mobile phones. For more information on download support, refer to your mobile phone user’s manual.**



Calling by Dialing a Number

- Dial Pad: Used to enter phone number.
- Call: If a number has been entered, calls the number. If no number has been entered, switches to call history screen.
- End: Deletes the entered phone number.
- Delete: Deletes entered numbers one digit at a time.



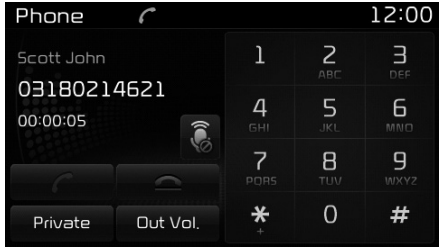
Answering a Call

Answering a call with a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device connected will display the following screen.

- Caller: Displays the other party's name when the incoming caller is saved within your phone book.
- Incoming Number: Displays the incoming number.
- Accept: Accepts the incoming call.
- Reject: Rejects the incoming call.

✻ NOTICE

- **When an incoming call pop-up is displayed, most Audio and SETUP mode features are disabled. Only the call volume will operate.**
- **The telephone number may not be properly displayed in some mobile phones.**
- **When a call is answered with the mobile phone, the call mode will automatically revert to Private mode.**

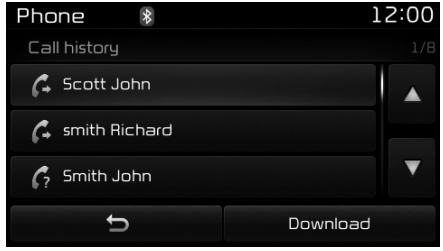


During a Handsfree Call

- Caller: Displays the other party's name if the incoming caller is saved within your phone book.
- Incoming Number: Displays the incoming number.
- Call time: Displays the call time.
- End: Ends call.
- Private: Converts to Private mode.
- Out Vol.: Sets call volume as heard by the other party.
- Mute: Turns Mic Mute On/Off.

✻ NOTICE

If the mic is muted, the other party will not be able to hear your voice.



Call History

A list of incoming, outgoing and missed calls is displayed.

Press the [Download] to download the call history.

- Call History:
  - Displays recent calls (call history).
  - Connects call upon selection.
- Download: Download Recent Call History.

✻ NOTICE

- **The call history list will display up to 50 outgoing, incoming, and missed calls.**
- **Upon downloading call histories, previously saved histories are deleted.**
- **Incoming calls with hidden caller IDs will not be saved in the call history list.**
- **Previously saved phone book entries are stored even if a device is disconnected and re-connected.**
- **The download feature may not be supported in some mobile phones. Check to see that the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device supports the download feature.**



Phone Book

The list of saved phone book entries is displayed. Press the [Download] to download the call history.

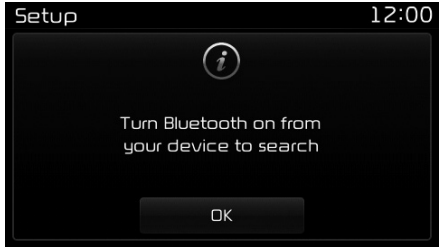
- Contact List:
  - Displays downloaded phone book entries.
  - Connects call upon selection.
- Download: Download phone book entries.

✻ NOTICE

- **Up to 1,000 phone book entries can be copied into car phone book.**
- **Upon downloading phone book data, previously saved phone book data will be deleted.**
- **Downloading is not possible if the phone book download feature is turned off within the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device. Also, some devices may require device authorization upon attempting to download. If downloading cannot be normally conducted, check the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device setting or the screen state.**
- **Caller ID information will not be displayed for unsaved callers.**
- **The download feature may not be supported in some mobile phones. Check to see that the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device supports the download feature.**

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology (Type B-2) or (Type B-2 For Colombia model without harman/kardon)

When No Devices have been Paired



① Press the **[PHONE]** button or the **[CALL]** button on the steering wheel controls. The following screen is displayed.

② Press the [OK] to enter the Pair Phone screen.



- Vehicle Name: Name of device as shown when searching from your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device.
- Passkey: Passkey used to pair the device.

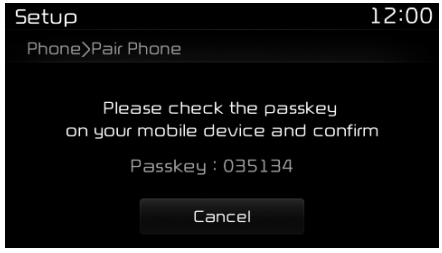
③ From your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device (i.e. Mobile Phone), search and select your car audio system.

❊ SSP: Secure Simple Pairing

Non SSP supported device:

④ After a few moments, a screen is displayed where the passkey is entered.

Enter the passkey “0000” to pair your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device with the car audio system.



SSP supported device:

④ After a few moments, a screen is displayed 6 digits passkey.

Check the passkey on your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device and confirm.

⑤ Once pairing is complete, the following screen is displayed.

Some phones (i.e., iPhone®, Android and Blackberry phones) may offer an option to allow acceptance of all future Bluetooth connection requests by default. Visit http://www.kia.com for additional information on pairing your Bluetooth-enabled mobile phone, and to view a phone compatibility list.

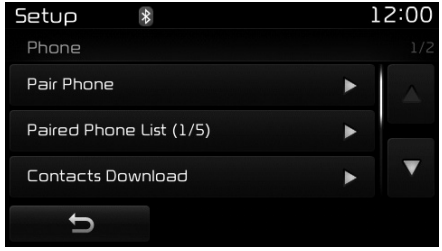
✻ NOTICE



If *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology devices are paired but none are currently connected, pressing the [PHONE] button or the [CALL] button on the steering wheel controls displays the following screen. Press the [Pair] to pair a new device or press the [Connect] to connect a previously paired device.

Pairing through [PHONE] Setup

Press the **[SETUP]** button ▶ Select [Phone].



Pair Phone

The following steps are the same as those described in the section “When No Devices have been Paired” on the previous page.

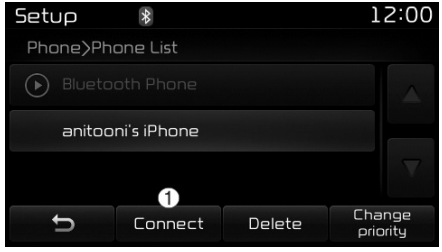
✻ NOTICE

- **The waiting period during phone pairing will last for one minute. The pairing process will fail if the device is not paired within the given time. If the pairing process fails, you must start the process from the beginning.**
- **Generally, most *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology devices will automatically connect once pairing is complete. However, some devices may require a separate verification process to connect. Check to see whether *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology has been properly connected within your mobile phone.**
- **List of paired *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology devices can be viewed at [SETUP] button ▶ [Phone] ▶ [Paired Phone List].**

Paired Phone List

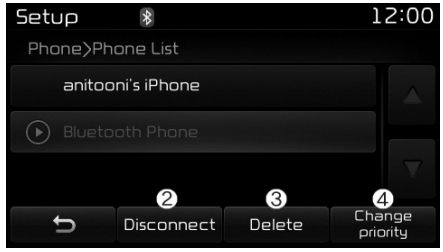
Press the **[SETUP]** button ▶ Select [Phone] ▶ Select [Paired Phone List].

- Connected Phone: Device that is currently connected.
- Paired Phone: Device that is paired but not connected.



Connecting a Device

From the paired phone list, select the device you want to connect and press the [Connect](1).



Disconnecting a Device

From the paired phone list, select the currently connected device and press the [Disconnect](2).

Deleting a Device

From the paired phone list, select the device you want to delete and press the [Delete](3).

✻ NOTICE

- **When deleting the currently connected device, the device will automatically be disconnected to proceed with the deleting process.**
- **If a paired *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device is deleted, the device's call history and contacts data will also be deleted.**
- **To re-use a deleted device, you must pair the device again.**

Changing Priority

It is possible to pair up to five *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology devices with the car audio system. The “Change Priority” feature is used to set the connection priority of paired phones. However, the most recently connected phone will always be set as the highest priority.

From the paired phone list, select the phone you want to switch to the highest priority, then press the [Change priority](4). The selected device will be changed to the highest priority.

When a device is currently connected, even if you change the priority to a different device, the currently connected phone will always be set as the highest priority.

Phone Menu Screen



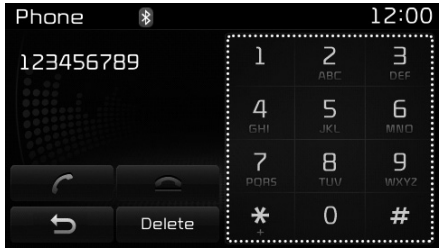
Phone Menus

With a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device connected, press the **[PHONE]** button to display the Phone menu screen.

- Dial Number: Displays the dial screen where numbers can be dialed to make calls.
- Call History: Displays the call history list screen.
- Contacts: Displays the Contacts list screen.
- Setup: Displays Phone related settings.

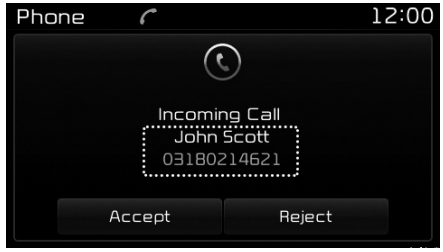
✻ NOTICE

- **If you press the [Call History] but there is no call history data, a prompt is displayed which asks whether to download call history data.**
- **If you press the [Contacts] but there is no contacts data stored, a prompt is displayed which asks whether to download contacts data.**
- **This feature may not be supported in some mobile phones. For more information on download support, refer to your mobile phone user’s manual.**



Calling by Dialing a Number

- Dial Pad: Used to enter phone number.
- Call: If a number has been entered, calls the number. If no number has been entered, switches to call history screen.
- End: Deletes the entered phone number.
- Delete: Deletes entered numbers one digit at a time.



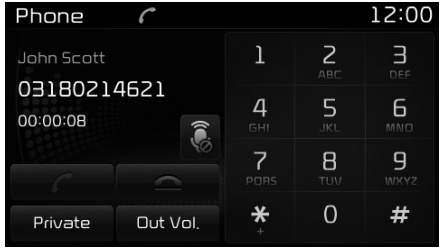
Answering a Call

Answering a call with a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device connected will display the following screen.

- Caller: Displays the other party's name when the incoming caller is saved within your contacts.
- Incoming Number: Displays the incoming number.
- Accept: Accepts the incoming call.
- Reject: Rejects the incoming call.

✻ NOTICE

- **When an incoming call pop-up is displayed, most Audio and SETUP mode features are disabled. Only the call volume will operate.**
- **The telephone number may not be properly displayed in some mobile phones.**
- **When a call is answered with the mobile phone, the call mode will automatically revert to Private mode.**



During a Handsfree Call

- Caller: Displays the other party's name if the incoming caller is saved within your contacts.
- Incoming Number: Displays the incoming number.
- Call time: Displays the call time.
- End: Ends call.
- Private: Converts to Private mode.
- Out Vol.: Sets call volume as heard by the other party.
- Mute: Turns Mic Mute On/Off.

✻ NOTICE

If the mic is muted, the other party will not be able to hear your voice.

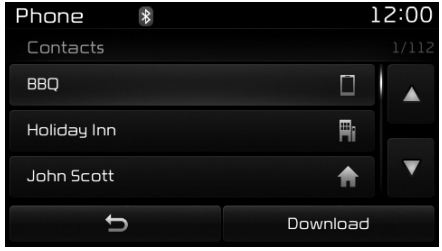


Call History

A list of incoming, outgoing and missed calls is displayed.

Press the [Download] to download the call history.

- Call History:
  - Displays recent calls. (call history)
  - Connects call upon selection.
- Download: Download Recent Call History.



Contacts

The list of saved phone book entries is displayed. Press the [Download] to download the call history.

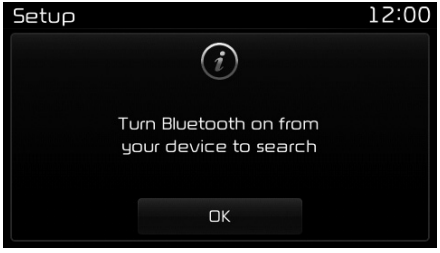
- Contacts List:
  - Displays downloaded contacts entries.
  - Connects call upon selection.
- Download: Download contacts entries.

✻ NOTICE

- **Up to 1,000 contacts entries can be copied into car contacts.**
- **Upon downloading contacts data, previously saved contacts data will be deleted.**
- **Downloading is not possible if the contacts download feature is turned off within the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device. Also, some devices may require device authorization upon attempting to download. If downloading cannot be normally conducted, check the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device setting or the screen state.**
- **Caller ID information will not be displayed for unsaved callers.**
- **The download feature may not be supported in some mobile phones. Check to see that the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device supports the download feature.**

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology (Type B-2 For Colombia model with harman/kardon)

When No Devices have been Paired



① Press the **[PHONE]** button or the **[CALL]** button on the steering wheel controls. The following screen is displayed.

② Press the [OK] to enter the Pair Phone screen.



- Vehicle Name: Name of device as shown when searching from your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device.
- Passkey: Passkey used to pair the device.

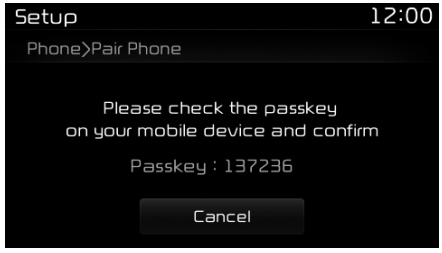
③ From your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device (i.e. Mobile Phone), search and select your car audio system.

❈ SSP: Secure Simple Pairing

Non SSP supported device:

④ After a few moments, a screen is displayed where the passkey is entered.

Enter the passkey “0000” to pair your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device with the car audio system.



SSP supported device:

④ After a few moments, a screen is displayed 6 digits passkey.

Check the passkey on your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device and confirm.

⑤ Once pairing is complete, the following screen is displayed.

Some phones (i.e., iPhone, Android and Blackberry phones) may offer an option to allow acceptance of all future Bluetooth connection requests by default. Visit http://www.kia.com for additional information on pairing your Bluetooth-enabled mobile phone, and to view a phone compatibility list.

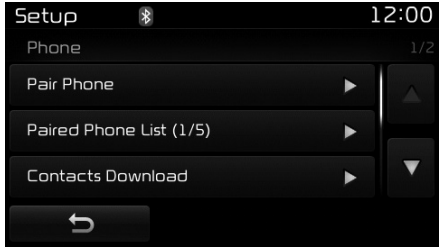
✻ NOTICE



If *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology devices are paired but none are currently connected, pressing the [PHONE] button or the [CALL] button on the steering wheel controls displays the following screen. Press the [Pair] to pair a new device or press the [Connect] to connect a previously paired device.

Pairing through [PHONE] Setup

Press the **[SETUP]** button ▶ Select [Phone].



Pair Phone

The following steps are the same as those described in the section “When No Devices have been Paired” on the previous page.

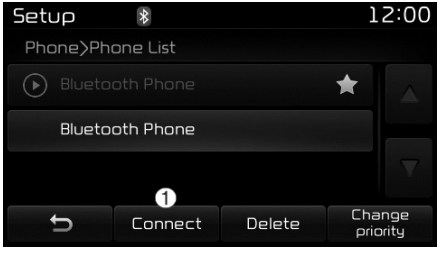
✻ NOTICE

- **The waiting period during phone pairing will last for one minute. The pairing process will fail if the device is not paired within the given time. If the pairing process fails, you must start the process from the beginning.**
- **Generally, most *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology devices will automatically connect once pairing is complete. However, some devices may require a separate verification process to connect. Check to see whether *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology has been properly connected within your mobile phone.**
- **List of paired *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology devices can be viewed at [SETUP] button ▶ [Phone] ▶ [Paired Phone List].**

Paired Phone List

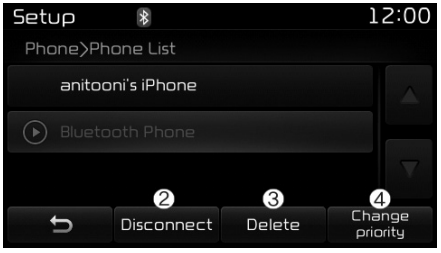
Press the **[SETUP]** button ▶ Select [Phone] ▶ Select [Paired Phone List].

- Connected Phone: Device that is currently connected.
- Paired Phone: Device that is paired but not connected.



Connecting a Device

From the paired phone list, select the device you want to connect and press the [Connect](1).



Disconnecting a Device

From the paired phone list, select the currently connected device and press the [Disconnect](2).

Deleting a Device

From the paired phone list, select the device you want to delete and press the [Delete](3).

✻ NOTICE

- **When deleting the currently connected device, the device will automatically be disconnected to proceed with the deleting process.**
- **If a paired *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device is deleted, the device's call history and contacts data will also be deleted.**
- **To re-use a deleted device, you must pair the device again.**

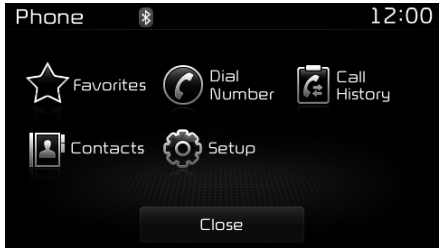
Changing Priority

It is possible to pair up to five *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology devices with the car audio system. The “Change Priority” feature is used to set the connection priority of paired phones. However, the most recently connected phone will always be set as the highest priority.

From the paired phone list, select the phone you want to switch to the highest priority, then press the [Change priority](4). The selected device will be changed to the highest priority.

When a device is currently connected, even if you change the priority to a different device, the currently connected phone will always be set as the highest priority.

Phone Menu Screen



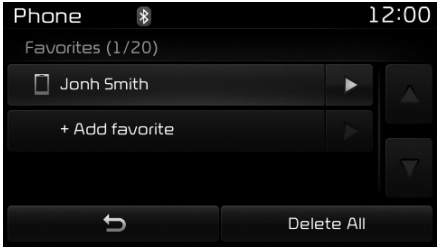
Phone Menus

With a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device connected, press the **[PHONE]** button to display the Phone menu screen.

- Favorites: Up to 20 frequently used contacts saved for easy access.
- Dial Number: Displays the dial screen where numbers can be dialed to make calls.
- Call History: Displays the call history list screen.
- Contacts: Displays the Contacts list screen.
- Setup: Displays Phone related settings.

✻ NOTICE

- **If you press the [Call History] but there is no call history data, a prompt is displayed which asks whether to download call history data.**
- **If you press the [Contacts] but there is no contacts data stored, a prompt is displayed which asks whether to download contacts data.**
- **This feature may not be supported in some mobile phones. For more information on download support, refer to your mobile phone user’s manual.**

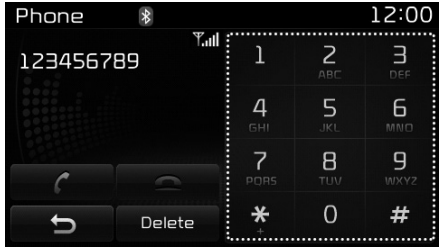


Favorites

- Saved favorite contact: Connects call upon selection.
- To add favorite: Downloaded contacts be saved as favorite.
- Delete All: Delete all stored favorite contacts.

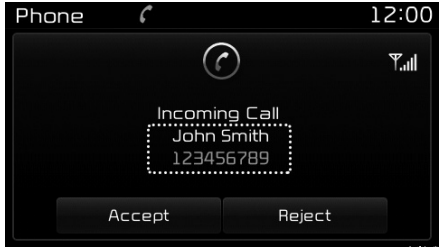
✻ NOTICE

- **To save Favorite, contacts should be downloaded.**
- **Contact saved in Favorites will not be automatically updated if the contact has been updated in the phone. To update Favorites, delete the Favorite and create a new Favorite.**



Calling by Dialing a Number

- Dial Pad: Used to enter phone number.
- Call: If a number has been entered, calls the number. If no number has been entered, switches to call history screen.
- End: Deletes the entered phone number.
- Delete: Deletes entered numbers one digit at a time.



Answering a Call

Answering a call with a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device connected will display the following screen.

- Caller: Displays the other party's name when the incoming caller is saved within your contacts.
- Incoming Number: Displays the incoming number.
- Accept: Accepts the incoming call.
- Reject: Rejects the incoming call.

✻ NOTICE

- **When an incoming call pop-up is displayed, most Audio and SETUP mode features are disabled. Only the call volume will operate.**
- **The telephone number may not be properly displayed in some mobile phones.**
- **When a call is answered with the mobile phone, the call mode will automatically revert to Private mode.**



During a Handsfree Call

- Caller: Displays the other party's name if the incoming caller is saved within your contacts.
- Incoming Number: Displays the incoming number.
- Call time: Displays the call time.
- End: Ends call.
- Private: Converts to Private mode.
- Out Vol.: Sets call volume as heard by the other party.
- Mute: Turns Mic Mute On/Off.

✻ NOTICE

If the mic is muted, the other party will not be able to hear your voice.



Call History

A list of incoming, outgoing and missed calls is displayed.

Press the [Download] to download the call history.

- Call History:
  - Displays recent calls. (call history)
  - Connects call upon selection.
- Download: Download Recent Call History.



Contacts

The list of saved phone book entries is displayed. Press the [Download] to download the call history.

- Contacts List:
  - Displays downloaded contacts entries.
  - Connects call upon selection.
- Sort by: Find a contact in an alphabetical order.
- Download: Download contacts entries.

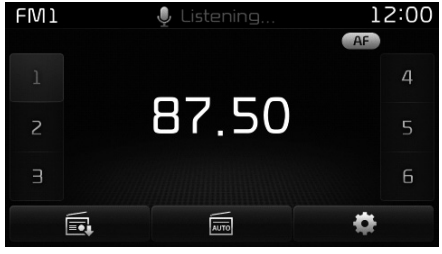
✻ NOTICE

- **Up to 1,000 contacts entries can be copied into car contacts.**
- **Upon downloading contacts data, previously saved contacts data will be deleted.**
- **Downloading is not possible if the contacts download feature is turned off within the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device. Also, some devices may require device authorization upon attempting to download. If downloading cannot be normally conducted, check the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device setting or the screen state.**
- **Caller ID information will not be displayed for unsaved callers.**
- **The download feature may not be supported in some mobile phones. Check to see that the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device supports the download feature.**

Voice Recognition Mode (if equipped)

Using Voice Recognition





Starting Voice Recognition

Shortly press the button on the steering wheel controls Say a command.

If voice recognition is in [Normal Mode], then the system will say "Please say a command. Ding~".

- If voice recognition is in [Expert Mode], then the system will only say a "Ding~".
- To change the Normal Mode/ Expert Mode setting, go to **[SETUP]** button ▶ [System] ▶ [Voice Recognition System].

For proper recognition, say the command after the voice instruction and beep tone.

✻ NOTICE

Phonebook List Best Practice

1) Do not store single-name entries. (e.g., "Bob", "Mom", "Kim", etc.) Instead, always use full names (including first and last names) for phonebook. (e.g., use "Jacob Stevenson" instead of "Dad")

2) Do not use abbreviations. (i.e., use "Lieutenant" instead of "Lt." or "Sergeant" instead of "Sgt.")

3) Do not use acronyms. (i.e., use "County Finance Department" instead of "CFD")

4) Do not use special characters. (e.g., "@", "hyphen -", "asterisk *", ampersand &")

5) If a name is not recognized from the phonebook, change it to a more descriptive name. (e.g., use "Grandpa Joseph" instead of "Pa Joe")

Skipping Prompt Messages

Whilst prompt message is being stated ▶ Shortly press the button on the steering wheel controls.

The prompt message is immediately ended and the beep tone will sound. After the “Ding”, say the voice command.

Re-starting Voice Recognition

Whilst system waits for a command ▶ Shortly press the button on the steering wheel controls.

The command wait state is immediately ended and the beep tone will sound. After the “Ding”, say the voice command.

Ending Voice Recognition

Whilst Voice Recognition is operating ▶ Press and hold the button on the steering wheel controls.

- Whilst using voice command, pressing a steering wheel controls or a different button will end voice command.
- When the system is waiting for a voice command, say “cancel” or “end” to end voice command.
- When the system is waiting for a voice command, press and hold the button on the steering wheel controls to end voice command.

✻ NOTICE

Voice Recognition and Phonebook Tips

The Kia Voice Recognition System may have difficulty understanding some accents or uncommon names.

When using Voice Recognition to place a call, speak in a moderate tone, with clear pronunciation.

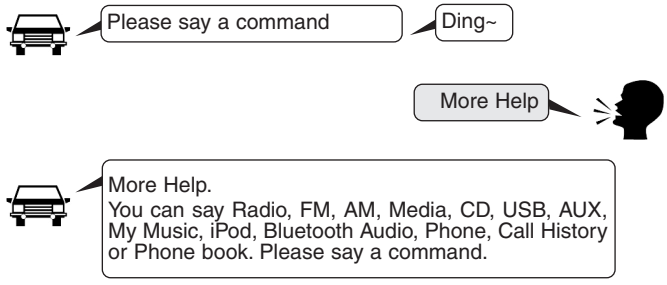
To maximize the use of Voice Recognition, consider these guidelines when storing contacts:

- **Do not store single-name entries. (e.g., “Bob”, “Mom”, etc.) Instead, always use full names (including first and last names) for these contacts.**
- **Do not use special characters. (e.g., '@', '-', '*', '&', etc.)**
- **Do not use abbreviations (i.e., use "Lieutenant" instead of "Lt.") or acronyms. (i.e., use "County Finance Department" instead of "C. F. D.") Be sure to say the name exactly as it is entered in the contacts list.**

Ilustration on Using Voice Recognition

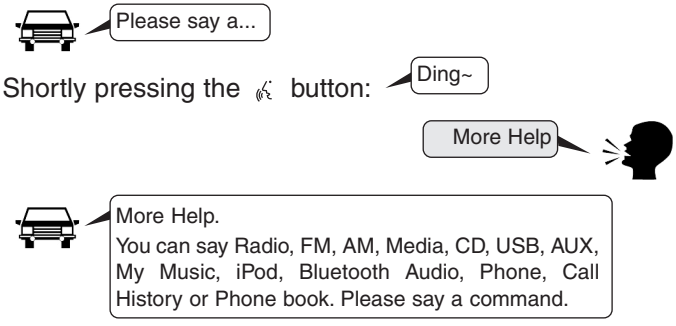
Starting Voice Recognition

Shortly pressing the button:



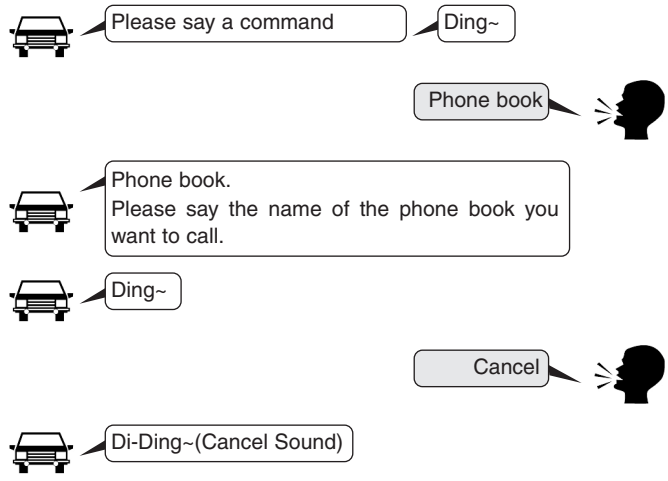
Skipping Voice Recognition

Shortly pressing the button:



Ending Voice Recognition

Shortly pressing the button:



Voice Command List

Common Commands

These commands can be used in most operations.

(However a few commands may not be available during certain operations)

Command	Function
More Help	Provides guidance on commands that can be used anywhere in the system.
Help	Provides guidance on commands that can be used within the current mode.
Call<Name>	Calls <Name> saved in phone book Ex) Call “John Smith”
Phone	Provides guidance on Phone related commands. After saying this command, say “Call History”, “Phone book”, “Dial Number” to execute corresponding functions.
Call History	Displays the Call History screen.
Phone book	Displays the phone book screen. After saying this command, say the name of a phone book saved in the phone book to automatically connect the call.
Dial Number	Displays the Dial number screen. After saying this command, you can say the number that you want to call.
Redial	Connects the most recently called number.
Radio	• When listening to the radio, displays the next radio screen. (FM1➟FM2➟FMA➟AM➟AMA) • When listening to a different mode, displays the most recently played radio screen.

Command	Function
FM	• When currently listening to the FM radio, maintains the current state. • When listening to a different mode, displays the most recently played FM screen.
FM1(FM One)	Displays the FM1 screen.
FM2(FM Two)	Displays the FM2 screen.
FMA	Displays the FMA screen.
AM	Displays the AM screen.
AMA	Displays the AMA screen.
FM Preset 1~6	Plays the most recently played broadcast saved in FM Preset 1~6.
AM Preset 1~6	Plays the broadcast saved in AM Preset 1~6.
FM 87.5~107.9	Plays the FM broadcast of the corresponding frequency. ❊ Range can be different by application frequency of corresponding country.
AM 530~1710	Plays the AM broadcast of the corresponding frequency. ❊ Range can be different by application frequency of corresponding country.
TA On	Enables Traffic Announcement.
TA Off	Disables Traffic Announcement.

Command	Function
News On	Enables RDS News feature.
News Off	Disables RDS News feature.
Media	Moves to the most recently played media screen.
Play Track 1~30	If a music CD has been inserted, plays the corresponding track.
CD	Plays music on the CD.
Search CD	Moves to the CD track or file selection screen. • For audio CDs, move to the screen and say the track number to play the corresponding track. • Moves to MP3 CD file selection screen. After manually operate the device to select and play music.
USB	Plays music on the USB device.
Search USB	Moves to USB file selection screen. After manually operate the device to select and play music.
iPod	Plays music on the iPod®.
Search iPod	Moves to the iPod® file selection screen. After, manually operate the device to select and play music.
My Music	Plays music saved in My Music.
Search My Music	Moves to the My Music file selection screen. After, manually operate the device to select and play music.

Command	Function
AUX (Auxiliary)	Plays the connected external device.
Bluetooth Audio	Plays the music saved in connected *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device.
Mute	Mutes the radio or music volume.
Pardon?	Repeats the most recent comment.
Cancel (Exit)	Ends voice command.

FM/AM Radio Commands

Commands available during FM/AM Radio operation.

Command	Function
Preset 1~6	Plays the broadcast saved in Preset 1~6.
Auto Store	Automatically selects radio broadcast frequencies with superior reception and saves in Presets 1~6.
Preset Save 1~6	Saves the current broadcast frequency to Preset 1~6.
Seek up	Plays the next (higher) receivable broadcast.
Seek down	Plays the previous (lower) receivable broadcast.
Next Preset	Selects the preset number next to the most recently selected preset. (Example: When currently listening to preset no. 3, then preset no. 4 will be selected.)
Previous Preset	Selects the preset number previous to the most recently selected preset. (Example: When currently listening to preset no. 3, then preset no. 2 will be selected.)
Scan	Scans receivable frequencies from the current broadcast and plays for 10 seconds each.
Preset Scan	Moves to the next preset from the current present and plays for 10 seconds each.
AF On	Enables Alternative Frequency feature.
AF Off	Disables Alternative Frequency feature.
Region	Enables Region feature.
Region off	Disables Region feature.

Audio CD Commands

Commands available during Audio CD operation.

Command	Function
Shuffle	Randomly plays the tracks within the CD.
Shuffle Off	Cancels random play to play tracks in sequential order.
Repeat	Repeats the current track.
Repeat Off	Cancels repeat play to play tracks in sequential order.
Next Track	Plays the next track.
Previous Track	Plays the previous track.
Scan	Scans the tracks from the next track for 10 seconds each.
Track 1~30	Plays the desired track number.
Information	Displays the information screen of the current track.

MP3 CD/USB Commands

Commands available during MP3 CD/USB operation.

Command	Function
Shuffle	Randomly plays the files within the current folder.
All Shuffle	Randomly plays all saved files.
Shuffle Off	Cancels random play to play files in sequential order.
Repeat	Repeats the current file.
Folder Repeat	Repeats all files in the current folder.
Repeat Off	Cancels repeat play to play files in sequential order.
Next File	Plays the next file.
Previous File	Plays the previous file.
Scan	Scans the tracks from the next files for 10 seconds each.
Information	Displays the information screen of the current file.
Copy	Copies the current file into My Music.

iPod® Commands

Commands available during iPod® operation.

Command	Function
All Shuffle	Randomly plays all saved songs.
Shuffle	Randomly plays the songs within the current category.
Shuffle Off	Cancels random play to play songs in sequential order.
Repeat	Repeats the current song.
Repeat Off	Cancels repeat play to play songs in sequential order.
Next Song	Plays the next song.
Previous Song	Plays the previous song.
Information	Displays the information screen of the current song.

My Music Commands

Commands available during My Music operation.

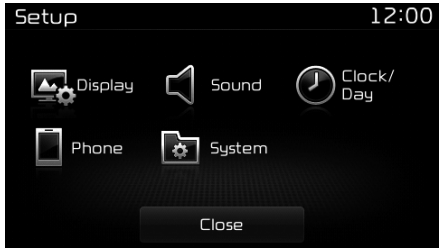
Command	Function
Shuffle	Randomly plays all saved files.
Shuffle Off	Cancels random play to play files in sequential order.
Repeat	Repeats the current file.
Repeat Off	Cancels repeat play to play files in sequential order.
Next File	Plays the next file.
Previous File	Plays the previous file.
Scan	Scans the files from the next files for 10 seconds each.
Information	Displays the information screen of the current file.
Delete	Deletes the current file. You will bypass an additional confirmation process.
Delete All	Deletes all files saved in My Music. You will bypass an additional confirmation process.

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology Audio Commands

Commands available during *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology audio streaming from mobile phone operation Command Operation.

Command	Function
Play	Plays the currently paused song.
Pause	Pauses the current song.

Setup Mode (Type B-1)



Press the **[SETUP]** button to display the Setup screen.

You can select and control options related to [Display], [Sound], [Clock/ Day], [Phone] and [System].

With the Display Button

Press the **[SETUP]** button ▶ Select [Display].

You can select and control options related to [Brightness], [Pop-up Mode], [Scroll text] and [Song Info].

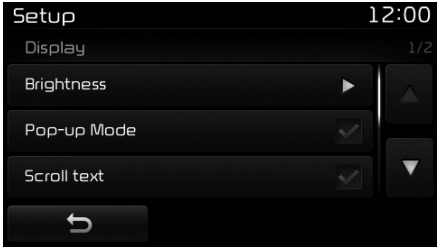


Adjusting the Brightness

Use the [Left/Right] to adjust the screen brightness or set the Brightness on Automatic, Day or Night mode.

Press the [Default] to reset.

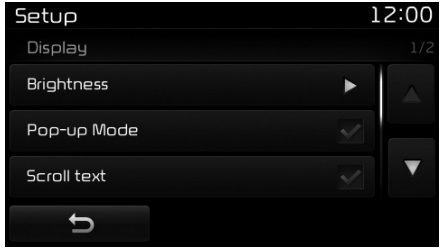
- Automatic: Adjusts the brightness automatically.
- Day: Always maintains the brightness on high.
- Night: Always maintains the brightness on low.



Pop-up Mode

This feature is used to display the Pop-up Mode screen when entering radio and media modes.

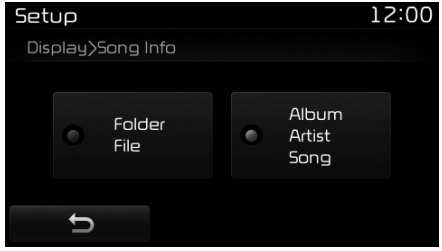
When this feature is turned on, pressing the **[RADIO]** or **[MEDIA]** button will display the Pop-up Mode screen.



Scroll text

This feature is used to scroll text displayed on the screen when it is too long to be displayed at once.

When turned on, the text is repeatedly scrolled. When turned off, the text is scrolled just once.



Song Info

This feature is used to change the information displayed within USB and MP3 CD modes.

- Folder File: Displays file name and folder name.
- Album Artist Song: Displays album name/artist name/song.

✻ NOTICE

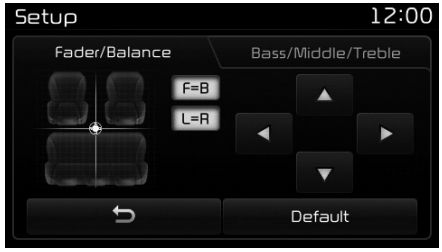
The media Pop-up Mode screen can be displayed only when two or more media modes have been connected.

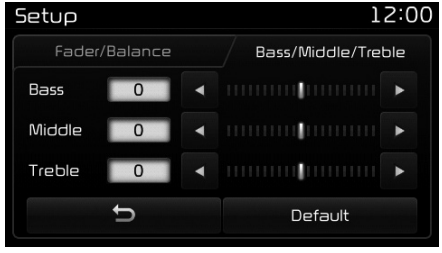
With the Sound Button

Press the **[SETUP]** button ▶ Select [Sound].

You can select and control options related to [Audio Settings], [Quantum Logic*], [Speed Dependent Vol.], [Volume Dialogue*] and [Touch Screen Beep].

* if equipped





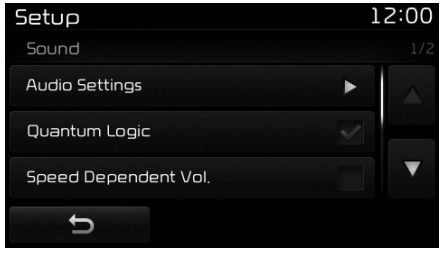
Audio Settings

Use the [Up/Down/Left/Right] to adjust the Fader/Balance settings.

Use the [Left/Right] to adjust the Bass/Middle/Treble settings.

Press the [Default] to reset.

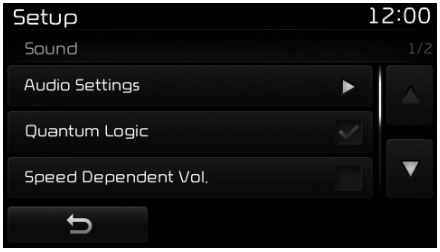
(with harman/kardon)



QLS(Quantum Logic Surround)

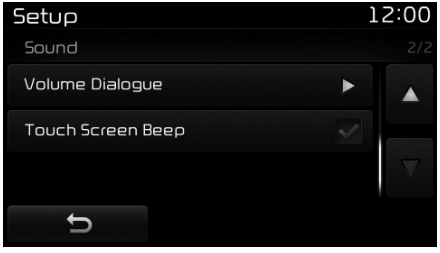
QLS can be set by selecting from On/Off.

(with harman/kardon)



SDVC (Speed Dependent Volume Control)

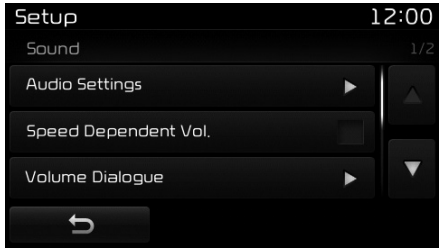
The volume level is controlled automatically according to the vehicle speed. SDVC can be set by selecting from On/Off.



Touch Screen Beep

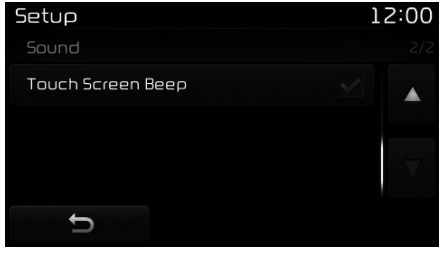
This feature is used to turn the touch screen beep on/off.

(without harman/kardon)



SDVC (Speed Dependent Volume Control)

The volume level is controlled automatically according to the vehicle speed. SDVC can be set by selecting from On/Off.



Touch Screen Beep

This feature is used to turn the touch screen beep on/off.



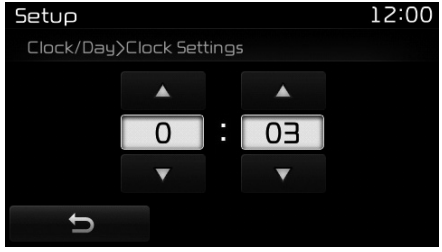
Volume Dialogue

Use the [-], [+] to adjust the Volume Dialogue.

With the Clock/Day Button

Press the **[SETUP]** button ▶ Select [Clock/Day].

You can select and control options related to [Clock Settings], [Day Settings], [Time Format], [Clock Display (Power off)] and [Automatic RDS Time].



Clock Settings

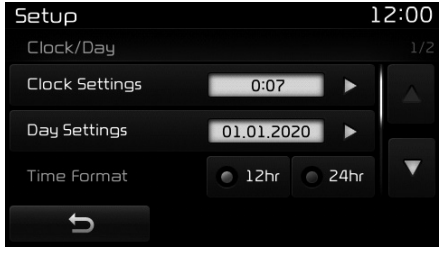
Use the [Up/Down] to set the Hour, Minutes and AM/PM setting.

Press and hold the **[CLOCK]** button to display the Clock/Day screen.



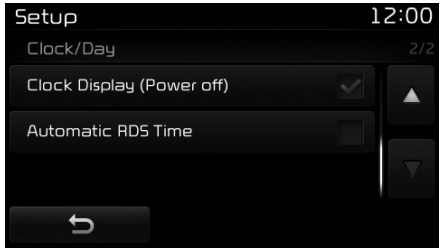
Day Settings

Use the [Up/Down] to set the Day, Month and Year setting.



Time Format

This feature is used to change the clock format between 12hr or 24hr.



Clock Display (Power Off)

This feature is used to display a clock on the screen when the audio system is turned off.

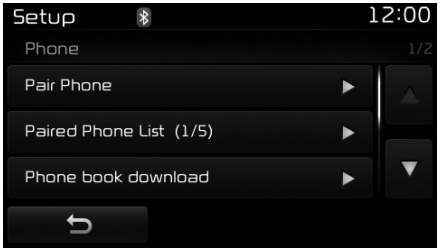
Automatic RDS Time

This feature is used to set time automatically by synchronizing with RDS.

With the Phone Button

Press the **[SETUP]** button ▶ Select [Phone].

You can select and control options related to [Pair Phone], [Paired Phone List], [Phone book download], [Auto Download], [Outgoing Volume] and [Bluetooth System Off].



Pairing a New Device

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology devices can be paired with the audio system.

For more information, refer to the "Pairing through Phone Setup" section within *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology.



Viewing Paired Phone List

Press the **[SETUP]** button ▶ Select [Phone] ▶ Select [Paired Phone List].

This feature is used to view mobile phones that have been paired with the audio system. Upon selecting a paired phone, the setup menu is displayed.

For more information, refer to the "Setting *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Connection" section within *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology.

(1) Moves to the previous screen.

(2) Connect/Disconnects currently selected phone.

(3) Deletes the currently selected phone.

(4) Sets currently selected phone to highest connection priority.

✻ NOTICE - Before Downloading Phone Book

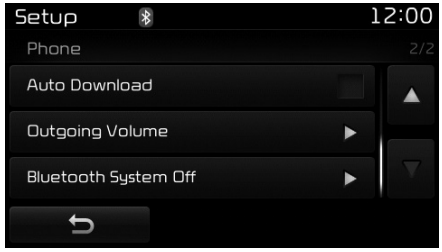
- **Only phone book within connected phones can be downloaded. Also check to see that your mobile phone supports the download feature.**
- **To learn more about whether your mobile phone supports phone book downloads, refer to your mobile phone user's manual.**
- **The Phone book for only the connected phone can be downloaded. Before downloading, check to see whether your phone supports the download feature.**



Downloading Phone book

As the Phone book is downloaded from the mobile phone, downloading Phone book number is displayed.

- Up to 1,000 phone book entries can be copied into car phone book.
- Up to 1,000 phone book entries can be saved for each paired device.
- Upon downloading phone book data, previously saved phone book data will be deleted. However, Phone book entries saved to other paired phones are not deleted.



Auto Download (Phone Book)

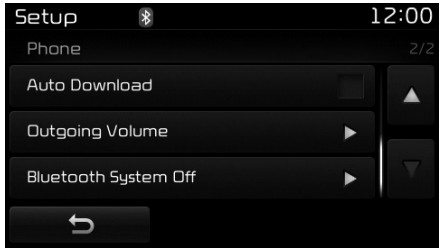
This feature is used to automatically download mobile phone book entries once a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone is connected.

- The Auto Download feature will download mobile phone book entries every time the phone is connected. The download time may differ depending on the number of saved phone book entries and the communication state.
- When downloading a phone book, first check to see that your mobile phone supports the phone book download feature.



Outgoing Volume

Use the [-], [+] to adjust the outgoing volume level.





Turning Bluetooth System Off

Once *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology is turned off, *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology related features will not be supported within the audio system.

To turn *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology back on, go to **[SETUP]** button ▶ [Phone] and press “Yes”.

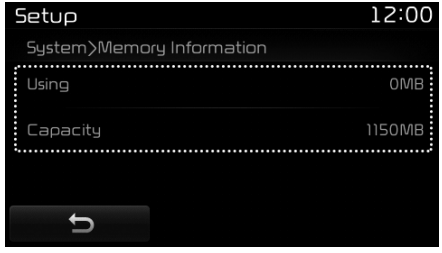
⚠ CAUTION

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology audio streaming may not be supported in some Bluetooth® Wireless Technology phones.

With the System Button

Press the **[SETUP]** button ▶ Select [System].

You can select and control options related to [Memory Information], [Voice Recognition System] and [Language].

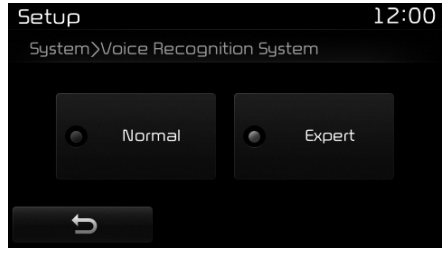


Memory Information

This feature displays information related to system memory.

- Using: Displays capacity currently in use.
- Capacity: Displays total capacity.

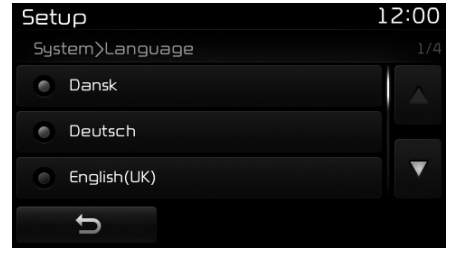
❊ May differ depending on the selected audio.



Voice Recognition Mode Setting (if equipped)

This feature is used to select the desired prompt feedback option from Normal and Expert.

- Normal: When using voice recognition, provides detailed guidance prompts.
- Expert: When using voice recognition, omits some guidance prompts.



Language

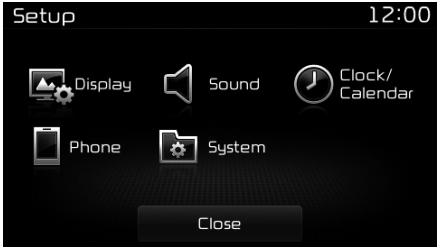
This feature is used to change the system and voice recognition language.

If the language is changed, the system will restart and apply the selected language.

- Language support by region

  Dansk, Deutsch, English(UK), Español, Français, Italiano, Nederlands, Polski, Русский, Svenska, Türkçe

Setup Mode (Type B-2) or (Type B-2 For Colombia model without harman/kardon)



Press the **[SETUP]** button to display the Setup screen.

You can select and control options related to [Display], [Sound], [Clock/Calendar], [Phone] and [System].

With the Display Button

Press the **[SETUP]** button ▶ Select [Display].

You can select and control options related to [Brightness], [Mode Pop up], [Text Scroll] and [Media Display].

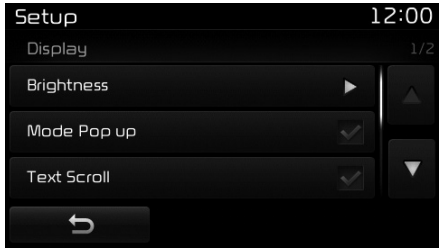


Adjusting the Brightness

Use the [Left/Right] to adjust the screen brightness or set the Brightness on Automatic, Day or Night mode.

Press the [Default] to reset.

- Automatic: Adjusts the brightness automatically.
- Day: Always maintains the brightness on high.
- Night: Always maintains the brightness on low.



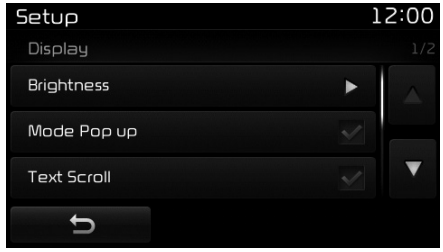
Mode Pop up

This feature is used to display the Mode Pop up screen when entering radio and media modes.

When this feature is turned on, pressing the **[RADIO]** or **[MEDIA]** button will display the Mode Pop up screen.

✻ NOTICE

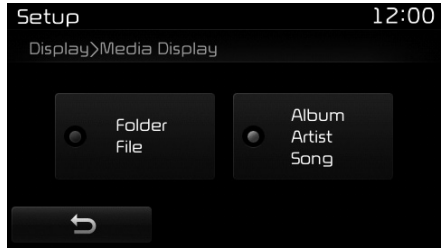
The media Mode Pop up screen can be displayed only when two or more media modes have been connected.



Text Scroll

This feature is used to scroll text displayed on the screen when it is too long to be displayed at once.

When turned on, the text is repeatedly scrolled. When turned off, the text is scrolled just once.



Media Display

This feature is used to change the information displayed within USB and MP3 CD modes.

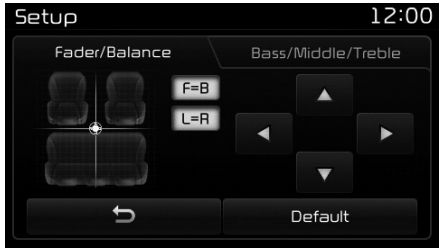
- Folder File: Displays file name and folder name.
- Album Artist Song: Displays album name/artist name/song.

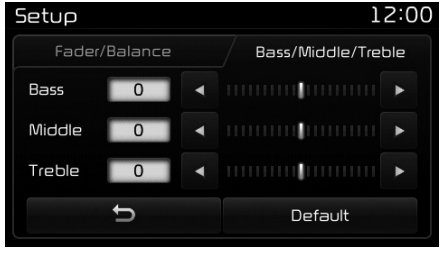
With the Sound Button

Press the **[SETUP]** button ▶ Select [Sound].

You can select and control options related to [Sound Setting], [Quantum Logic Surround*], [Speed Dependent Vol.] and [Touch Screen Beep].

* if equipped





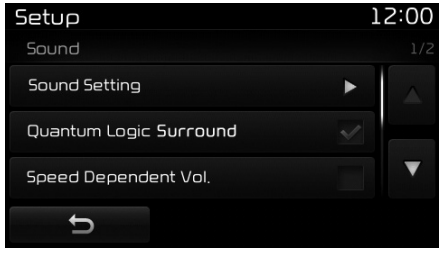
Sound Setting

Use the [Up/Down/Left/Right] to adjust the Fader/Balance settings.

Use the [Left/Right] to adjust the Bass/Middle/Treble settings.

Press the [Default] to reset.

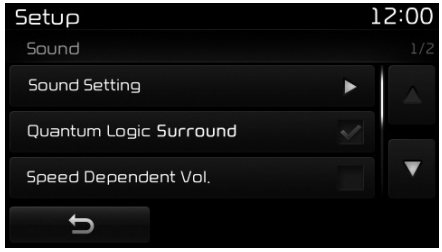
(with harman/kardon)



QLS(Quantum Logic Surround)

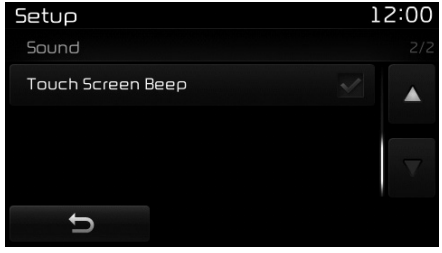
QLS can be set by selecting from On/Off.

(with harman/kardon)



SDVC (Speed Dependent Volume Control)

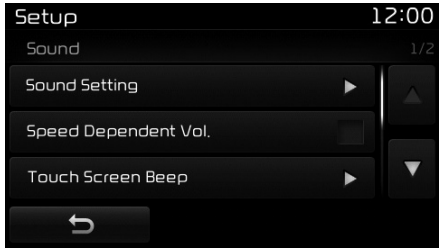
The volume level is controlled automatically according to the vehicle speed. SDVC can be set by selecting from On/Off.



Touch Screen Beep

This feature is used to turn the touch screen beep on/off.

(without harman/kardon)



SDVC (Speed Dependent Volume Control)

The volume level is controlled automatically according to the vehicle speed. SDVC can be set by selecting from On/Off.

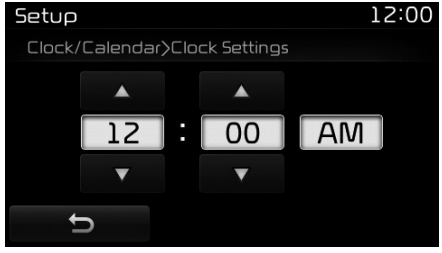
Touch Screen Beep

This feature is used to turn the touch screen beep on/off.

With the Clock/Calendar Button

Press the **[SETUP]** button ▶ Select [Clock/Calendar].

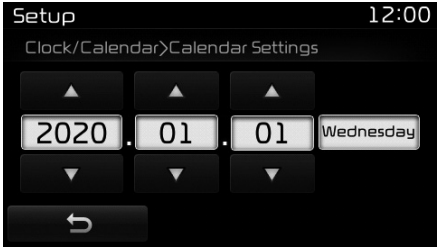
You can select and control options related to [Clock Settings], [Calendar Settings] and [Clock Display (Power off)].



Clock Settings

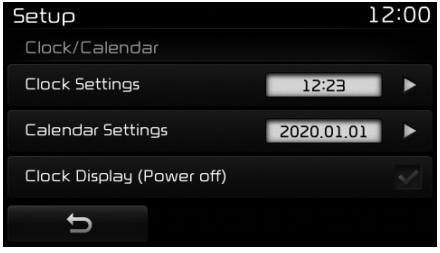
Use the [Up/Down] to set the Hour, Minutes and AM/PM setting.

Press and hold the **[CLOCK]** button to display the Clock/Calendar screen.



Calendar Settings

Use the [Up/Down] to set the Year, Month and Day setting.



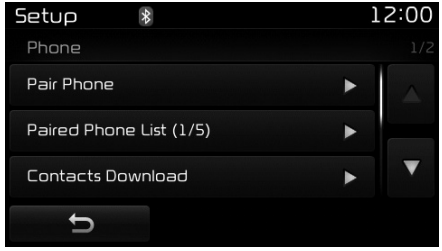
Clock Display (Power off)

This feature is used to display a clock on the screen when the audio system is turned off.

With the Phone Button

Press the **[SETUP]** button ▶ Select [Phone].

You can select and control options related to [Pair Phone], [Paired Phone List], [Contacts Download], [Auto Download], [Outgoing Volume] and [Bluetooth System Off].



Pairing a New Device

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology devices can be paired with the audio system.

For more information, refer to the “Pairing through Phone Setup” section within *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology.



Viewing Paired Phone List

This feature is used to view mobile phones that have been paired with the audio system. Upon selecting a paired phone, the setup menu is displayed.
For more information, refer to the "Setting *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Connection" section within *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology.

(1) Moves to the previous screen.

(2) Connect/Disconnects currently selected phone.

(3) Deletes the currently selected phone.

(4) Sets currently selected phone to highest connection priority.

✻ NOTICE - Before Downloading Contact

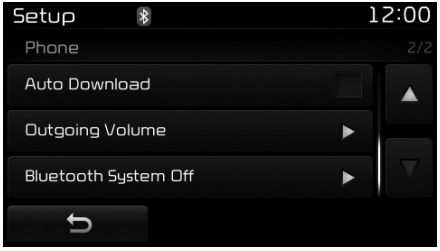
- **To learn more about whether your mobile phone supports contacts downloads, refer to your mobile phone user's manual.**
- **The contacts for only the connected phone can be downloaded.**



Downloading Contacts

As the contacts are downloaded from the mobile phone, downloading contacts number is displayed.

- Up to 1,000 contacts entries can be copied into car contacts.
- Up to 1,000 contacts entries can be saved for each paired device.
- Upon downloading contacts data, previously saved contacts data will be deleted. However, contacts entries saved to other paired phones are not deleted.



Auto Download (Contacts)

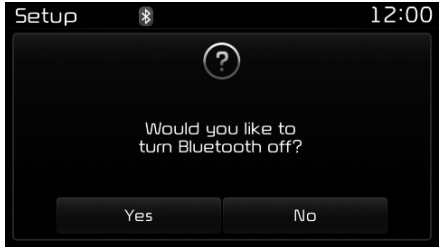
This feature is used to automatically download mobile contacts entries once a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone is connected.

- The Auto Download feature will download mobile contacts entries every time the phone is connected. The download time may differ depending on the number of saved contacts entries and the communication state.
- When downloading a contacts, first check to see that your mobile phone supports the contacts download feature.



Outgoing Volume

Use the [-], [+] to adjust the outgoing volume level.



Turning Bluetooth System Off

Once *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology is turned off, *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology related features will not be supported within the audio system.

To turn *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology back on, go to **[SETUP]** button ▶ [Phone] and press “Yes”.

With the System Button

Press the **[SETUP]** button ▶ Select [System] ▶ Select [Memory Information].



Memory Information

This feature displays information related to system memory.

- Using: Displays capacity currently in use.
- Capacity: Displays total capacity.

(without harman/kardon)



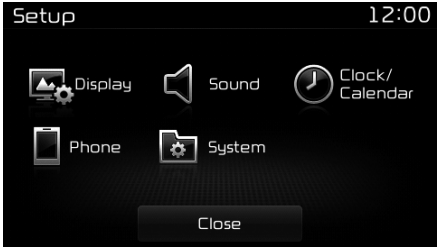
Language

This feature is used to change the system language.

If the language is changed, the system will restart and apply the selected language.

Language Setting is depend on the Audio System.

Setup Mode (Type B-2 For Colombia model with harman/kardon)



Press the **[SETUP]** button to display the Setup screen.

You can select and control options related to [Display], [Sound], [Clock/ Calendar], [Phone] and [System].

With the Display Button

Press the **[SETUP]** button ▶ Select [Display].

You can select and control options related to [Brightness], [Mode Pop up] and [Media Display].

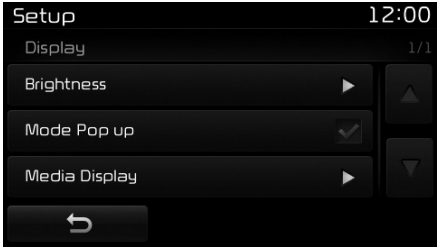


Adjusting the Brightness

Use the [Left/Right] to adjust the screen brightness or set the Brightness on Automatic, Day or Night mode.

Press the [Default] to reset.

- Automatic: Adjusts the brightness automatically.
- Day: Always maintains the brightness on high.
- Night: Always maintains the brightness on low.



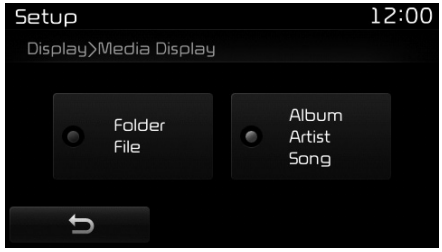
Mode Pop up

This feature is used to display the Pop-up Mode screen when entering radio and media modes.

When this feature is turned on, pressing the **[RADIO]** or **[MEDIA]** button will display the Mode Pop up screen.

✻ NOTICE

The media Mode Pop up screen can be displayed only when two or more media modes have been connected.



Media Display

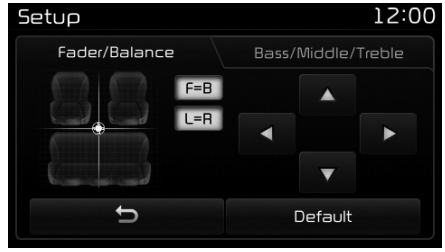
This feature is used to change the information displayed within USB and MP3 CD modes.

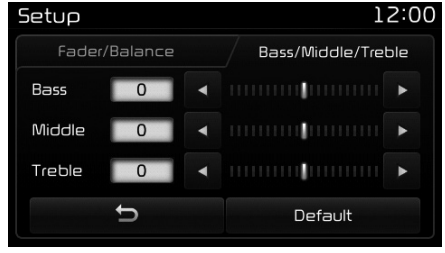
- Folder File: Displays file name and folder name
- Album Artist Song: Displays album name/artist name/song

With the Sound Button

Press the **[SETUP]** button ▶ Select [Sound].

You can select and control options related to [Sound Setting], [Quantum Logic Surround], [Speed Dependent Vol.] and [Touch Screen Beep].



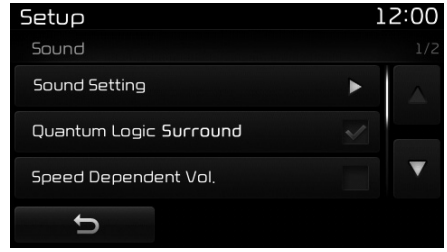


Sound Setting

Use the [Up/Down/Left/Right] to adjust the Fader/Balance settings.

Use the[Left/Right] to adjust the Bass/Middle/Treble settings.

Press the [Default] to reset.

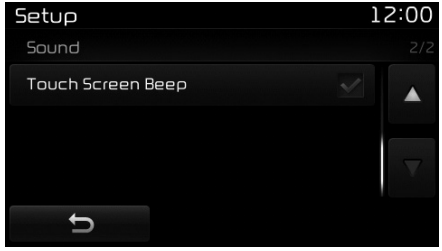


QLS(Quantum Logic Surround)

QLS can be set by selecting from On/Off.

SDVC (Speed Dependent Volume Control)

The volume level is controlled automatically according to the vehicle speed. SDVC can be set by selecting from On/Off.



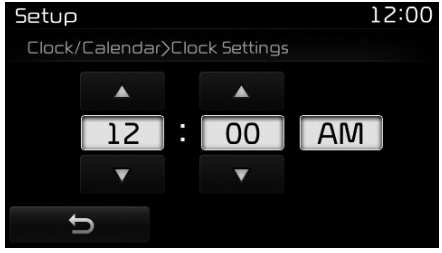
Touch Screen Beep

This feature is used to turn the touch screen beep on/off.

With the Clock/Calendar Button

Press the **[SETUP]** button ▶ Select [Clock/Calendar].

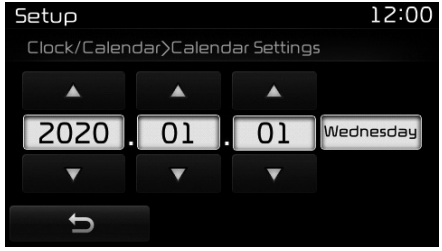
You can select and control options related to [Clock Settings], [Calendar Settings] and [Time Format].



Clock Settings

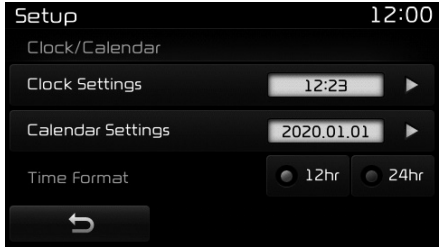
Use the [Up/Down] to set the Hour, Minutes and AM/PM setting.

Press and hold the **[CLOCK]** button to display the Clock/Calendar screen.



Calendar Settings

Use the [Up/Down] to set the Day, Month and Year setting.



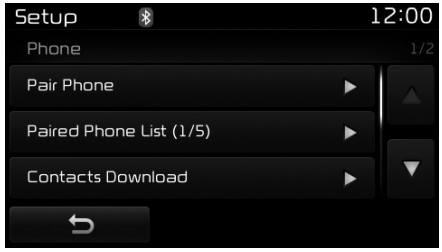
Time Format

This feature is used to change the clock format between 12hr or 24hr.

With the Phone Button

Press the **[SETUP]** button ▶ Select [Phone].

You can select and control options related to [Pair Phone], [Paired Phone List], [Contacts Download], [Auto Download], [Outgoing Volume] and [Bluetooth System Off].



Pairing a New Device

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology devices can be paired with the audio system.

For more information, refer to the "Pairing through Phone Setup" section within *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology.



Viewing Paired Phone List

This feature is used to view mobile phones that have been paired with the audio system. Upon selecting a paired phone, the setup menu is displayed.

For more information, refer to the "Setting *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Connection" section within *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology.

(1) Moves to the previous screen.

(2) Connect/Disconnects currently selected phone.

(3) Deletes the currently selected phone.

(4) Sets currently selected phone to highest connection priority.

✻ NOTICE - Before Downloading Contact

- **To learn more about whether your mobile phone supports contacts downloads, refer to your mobile phone user's manual.**
- **The contacts for only the connected phone can be downloaded.**



Downloading Contacts

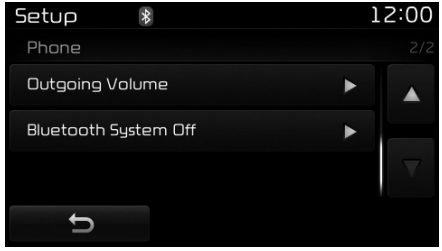
As the contacts are downloaded from the mobile phone, downloading contacts number is displayed.

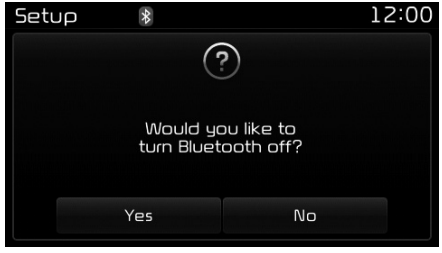
- Up to 1,000 contacts entries can be copied into car contacts.
- Up to 1,000 contacts entries can be saved for each paired device.
- Upon downloading contacts data, previously saved contacts data will be deleted. However, contacts entries saved to other paired phones are not deleted.



Outgoing Volume

Use the [-], [+] to adjust the outgoing volume level.





Turning Bluetooth System Off

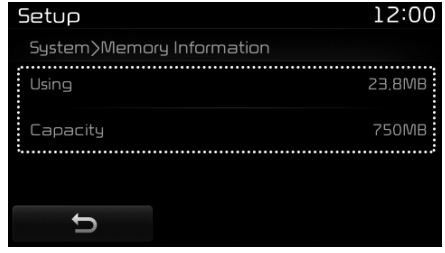
Once *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology is turned off, *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology related features will not be supported within the audio system.

To turn *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology back on, go to **[SETUP]** button ▶ [Phone] and press “Yes”.

With the System Button

Press the **[SETUP]** button ▶ Select [System].

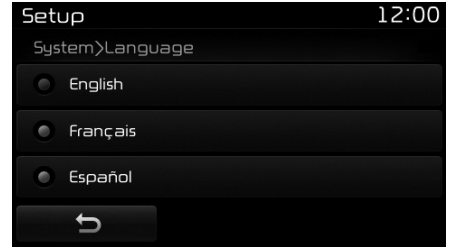
You can select and control options related to [Memory Information] and [Language].



Memory Information

This feature displays information related to system memory.

- Using: Displays capacity currently in use.
- Capacity: Displays total capacity.



Language

This feature is used to change the system language.

If the language is changed, the system will restart and apply the selected language.

Language Setting is depend on the Audio System.

Rear View Camera (if equipped)

- The system has been equipped with a rear view camera for user safety by allowing a wider rear range of vision.
- The Rear View Camera will automatically operate when the ignition key is turned ON and the transmission lever is set to R.
- The Rear View Camera will automatically stop operating when set to a different lever.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***The Rear View Camera has been equipped with an optical lens to provide a wider range of vision and may appear different from the actual distance. For safety, directly check the rear and left/right sides.***
- ***The colour of the parking guidelines displayed in the picture may differ from the actual screen.***
- ***When booted up, blinking may occur when you switch to a UI screen.***

Declaration of Conformity

FCC

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation.

This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions,may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Caution: Any changes or modifications to this device not explicitly approved by manufacturer could void your authority to operate this equipment.

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions :

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment.

This equipment should be installed and operatedwith minmum 20cm between the and your body. This transmitter must not be collocated or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter unless authorised to do so by the FCC

CE for EU

Declaration of Conformity

We, manufacturer, hereby declare that the product

Model: AC111D4GE, AC112D4EE, AC111D4EE, AC110D4EE, AC113D4GG, AC112D4GG, AC111D4GG, AC110D4GE, AC110D4GN, AC110D4GG, AC101D4GG, AC101D4GE, AC100D4GN, AC100D4GG, AC100D4GE, AC100D4EE
Type: DIGITAL CAR AUDIO SYSTEM

satisfies all the technical regulations applicable to the product within the scope of Council Directives 2006/95/EC, 2004/108/EC and 99/5/EC:

Radio: EN 300 328 V.1.8.1(2012-06)
EMC: EN 55013 : 2013
EN 55020 : 2007 / A11 : 2011
ETSI EN 301 489-1 V 1.9.2
ETSI EN 301 489-17 V 2.2.1
Safety: EN 60065:2002+A1:2006+A11:2008+A2:2010+A12:2011

All essential radio test suites have been carried out.

Testing laboratory: DT&C Co., Ltd.

42, Yurim-ro, 154beon-gil, Cheoin-gu, Yongin-si, Gyeonggi-do, Korea, 449-935
Tel. +82 31 321 2664 / Fax. +82 31 321 1664

Authorized representative or manufacturer:

HYUNDAI MOBIS Co., Ltd.
203, Teheran-ro, Gangnam-gu, Seoul, 135-977, Korea
Tel. 82-31-260-0098 / Fax. 82-31-899-1788

This declaration is issued under the sole responsibility of the manufacturer and, if applicable, his authorized Representative, and is marked in accordance with the CE marking directive 93/68/EEC.

Point of contact :

HYUNDAI MOBIS Co., Ltd. Tel. 82-31-260-0098 / Fax. 82-31-899-1788

Seoul, Korea Jun. 12, 2015

CE

최능훈

/ S. H. Choe
/ Director

Declaration of Conformity

We, manufacturer, hereby declare that the product

Model: AC101D4GE, AC101D4GG, AC100D4GN, AC100D4GG, AC100D4GE, AC100D4EE
Type: DIGITAL CAR AUDIO SYSTEM

satisfies all the technical regulations applicable to the product within the scope of Council Directives 2006/95/EC, 2004/108/EC and 99/5/EC:

EMC: EN 55013:2013
EN 55020 : 2007 / A11 : 2011
Safety : EN 60065:2002+A1:2006+A11:2008+A2:2010+A12:2011

All essential radio test suites have been carried out.

Testing laboratory : DT&C Co., Ltd.

41, Yurim-ro, 154beon-gil, Cheoin-gu, Yongin-si, Gyeonggi-Do, Korea, 449-935
Tel. +82 31 321 2664 / Fax. +82 31 321 1664

Authorized representative or manufacturer :

HYUNDAI MOBIS Co., Ltd.
203, Teheran-ro, Gangnam-gu, Seoul, 135-977, Korea
Tel. 82-31-260-0092 / Fax. 82-31-899-1788

This declaration is issued under the sole responsibility of the manufacturer and, if applicable, his authorized Representative, and is marked in accordance with the CE marking directive 93/68/EEC.

Point of contact :

Hyundai Mobis Co., Ltd. Tel. 82-31-260-0098 / Fax. 82-31-899-1788

Seoul, Korea June 12, 2015

CE

최능훈

/ S. H. Choe
/ Director

Declaration of Conformity

We, manufacturer, hereby declare that the product

Model: AC210D4EE, AC211D4GG, AC211D4EE, AC212D4EE, AC210D4EG, AC212D4GG, AC210D4GL, AC210D4GE, AC210D4GN, AC210D4GG
Type: DIGITAL CAR AUDIO SYSTEM

satisfies all the technical regulations applicable to the product within the scope of Council Directives 2006/95/EC, 2004/108/EC and 99/5/EC:

Radio: EN 300 328 V.1.8.1(2012-06)
EMC: EN 55013 : 2013
EN 55020 : 2007 / A11 : 2011
ETSI EN 301 489-1 V 1.9.2
ETSI EN 301 489-17 V 2.2.1
Safety: EN 60065:2002+A1:2006+A11:2008+A2:2010+A12:2011

All essential radio test suites have been carried out.

Testing laboratory: DT&C Co., Ltd.

42, Yurim-ro, 154beon-gil, Cheoin-gu, Yongin-si, Gyeonggi-do, Korea, 449-935
Tel. +82 31 321 2664 / Fax. +82 31 321 1664

Authorized representative or manufacturer:

HYUNDAI MOBIS Co., Ltd.
203, Teheran-ro, Gangnam-gu, Seoul, 135-977, Korea
Tel. 82-31-260-0098 / Fax. 82-31-899-1788

This declaration is issued under the sole responsibility of the manufacturer and, if applicable, his authorized Representative, and is marked in accordance with the CE marking directive 93/68/EEC.

Point of contact :

HYUNDAI MOBIS Co., Ltd. Tel. 82-31-260-0098 / Fax. 82-31-899-1788

Seoul, Korea Jun. 12, 2015

CE

최능훈

/ S. H. Choe
/ Director

NCC for Taiwan

根據交通部低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法 規定：	
第十二條	經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。
第十四條	低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。 前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。 低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

MOC for Israel

מספר אישור אלחוטי של משרד התקשורת הוא 51-48703
אסור להחליף את האנטנה המקורית של המכשיר,
ולא לעשות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר.

מספר אישור אלחוטי של משרד התקשורת הוא 51-48704
אסור להחליף את האנטנה המקורית של המכשיר,
ולא לעשות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר.

ANATEL for Brazil

ANATEL Homologation

Hyundai MOBIS Co., Ltd.
AC110D4GN

"Este produto está homologado pela ANATEL, de acordo com os procedimentos regulamentados pela resolução nº . 242/2000 e atende aos requisitos técnicos e aplicados"

"Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário."

Para maiores informações, consulte o site da ANATEL
www.anatel.gov.br

Modelo : **AC110D4GN**

ANATEL
Agência Nacional de Telecomunicações

2218-15-4902

(01)**07898579800465**

ANATEL Homologation

Hyundai MOBIS Co., Ltd.
AC210D4GN

"Este produto está homologado pela ANATEL, de acordo com os procedimentos regulamentados pela resolução nº . 242/2000 e atende aos requisitos técnicos e aplicados"

"Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário."

Para maiores informações, consulte o site da ANATEL
www.anatel.gov.br

Modelo : **AC210D4GN**



Driving your vehicle

Before driving 6-5
- Before entering vehicle 6-5
- Necessary inspections 6-5
- Before starting 6-5

Key positions 6-7
- Illuminated ignition switch 6-7
- Ignition switch position 6-7
- Starting the engine 6-9
- Stopping the petrol engine/ diesel engine 6-11

Engine start/stop button 6-12
- Illuminated engine start/stop button 6-12
- Engine start/stop button position 6-12
- Starting the engine 6-15
- Stopping the petrol engine/ diesel engine 6-18

Manual Transaxle 6-19
- Manual transaxle operation 6-19
- Good driving practices 6-21

Automatic transaxle 6-23
- Automatic transaxle operation 6-23
- Good driving practices 6-30

Dual Clutch Transmission (DCT) 6-32
- Dual clutch transmission operation 6-32
- Good driving practices 6-41

Brake system 6-43
- Power brakes 6-43
- Parking brake 6-45
- Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) 6-47
- AUTO HOLD 6-54
- Warning messages 6-57
- Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 6-58
- Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 6-61
- Vehicle Stability Management (VSM) 6-65
- Hill-start Assist Control (HAC) 6-66
- Emergency Stop Signal (ESS) 6-67
- Good braking practices 6-68

Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) 6-70
- System setting and activation 6-70
- AEB warning message and system control 6-73
- Brake operation 6-74
- Sensor to detect the distance from the vehicle in front (front radar) 6-75
- System malfunction 6-76
- Limitation of the system 6-77
- Recognizing pedestrians 6-80

Cruise control system 6-81
- Cruise control switch 6-82
- To set cruise control speed: 6-82
- To increase cruise control set speed: 6-84
- To decrease the cruising speed: 6-84
- To temporarily accelerate with the cruise control on: . . 6-85

• To cancel cruise control, do one of the following: . . 6-85
• To resume cruising speed at more than approximately 30 km/h (20 mph). 6-86
• To turn cruise control off, do one of the following: . 6-86
Speed limit control system. 6-87
• To set speed limit :. 6-87
• To turn off the speed limit control, do one of the following:. 6-89
Speed Limit Information Function (SLIF) 6-90
• SLIF activation / deactivation 6-91
• Operation 6-91
• Display 6-92
• Driver's attention. 6-94
Advanced smart cruise control system. 6-96
• Speed setting 6-97
• Vehicle to vehicle distance setting 6-102
• To adjust the sensitivity of advanced smart cruise control. 6-106
• To convert to cruise control mode: 6-107
• Limitations of the system 6-107
ISG (Idle Stop and Go) system 6-113
• Auto stop 6-113
• Auto start 6-115
• Condition of ISG system operation 6-116
• ISG system deactivation 6-116
• ISG system malfunction 6-117
Drive mode integrated control system 6-118
• Drive mode. 6-118
• ECS (Electronic Controlled Suspension) malfunction warning message 6-120
Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) 6-121
• Warning indicator 6-123
• The LDWS does not operate when:. 6-124
• The LDWS may not warn you even if the vehicle leaves the lane, or may warn you even if the vehicle does not leave the lane when: 6-124
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) 6-125
• LKAS operation. 6-126
• LKAS malfunction 6-131
• LKAS function change 6-132
Blind Spot Detection system (BSD) 6-133
• BSD (Blind Spot Detection) / LCA (Lane Change Assist). 6-133
• RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert). 6-137
• Driver's Attention 6-140
Economical operation 6-141
Special driving conditions 6-143
• Hazardous driving conditions 6-143
• Rocking the vehicle 6-143
• Smooth cornering 6-144

- Driving at night 6-145
- Driving in the rain 6-145
- Driving in flooded areas 6-146
- Driving off-road 6-146
- Highway driving 6-146

Winter driving 6-148
- Snowy or Icy conditions 6-148
- Use high quality ethylene glycol coolant 6-151
- Check battery and cables 6-151
- Change to "winter weight" oil if necessary 6-151
- Check spark plugs and ignition system. 6-151
- To keep locks from freezing 6-151
- Use approved window washer anti-freeze in system 6-151
- Don't let your parking brake freeze 6-152
- Don't let ice and snow accumulate underneath ... 6-152
- Carry emergency equipment 6-152

Trailer Towing 6-153
- Hitches 6-155
- Safety chains 6-155
- Trailer brakes 6-156
- Driving with a trailer 6-156
- Maintenance when trailer towing 6-160
- If you do decide to pull a trailer 6-161

Vehicle weight 6-165
- Base kerb weight 6-165
- Vehicle kerb weight 6-165
- Cargo weight 6-165
- GAW (Gross Axle Weight) 6-165
- GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating) 6-165
- GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight) 6-165
- GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating) 6-165
- Overloading 6-165

⚠ WARNING - ENGINE EXHAUST CAN BE DANGEROUS!

Engine exhaust fumes can be extremely dangerous. If, at any time, you smell exhaust fumes inside the vehicle, open the windows immediately.

- **Do not inhale exhaust fumes.**

  Exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide, a colorless, odourless gas that can cause unconsciousness and death by asphyxiation.

- **Be sure the exhaust system does not leak.**

  The exhaust system should be checked whenever the vehicle is raised to change the oil or for any other purpose. If you hear a change in the sound of the exhaust or if you drive over something that strikes the underneath side of the vehicle, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

- **Do not run the engine in an enclosed area.**

  Letting the engine idle in your garage, even with the garage door open, is a hazardous practice. Never run the engine in your garage any longer than it takes to start the engine and back the vehicle out.

- **Avoid idling the engine for prolonged periods with people inside the vehicle.**

  If it is necessary to idle the engine for a prolonged period with people inside the vehicle, be sure to do so only in an open area with the air intake set at "Fresh" and fan operating at one of the higher speeds so fresh air is drawn into the interior.

If you must drive with the tailgate/trunk open because you are carrying objects that make this necessary:

1. Close all windows.
2. Open side vents.
3. Set the air intake control at "Fresh", the air flow control at "Floor" or "Face" and the fan at one of the higher speeds.

To assure proper operation of the ventilation system, be sure the ventilation air intakes located just in front of the windscreen are kept clear of snow, ice, leaves or other obstructions.

BEFORE DRIVING

Before entering vehicle

- Be sure that all windows, outside mirror(s), and outside lights are clean.
- Check the condition of the tyres.
- Check under the vehicle for any sign of leaks.
- Be sure there are no obstacles behind you if you intend to back up.

Necessary inspections

Fluid levels, such as engine oil, engine coolant, brake fluid, and washer fluid should be checked on a regular basis, with the exact interval depending on the fluid. Further details are provided in chapter 8, “Maintenance”.

⚠ WARNING

Driving whilst distracted can result in a loss of vehicle control, that may lead to an accident, severe personal injury, and death. The driver’s primary responsibility is in the safe and legal operation of a vehicle, and use of any handheld devices, other equipment, or vehicle systems which take the driver’s eyes, attention and focus away from the safe operation of a vehicle or which are not permissible by law should never be used during operation of the vehicle.

Before starting

- Close and lock all doors.
- Position the seat so that all controls are easily reached.
- Adjust the inside and outside rearview mirrors.
- Be sure that all lights work.
- Check all gauges.
- Check the operation of warning lights when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.
- Release the parking brake and make sure the brake warning light goes out.

For safe operation, be sure you are familiar with your vehicle and its equipment.

⚠ WARNING

All passengers must be properly belted whenever the vehicle is moving. Refer to "Seat belts" in chapter 3 for more information on their proper use.

⚠ WARNING

Always check the surrounding areas near your vehicle for people, especially children, before putting a vehicle into "D (Drive)" or "R (Reverse)".

⚠ WARNING - Driving under the influence of alcohol or drugs

Drinking and driving is dangerous. Drunk driving is the number one contributor to the highway death toll each year. Even a small amount of alcohol will affect your reflexes, perceptions and judgement. Driving whilst under the influence of drugs is as dangerous or more dangerous than driving drunk.

You are much more likely to have a serious accident if you drink or take drugs and drive.

If you are drinking or taking drugs, don't drive. Do not ride with a driver who has been drinking or taking drugs. Choose a designated driver or call a cab.

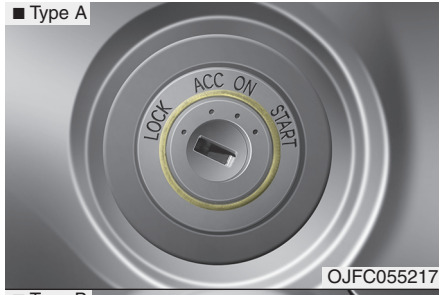
⚠ WARNING

- **When you intend to park or stop the vehicle with the engine on, be careful not to depress the accelerator pedal for a long period of time. It may overheat the engine or exhaust system and cause fire.**
- **When you make a sudden stop or turn the steering wheel rapidly, loose objects may drop on the floor and it could interfere with the operation of the foot pedals, possibly causing an accident. Keep all things in the vehicle safely stored.**
- **If you do not focus on driving, it may cause an accident. Be careful when operating what may disturb driving such as audio or heater. It is the responsibility of the driver to always drive safely.**

KEY POSITIONS

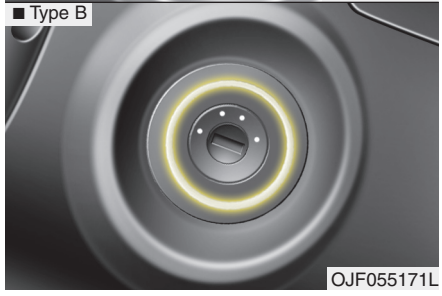
Illuminated ignition switch

■ Type A



OJFC055217

■ Type B



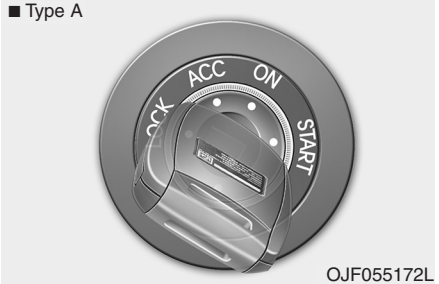
OJF055171L

Whenever a front door is opened, the ignition switch will be illuminated for your convenience, provided the ignition switch is not in the ON position. The light will go off immediately when the ignition switch is turned on or go off after about 30 seconds when the door is closed.

Ignition switch position

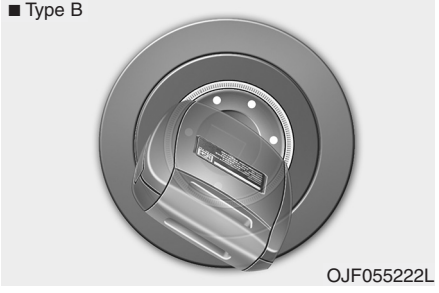
LOCK

■ Type A



OJF055172L

■ Type B



OJF055222L

The steering wheel locks to protect against theft. The ignition key can be removed only in the LOCK position.

ACC (Accessory)

The steering wheel is unlocked and electrical accessories are operative.

✻ NOTICE

If difficulty is experienced turning the ignition switch to the ACC position, turn the key whilst turning the steering wheel right and left to release the tension.

ON

The warning lights can be checked before the engine is started. This is the normal running position after the engine is started.

Do not leave the ignition switch ON if the engine is not running to prevent battery discharge.

START

Turn the ignition key to the START position to start the engine. The engine will crank until you release the key; then it returns to the ON position. The brake warning lamp can be checked in this position.

⚠ WARNING - Ignition key

- **Never turn the ignition switch to LOCK or ACC whilst the vehicle is moving. This would result in loss of directional control and braking function, which could cause an accident.**
- **The anti-theft steering column lock (if equipped) is not a substitute for the parking brake. Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is engaged in 1st gear for the manual transaxle or P (Park) for the automatic transaxle, set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement may occur if these precautions are not taken.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Never reach for the ignition switch, or any other controls through the steering wheel whilst the vehicle is in motion. The presence of your hand or arm in this area could cause a loss of vehicle control, an accident and serious bodily injury or death.**
- **Do not place any movable objects around the driver's seat as they may move whilst driving, interfere with the driver and lead to an accident.**

Starting the engine

⚠ WARNING

- **Always wear appropriate shoes when operating your vehicle. Unsuitable shoes (high heels, ski boots,etc.) may interfere with your ability to use the brake and accelerator pedal, and clutch (if equipped).**
- **Do not start the vehicle with the accelerator pedal depressed. The vehicle can move and lead to an accident.**
- **Wait until the engine rpm is normal. The vehicle may suddenly move if the brake pedal is released when the rpm is high.**

✻ NOTICE - Kick down mechanism

Use the kick down mechanism for maximum acceleration. Depress the accelerator pedal beyond the pressure point. The automatic transmission will shift to a lower gear depending on the engine speed.

Starting the petrol engine

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. **Manual Transaxle** - Depress the clutch pedal fully and shift the transaxle into Neutral. Keep the clutch pedal and brake pedal depressed whilst turning the ignition switch to the start position.

   Automatic Transaxle - Place the transaxle shift lever in P (Park). Depress the brake pedal fully.

   You can also start the engine when the shift lever is in the N (Neutral) position.
3. Turn the ignition switch to START and hold it there until the engine starts (a maximum of 10 seconds), then release the key.

   It should be started **without depressing the accelerator pedal.**
4. Do not wait for the engine to warm up whilst the vehicle remains stationary.

   Start driving at moderate engine speeds. (Steep accelerating and decelerating should be avoided.)

⚠ CAUTION

If the engine stalls whilst you are in motion, do not attempt to move the shift lever to the P (Park) position. If traffic and road conditions permit, you may put the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position whilst the vehicle is still moving and turn the ignition switch to the START position in an attempt to restart the engine.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not engage the starter for more than 10 seconds. If the engine stalls or fails to start, wait 5 to 10 seconds before re-engaging the starter. Improper use of the starter may damage it.***
- ***Do not turn the ignition switch to the START position with the engine running. It may damage the starter.***

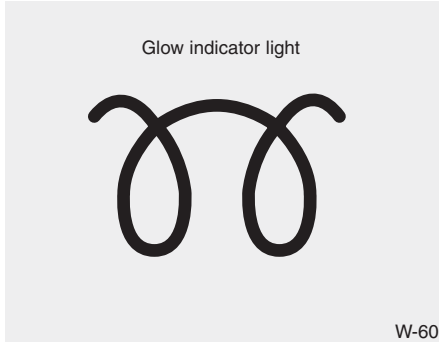
Starting the diesel engine

To start the diesel engine when the engine is cold, it has to be pre-heated before starting the engine and then have to be warmed up before starting to drive.

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. **Manual Transaxle** - Depress the clutch pedal fully and shift the transaxle into Neutral. Keep the clutch pedal and brake pedal depressed whilst turning the ignition switch to the start position.

   Automatic Transaxle / Dual clutch transmission - Place the transaxle shift lever in P(park). Depress the brake pedal fully.

   You can also start the engine when the shift lever is in the N(neutral) position.



W-60

3. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position to pre-heat the engine. Then the glow indicator light will illuminate.
4. If the glow indicator light goes out, turn the ignition switch to the START position and hold it there until the engine starts (a maximum of 10 seconds), then release the key.

✻ NOTICE

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds after the preheating is completed, turn the ignition key once more to the LOCK position for 10 seconds, and then to the ON position, in order to preheat again.

Starting and stopping the engine for turbocharger intercooler

1. Do not race or accelerate the engine immediately after starting.

   If the engine is cold, idle for several seconds before sufficient lubrication is ensured in the turbocharger unit.
2. After high speed or extended driving, requiring a heavy engine load, run the engine on idle condition about 1 minute before turning it off.

   This idle time will allow the turbocharger to cool prior to shutting the engine off.

⚠ CAUTION

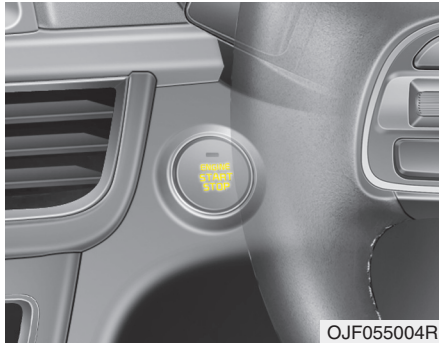
Do not turn off the engine immediately after it has been subjected to a heavy load. Doing so may cause severe damage to the engine or turbo charger unit.

Stopping the petrol engine/ diesel engine (Manual Transaxle)

1. Make sure the vehicle is completely stopped and keep the clutch pedal and brake pedal depressed.
2. Shift the transaxle into Neutral whilst depressing the clutch pedal and brake pedal.
3. Engage the parking brake whilst depressing the brake pedal.
4. Turn the ignition key to the LOCK position and remove it.

ENGINE START/STOP BUTTON (IF EQUIPPED)

Illuminated engine start/stop button



OJF055004R

Whenever the front door is opened, the engine start/stop button will illuminate for your convenience. The light will go off after about 30 seconds when the door is closed. It will also go off immediately when the engine start/stop button is ON position.

Engine start/stop button position

OFF



Not illuminated

With manual transaxle

To turn off the engine (START/RUN position) or vehicle power (ON position), stop the vehicle then press the engine start/stop button.

With automatic transaxle / dual clutch transmission

To turn off the engine (START/RUN position) or vehicle power (ON position), press the engine start/stop button with the shift lever in the P (Park) position. When you press the engine start/stop button without the shift lever in the P (Park) position, the engine start/stop button will not change to the OFF position but to the ACC position.

Vehicles equipped with anti-theft steering column lock

The steering wheel locks when the engine start/stop button is in the OFF position to protect you against theft.

It locks when the door is opened.

If the steering wheel is not locked properly when you open the driver's door, the warning chime will sound. Try locking the steering wheel again. If the problem is not solved, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

In addition, if the engine start/stop button is in the OFF position after the driver's door is opened, the steering wheel will not lock and the warning chime will sound. In such a situation, close the door. Then the steering wheel will lock and the warning chime will stop.

✻ NOTICE

If the steering wheel doesn't unlock properly, the engine start/stop button will not work. Press the engine start/stop button whilst turning the steering wheel right and left to release the tension.

⚠ CAUTION

You are able to turn off the engine (START/RUN) or vehicle power (ON), only when the vehicle is not in motion. In an emergency situation whilst the vehicle is in motion, you are able to turn the engine off and to the ACC position by pressing the engine start/stop button for more than 2 seconds or 3 times successively within 3 seconds. If the vehicle is still moving, you can restart the engine without depressing the brake pedal by pressing the engine start/stop button with the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position.

ACC(Accessory)



Amber

With manual transaxle

Press the engine start/stop button when the button is in the OFF position without depressing the clutch pedal.

With automatic transaxle / dual clutch transmission

Press the engine start/stop button whilst it is in the OFF position without depressing the brake pedal.

The steering wheel unlocks (if equipped with anti-theft steering column lock) and electrical accessories are operational.

If the engine start/stop button is in the ACC position for more than 1 hour, the button is turned off automatically to prevent battery discharge.

ON



Redish orange

With manual transaxle

Press the engine start/stop button when the button is in the ACC position without depressing the clutch pedal.

With automatic transaxle / dual clutch transmission

Press the engine start/stop button whilst it is in the ACC position without depressing the brake pedal.

The warning lights can be checked before the engine is started. Do not leave the engine start/stop button in the ON position for a long time. The battery may discharge, because the engine is not running.

START/RUN



Not illuminated

With manual transaxle

To start the engine, depress the clutch pedal and brake pedal, then press the engine start/stop button with the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position.

With automatic transaxle / dual clutch transmission

To start the engine, depress the brake pedal and press the engine start/stop button with the shift lever in the P (Park) or the N (Neutral) position. For your safety, start the engine with the shift lever in the P (Park) position.

✻ NOTICE

If you press the engine start/stop button without depressing the clutch pedal for manual transaxle vehicles or without depressing the brake pedal for automatic transaxle / dual clutch transmission vehicles, the engine will not start and the engine start/stop button changes as follow: OFF ➔ACC ➔ ON ➔ OFF or ACC

✻ NOTICE

If you leave the engine start/stop button in the ACC or ON position for a long time, the battery will discharge.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never press the engine start/stop button whilst the vehicle is in motion. This would result in loss of directional control and braking function, which could cause an accident.**
- **The anti-theft steering column lock (if equipped) is not a substitute for the parking brake. Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is engaged in P (Park), set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement may occur if these precautions are not taken.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Never reach for the engine start/ stop button or any other controls through the steering wheel whilst the vehicle is in motion. The presence of your hand or arm in the area could cause loss of vehicle control, an accident and serious bodily injury or death.**
- **Do not place any movable objects around the driver's seat as they may move whilst driving, interfere with the driver and lead to an accident.**

Starting the engine

⚠ WARNING

- **Always wear appropriate shoes when operating your vehicle. Unsuitable shoes (high heels, ski boots,etc.) may interfere with your ability to use the brake, accelerator and clutch pedal.**
- **Do not start the vehicle with the accelerator pedal depressed. The vehicle can move and lead to an accident.**
- **Wait until the engine rpm is normal. The vehicle may suddenly move if the brake pedal is released when the rpm is high.**

✻ NOTICE - Kick down mechanism

Use the kick down mechanism for maximum acceleration. Depress the accelerator pedal beyond the pressure point. The automatic transmission will shift to a lower gear depending on the engine speed.

Starting the petrol engine

1. Carry the smart key or leave it inside the vehicle.
2. Make sure the parking brake is firmly applied.
3. **Manual Transaxle** - Depress the clutch pedal fully and shift the transaxle into Neutral. Keep the clutch pedal and brake pedal depressed whilst starting the engine.

   Automatic transaxle - Place the transaxle shift lever in P (Park). Depress the brake pedal fully.

   You can also start the engine when the shift lever is in the N (Neutral) position.
4. Press the engine start/stop button.

   It should be started without depressing the accelerator.
5. Do not wait for the engine to warm up whilst the vehicle remains stationary.

   Start driving at moderate engine speeds. (Steep accelerating and decelerating should be avoided.)

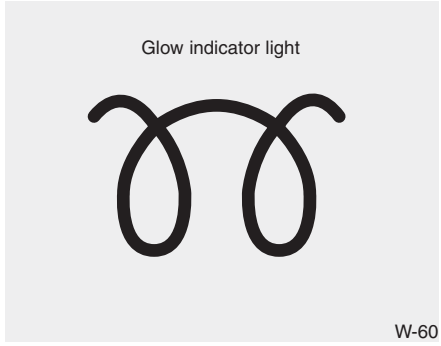
Starting the diesel engine

To start the diesel engine when the engine is cold, it has to be pre-heated before starting the engine and then have to be warmed up before starting to drive.

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. **Manual Transaxle** - Depress the clutch pedal fully and shift the transaxle into Neutral. Keep the clutch pedal and brake pedal depressed whilst pressing the engine start/stop button to the START position.

   Automatic Transaxle / Dual clutch transmission - Place the transaxle shift lever in P (Park). Depress the brake pedal fully.

   You can also start the engine when the shift lever is in the N (Neutral) position.



W-60

3. Press the engine start/stop button whilst depressing the brake pedal.
4. Continue depressing the brake pedal until the illuminated glow indicator goes off. (approximately 5 seconds)
5. The engine starts running when the glow indicator goes off.

✻ NOTICE

If the engine start/stop button is pressed once more whilst the engine is pre-heating, the engine may start.

Starting and stopping the engine for turbocharger intercooler

1. Do not race or accelerate the engine immediately after starting.

   If the engine is cold, idle for several seconds before sufficient lubrication is ensured in the turbocharger unit.
2. After high speed or extended driving, requiring a heavy engine load, idle the engine about 1 minute before turning it off.

   This idle time will allow the turbocharger to cool prior to shutting the engine off.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not turn the engine off immediately after it has been subjected to a heavy load. Doing so may cause severe damage to the engine or turbocharger unit.

- Even if the smart key is in the vehicle, if it is far away from you, the engine may not start.
- When the engine start/stop button is in the ACC position or above, if any door is opened, the system checks for the smart key. If the smart key is not in the vehicle, a message “Key is not in the vehicle” will appear on the LCD display. And if all doors are closed, the chime will sound for 5 seconds. The indicator or warning will turn off whilst the vehicle is moving. Always have the smart key with you.

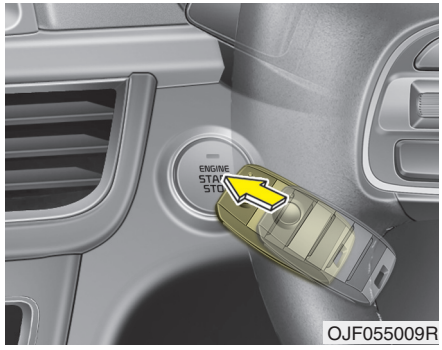
⚠ WARNING

The engine will start, only when the smart key is in the vehicle.

Never allow children or any person who is unfamiliar with the vehicle touch the engine start/stop button or related parts.

⚠ CAUTION

If the engine stalls whilst the vehicle is in motion, do not attempt to move the shift lever to the P (Park) position. If the traffic and road conditions permit, you may put the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position whilst the vehicle is still moving and press the engine start/stop button in an attempt to restart the engine.



✻ NOTICE

- **If the battery is weak or the smart key does not work correctly, you can start the engine by pressing the engine start/stop button with the smart key.**
  The side with the lock button should be contacted directly.
  When you press the engine start/stop button directly with the smart key, the smart key should contact the button at a right angle.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **When the stop lamp fuse is blown, you cannot start the engine normally.**
  Replace the fuse with a new one. If it is not possible, you can start the engine by pressing the engine start/stop button for 10 seconds whilst it is in the ACC position. The engine can start without depressing the brake pedal. But for your safety always depress the brake and clutch pedal before starting the engine.

⚠ CAUTION

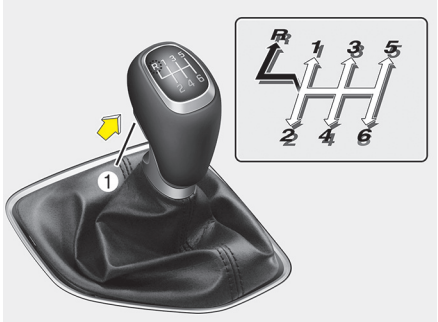
Do not press the engine start/stop button for more than 10 seconds except when the stop lamp fuse is blown.

Stopping the petrol engine/ diesel engine (Manual Transaxle)

1. Make sure the vehicle is completely stopped and keep the clutch pedal and brake pedal depressed.
2. Shift the transaxle into Neutral whilst depressing the clutch pedal and brake pedal.
3. Engage the parking brake whilst depressing the brake pedal.
4. Turn the ignition key to the LOCK position and remove it.

MANUAL TRANSAXLE (IF EQUIPPED)

Manual transaxle operation



⇨ The shift lever can be moved without pushing the button (1).

➡ The button (1) must be pushed whilst moving the shift lever.

OJF055209

- The manual transaxle has 6 forward gears.

  This shift pattern is imprinted on the shift knob. The transaxle is fully synchronized in all forward gears so shifting to either a higher or a lower gear is easily accomplished.

- Depress the clutch pedal down fully whilst shifting, then release it slowly.

  If your vehicle is equipped with an ignition lock switch, the engine will not start when starting the engine without depressing the clutch pedal.

- If your vehicle is equipped with a clutch lock system, the engine will not start when starting the engine without depressing the clutch pedal.

- The shift lever must return to the neutral position before shifting into R (Reverse). The button located immediately below the shift knob must be pushed upward whilst moving the shift lever to the R (Reverse) position.

- *Make sure the vehicle is completely stopped before shifting into R (Reverse).*

  Never operate the engine with the tachometer (rpm) in the red zone.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***When downshifting from 5 (Fifth) gear to 4 (Fourth) gear, caution should be taken not to inadvertently move the shift lever sideways in such a manner that second gear is engaged. Such a drastic downshift may cause the engine speed to increase to the point that the tachometer will enter the red-zone. Such overrevving of the engine may possibly cause engine and transaxle damage.***
- ***Do not downshift more than 2 gears or downshift the gear when the engine is running at high speed (5,000 RPM or higher). Such a downshifting may damage the engine, clutch and the transaxle.***
- ***When shifting between 5th and 6th gear, you should always push the gear level all the way to the right. You could otherwise shift unintentionally into 3rd or 4th gear and damage the transaxle.***

- During cold weather, shifting may be difficult until the transaxle lubricant has warmed up. This is normal and not harmful to the transaxle.
- If you've come to a complete stop and it's hard to shift into 1 (First) or R (Reverse), put the shift lever in neutral position and release the clutch. Press the clutch pedal back down, and then shift into 1 (First) or R (Reverse) gear position.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***To avoid premature clutch wear and damage, do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal. Also, don't use the clutch to hold the vehicle stopped on an uphill grade, whilst waiting for a traffic light, etc.***
- ***Do not use the shift lever as a handrest during driving, as this can result in premature wear of the transaxle shift forks.***
- ***When operating the clutch pedal, press the clutch pedal down fully.***

  If you don't press the clutch pedal fully, the clutch may be damaged or noise may occur.
- ***To prevent possible damage to the clutch system, do not start with the 2nd (second) gear engaged except when you start on a slippery road.***

⚠ WARNING

- **Before leaving the driver's seat, always set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Then make sure the transaxle is shifted into 1 (First) gear when the vehicle is parked on a level or uphill grade, and shifted into R (Reverse) on a downhill grade.**

  Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur if these precautions are not followed in the order identified.
- **If your vehicle has a manual transaxle not equipped with a ignition lock switch, it may move and cause a serious accident when starting the engine without depressing the clutch pedal whilst the parking brake is released and the shift lever not in the neutral position.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Do not use the engine brake (shifting from a high gear to lower gear) rapidly on slippery roads.**

  The vehicle may slip causing an accident.

Using the clutch

The clutch pedal should be depressed all the way to the floor before shifting, then released slowly. The clutch pedal should always be fully released whilst driving. Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal whilst driving. This can cause unnecessary wear. Do not partially engage the clutch to hold the vehicle on an incline. This causes unnecessary wear. Use the foot brake or parking brake to hold the vehicle on an incline. Do not operate the clutch pedal rapidly and repeatedly.

Downshifting

When you must slow down in heavy traffic or whilst driving up steep hills, downshift before the engine starts to labour. Downshifting reduces the chance of stalling and gives better acceleration when you again need to increase your speed. When the vehicle is travelling down steep hills, downshifting helps maintain safe speed and prolongs brake life.

Good driving practices

- Never take the vehicle out of gear and coast down a hill. This is extremely hazardous. Always leave the vehicle in gear.
- Don't "ride" the brakes. This can cause them to overheat and malfunction. Instead, when you are driving down a long hill, slow down and shift to a lower gear. When you do this, engine braking will help slow down the vehicle.
- Slow down before shifting to a lower gear. This will help avoid over-revving the engine, which can cause damage.
- Slow down when you encounter cross winds. This gives you much better control of your vehicle.
- Be sure the vehicle is completely stopped before you attempt to shift into R (Reverse). The transaxle can be damaged if you do not. To shift into R (Reverse), depress the clutch, move the shift lever to neutral, wait three seconds, then shift to the R (Reverse) position.

- Exercise extreme caution when driving on a slippery surface. Be especially careful when braking, accelerating or shifting gears. On a slippery surface, an abrupt change in vehicle speed can cause the drive wheels to lose traction and the vehicle to go out of control.

⚠ WARNING

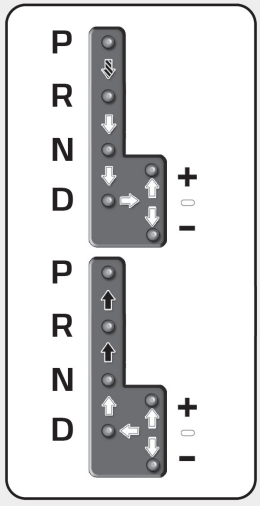
- **Always buckle-up! In a collision, an unbelted occupant is significantly more likely to be seriously injured or killed than a properly belted occupant.**
- **Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.**
- **Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.**
- **The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.**
- **Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver oversteers to reenter the roadway.**

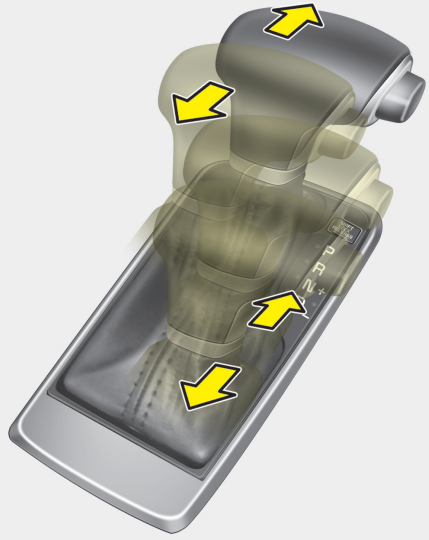
(Continued)

(Continued)

- **In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.**
- **Never exceed posted speed limits.**

AUTOMATIC TRANSAXLE (IF EQUIPPED)





Depress the brake pedal and the lock release button when shifting.

Press the lock release button when shifting.

The shift lever can be shifted freely.

OJF055012R

Automatic transaxle operation

The automatic transaxle has 6 forward speeds and one reverse speed. The individual speeds are selected automatically, depending on the position of the shift lever.

✻ NOTICE

The first few shifts on a new vehicle, if the battery has been disconnected, may be somewhat abrupt. This is a normal condition, and the shifting sequence will adjust after shifts are cycled a few times by the TCM (Transaxle Control Module) or PCM (Powertrain Control Module).

For smooth operation, depress the brake pedal when shifting from N (Neutral) to a forward or reverse gear.

⚠ WARNING - Automatic transaxle

- **Always check the surrounding areas near your vehicle for people, especially children, before shifting a vehicle into D (Drive) or R (Reverse).**
- **Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is in the P (Park) position; then set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur if these precautions are not followed in the order identified.**
- **Do not use the engine brake (shifting from a high gear to lower gear) rapidly on slippery roads.**

  The vehicle may slip causing an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***To avoid damage to your transaxle, do not accelerate the engine in R (Reverse) or any forward gear position with the brakes on.***
- ***When stopped on an uphill grades, do not hold the vehicle stationary with engine power. Use the brake pedal or the parking brake.***
- ***Do not shift from N (Neutral) or P (Park) into D (Drive), or R (Reverse) when the engine is above idle speed.***

Transaxle ranges

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster displays the shift lever position when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

P (Park)

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into P (Park). This position locks the transaxle and prevents the front wheels from rotating.

⚠ WARNING

- **Shifting into P (Park) whilst the vehicle is in motion will cause the drive wheels to lock which will cause you to lose control of the vehicle.**
- **Do not use the P (Park) position in place of the parking brake. Always make sure the shift lever is latched in the P (Park) position and set the parking brake fully.**
- **Never leave a child unattended in a vehicle.**

⚠ CAUTION

The transaxle may be damaged if you shift into P (Park) whilst the vehicle is in motion.

R (Reverse)

Use this position to drive the vehicle backward.

⚠ CAUTION

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into or out of R (Reverse); you may damage the transaxle if you shift into R (Reverse) whilst the vehicle is in motion, except as explained in "Rocking the vehicle", in this manual.

N (Neutral)

The wheels and transaxle are not engaged. The vehicle will roll freely even on the slightest incline unless the parking brake or service brakes are applied.

⚠ WARNING

Do not drive with the shift lever in N (Neutral).

The engine brake will not work and lead to an accident.

D (Drive)

This is the normal forward driving position. The transaxle will automatically shift through a 6-gear sequence, providing the best fuel economy and power.

For extra power when passing another vehicle or climbing grades, depress the accelerator pedal fully (more than 82%) until the kick down mechanism (if equipped) works with a clicking noise, at which time the transaxle will automatically downshift to the next lower gear.

✻ NOTICE

- **Always come to a complete stop before shifting into D (Drive).**
- **A clicking noise heard from the kick down mechanism by depressing the accelerator pedal fully is a normal condition.**

- Parking in N (Neutral) gear

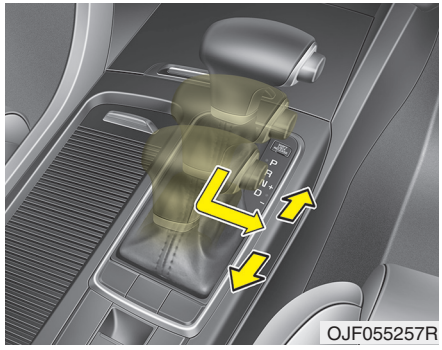
Follow below steps when parking and you want the vehicle to move when pushed.

1. After parking your vehicle, step on the brake pedal and move the shift lever to [P] with the ignition button in [ON] or whilst the engine is running.
2. If the parking brake is applied unlock the parking brake.
   - For EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) equipped vehicles, push the brake pedal with the ignition button in [ON] or whilst the engine is running to disengage the parking brake. If [AUTO HOLD] function is used whilst driving (If [AUTO HOLD] indicator is on in the cluster), press [AUTO HOLD] switch and [AUTO HOLD] function should be turn off.
3. Whilst pressing the brake pedal, turn the ignition button [OFF].
   - For smart key equipped vehicles, the ignition switch can be moved to [OFF] only when the shift lever is in [P].
4. Change the gear shift lever to [N] (Neutral) whilst pressing the brake pedal and pushing [SHIFT LOCK RELEASE] button or inserting, pressing down a tool (e.g. flathead screw-driver) into the [SHIFT LOCK RELEASE] access hole at the same time. Then, the vehicle will move when external force is applied.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***With the exception of parking in neutral gear, always park the vehicle in [P] (Park) for safety and engage the parking brake.***
- ***Before parking in [N] (Neutral) gear, first make sure the parking ground is level and flat. Do not park in [N] gear on any slopes or gradients.***

  If parked and left in [N], the vehicle may move and cause serious damage and injury.
- ***After the ignition switch has been turned off, the electronic parking brake cannot be disengaged.***
- ***For EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) equipped vehicles with [AUTO HOLD] function used whilst driving, if the ignition button has been turned [OFF], the electronic parking brake will be engaged automatically. Therefore, [AUTO HOLD] function should be turned off before the ignition button is turned off.***



Manual mode

Whether the vehicle is stationary or in motion, manual mode is selected by pushing the shift lever from the D (Drive) position into the manual gate. To return to D (Drive) range operation, push the shift lever back into the main gate.

In manual mode, moving the shift lever backwards and forwards will allow you to make gearshifts rapidly.

Up (+) : Push the lever forward once to shift up one gear.

Down (-) : Pull the lever backwards once to shift down one gear.

✻ NOTICE

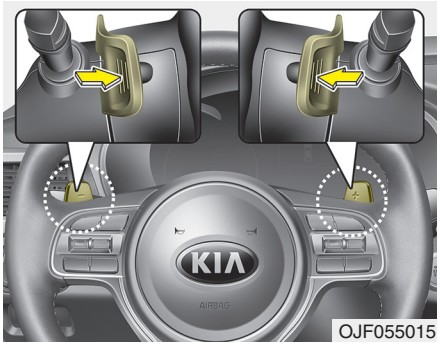
- **In manual mode, the driver must execute upshifts in accordance with road conditions, taking care to keep the engine speed below the red zone.**
- **In manual mode, only the 6 forward gears can be selected. To reverse or park the vehicle, move the shift lever to the R (Reverse) or P (Park) position as required.**
- **In manual mode, downshifts are made automatically when the vehicle slows down. When the vehicle stops, 1st gear is automatically selected.**
- **In manual mode, when the engine rpm approaches the red zone shift points are varied to upshift automatically.**
- **To maintain the required levels of vehicle performance and safety, the system may not execute certain gearshifts when the shift lever is operated.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **When driving on a slippery road, push the shift lever forward into the +(up) position. This causes the transaxle to shift into the 2nd gear which is better for appropriate driving on a slippery road. Push the shift lever to the -(down) side to shift back to the 1st gear.**

Paddle shifter (if equipped)



The paddle shift function is available when the shift lever is in the D position or the manual mode.

With the shift lever in the D position

The paddle shift function will operate when the vehicle speed is more than 10km/h.

Pull the [+] or [-] paddle shifter once to shift up or down one gear and the system changes from automatic mode to manual mode.

When the vehicle speed is lower than 10km/h, if you depress the accelerator pedal for more than 5 seconds or if you shift the shift lever from D (Drive) to manual mode and shift it from manual mode to D (Drive) again, the system changes from manual mode to automatic mode.

With the shift lever in the manual mode

Pull the [+] or [-] paddle shifter once to shift up or down one gear.

✻ NOTICE

If you pull the [+] and [-] paddle shifters at the same time, you cannot shift the gear.

Shift lock system

For your safety, the automatic transaxle has a shift lock system which prevents shifting the transaxle from P (Park) into R (Reverse) unless the brake pedal is depressed.

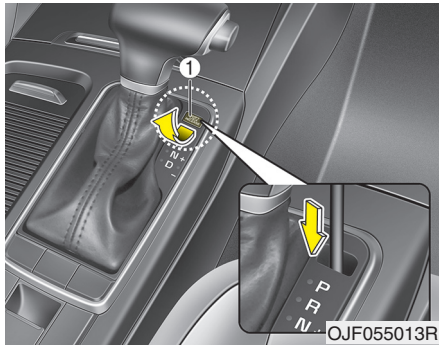
To shift the transaxle from P (Park) into R (Reverse):

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Start the engine or turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
3. Move the shift lever.

If the brake pedal is repeatedly depressed and released with the shift lever in the P (Park) position, a chattering noise & vibration near the shift lever may be heard. This is a normal condition.

⚠ WARNING

Always fully depress the brake pedal before and whilst shifting out of the P (Park) position into another position to avoid inadvertent motion of the vehicle which could injure persons in or around the vehicle.



Shift-lock override

If the shift lever cannot be moved from the P (Park) position into R (Reverse) position with the brake pedal depressed, continue depressing the brake, then do the following:

1. Place the ignition switch in the LOCK/OFF position.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Carefully remove the cap (1) covering the shift-lock release access hole.
4. Insert a tool (e.g. flathead screwdriver) into the access hole and press down on the tool.

5. Move the shift lever.
6. Remove the tool from the shiftlock override access hole then install the cap.
7. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

Ignition key interlock system (if equipped)

The ignition key cannot be removed unless the shift lever is in the P (Park) position.

Good driving practices

- Never move the shift lever from P (Park) or N (Neutral) to any other position with the accelerator pedal depressed.
- Never move the shift lever into P (Park) when the vehicle is in motion.
- Be sure the vehicle is completely stopped before you attempt to shift into R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Never take the vehicle out of gear and coast down a hill. This may be extremely hazardous. Always leave the vehicle in gear when moving.
- Do not "ride" the brakes. This can cause them to overheat and malfunction. Instead, when you are driving down a long hill, slow down and shift to a lower gear. When you do this, engine braking will help slow down the vehicle.
- Slow down before shifting to a lower gear. Otherwise, the lower gear may not be engaged.
- Always use the parking brake. Do not depend on placing the transaxle in P (Park) to keep the vehicle from moving.
- Exercise extreme caution when driving on a slippery surface. Be especially careful when braking, accelerating or shifting gears. On a slippery surface, an abrupt change in vehicle speed can cause the drive wheels to lose traction and the vehicle to go out of control.
- Optimum vehicle performance and economy is obtained by smoothly depressing and releasing the accelerator pedal.

⚠ WARNING

- **Always buckle-up! In a collision, an unbelted occupant is significantly more likely to be seriously injured or killed than a properly belted occupant.**
- **Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.**
- **Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.**
- **The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.**
- **Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver oversteers to reenter the roadway.**
- **In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.**
- **Never exceed posted speed limits.**

⚠ WARNING

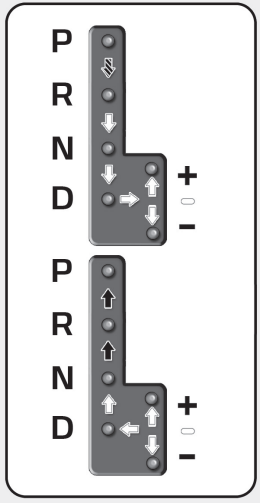
If your vehicle becomes stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., then you may attempt to rock the vehicle free by moving it forward and backward. Do not attempt this procedure if people or objects are anywhere near the vehicle. During the rocking operation the vehicle may suddenly move forward of backward as it becomes unstuck, causing injury or damage to nearby people or objects.

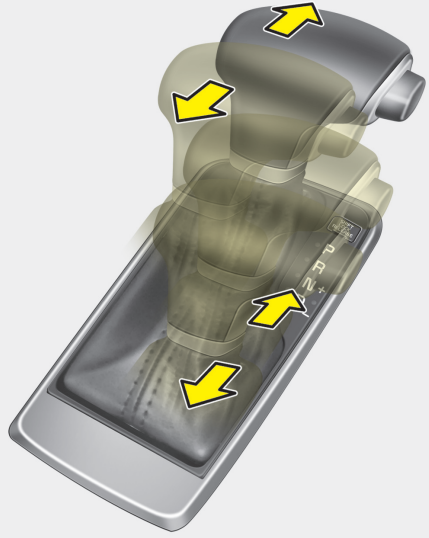
Moving up a steep grade from a standing start

To move up a steep grade from a standing start, depress the brake pedal, shift the shift lever to D (Drive). Select the appropriate gear depending on load weight and steepness of the grade, and release the parking brake. Depress the accelerator gradually whilst releasing the brake pedal.

When accelerating from a stop on a steep hill, the vehicle may have a tendency to roll backwards. Shifting the shift lever into 2 (Second Gear) will help prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards.

DUAL CLUTCH TRANSMISSION (DCT) (IF EQUIPPED)





Depress the brake pedal and the lock release button when shifting.

Press the lock release button when shifting.

The shift lever can be shifted freely.

OJF055012R

Dual clutch transmission operation

The dual clutch transmission has seven forward speeds and one reverse speed.

The individual speeds are selected automatically in the D (Drive) position.

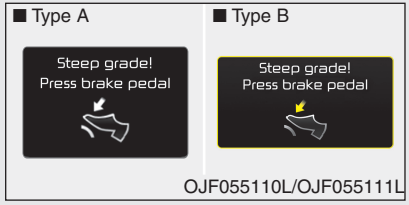
⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death:

- **ALWAYS check the surrounding areas near your vehicle for people, especially children, before shifting a vehicle into D (Drive) or R (Reverse).**
- **Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is in the P (Park) position, then set the parking brake, and place the ignition switch in the LOCK/OFF position. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur if these precautions are not followed.**
- **Do not use engine braking (shifting from a high gear to lower gear) rapidly on slippery roads. The vehicle may slip causing an accident.**

- The Dual Clutch Transmission gives the driving feel of a manual transmission, yet provides the ease of a fully automatic transmission. Unlike a traditional automatic transmission, the gear shifting can be felt (and heard) on the dual clutch transmission
  - Think of it as an automatically shifting manual transmission.
  - Shift into Drive range and get fully automatic shifting, similar to a conventional automatic transmission.
- Dual clutch transmission adopts dry-type dual clutch, which is different from torque converter of automatic transmission, and shows better acceleration performance during driving. But, initial launch might be little bit slower than Automatic Transmission.
- The dry-type clutch transfers torque and provides a direct driving feeling which may feel different from a conventional automatic transmission with a torque converter. This may be more noticeable when starting from a stop or low vehicle speed.
- When rapidly accelerating at low vehicle speed, engine could rev at high rpm depending on vehicle drive condition.
- For smooth launch uphill, press down the accelerator pedal smoothly depending on the current conditions.
- If you release your foot from the accelerator pedal at low vehicle speed, you may feel strong engine brake, which is similar to manual transmission.
- When driving downhill, you may use Sports Mode and press the paddle shifters to downshift to a lower gear in order to control your speed without using the brake pedal excessively.
- When you turn the engine on and off, you may hear clicking sounds as the system goes through a self test. This is a normal sound for the Dual Clutch Transmission.

⚠ CAUTION



OJF055110L/OJF055111L

- *To hold the vehicle on a hill use the foot brake or the parking brake. If the vehicle is held by applying the accelerator pedal on a hill the clutch and transmission will be overheated resulting in damage.*

  At this time, a warning message will appear on the LCD display and you may feel a vibration.

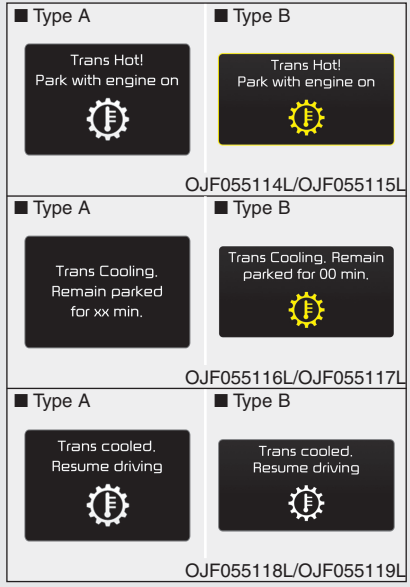
(Continued)

(Continued)

- *If the clutch becomes overheated by excessive use of the clutch to hold on a hill, you may notice a shudder feeling and a blinking display on the instrument cluster. When this occurs, the clutch is disabled until the clutch cools to normal temperatures. If this occurs, pull over to a safe location, shift into P (Park) and apply the foot brake with engine on for a certain time on the LCD warning until it disappears.*
- *If the LCD warning is active, the foot brake must be applied.*
- *Ignoring the warnings can lead to damage to the transmission.*
- *If the display continues to blink, for your safety, we recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.*

(Continued)

(Continued)



OJF055114L/OJF055115L

OJF055116L/OJF055117L

OJF055118L/OJF055119L

- *Under certain conditions such as repeated launch on steep grades, the clutch in the transmission could overheat.*

(Continued)

(Continued)

At this time, a warning message ("Transmission temp. is high! Stop safely") will appear on the LCD display.

When the clutch is overheated, the safe protection mode engages. If the safe protection mode engages, the gear position indicator on the cluster blinks with a chime sound.

At this time, a warning message will appear on the LCD display and driving may not be smooth.

If you ignore this warning, the driving condition may become worse. To return the normal driving condition, stop the vehicle and apply the foot brake for a few minutes before driving off.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- *Gear shifts may be more noticeable than a conventional automatic transmission. This is a normal characteristic of this type of dual clutch transmission.*
- *An overheated Dual clutch transmission may change the gear shifting characteristics, and illuminate the warning message on the LCD display under the conditions that operation of the kickdown mechanism is repetitively used.*
- *Do not use the kickdown mechanism to return to the normal driving condition. Also, temporarily stop the vehicle at a safe location, when the warning message illuminates on the LCD display.*

(Continued)

(Continued)

- *During the first 1,500 km (1,000 miles), you may feel that the vehicle may not be smooth when accelerating at low speed. During this break-in period, the shift quality and performance of your new vehicle is continuously optimized.*
- *Always come to a complete stop before shifting into D (Drive) or R (Reverse).*
- *Do not put the shift lever in N (Neutral) whilst driving.*

The indicator in the instrument cluster displays the shift lever position when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

P (Park)

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into P (Park).

To shift from P (Park), you must depress firmly on the brake pedal and make sure your foot is off the accelerator pedal.

The shift lever must be in P (Park) before turning the engine off.

⚠ WARNING

- **Shifting into P (Park) whilst the vehicle is in motion may cause you to lose control of the vehicle.**
- **After the vehicle has stopped, always make sure the shift lever is in P (Park), apply the parking brake, and turn the engine off.**
- **Do not use the P (Park) position in place of the parking brake.**

R (Reverse)

Use this position to drive the vehicle backward.

⚠ CAUTION

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into or out of R (Reverse); you may damage the transmission if you shift into R (Reverse) whilst the vehicle is in motion.

N (Neutral)

The wheels and transmission are not engaged.

Use N (Neutral) if you need to restart a stalled engine, or if it is necessary to stop with the engine ON. Shift into P (Park) if you need to leave your vehicle for any reason.

Always depress the brake pedal when you are shifting from N (Neutral) to another gear.

⚠ WARNING

Do not shift into gear unless your foot is firmly on the brake pedal. Shifting into gear when the engine is running at high speed can cause the vehicle to move very rapidly. You could lose control of the vehicle and hit people or objects.

⚠ WARNING

Do not drive with the shift lever in N (Neutral).

The engine brake will not work and lead to an accident.

- Parking in N (Neutral) gear

Follow below steps when parking and you want the vehicle to move when pushed.

1. After parking your vehicle, step on the brake pedal and move the shift lever to [P] with the ignition button in [ON] or whilst the engine is running.
2. If the parking brake is applied unlock the parking brake.
   - For EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) equipped vehicles, push the brake pedal with the ignition button in [ON] or whilst the engine is running to disengage the parking brake. If [AUTO HOLD] function is used whilst driving (If [AUTO HOLD] indicator is on in the cluster), press [AUTO HOLD] switch and [AUTO HOLD] function should be turn off.
3. Whilst pressing the brake pedal, turn the ignition button [OFF].
   - For smart key equipped vehicles, the ignition switch can be moved to [OFF] only when the shift lever is in [P].
4. Change the gear shift lever to [N] (Neutral) whilst pressing the brake pedal and pushing [SHIFT LOCK RELEASE] button or inserting, pressing down a tool (e.g. flathead screw-driver) into the [SHIFT LOCK RELEASE] access hole at the same time. Then, the vehicle will move when external force is applied.

⚠ CAUTION

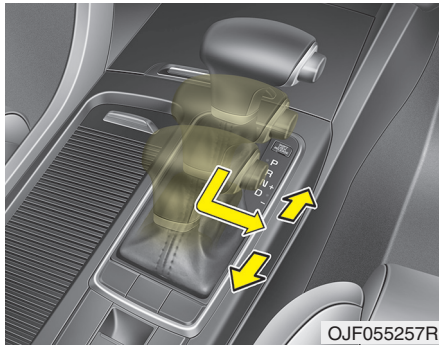
- ***With the exception of parking in neutral gear, always park the vehicle in [P] (Park) for safety and engage the parking brake.***
- ***Before parking in [N] (Neutral) gear, first make sure the parking ground is level and flat. Do not park in [N] gear on any slopes or gradients.***

  If parked and left in [N], the vehicle may move and cause serious damage and injury.
- ***After the ignition switch has been turned off, the electronic parking brake cannot be disengaged.***
- ***For EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) equipped vehicles with [AUTO HOLD] function used whilst driving, if the ignition button has been turned [OFF], the electronic parking brake will be engaged automatically. Therefore, [AUTO HOLD] function should be turned off before the ignition button is turned off.***

D (Drive)

This is the normal driving position. The transmission will automatically shift through a seven-gear sequence, providing the best fuel economy and power.

For extra power when passing another vehicle or driving uphill depress the accelerator pedal further until you feel the transmission downshift to a lower gear.



Manual mode

Whether the vehicle is stationary or in motion, manual mode is selected by pushing the shift lever from the D (Drive) position into the manual gate. To return to D (Drive) range operation, push the shift lever back into the main gate.

In manual mode, moving the shift lever backwards and forwards will allow you to select the desired range of gears for the current driving conditions.

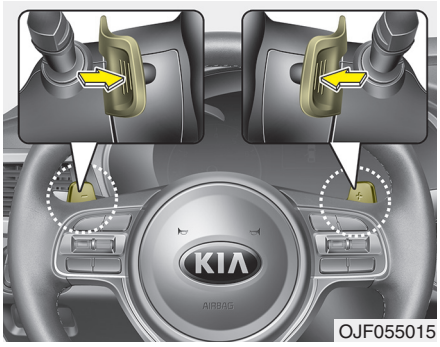
+ (Up) : Push the lever forward once to shift up one gear.

- (Down) : Pull the lever backwards once to shift down one gear.

✻ NOTICE

- **Only the seven forward gears can be selected. To reverse or park the vehicle, move the shift lever to the R (Reverse) or P (Park) position as required.**
- **Downshifts are made automatically when the vehicle slows down. When the vehicle stops, 1st gear is automatically selected.**
- **When the engine rpm approaches the red zone the transmission will upshift automatically.**
- **If the driver presses the lever to + (Up) or - (Down) position, the transmission may not make the requested gear change if the next gear is outside of the allowable engine rpm range. The driver must execute upshifts in accordance with road conditions, taking care to keep the engine rpms below the red zone.**

Paddle shifter (if equipped)



The paddle shift function is available when the shift lever is in the D (Drive) position or the manual mode.

With the shift lever in the D position

The paddle shift function will operate when the vehicle speed is more than 10km/h.

Pull the [+] or [-] paddle shifter once to shift up or down one gear and the system changes from automatic mode to manual mode.

When the vehicle speed is lower than 10km/h, if you depress the accelerator pedal for more than 5 seconds or if you shift the shift lever from D (Drive) to manual mode and shift it from manual mode to D (Drive) again, the system changes from manual mode to automatic mode.

With the shift lever in the manual mode

Pull the [+] or [-] paddle shifter once to shift up or down one gear.

✻ NOTICE

If you pull the [+] and [-] paddle shifters at the same time, you cannot shift the gear.

Shift lock system

For your safety, the Dual clutch transmission has a shift lock system which prevents shifting the transaxle from P (Park) into R (Reverse) unless the brake pedal is depressed.

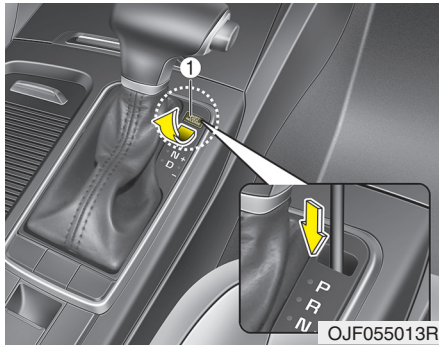
To shift the transaxle from P (Park) into R (Reverse):

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Start the engine or turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
3. Move the shift lever.

If the brake pedal is repeatedly depressed and released with the shift lever in the P (Park) position, a chattering noise & vibration near the shift lever may be heard. This is a normal condition.

⚠ WARNING

Always fully depress the brake pedal before and whilst shifting out of the P (Park) position into another position to avoid inadvertent motion of the vehicle which could injure persons in or around the car.



OJF055013R

Shift-lock override

If the shift lever cannot be moved from the P (Park) position into R (Reverse) position with the brake pedal depressed, continue depressing the brake, then do the following:

1. Place the ignition switch in the LOCK/OFF position.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Carefully remove the cap (1) covering the shift-lock release access hole.
4. Insert a tool (e.g. flathead screwdriver) into the access hole and press down on the tool.

5. Move the shift lever.
6. Remove the tool from the shiftlock override access hole then install the cap.
7. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

Ignition key interlock system (if equipped)

The ignition key cannot be removed unless the shift lever is in the P (Park) position.

Good driving practices

- Never move the shift lever from P (Park) or N (Neutral) to any other position with the accelerator pedal depressed.
- Never move the shift lever into P (Park) when the vehicle is in motion.
- Be sure the car is completely stopped before you attempt to shift into R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Never take the car out of gear and coast down a hill. This may be extremely hazardous. Always leave the car in gear when moving.
- Do not "ride" the brakes. This can cause them to overheat and malfunction. Instead, when you are driving down a long hill, slow down and shift to a lower gear. When you do this, engine braking will help slow the car.
- Slow down before shifting to a lower gear. Otherwise, the lower gear may not be engaged.
- Always use the parking brake. Do not depend on placing the transaxle in P (Park) to keep the car from moving.
- Exercise extreme caution when driving on a slippery surface. Be especially careful when braking, accelerating or shifting gears. On a slippery surface, an abrupt change in vehicle speed can cause the drive wheels to lose traction and the vehicle to go out of control.
- Optimum vehicle performance and economy is obtained by smoothly depressing and releasing the accelerator pedal.

⚠ WARNING

- **Always buckle-up! In a collision, an unbelted occupant is significantly more likely to be seriously injured or killed than a properly belted occupant.**
- **Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.**
- **Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.**
- **The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.**
- **Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver oversteers to reenter the roadway.**
- **In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.**
- **Never exceed posted speed limits.**

⚠ WARNING

If your vehicle becomes stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., then you may attempt to rock the vehicle free by moving it forward and backward. Do not attempt this procedure if people or objects are anywhere near the vehicle. During the rocking operation the vehicle may suddenly move forward of backward as it becomes unstuck, causing injury or damage to nearby people or objects.

Moving up a steep grade from a standing start

To move up a steep grade from a standing start, depress the brake pedal, shift the shift lever to D (Drive). Select the appropriate gear depending on load weight and steepness of the grade, and release the parking brake. Depress the accelerator gradually whilst releasing the brake pedal.

BRAKE SYSTEM

Power brakes

Your vehicle has power-assisted brakes that adjust automatically through normal usage.

In the event that the power-assisted brakes lose power because of a stalled engine or some other reason, you can still stop your vehicle by applying greater force to the brake pedal than you normally would. The stopping distance, however, will be longer.

When the engine is not running, the reserve brake power is partially depleted each time the brake pedal is applied. Do not pump the brake pedal when the power assist has been interrupted.

Pump the brake pedal only when necessary to maintain steering control on slippery surfaces.

⚠ WARNING - Brakes

- **Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. This will create abnormal high brake temperatures, excessive brake lining and pad wear, and increased stopping distances.**
- **When descending a long or steep hill, shift to a lower gear and avoid continuous application of the brakes. Continuous brake application will cause the brakes to overheat and could result in a temporary loss of braking performance.**
- **Wet brakes may impair the vehicle's ability to safely slow down; the vehicle may also pull to one side when the brakes are applied. Applying the brakes lightly will indicate whether they have been affected in this way.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

Always test your brakes in this fashion after driving through deep water. To dry the brakes, apply them lightly whilst maintaining a safe forward speed until brake performance returns to normal.

- **Always, confirm the position of the brake and accelerator pedal before driving. If you don't check the position of the accelerator and brake pedal before driving, you may depress the accelerator instead of the brake pedal. It may cause a serious accident.**

In the event of brake failure

If service brakes fail to operate whilst the vehicle is in motion, you can make an emergency stop with the parking brake. The stopping distance, however, will be much greater than normal.

⚠ WARNING - Parking brake

Applying the parking brake whilst the vehicle is moving at normal speeds can cause a sudden loss of control of the vehicle. If you must use the parking brake to stop the vehicle, use great caution in applying the brake.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not operate the parking brake whilst the vehicle is moving except in an emergency situation. It could damage the vehicle system and make endanger driving safety.

Disc brakes wear indicator

When your brake pads are worn and new pads are required, you will hear a high-pitched warning sound from your front brakes or rear brakes (if equipped). You may hear this sound come and go or it may occur whenever you depress the brake pedal.

Please remember that some driving conditions or climates may cause a brake squeal when you first apply (or lightly apply) the brakes. This is normal and does not indicate a problem with your brakes.

⚠ CAUTION

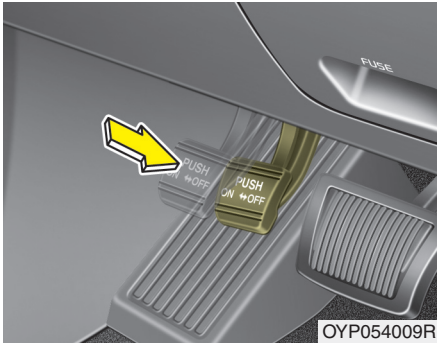
- ***To avoid costly brake repairs, do not continue to drive with worn brake pads.***
- ***Always replace the front or rear brake pads as pairs.***

⚠ WARNING - Brake wear

This brake wear warning sound means your vehicle needs service. If you ignore this audible warning, you will eventually lose braking performance, which could lead to a serious accident.

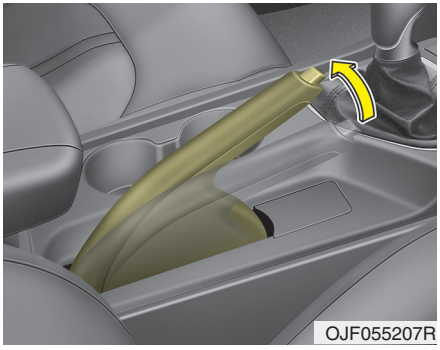
Parking brake

Applying the parking brake



Foot type

To engage the parking brake, first apply the foot brake and then depress the parking brake pedal down as far as possible.



Hand type

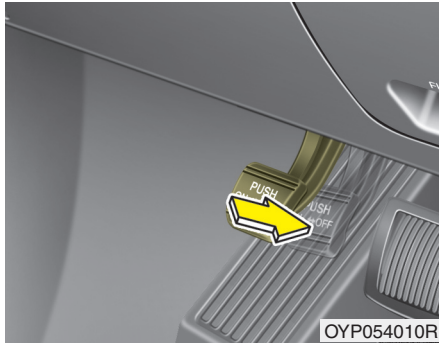
To engage the parking brake, first apply the foot brake and then pull up the parking brake lever as far as possible.

In addition it is recommended that when parking the vehicle on an incline, the shift lever should be in a low gear on manual transaxle vehicles or in the P (Park) position on Automatic Transaxle / Dual clutch transmission vehicles.

⚠ CAUTION

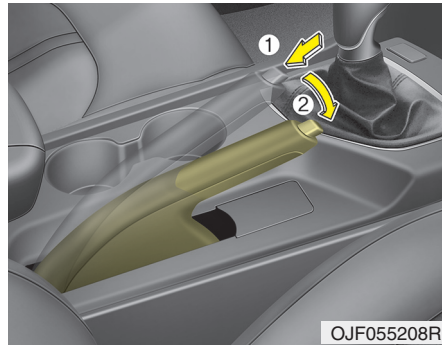
- ***Driving with the parking brake applied will cause excessive brake pad (or lining) and brake rotor wear.***
- ***Do not operate the parking brake whilst the vehicle is moving except in an emergency situation. It could damage the vehicle system and make endanger driving safety.***

Releasing the parking brake



Foot type

To release the parking brake, depress the parking brake pedal a second time whilst applying the foot brake. The pedal will automatically extend to the fully released position.



Hand type

To release the parking brake, first apply the foot brake and pull up the parking brake lever slightly. Secondly depress the release button (1) and lower the parking brake lever (2) whilst holding the button.

If the parking brake does not release or does not release all the way, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING

- **To prevent unintentional movement when stopped and leaving the vehicle, do not use the shift lever instead of the parking brake. Set the parking brake AND make sure the shift lever is securely positioned in 1st (First) gear or R (Reverse) for manual transaxle equipped vehicles and in P (Park) for Automatic Transaxle / Dual clutch transmission equipped vehicles.**
- **Never allow anyone who is unfamiliar with the vehicle to touch the parking brake. If the parking brake is released unintentionally, serious injury may occur.**
- **All vehicles should always have the parking brake fully engaged when parking to avoid inadvertent movement of the vehicle which can injure occupants or pedestrians.**



WK-23_TF

Check the brake warning light by turning the ignition switch ON (do not start the engine). This light will be illuminated when the parking brake is applied with the ignition switch in the START or ON position.

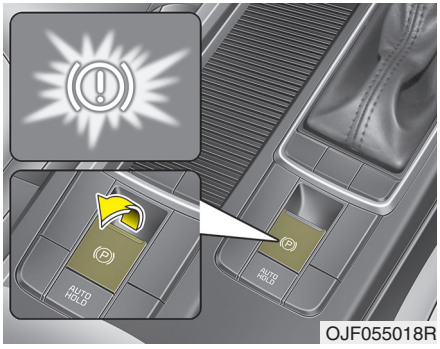
Before driving, be sure the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off.

If the brake warning light remains on after the parking brake is released whilst the engine is running, there may be a malfunction in the brake system. Immediate attention is necessary.

If at all possible, cease driving the vehicle immediately. If that is not possible, use extreme caution whilst operating the vehicle and only continue to drive the vehicle until you can reach a safe location or repair shop.

Electronic parking brake (EPB) (if equipped)

Applying the parking brake



OJF055018R

To apply the EPB (electronic parking brake):

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Pull up the EPB switch.

Make sure the warning light comes on.

Also, the EPB is applied automatically if the Auto Hold button is on when the engine is turned off. However, if you keep pressing the EPB switch till the engine is turned off, the EPB will not be applied.

✻ NOTICE

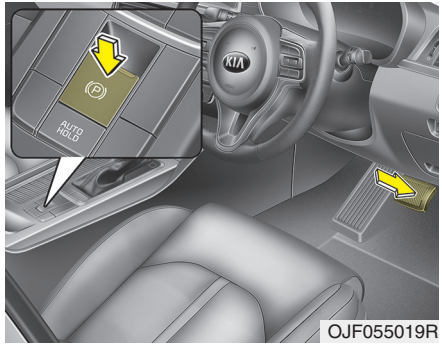
On a steep incline or when pulling a trailer if the vehicle does not stand still, do as follows:

1. **Apply the EPB.**
2. **Pull up the EPB switch for more than 3 seconds.**

⚠ CAUTION

Do not operate the parking brake whilst the vehicle is moving except in an emergency situation. It could damage the vehicle system and endanger driving safety.

Releasing the parking brake



To release the EPB (Electronic parking brake), press the EPB switch in the following condition:

- Have the ignition switch or engine start/stop button in the ON position.
- Depress the brake pedal.

Make sure the brake warning light goes off.

To release EPB (Electronic parking brake) automatically:

- Shift lever in P (Park)

  With the engine running depress the brake pedal and shift out of P (Park) to R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Shift lever in N (Neutral)

  With the engine running depress the brake pedal and shift out of N (Neutral) to R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Manual transaxle vehicle

  1. Start the engine.
  2. Fasten the driver's seat belt.
  3. Close the driver's door, engine bonnet and trunk.
  4. Depress the clutch pedal with the gear engaged.
  5. Depress the accelerator pedal whilst releasing the clutch pedal.

- Automatic Transaxle / Dual clutch transmission
  1. Start the engine.
  2. Fasten the driver's seat belt.
  3. Close the driver's door, engine bonnet and trunk.
  4. Depress the accelerator pedal whilst the shift lever is in R (Rear), D (Drive) or manual mode.

Make sure the brake warning light goes off.

✻ NOTICE

- **For your safety, you can engage the EPB even though the ignition switch or engine stop/start button is in the OFF position, but you cannot release it.**
- **For your safety, depress the brake pedal and release the parking brake manually with the EPB switch when you drive downhill or when backing up the vehicle.**

✻ NOTICE - Manual transaxle

A vehicle towing a trailer on a hill or on an incline may slightly roll backwards when starting the vehicle. To prevent the situation follow the below instructions.

1. **Depress the clutch pedal and select a gear.**
2. **Keep pulling up the EPB switch.**
3. **Depress the accelerator pedal and slowly release the clutch pedal.**
4. **If the vehicle starts off with enough driving power release the EPB switch.**

Do not follow the above procedure when driving on a flat level ground. The vehicle may suddenly move forward.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***If the parking brake warning light is still on even though the EPB has been released, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.***
- ***Do not drive your vehicle with the EPB applied. It may cause excessive brake pad and brake rotor wear.***

EPB (Electronic parking brake) may be automatically applied when:

- The EPB is overheated
- Requested by other systems

✻ NOTICE

If the driver turns the engine off by mistake whilst Auto Hold is operating, EPB will be automatically applied. (Vehicle's equipped with Auto Hold)

System warning



OJF055248L

- If you try to drive off depressing the accelerator pedal with the EPB applied, but doesn't release automatically, a warning will sound and a message will appear.
- If the driver's seat belt is not fastened and the engine bonnet or trunk is opened, a warning will sound and a message will appear.
- If there is a problem with the vehicle, a warning may sound and a message may appear.

If the above situation occurs, depress the brake pedal and release EPB by pressing the EPB switch.

⚠ WARNING

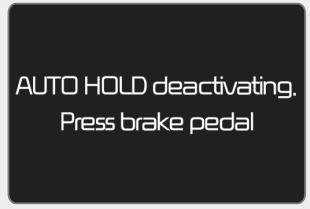
- **To prevent unintentional movement when stopped and leaving the vehicle, do not use the shift lever in place of the parking brake. Set the parking brake and make sure the shift lever is securely positioned in P (Park).**
- **Never allow anyone who is unfamiliar with the vehicle to touch the parking brake. If the parking brake is released unintentionally, serious injury may occur.**
- **All vehicles should always have the parking brake fully engaged when parking to avoid inadvertent movement of the car which can injure occupants or pedestrians.**

⚠ CAUTION

- ***A click sound may be heard whilst operating or releasing the EPB, but these conditions are normal and indicate that the EPB is functioning properly.***
- ***When leaving your keys with a parking lot attendant or valet, make sure to inform him/her how to operate the EPB.***
- ***The EPB may malfunction if you drive with the EPB applied.***
- ***When you automatically release EPB by depressing the accelerator pedal, depress it slowly.***

System warning

■ Type A



OJF055249L

■ Type B



OJF055250L

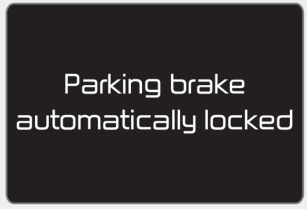
When the conversion from Auto Hold to EPB is not working properly a warning will sound and a message will appear.

⚠ CAUTION

Depress the brake pedal when the above message appears for the Auto Hold and EPB may not activate.

System warning

■ Type A



OJF055251L

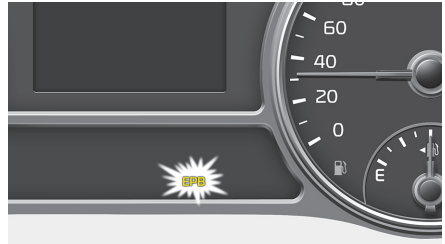
■ Type B



OJF055252L

If the EPB is applied whilst Auto Hold is activated because of ESC (Electronic Stability Control) signal, a warning will sound and a message will appear.

EPB malfunction indicator (if equipped)



OJF055056

This warning light illuminates if the engine start/stop button is changed to the ON position and goes off in approximately 3 seconds if the system is operation normally.

If the EPB malfunction indicator remains on, comes on whilst driving, or does not come on when the ignition switch or the engine start/stop button is changed to the ON position, this indicates that the EPB may have malfunctioned.

If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

The EPB malfunction indicator may illuminate when the ESC indicator comes on to indicate that the ESC is not working properly, but it does not indicate a malfunction of the EPB.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***The EPB warning light may illuminate if the EPB switch operates abnormally. Shut the engine off and turn it on again after a few minutes. The warning light will go off and the EPB switch will operate normally. However, if the EPB warning light is still on, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.***
- ***If the parking brake warning light does not illuminate or blinks even though the EPB switch was pulled up, the EPB is not applied.***
- ***If the parking brake warning light blinks when the EPB warning light is on, press the switch, then pull it up. Once more press it back to its original position and pull it back up. If the EPB warning does not go off, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.***

Emergency braking

If there is a problem with the brake pedal whilst driving, emergency braking is possible by pulling up and holding the EPB switch. Braking is possible only whilst you are holding the EPB switch.

⚠ WARNING

Do not operate the parking brake whilst the vehicle is moving except in an emergency situation.

✻ NOTICE

During emergency braking by the EPB, the parking brake warning light will illuminate to indicate that the system is operating.

⚠ CAUTION

If you continuously notice a noise or burning smell when the EPB is used for emergency braking, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

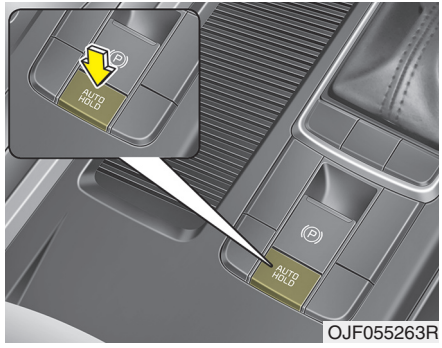
When the EPB (Electronic parking brake) does not release

If the EPB does not release normally, we recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer by loading the vehicle on a flatbed tow truck and have the system checked.

AUTO HOLD (if equipped)

The Auto Hold maintains the vehicle in a standstill even though the brake pedal is not depressed after the driver brings the vehicle to a complete stop by depressing the brake pedal.

Set up



1. With the driver's door, engine bonnet closed, fasten the driver's seat belt or depress the brake pedal and then press the Auto Hold button. The white AUTO HOLD indicator will come on and the system will be in the standby position.



2. When you stop the vehicle completely by depressing the brake pedal, the AUTO HOLD indicator changes from white to green.
3. The vehicle will remain stationary even if you release the brake pedal.
4. If EPB is applied, Auto Hold will be released.

Leaving

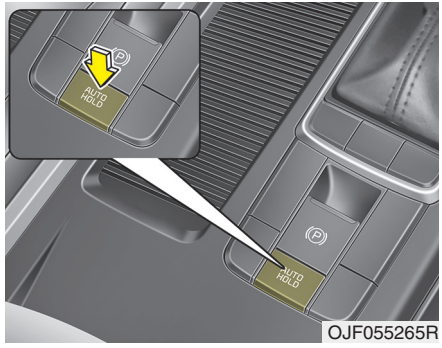
If you press the accelerator pedal with the shift lever in D (Drive) or manual mode, the Auto Hold will be released automatically and the vehicle will start to move. The indicator changes from green to white.

⚠ WARNING

When driving off from Auto Hold by depressing the accelerator pedal, always check the surrounding area near your vehicle.

Slowly depress the accelerator pedal for a smooth launch.

Cancel



To cancel the Auto Hold operation, press the Auto Hold switch. The AUTO HOLD indicator will go out.

To cancel the Auto Hold operation when the vehicle is at a standstill, press the Auto Hold switch whilst depressing the brake pedal.

✻ NOTICE

- The Auto Hold does not operate when:
  - The driver's seat belt is unfastened and driver's door is opened
  - The engine bonnet is opened
  - The shift lever is in P (Park) or R (Reverse)
  - The EPB is applied
- For your safety, the Auto Hold automatically switches to EPB in such cases:
  - The driver's seat belt is unfastened and driver's door is opened
  - The engine bonnet is opened
  - The vehicle is in a standstill for more than 10 minutes
  - The vehicle is standing on a steep slope
  - The vehicle moved several times

(Continued)

(Continued)

In these cases, the brake warning light comes on, the AUTO HOLD indicator changes from green to white, and a warning sounds and a message will appear to inform you that EPB has been automatically engaged. Before driving off again, press foot brake pedal, check the surrounding area near your vehicle and release parking brake manually with the EPB switch.

- If the AUTO HOLD indicator lights up yellow, the Auto Hold is not working properly. We recommend that the you contact an authorised Kia dealer.
- Whilst operating Auto Hold, you may heard mechanical noise. However, it is normal operation noise.

⚠ WARNING

- Press the accelerator pedal slowly when you start the vehicle.
- For your safety, cancel the Auto Hold when you drive downhill or back up the vehicle or park the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

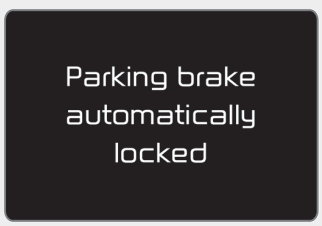
If there is a malfunction with the driver's door, engine bonnet open detection system, the Auto Hold may not work properly.

We recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.

Warning messages

Parking brake automatically locked

■ Type A



OJF055122L

■ Type B



OJF055123L

When the EPB is applied from Auto Hold, a warning will sound and a message will appear.

AUTO HOLD deactivating. Press brake pedal

■ Type A



OJF055120L

■ Type B



OJF055121L

When the conversion from Auto Hold to EPB is not working properly a warning will sound and a message will appear.

✻ NOTICE

When this message is displayed, the Auto Hold and EPB may not operate. For your safety, depress the brake pedal.

Press brake pedal to deactivate AUTO HOLD

■ Type A



OJF055126L

■ Type B



OJF055127L

If you did not apply the brake pedal when you release the Auto Hold by pressing the [AUTO HOLD] switch, a warning will sound and a message will appear.

AUTO HOLD conditions not met. Close door, bonnet, and fasten seatbelt



OJF055124L

When you press the [AUTO HOLD] switch, if the driver's door, engine bonnet are not closed or the driver's seat belt is unfastened, a warning will sound and a message will appear on the LCD display. At this moment, press the [AUTO HOLD] button after closing the driver's door, engine bonnet and fastening the seat belt.

Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

⚠ WARNING

ABS (or ESC) will not prevent accidents due to improper or dangerous driving maneuvers. Even though vehicle control is improved during emergency braking, always maintain a safe distance between you and objects ahead. Vehicle speeds should always be reduced during extreme road conditions.

The braking distance for vehicle equipped with an anti-lock braking system (or Electronic Stability Control) may be longer than for those without it in the following road conditions.

During these conditions the vehicle should be driven at reduced speeds:

- **Rough, gravel or snow-covered roads.**
- **With tyre chains installed.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **On roads where the road surface is pitted or has different surface height.**

The safety features of an ABS (or ESC) equipped vehicle should not be tested by high speed driving or cornering. This could endanger the safety of yourself or others.

The ABS continuously senses the speed of the wheels. If the wheels are going to lock, the ABS system repeatedly modulates the hydraulic brake pressure to the wheels.

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear a “tik-tik” sound from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ABS is active.

In order to obtain the maximum benefit from your ABS in an emergency situation, do not attempt to modulate your brake pressure and do not try to pump your brakes. Press your brake pedal as hard as possible or as hard as the situation warrants and allow the ABS to control the force being delivered to the brakes.

✻ NOTICE

A click sound may be heard in the engine compartment when the vehicle begins to move after the engine is started. These conditions are normal and indicate that the anti-lock brake system is functioning properly.

- Even with the anti-lock brake system, your vehicle still requires sufficient stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you.
- Always slow down when cornering. The anti-lock brake system cannot prevent accidents resulting from excessive speeds.
- On loose or uneven road surfaces, operation of the anti-lock brake system may result in a longer stopping distance than for vehicles equipped with a conventional brake system.



W-78

⚠ CAUTION

- *If the ABS warning light is on and stays on, you may have a problem with the ABS. In this case, however, your regular brakes will work normally.*

(Continued)

(Continued)

- *The ABS warning light will stay on for approximately 3 seconds after the ignition switch is ON. During that time, the ABS will go through self-diagnosis and the light will go off if everything is normal. If the light stays on, you may have a problem with your ABS. We recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.*

⚠ CAUTION

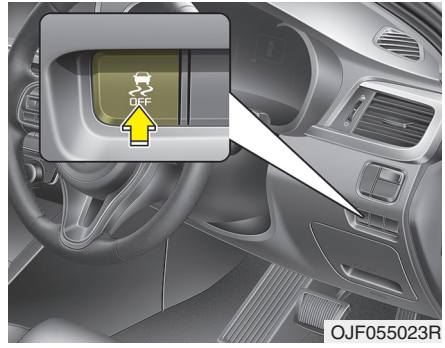
- *When you drive on a road having poor traction, such as an icy road, and operate your brakes continuously, the ABS will be active continuously and the ABS warning light may illuminate. Pull your vehicle over to a safe place and stop the engine.*
- *Restart the engine. If the ABS warning light is off, then your ABS system is normal. Otherwise, you may have a problem with the ABS. We recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.*

✻ NOTICE

When you jump start your vehicle because of a drained battery, the engine may not run as smoothly and the ABS warning light may turn on at the same time. This happens because of the low battery voltage. It does not mean your ABS is malfunctioning.

- **Do not pump your brakes!**
- **Have the battery recharged before driving the vehicle.**

Electronic stability control (ESC) (if equipped)



The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system is designed to stabilize the vehicle during cornering maneuvers. ESC checks where you are steering and where the vehicle is actually going. ESC applies the brakes at individual wheels and intervenes with engine management system to stabilize the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Never drive too fast for the road conditions or too quickly when cornering. Electronic stability control (ESC) will not prevent accidents. Excessive speed in turns, abrupt maneuvers and hydroplaning on wet surfaces can still result in serious accidents. Only a safe and attentive driver can prevent accidents by avoiding maneuvers that cause the vehicle to lose traction. Even with ESC installed, always follow all the normal precautions for driving - including driving at safe speeds for the conditions.

The Electronic stability control (ESC) system is an electronic system designed to help the driver maintain vehicle control under adverse conditions. It is not a substitute for safe driving practices. Factors including speed, road conditions and driver steering input can all affect whether ESC will be effective in preventing a loss of control. It is still your responsibility to drive and corner at reasonable speeds and to leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear a “tik-tik” sound from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ESC is active.

✻ NOTICE

A click sound may be heard in the engine compartment when the vehicle begins to move after the engine is started. These conditions are normal and indicate that the Electronic stability control (ESC) System is functioning properly.

ESC operation

ESC ON condition

-

- When the ignition is turned ON, ESC and ESC OFF indicator lights illuminate for approximately 3 seconds, then ESC is turned on.
- Press the ESC OFF button for at least half a second after turning the ignition ON to turn ESC off. (ESC OFF indicator will illuminate). To turn the ESC on, press the ESC OFF button (ESC OFF indicator light will go off).
- When starting the engine, you may hear a slight ticking sound. This is the ESC performing an automatic system self-check and does not indicate a problem.

When operating



When the ESC is in operation, ESC indicator light blinks.

- When the Electronic Stability Control is operating properly, you can feel a slight pulsation in the vehicle. This is only the effect of brake control and indicates nothing unusual.
- When moving out of the mud or slippery road, the engine rpm (revolution per minute) may not increase even if you press the accelerator pedal deeply. This is to maintain the stability and traction of the vehicle and does not indicate a problem.

ESC operation off

ESC OFF state



This car has 2 kinds of ESC off states.

If the engine stops when ESC is off, ESC remains off. Upon restarting the engine, the ESC will automatically turn on again.

■ Type A



OJF055253L

■ Type B



OJF055254L

• ESC off state 1

To cancel ESC operation, press the ESC OFF button (ESC OFF) shortly (ESC OFF indicator light (ESC OFF) illuminates). At this state, the engine control function does not operate. It means the traction control function does not operate. Brake control function only operates.

■ Type A



OJF055255L

■ Type B



OJF055232L

• ESC off state 2

To cancel ESC operation, press the ESC OFF button (ESC OFF) for more than 3 seconds. ESC OFF indicator light (ESC OFF) illuminates and ESC OFF warning chime will sound. At this state, the engine control function and brake control function do not operate. It means the car stability control function does not operate any more.

Indicator light

■ ESC indicator light



■ ESC OFF indicator light



When ignition switch is turned to ON, the indicator light illuminates, then goes off if the ESC system is operating normally.

The ESC indicator light blinks whenever ESC is operating or illuminates when ESC fails to operate.

ESC OFF indicator light comes on when the ESC is turned off with the button.

⚠ CAUTION

Driving with varying tyre or wheel sizes may cause the ESC system to malfunction. When replacing tyres, make sure they are the same size as your original tyres.

⚠ WARNING

The Electronic Stability Control system is only a driving aid; use precautions for safe driving by slowing down on curved, snowy, or icy roads. Drive slowly and don't attempt to accelerate whenever the ESC indicator light is blinking, or when the road surface is slippery.

ESC OFF usage

When driving

- ESC should be turned on for daily driving whenever possible.
- To turn ESC off whilst driving, press the ESC OFF button whilst driving on a flat road surface.

⚠ WARNING

Never press the ESC OFF button whilst ESC is operating (ESC indicator light blinks).

If ESC is turned off whilst ESC is operating, the vehicle may slip out of control.

✻ NOTICE

- **When operating the vehicle on a dynamometer, ensure that the ESC is turned off by pressing the ESC OFF button for more than 3 seconds (ESC OFF light illuminated). If the ESC is left on, it may prevent the vehicle speed from increasing, and result in false diagnosis.**
- **Turning the ESC off does not affect ABS or brake system operation.**

Vehicle stability management (VSM)

This system provides further enhancements to vehicle stability and steering responses when a vehicle is driving on a slippery road or a vehicle detected changes in coefficient of friction between right wheels and left wheels when braking.

VSM operation

When the VSM is operating:

- ESC (Electronic Stability Control) ( ) light will blink.
- The steering wheel may be controlled.

When the vehicle stability management is operating properly, you can feel a slight pulsation in the vehicle. This is only the effect of brake control and indicates nothing unusual.

The VSM does not operate when:

- Driving on bank road such as gradient or incline
- Driving rearward
- ESC OFF indicator light ( ) remains on the instrument cluster
- EPS (Electronic Power Steering) indicator light remains on the instrument cluster

VSM operation off

If you press the ESC OFF button to turn off the ESC, the VSM will also cancel and the ESC OFF indicator light ( ) illuminates.

To turn on the VSM, press the button again. The ESC OFF indicator light goes out.

Malfunction indicator

The VSM can be deactivated even if you don't cancel the VSM operation by pressing the ESC OFF button. It indicates that a malfunction has been detected somewhere in the EPS (Electronic Power Steering) system or VSM system. If the ESC indicator light ( ) or EPS warning light remains on, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

✻ NOTICE

- **The VSM is designed to function above approximately 22 km/h (13 mph) on curves.**
- **The VSM is designed to function above approximately 10 km/h (6 mph) when a vehicle is braking on a split-mu road. The split-mu road is made of surfaces which have different friction forces.**

⚠ WARNING

- **The Vehicle Stability Management system is not a substitute for safe driving practices but a supplementary function only. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the speed and the distance to the vehicle ahead. Always hold the steering wheel firmly whilst driving.**
- **Your vehicle is designed to activate according to the driver's intention, even with the VSM installed. Always follow all the normal precautions for driving at safe speeds for the conditions – including driving in inclement weather and on a slippery road.**
- **Driving with varying tyre or wheel sizes may cause the VSM system to malfunction. When replacing tyres, make sure they are the same size as your original tyres.**

Hill-start assist control (HAC) (if equipped)

A vehicle has the tendency to slip back on a steep hill when it starts to go after stopping. The Hill-start Assist Control (HAC) prevents the vehicle from slipping back by operating the brakes automatically for about 1~2 seconds. The brakes are released when the accelerator pedal is depressed or after about 1~2 seconds.

⚠ WARNING

The HAC is activated only for about 1~2 seconds, so when the vehicle is starting off always depress the accelerator pedal.

✻ NOTICE

- **The HAC does not operate when the transaxle shift lever is in the P (Park) or N (Neutral) position.**
- **The HAC activates even though the ESC is off but it does not activate when the ESC has malfunctioned.**

Emergency Stop Signal (ESS) (if equipped)

The Emergency Stop Signal system alerts the driver behind by blinking the stop light when the vehicle is braked rapidly and severely.

The system is activated when:

- The vehicle suddenly stops (vehicle speed is over 55km/h and the vehicle deceleration at greater than 7 m/s^2)
- The ABS is activating

When the vehicle speed is under 40 km/h and the ABS deactivates or the sudden stop situation is over, the stop light blinking will stop. Instead, the hazard warning flasher will turn on automatically.

The hazard warning flasher will turn off when vehicle speed is over 10km/h after the vehicle has stopped. Also, it will turn off when the vehicle is driven at low speed for some time. You can turn it off manually by pushing the hazard warning flasher switch.

⚠ CAUTION

The Emergency Stop Signal (ESS) system will not work if the hazard warning flasher is already on.

Good braking practices

⚠ WARNING

- **Whenever you leave or park your vehicle, always set the parking brake as far as possible and fully engage the vehicle's transaxle into the P (Park) position. If the parking brake is not fully engaged, the vehicle may move inadvertently and injure yourself and others.**
- **All vehicles should always have the parking brake fully engaged when parking to avoid inadvertent movement of the vehicle which can injure occupants or pedestrians.**

- Check to be sure the parking brake is not engaged and that the parking brake indicator light is out before driving away.
- Driving through water may get the brakes wet. They can also get wet when the vehicle is washed. Wet brakes can be dangerous! Your vehicle will not stop as quickly if the brakes are wet. Wet brakes may cause the vehicle to pull to one side.

  To dry the brakes, apply the brakes lightly until the braking action returns to normal, taking care to keep the vehicle under control at all times. If the braking action does not return to normal, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and we recommend that you call an authorised Kia dealer.
- Do not coast down hills with the vehicle out of gear. This is extremely hazardous. Keep the vehicle in gear at all times, use the brakes to slow down, then shift to a lower gear so that engine braking will help you maintain a safe speed.
- Do not "ride" the brake pedal. Resting your foot on the brake pedal whilst driving can be dangerous because it can result in the brakes overheating and losing their effectiveness. It also increases the wear of the brake components.
- If a tyre goes flat whilst you are driving, apply the brakes gently and keep the vehicle pointed straight ahead whilst you slow down. When you are moving slowly enough for it to be safe to do so, pull off the road and stop in a safe place.

- If your vehicle is equipped with an Automatic Transaxle / Dual clutch transmission, do not let your vehicle creep forward. To avoid creeping forward, keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when the vehicle is stopped.
- Be cautious when parking on a hill. Firmly engage the parking brake and place the shift lever in P (automatic transaxle) or in first or reverse gear (manual transaxle). If your vehicle is facing downhill, turn the front wheels into the kerb to help keep the vehicle from rolling.

  If your vehicle is facing uphill, turn the front wheels away from the kerb to help keep the vehicle from rolling. If there is no kerb or if it is required by other conditions to keep the vehicle from rolling, block the wheels.
- Under some conditions your parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or if the brakes are wet. If there is a risk that the parking brake may freeze, apply it only temporarily whilst you put the shift lever in P (Automatic Transaxle / Dual clutch transmission) or in first or reverse gear (manual transaxle) and block the rear wheels so the vehicle cannot roll. Then release the parking brake.
- Do not hold the vehicle on the upgrade with the accelerator pedal. This can cause the transaxle to overheat. Always use the brake pedal or parking brake.

AUTONOMOUS EMERGENCY BRAKING (AEB) (IF EQUIPPED)

The AEB system is to reduce or to avoid accident risk. It recognizes the distance from the vehicle ahead or the pedestrian through the sensors (i.e. radar and camera), and, if necessary, warns the driver of accident risk with the warning message or the warning alarms.

⚠ WARNING

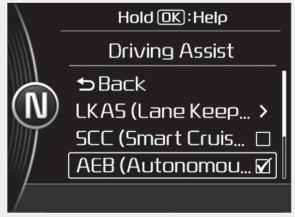
Take the following precautions when using the Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB):

- **This system is only a supplemental system and it is not intended to, nor does it replace the need for extreme care and attention of the driver. The sensing range and objects detectable by the sensors are limited. Pay attention to the road conditions at all times.**
- **NEVER drive too fast in accordance with the road conditions or whilst cornering.**
- **Always drive cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring. AEB does not stop the vehicle completely and does not avoid collisions.**

System setting and activation

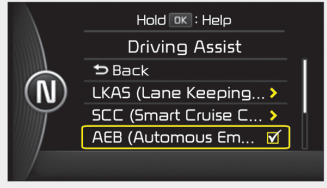
System setting

■ Type A



OJF055180L

■ Type B



OJF055128L

The driver can activate the AEB by placing the ignition switch to the ON position and by selecting 'User Settings', 'Driving Assist', and 'Autonomous Braking System'. The AEB deactivates, when the driver cancels the system setting.

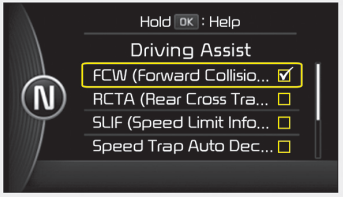
The warning light illuminates on the LCD display, when you cancel the AEB system. The driver can monitor the AEB ON/OFF status on the LCD display. When the warning light remains ON with the AEB activated, we recommend you to have the system checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

■ Type A

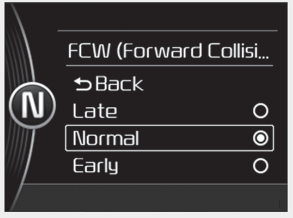


OJF055178L

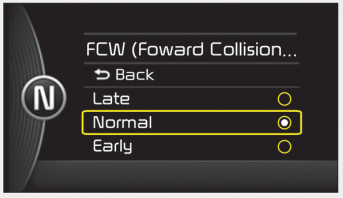
■ Type B



OJF055129L



OJF055179L



OJF055075L

The driver can select the initial warning activation time in the User Settings in the instrument cluster LCD display. The options for the initial Forward Collision Warning include the following:

- EARLY - When this condition is selected, the initial Forward Collision Warning is activated earlier than normal. This setting maximizes the amount of distance between the vehicle or pedestrian ahead before the initial warning occurs.
- NORMAL - When this condition is selected, the initial Forward Collision Warning is activated normally. This setting allows for a nominal amount of distance between the vehicle or pedestrian ahead before the initial warning occurs.
- LATE - When this condition is selected, the initial Forward Collision Warning is activated later than normal. This setting reduces the amount of distance between the vehicle or pedestrian ahead before the initial warning occurs.

Prerequisite for activation

The AEB gets ready to be activated, when the AEB is selected on the LCD display, and when the following prerequisites are satisfied.

- The ESC is activated.
- The driving speed is over 10km/h. (However, AEB is activated within certain driving speed.)
- When recognizing the vehicle or the pedestrian in front. (However, AEB does not activate according to conditions in front and vehicle systems, but it notices only certain warnings.)

⚠ WARNING

- **The AEB automatically activates upon placing the ignition switch to the ON position. The driver can deactivate the AEB by canceling the system setting on the LCD display.**
- **The AEB automatically deactivates upon canceling the ESC. When the ESC is canceled, the AEB cannot be activated on the LCD display.**
- **Set or cancel AEB with controlling switches on steering wheel after stopping the vehicle in the safe place for your safety.**

AEB warning message and system control

The AEB produces warning messages and warning alarms in accordance with the collision risk levels of followings like vehicle's sudden braking in front or lack of vehicle to vehicle distance or collision to pedestrians. Also, it controls the brakes in accordance with the collision risk levels.

Forward Warning (1st warning)



OJF055076L

The warning message appears on the LCD display with the warning alarms.

Collision Warning (2nd warning)



OJF055077L

- The warning message appears on the LCD display with the warning alarms.
- The AEB controls the brakes within certain limit to release shock from the collision.

Emergency braking (3rd warning)



OJF055078L

- The warning message appears on the LCD display with the warning alarms.
- The AEB controls the brakes within certain limit to release shock from the collision.

  The AEB controls the maximum brakes just before the collision.

Brake operation

- In an urgent situation, the braking system enters into the ready status for prompt reaction against the driver's depressing the brake pedal.
- The AEB provides additional braking power for optimum braking performance, when the driver depresses the brake pedal.
- The braking control is automatically deactivated, when the driver sharply depresses the brake pedal, or when the driver abruptly operates the steering wheel.
- The braking control is automatically canceled, when risk factors disappear.

⚠ CAUTION

The driver should always pay great caution to vehicle operation, even though there is no warning message or warning alarm.

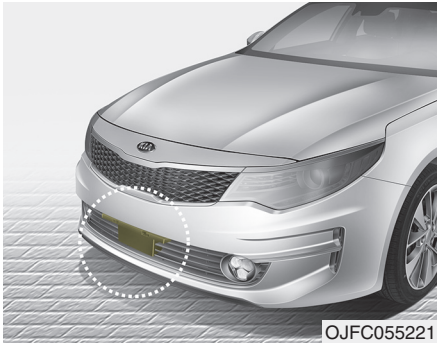
⚠ WARNING

The AEB cannot avoid all collisions. The AEB might not completely stop the vehicle before collision, due to ambient, weather and road conditions. The driver has the responsibility to drive safely and control the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

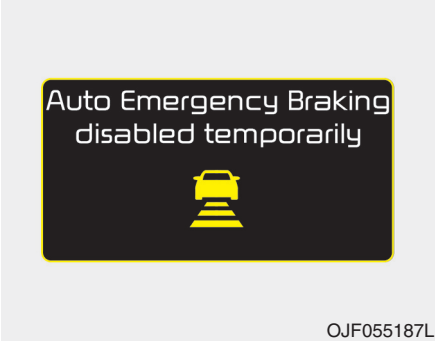
The AEB operates in accordance with the risk levels, such as the distance from the vehicle/passer-by in front, the speed of the vehicle/passer-by in front, and the driver's vehicle operation.

Sensor to detect the distance from the vehicle in front (front radar)


OJFC055221

The sensor is to maintain a certain distance from the vehicle in front. However, the smudged sensor lens with foreign substances, such as snow and rain, adversely affects the sensing performance. It may even temporarily cancel the AEB. Always keep the sensor lens clean.

Warning message and warning light



OJF055187L

When the sensor cover or the sensor lens is smudged with the foreign substances, such as snow or rain, the AEB operation may temporarily stop. In this case, the warning message appears to warn the driver.

This is not a malfunction with the AEB. To operate the AEB again, remove the foreign substances.

✻ NOTICE

- **Do not install any accessories, such as license plate molding or sticker, on the sensor area. Nor arbitrarily replace the bumper. Those may adversely affect the sensing performance.**
- **Always keep the sensor/bumper area clean.**
- **Use only soft clothes to wash the vehicle. Also, do not spray highly-pressurized water on the sensor installed on the bumper.**
- **Be careful not to apply unnecessary force on the frontal sensor area. When the sensor moves out of the correct position due to external force, the system may not normally operate even without the warning light or message. In this case, we recommend you to have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.**
- **Use only the genuine Kia sensor cover. Do not arbitrarily apply paint on the sensor cover.**

System malfunction

■ Type A



OJF055181L

■ Type B



OJF055079L

- When the AEB is not working properly, the AEB warning light ( ) will illuminate and the warning message will appear for a few seconds. After the message disappears, the master warning light ( ) will illuminate. In this case, we recommend you to have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.
- The AEB warning message may appear along with the illumination of the ESC warning light.

⚠ WARNING

- **The AEB is only a supplemental system for the driver's convenience. The driver should hold the responsibility to control the vehicle operation. Do not solely depend on the AEB system. Rather, maintain a safe braking distance, and, if necessary, depress the brake pedal to lower the driving speed.**
- **The AEB may unnecessarily produce the warning message and the warning alarms. Also, due to the sensing limitation, the AEB may not produce the warning message and the warning alarm at all.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **When there is a malfunction with the AEB, the braking control does not operate upon detecting a collision risk even with other braking systems normally operating.**
- **The AEB operates only for the vehicle / pedestrian in front, whilst driving forward. It does not operate for any animals or vehicles in the opposite direction.**
- **The AEB does not recognize the vehicle, which horizontally drives across the crossroad, or the vehicle, which is parked in the horizontal direction.**

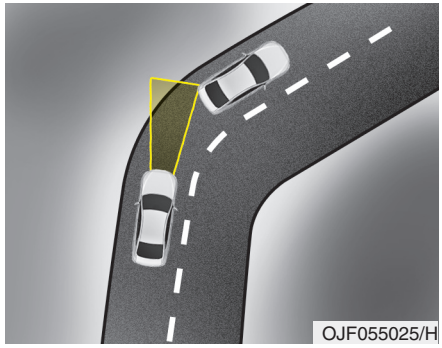
Limitation of the system

The AEB is an assistant system for a driver in a certain risky driving condition and it does not take every responsibility for all risks from driving condition.

The AEB monitors the driving situations through the radar and the camera sensor. Thus, for a situation out of the sensing range, the AEB may not normally operate. The driver should pay great caution in the following situations. The AEB operation may be limited.

Recognizing vehicles

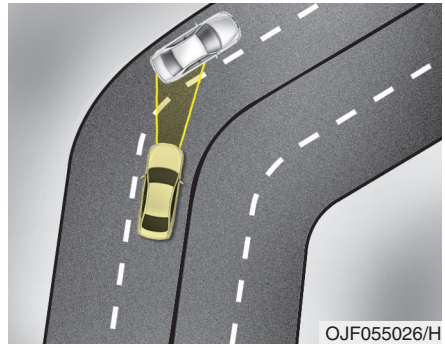
- The radar or the camera is contaminated with foreign substances.
- It heavily rains or snows.
- There is interruption by electric waves.
- There is severe irregular reflection from the radar.
- The vehicle in front has a narrow body. (i.e. motor cycle and bicycle)
- The driver's view is unclear due to the backlight, the reflected light, or darkness.
- The camera cannot contain the full image of the vehicle in front.
- The vehicle in front is a special vehicle, such as a heavily-loaded truck or a trailer.
- The vehicle in front does not turn ON the rear lights, does not have rear lights, has asymmetric rear lights, or has rear lights out of angle.
- The outside brightness is greatly changed, such as entering/exiting the tunnel.
- The vehicle driving is unstable.
- The radar/camera sensor recognition is limited.



- Driving on a curve

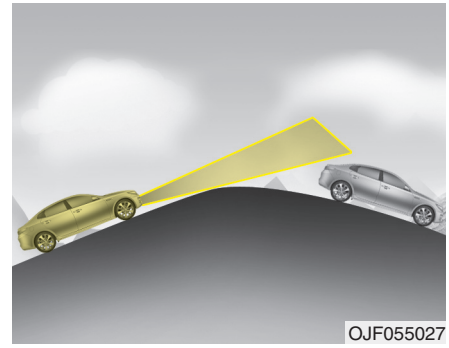
The AEB performance decreases whilst driving on a curve. The AEB may not recognize the vehicle in front even in the same lane. It may unnecessarily produce the warning message and the warning alarm, or it may not produce the warning message and the warning alarm at all.

Whilst driving on a curve, pay great caution, and, if necessary, depress the brake pedal.



Whilst driving on a curve, the AEB may recognize the vehicle in front in the next lane. Pay great caution, and, if necessary, depress the brake pedal.

Or, depress the accelerator pedal to maintain the driving speed. Always, take a look around the vehicle for your safety.

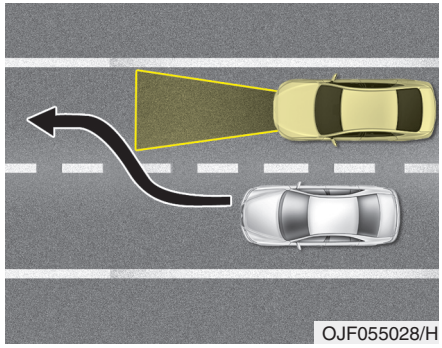


- Driving on a slope

The AEB performance decreases whilst driving upward or downward on a slope, not recognizing the vehicle in front in the same lane. It may unnecessarily produce the warning message and the warning alarm, or it may not produce the warning message and the warning alarm at all.

When the AEB suddenly recognizes the vehicle in front whilst passing over a slope, you may experience sharp deceleration.

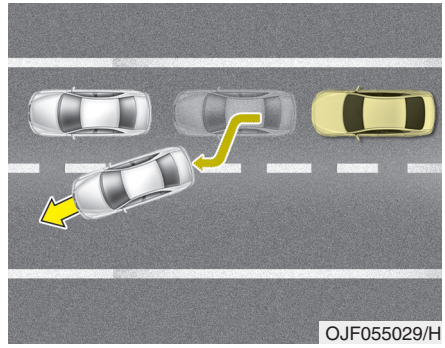
Always keep your eyes forward whilst driving upward or downward on a slope, and, if necessary, depress the brake pedal.


OJF055028/H

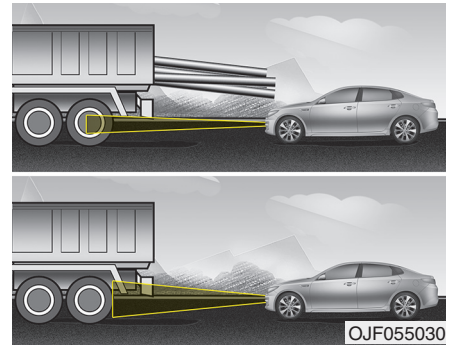
- Changing lanes

Even though the vehicle in the next lane enters into your lane, it may not be recognized by the AEB, until it enters the AEB sensing range.

Especially when the vehicle in the next lane abruptly enters into your lane, it is more likely not be recognized. Always pay great attention.


OJF055029/H

When the stopped vehicle in front gets out of the lane, it may not be recognized by your AEB. Always pay great attention.


OJF055030

- Recognizing the vehicle

When the vehicle in front has heavy loading extended rearward, or when the vehicle in front has higher ground clearance, it may induce a hazardous situation.

Recognizing pedestrians

- The pedestrian is not fully captured by the camera sensor, or the pedestrian does not walk in the upright position.
- The pedestrian moves very fast.
- The pedestrian abruptly appears in front.
- The pedestrian wears clothes in the colour similar to the background.
- The outside is too bright or too dark.
- The vehicle drives at night or in the darkness.
- There is an item similar to a person's body structure.
- The pedestrian is small.
- The pedestrian has impaired mobility.
- It is difficult to distinguish the pedestrian from the surroundings.
- The sensor recognition is limited.
- There is a group of pedestrians.

⚠ WARNING

- **Cancel the AEB in the User Settings on the LCD display, before towing another vehicle. Whilst towing, the brake application may adversely affect your vehicle safety.**
- **Pay great caution to the vehicle in front, when it has heavy loading extended rearward, or when it has higher ground clearance.**
- **The sensor only detects pedestrian, not carts, bicycles, motorcycles, luggage bags, or strollers.**
- **The AEB does not operate in a certain situation. Thus, never test-operate the AEB against a person or an object. It may cause a severe injury or even death.**

✻ NOTICE

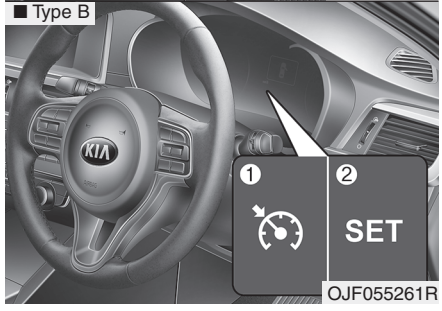
The system may temporarily cancel due to the strong electric waves.

CRUISE CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

■ Type A



■ Type B



1. Cruise indicator
2. Cruise set indicator

The cruise control system allows you to program the vehicle to maintain a constant speed without pressing the accelerator pedal.

This system is designed to function above approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).

⚠ WARNING

- **If the cruise control is left on, (cruise indicator light is illuminated), the cruise control can be switched on accidentally. Keep the cruise control system off when the cruise control is not in use, to avoid inadvertently setting a speed.**
- **Use the cruise control system only when travelling on open highways in good weather.**
- **Do not use the cruise control when it may not be safe to keep the vehicle at a constant speed, for instance, driving in heavy or varying traffic, or on slippery (rainy, icy or snow-covered) or winding roads or over 6% up-hill or down-hill roads.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Pay particular attention to the driving conditions whenever using the cruise control system.**
- **Be careful when driving downhill using the cruise control system, which may increase the vehicle speed.**

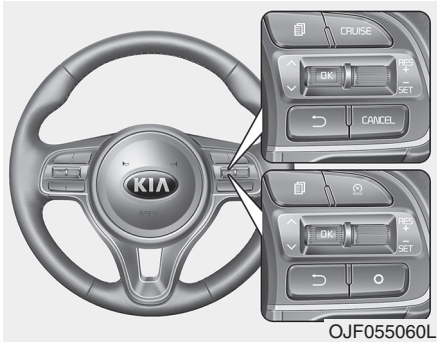
⚠ CAUTION

During cruise-speed driving of a manual transaxle vehicle, do not shift into neutral without depressing the clutch pedal, since the engine will be over-revved. If this happens, depress the clutch pedal or release the cruise control ON-OFF switch.

✻ NOTICE

- **During normal cruise control operation, when the SET switch is activated or reactivated after applying the brakes, the cruise control will energize after approximately 3 seconds. This delay is normal.**
- **To activate cruise control, depress the brake pedal at least once after turning the ignition switch to the ON position or starting the engine. This is to check if the brake switch which is important part to cancel cruise control is in normal condition.**

Cruise control switch



OJF055060L

CANCEL/O : Cancels cruise control operation.

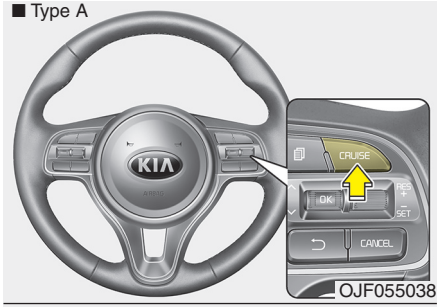
CRUISE / : Turns cruise control system on or off.

RES+ : Resumes or increases cruise control speed.

SET- : Sets or decreases cruise control speed.

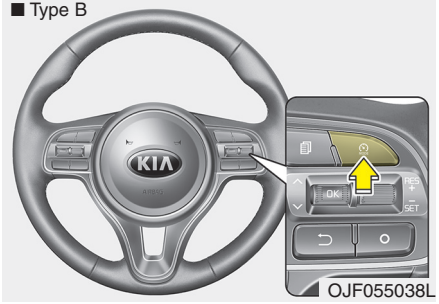
To set cruise control speed:

■ Type A



OJF055038

■ Type B



OJF055038L

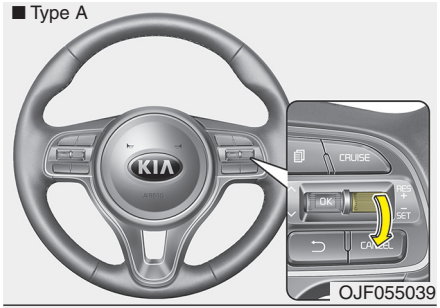
1. Press the CRUISE / button on the steering wheel, to turn the system on. The cruise indicator light will illuminate.

2. Accelerate to the desired speed, which must be more than approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).

✻ NOTICE - Manual transaxle

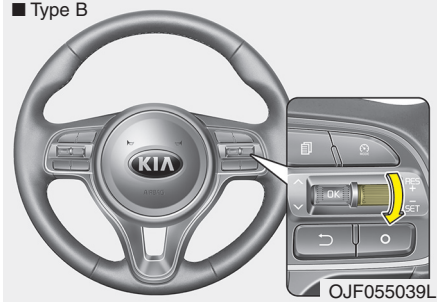
For manual transaxle vehicles, you should depress the brake pedal at least once to set the cruise control after starting the engine.

■ Type A



OJF055039

■ Type B



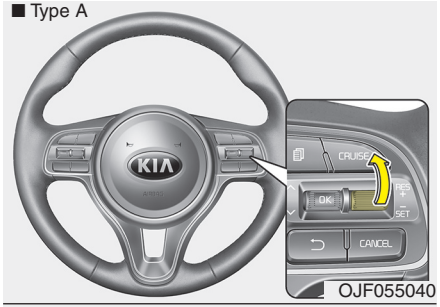
OJF055039L

3. Move the lever down (to SET-), and release it at the desired speed. The cruise set indicator light will illuminate. Release the accelerator pedal at the same time. The desired speed will automatically be maintained.

On a steep grade, the vehicle may slow down or speed up slightly whilst going downhill.

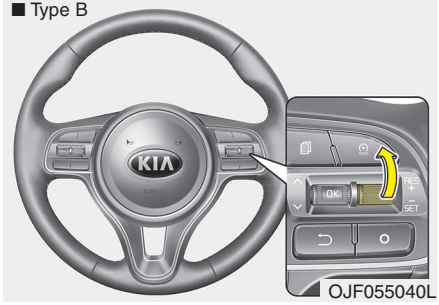
To increase cruise control set speed:

■ Type A



OJF055040

■ Type B



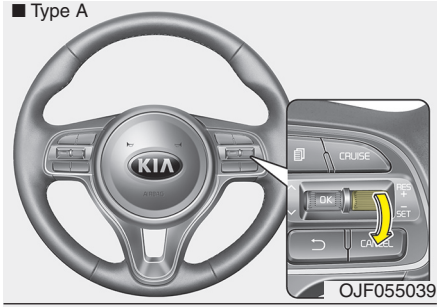
OJF055040L

Follow either of these procedures:

- Move the lever up (to RES+) and hold it. Your vehicle will accelerate. Release the lever at the speed you want.
- Move the lever up (to RES+) and release it immediately. The cruising speed will increase by 2 km/h (1 mph) each time you move the lever up (to RES+) in this manner.

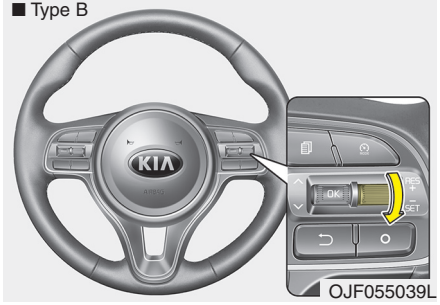
To decrease the cruising speed:

■ Type A



OJF055039

■ Type B



OJF055039L

Follow either of these procedures:

- Move the lever down (to SET-) and hold it. Your vehicle will gradually slow down. Release the lever at the speed you want to maintain.

- Move the lever down (to SET-) and release it immediately. The cruising speed will decrease by 2 km/h (1 mph) each time you move the lever down (to SET-) in this manner.

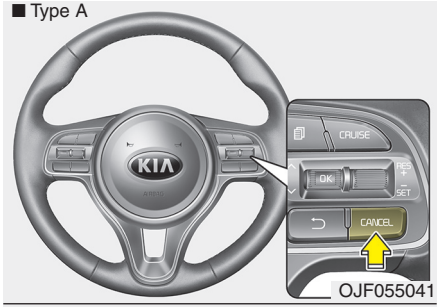
To temporarily accelerate with the cruise control on:

If you want to speed up temporarily when the cruise control is on, depress the accelerator pedal. Increased speed will not interfere with cruise control operation or change the set speed.

To return to the set speed, take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

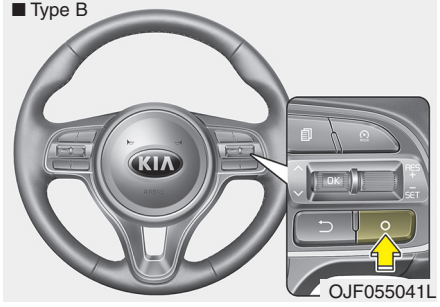
To cancel cruise control, do one of the following:

■ Type A



OJF055041

■ Type B



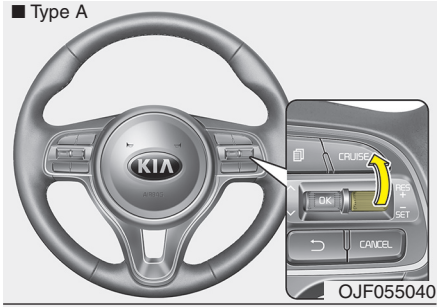
OJF055041L

- Depress the brake pedal.
- Depress the clutch pedal if equipped with a manual transaxle.
- Shift into N (Neutral) if equipped with an Automatic Transaxle / Dual clutch transmissione.
- Press the CANCEL/O button located on the steering wheel.
- Decrease the vehicle speed lower than the memory speed by approximately 20 km/h (12 mph).
- Decrease the vehicle speed to less than approximately 25 km/h (15 mph).

Each of these actions will cancel cruise control operation (the cruise set indicator light will go off), but it will not turn the system off. If you wish to resume cruise control operation, move up the lever (to RES+) located on your steering wheel. You will return to your previously preset speed.

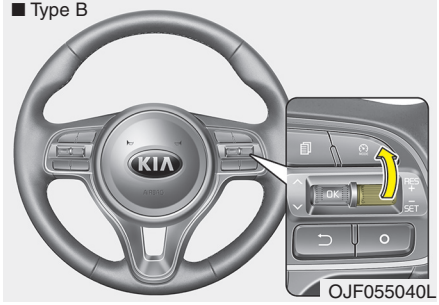
To resume cruising speed at more than approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).

■ Type A



OJF055040

■ Type B



OJF055040L

If any method other than the CRUISE / button was used to cancel cruising speed and the system is still activated, the most recent set speed will automatically resume when the RES+ switch is pushed.

It will not resume, however, if the vehicle speed has dropped below approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).

To turn cruise control off, do one of the following:

- Press the CRUISE/ button (the cruise indicator light will be turn off).
- If your vehicle equipped the speed limit system, press the CRUISE/ button twice. (The cruise indicator light will be turn off.)
- Turn the ignition off.

Both of these actions cancel cruise control operation. If you want to resume cruise control operation, repeat the steps provided in “To set cruise control speed” on the previous page.

SPEED LIMIT CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

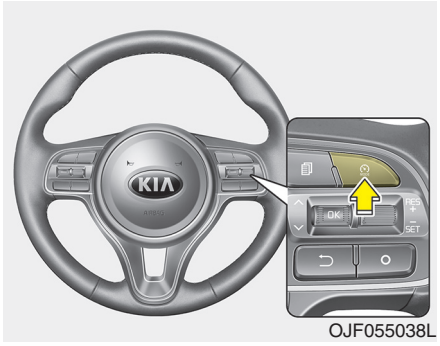
You can set the speed limit when you do not want to drive over a specific speed.

If you drive over the preset speed limit, the warning system operates (set speed limit will blink and chime will sound) until the vehicle speed returns within the speed limit.

✻ NOTICE

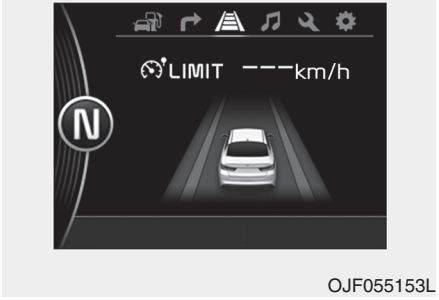
Whilst speed limit control is in operation, the cruise control system cannot be activated.

To set speed limit :



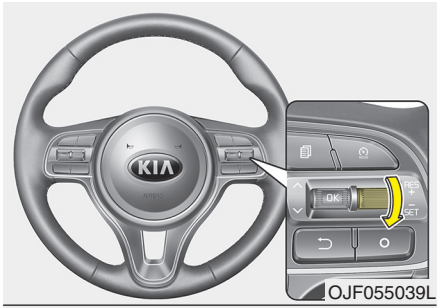
OJF055038L

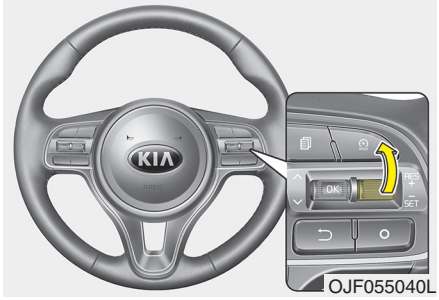
1. Press the cruise ( ) button twice on the steering wheel, to turn the system on.



OJF055153L

The speed limit indicator light will illuminate.





2. Move the lever down (to SET-).
3. Move the lever up (to RES+) or down (to SET-), and release it at the desired speed. Move the lever up (to RES+) or down (to SET-) and hold it. The speed will increase or decrease by 5 km/h (3 mph).

Move the lever up (to RES+) or down (SET-) and release it immediately. The speed will increase or decrease by 1 km/h.

The set speed limit will display on the instrument cluster.



OJF055154L

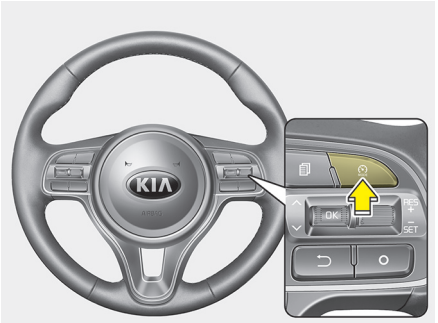
The set speed limit will be displayed.

To drive over the preset speed limit you must depress hard on the accelerator pedal (more than approximately 80%) until the kick down mechanism works with a clicking noise. Then the set speed limit will blink and chime will sound until you return the vehicle speed within the speed limit.

✻ NOTICE

- **Depressing the accelerator pedal less than approximately 50%, the vehicle will not speed over the preset speed limit but maintain the vehicle speed within the speed limit.**
- **A clicking noise heard from the kick down mechanism by depressing the accelerator pedal fully is a normal condition.**

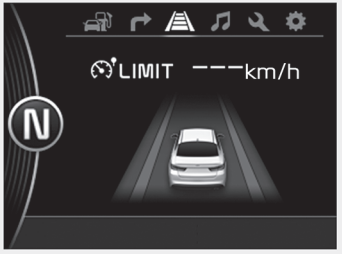
To turn off the speed limit control, do one of the following:



OJF055038L

- Press the cruise switch.
- Turn the ignition off.

If you press the cancel O switch once, the set speed limit will cancel, but it will not turn the system off. If you wish to reset the speed limit, move the lever up (to RES+) or down (to SET-) to the desired speed.



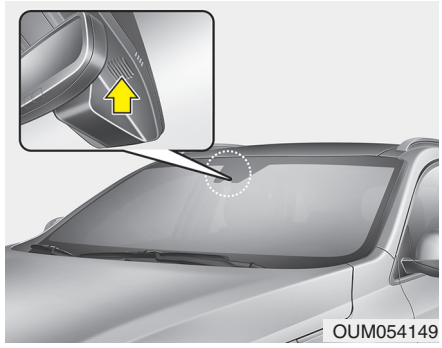
OJF055153L

⚠ CAUTION

The "---" indicator will blink if there is a problem with speed limit control system.

If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

SPEED LIMIT INFORMATION FUNCTION (SLIF) (IF EQUIPPED)



The system displays the information of speed limit and no passing restriction to the driver in both the instrument cluster and navigation screen. SLIF detects traffic signs with camera system attached on the top of the windscreen.

The SLIF also utilizes the navigation information to display the speed limit information.

⚠ WARNING

- **Speed Limit Information Function is only an aid and is not always able to correctly display speed limits and overtaking restrictions.**
- **The driver always keeps the responsibility not to exceed the maximum allowed speed**
- **Do not place any accessories, stickers or tint the windscreen near the rearview mirror.**
- **The system detects traffic signs and displays speed limit information by a camera therefore, if traffic signs are hard to detect, the system may not work properly.**

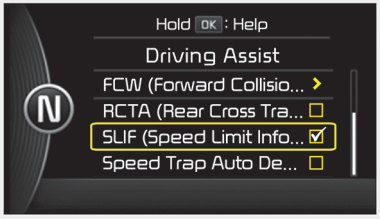
  Please refer to "Driver's Attention".
- **Do not remove any LKAS parts or apply impact.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Do not place objects on the dashboard that reflects light such as mirrors, white paper, etc. The system may malfunction if the sunlight is reflected.**
- **The system is not available in all countries.**

SLIF activation / deactivation

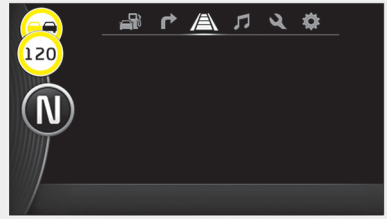


OJF055185L

- SLIF Setting method :

  Cluster User Settings → Driving Assist → SLIF (Speed Limit Information Function)
- The information of speed limit and no passing restriction will appear on the cluster using a symbol if you have activated SLIF in User Settings of cluster.
- If SLIF is activated in navigation setting, the information also displayed in navigation screen.

Operation



OJF055186L

- If a traffic sign that is relevant to your vehicle is passed, the system displays the information of the speed limits and no passing restrictions to the driver.
- When the driver turn on the ignition, the system displays stored information of the speed limit before turn off the ignition.
- Sometimes different speed limits are displayed for the same road. The information displayed depending on the situation. Because, traffic signs with additional sign (e.g rainy, arrow...) are also detected and compared with vehicle interior data(e.g wiper operation, turn signal...).
- The system can update the speed limit information without visible speed limit signs in the following situations.
  - When you change your driving direction with right or left or U turning.
  - When vehicle changes roads. (e.g. from highway to country road…)
  - When you enter or exit into town or village.

✻ NOTICE

If speed limit value has the difference between cluster and navigation, check the speed unit setting in navigation.

Display

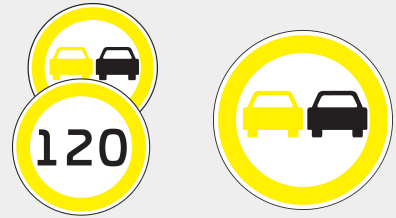
■ No reliable speed limit information



WUM-203

- If the system doesn't have a reliable speed limit information, the following symbol is displayed in both the instrument cluster and navigation screen.

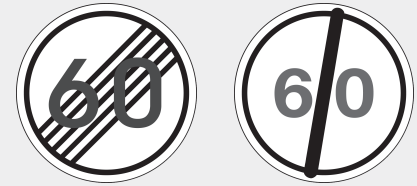
■ No passing information



WUM-206/WUM-204

- If the system detect no passing sign, no passing is displayed in both the instrument cluster and navigation screen.

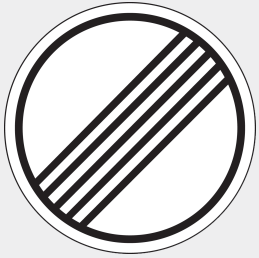
■ End of a speed limit



WUM-207/WUM-208

- After passing "end of speed limitation" sign SLIF provides information from navigation to inform driver of perhaps afterwards applicable speed limit.

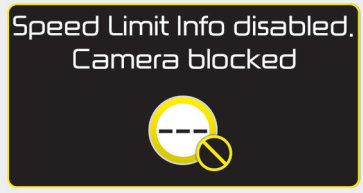
■ Unlimited speed (only in Germany)



WUM-205

- For some areas on highways in germany there's no speed limit applicable. In that case SLIF shows "end of limitation" traffic sign as long as you don't pass another speed limit sign.

Warning message



OJF055233L

The message will appear when camera's field of view is covered by some objects. The system stops until the field of view is normal.

Check the windscreen around the camera view area.

If the system does not work normally even though camera's field of view is cleared, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.



OJF055234L

When SLIF is not working properly, the warning message will come on for a few second. After the message disappears, the master warning light will illuminate.

We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

The system may not fully operate and provide correct information in the following situations.

- Traffic signs are positioned on sharp curve.
- Poorly positioned traffic sign. (eg. Rotated, shaded by any object, damaged…)
- Concealed traffic signs by other vehicle.
- Broken LED traffic signs.
- Poor weather like snow, rain, fog
- Reflected glare around and/or on the traffic sign.
- There is insufficient illumination of the traffic signs in the night.
- There is bright lights around traffic signs.
- There is dirt, ice or frost on the windscreen in the area of the camera.
- When camera field of view is covered by objects such as a sticker, paper, leaf fall.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- When navigation system has malfunction.
- When bus or trucks attached with a speed sticker are passing you.
- When you are at a certain location not covered by the navigation system.
- When the navigation system is not updated to the latest map version.

DRIVER'S ATTENTION

The driver must be cautious in the below situations for the system may not assist the driver and may not work properly.

- Do not stick or attach anything to the windscreen in front of the camera as this may reduce effectiveness or cause one more of the systems dependent on the camera to stop working.
- Keep the windscreen in the area behind the interior rear view mirror clean.
- Do not place reflective materials, such as white paper or a mirror, on the instrument panel.
- Do not strike or damage the areas around the camera unit.
- Do not touch the camera lens or remove the screw located on the camera unit.
- The system does not work in all situations but is designed merely as a supplementary aid.

- The system assists the driver and does not replace the human eye.
- The driver always bears ultimate responsibility for ensuring that the vehicle is driven safely and that applicable road traffic rules and regulations are followed.

ADVANCED SMART CRUISE CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



OUM056156L

① Cruise indicator
② Set speed
③ Vehicle-to-vehicle distance

The advanced smart cruise control system allows you to program the vehicle to maintain constant speed and distance detecting the vehicle ahead without depressing the accelerator or brake pedal.

⚠ WARNING

For your safety, please read the owner's manual before using the advanced smart cruise control system.

✻ NOTICE

To activate advanced smart cruise control, depress the brake pedal at least once after turning the ignition switch to the ON position or starting the engine. This is to check if the brake switch which is important part to cancel advanced smart cruise control is in normal condition.

⚠ WARNING

- **If the advanced smart cruise control is left on, (cruise indicator in the instrument cluster illuminated) the smart cruise control can be activated unintentionally. Keep the smart cruise control system off (cruise indicator turn off) when the smart cruise control is not used.**
- **Use the smart cruise control system only when travelling on open highways in good weather.**
- **Do not use the smart cruise control when it may not be safe to keep the car at a constant speed. For instance.**
  - **Highway interchange and tollgate**
  - **Road surrounded by abnormally multiple steel constructions (subway construction, steel tunnel, etc)**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Parking lot**
- **Lanes beside guard rail on a road**
- **Slippery road with rain, ice, or snow covered**
- **Abrupt curved road**
- **Steep hills**
- **Windy roads**
- **Off roads**
- **Rods under construction**
- **Rumble strip**
- **The sensing ability decreases if the level of front and rear vehicle is changed from the factory.**

• **Pay particular attention to the driving conditions whenever using the smart cruise control system.**

(Continued)

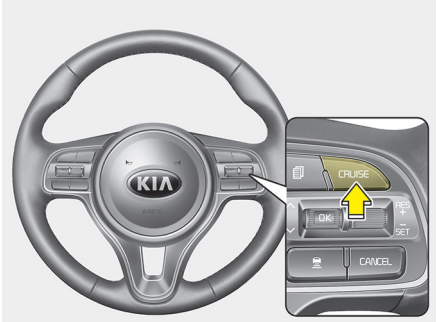
(Continued)

• **The advanced smart cruise control system is not a substitute for safe driving. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the speed and distance of the vehicle ahead.**

• **Be careful when driving downhill using the ASCC.**

Speed setting

To set cruise control speed:



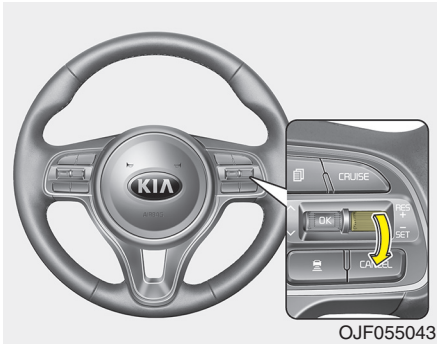
OJF055042

1. Press the CRUISE button, to turn the system on. The CRUISE indicator in the instrument cluster will illuminate.
2. Accelerate to the desired speed.

   The advanced smart cruise control speed can be set as follows:

   • 30 km/h (20mph) ~ 180 km/h (110 mph): when there is no vehicle in front

   • 0 km/h (0 mph) ~ 180 km/h (110 mph): when there is a vehicle in front



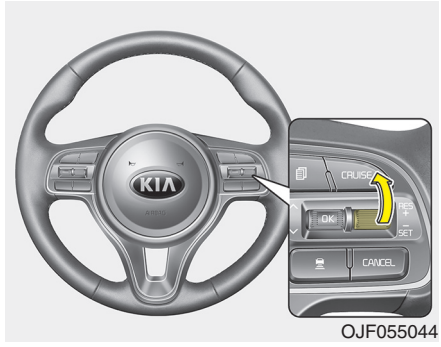
OJF055043

3. Move the lever down (to SET-), and release it at the desired speed. The set speed and vehicle to vehicle distance on the LCD screen will illuminate.
4. Release the accelerator pedal. The desired speed will automatically be maintained.

If there is a vehicle in front of you, the speed may decrease to maintain the distance to the vehicle ahead.

On a steep grade, the vehicle may slow down or speed up slightly whilst going uphill or downhill.

To increase cruise control set speed:

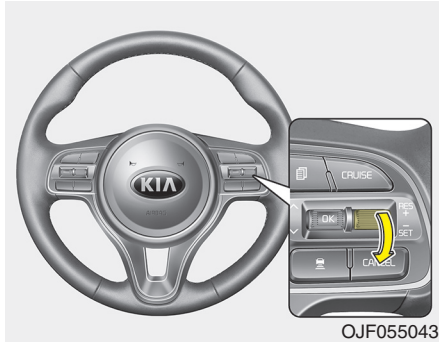


OJF055044

Follow either of these procedures:

- Move the lever up (to RES+), and hold it. Your vehicle set speed will increase by 10 km/h (5 mph). Release the lever at the speed you want.
- Move the lever up (to RES+), and release it immediately. The cruising speed will increase by 1.0 km/h (1.0 mph) each time you move the lever up (to RES+) in this manner.
- You can set the speed to 180 km/h (110 mph).

To decrease the crusie control set speed:



OJF055043

Follow either of these procedures:

- Move the lever down (to SET-), and hold it. Your vehicle set speed will decrease by 10 km/h (5 mph). Release the lever at the speed you want.
- Move the lever down (to SET-), and release it immediately. The cruising speed will decrease by 1.0 km/h (1.0 mph) each time you move the lever down (to SET-) in this manner.
- You can set the speed to 30 km/h (20 mph).

To temporarily accelerate with the cruise control on:

If you want to speed up temporarily when the cruise control is on, depress the accelerator pedal. Increased speed will not interfere with cruise control operation or change the set speed.

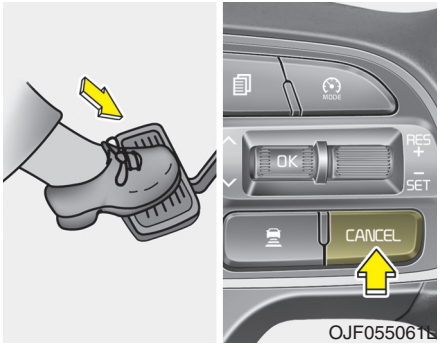
To return to the set speed, take your foot off the accelerator.

If you move the lever down (to SET-) at increased speed, the cruising speed will be set again.

✻ NOTICE

Be careful when accelerating temporarily, because the speed is not controlled automatically at this time even if there is a vehicle in front of you.

Advanced smart cruise control will be temporarily canceled when:



Cancelled manually

The advanced smart cruise control is temporarily canceled when the brake pedal is depressed or the CANCEL button is pressed. The speed and vehicle to vehicle distance indicator on the cluster is disappeared and the CRUISE indicator is illuminated continuously.

Cancelled automatically

- The driver's door is opened.
- The shift lever is shifted to N (Neutral), R (Reverse) or P (Paking).
- The EPB (electronic parking brake) is applied.
- The vehicle speed is over 190 km/h (120 mph)
- The ESC, ABS or TCS is operating.
- The ESC is turned off.
- The sensor or the cover is dirty or blocked with foreign matter.
- When the vehicle is stopped for over 5 minutes.
- The driver starts driving by pushing the lever up (RES +) or down (SET -) or depressing the accelerator pedal approximately 3 seconds after the vehicle is stopped by the advanced smart cruise control System with no other vehicle ahead or a vehicle stopped far away in front.

- The accelerator pedal is continuously depressed for long time.
- The engine speed is in dangerous range.
- The SCC system has malfunctioned.

Each of these actions will cancel the advanced advanced smart cruise control operation. (the set speed and vehicle to vehicle distance on the LCD display will go off.)

In a condition the advanced advanced smart cruise control is cancelled automatically, the advanced smart cruise control will not resume even though the RES+ or SET- lever is moved. Also, the EPB (electronic parking brake) will be applied when the vehicle is stopped.

- When activating the ISG mode.
- When activating the AEB (Autonomous Emergency Braking)

⚠ CAUTION

If the advanced smart cruise control is cancelled by other than the reasons mentioned, we recommend have the system checked by an authorised Kia dealer.



OJF055235L

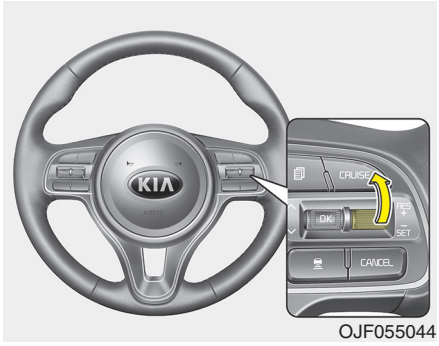
⚠ CAUTION

If the system is automatically cancelled, the warning chime will sound and a message will appear for a few seconds.

You must adjust the vehicle speed by depressing the accelerator or brake pedal according to the road condition ahead and driving condition.

Always check the road conditions. Do not rely on the warning chime.

To resume cruise control set speed:



OJF055044

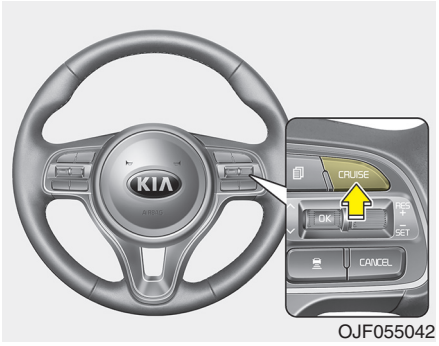
If any method other than the CRUISE button was used to cancel cruising speed and the system is still activated, the cruising speed will automatically resume when you move the lever up (to RES+).

If you move the lever up (to RES+), the speed will resume to the recently set speed. It will not resume if the vehicle speed has dropped below approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).

✻ NOTICE

To reduce the risk of an accident, always check the road conditions when reactivating the advanced smart cruise control using the RES+ lever to ensure the road conditions permit safe use of the cruise control.

To turn cruise control off:

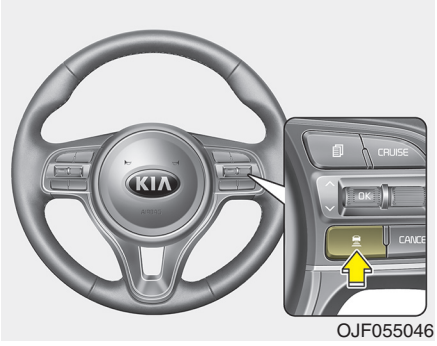


OJF055042

Press the CRUISE button. (the CRUISE indicator in the instrument cluster will go off).

Vehicle to vehicle distance setting

To set vehicle to vehicle distance:



OJF055046

This function allows you to program the vehicle to maintain relative distance to the vehicle ahead without depressing the accelerator pedal or brake pedal.

The vehicle to vehicle distance will automatically activate when the advanced smart cruise control system is on.

Select the appropriate distance according to road conditions and vehicle speed.

Each time the button is pressed, the vehicle to vehicle distance changes as follows:

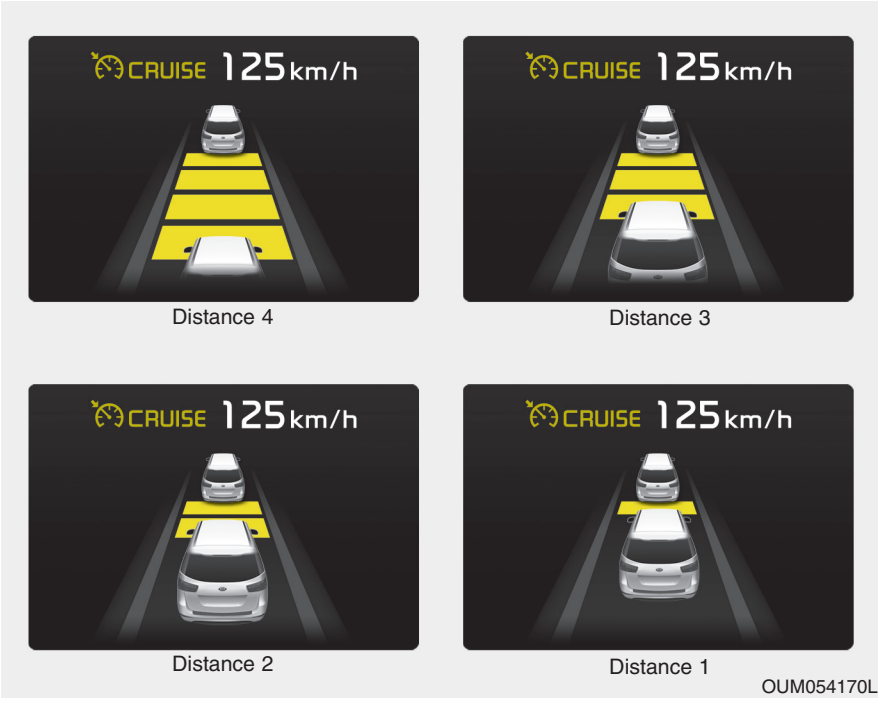
Distance 4 → Distance 3 → Distance 2
↑ Distance 1 ←

For example, if you drive at 90 km/h (56 mph), the distance maintain as follows;

Distance 4 - approximately 52.5 m
Distance 3 - approximately 40 m
Distance 2 - approximately 32.5 m
Distance 1 - approximately 25 m

✻ NOTICE

The 'Distance 4' is always set when the system is used for the first time after starting the engine.
The advanced smart cruise control system remember the last vehicle to vehicle distance which the driver used in the vehicle with AEB.



Distance 4

Distance 3

Distance 2

Distance 1

OUM054170L

- The vehicle will maintain the set speed, when the lane ahead is clear.
- The vehicle will slow down or speed up to maintain the selected distance, when there is a vehicle ahead of you in the lane. (A vehicle will appear in front of your vehicle in the LCD display only when there is an actual vehicle in front of you)
- If the vehicle ahead speeds up, your vehicle will travel at a steady cruising speed after accelerating to the selected speed.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***The warning chime sounds and LCD display blinks if it is hard to maintain the selected distance to the vehicle ahead.***
- ***If the warning chime sounds, actively adjust the vehicle speed by depressing the brake pedal according to the road condition ahead and driving condition.***
- ***Even if the warning chime is not activated, always pay attention to the driving conditions to prevent dangerous situations from occurring.***



OJF055225L

⚠ CAUTION

If the vehicle ahead (vehicle speed: less than 30km/h) disappears to the next lane, the warning chime will sound and a message will appear. Adjust your vehicle speed for vehicles or objects that can suddenly appear in front of you by depressing the brake pedal according to the road condition ahead and driving condition.

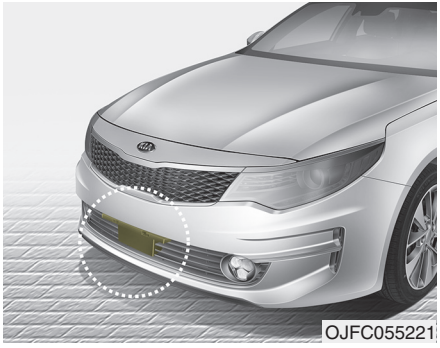
In traffic situation



OJF055100L

In traffic, your vehicle will stop if the vehicle ahead of you stops. Also, if the vehicle ahead of you starts moving, your vehicle will start as well. However, if the vehicle stops for more than 3 seconds, you must depress the accelerator pedal or move up/down the lever (to RES+ or SET-) to start driving.

Radar to detect distance to the vehicle ahead


OJFC055221

The sensor detects the distance to the vehicle ahead.

If the sensor is covered with dirt or other foreign matter, the vehicle to vehicle distance control may not operate correctly.

Always keep the area in front of the sensor clean.

Radar check message



OJF055188L

If the radar or cover is dirty or obscured with foreign matter such as snow, this message will appear and it will disappear after for a whilst. In this case, the system may not function temporarily, but it does not indicate a malfunction of the advanced smart cruise control System. Clean the radar or cover by using a soft cloth and it will operate normally.

SCC (Advanced smart cruise control) malfunction message



OJF055237L

The message will appear when the vehicle to vehicle distance control system is not functioning normally.

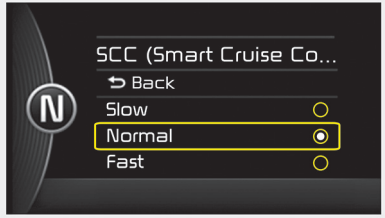
We recommend have the system checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not install accessories around the sensor and do not replace the bumper by yourself. It may interfere with the sensor performance.***
- ***Always keep the sensor and bumper clean.***
- ***To prevent sensor cover damage from occurring, wash the car with a soft cloth.***
- ***Do not damage the sensor or sensor area by a strong impact. If the sensor moves slightly off position, the advanced smart cruise control system will not operate correctly without any warning or indicator from the cluster.***

  If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.
- ***Use only a genuine Kia sensor cover for your vehicle. Do not paint anything on the sensor cover.***

To adjust the sensitivity of advanced smart cruise control



OJF055101L

The sensitivity of vehicle speed when following the front vehicle to maintain the set distance can be adjusted. Go to the User Settings Mode (Driving Assist) and select SCC (Advanced smart cruise control). You may select one of the three stages you prefer.

- Slow:

  Vehicle speed following the front vehicle to maintain the set distance is slower than normal speed.
- Normal:

  Vehicle speed following the front vehicle to maintain the set distance is normal
- Fast:

  Vehicle speed following the front vehicle to maintain the set distance is faster than normal speed.

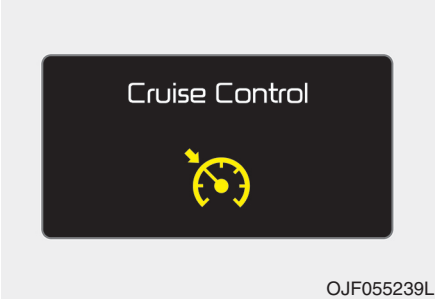
✻ NOTICE

The last selected mode is remained in the system

To convert to cruise control mode:



OJF055238L



OJF055239L

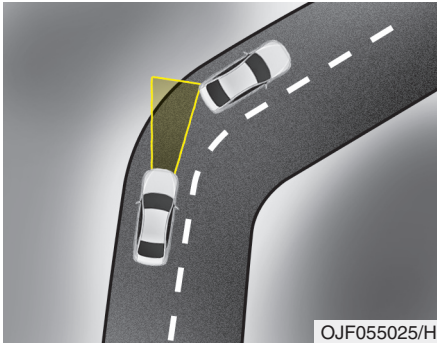
The driver may choose to only use the cruise control mode (speed control function) by doing as follows:

1. Turn the advanced smart cruise control system on (the cruise indicator light will be on but the system will not be activated).
2. Push the distance to distance switch for more than 2 seconds.
3. Choose between "Advanced smart cruise control (SCC) mode" and "Cruise control (CC) mode".

⚠ WARNING

When using the cruise control mode, you must manually access the distance to other vehicles as the system will not automatically brake to slow down for other vehicles.

Limitations of the system

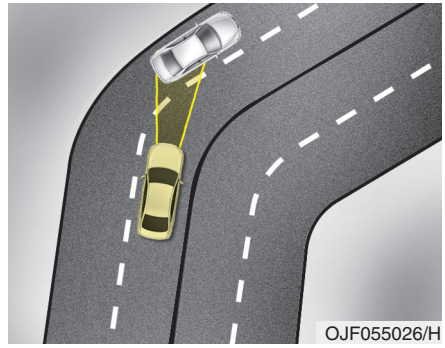


OJF055025/H

The advanced smart cruise control system may have limits to its ability to detect distance to the vehicle ahead due to road and traffic conditions.

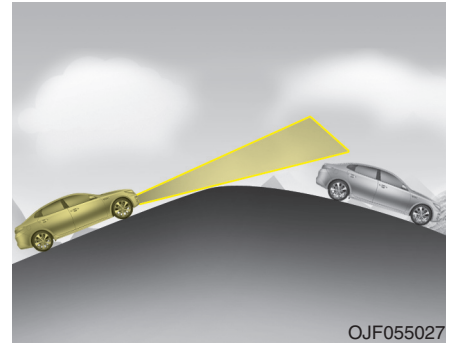
On curves

- On curves, the advanced smart cruise control system may not detect a moving vehicle in your lane, and then your vehicle could accelerate to the set speed. Also, the vehicle speed will rapidly down when the vehicle ahead is recognized suddenly.
- Select the appropriate set speed on curves and adjust your vehicle speed by depressing the accelerator or brake pedal according to the road condition ahead and driving condition.


OJF055026/H

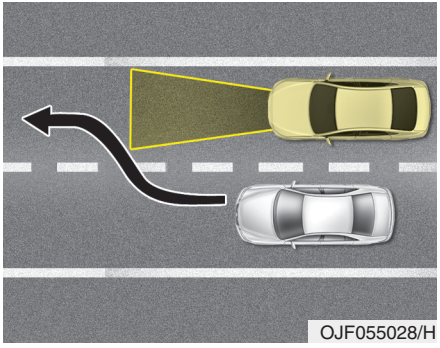
- Your vehicle speed can be reduced due to a vehicle in the adjacent lane. Adjust your vehicle speed by depressing the brake pedal according to the road condition ahead and driving condition. Apply the accelerator pedal and select the appropriate set speed. Check to be sure that the road conditions permit safe operation of the advanced smart cruise control.

On inclines

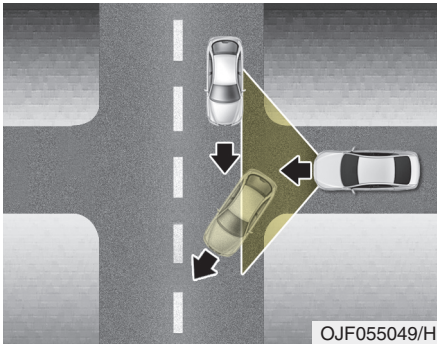

OJF055027

- During uphill or downhill driving, the advanced smart cruise control system may not detect a moving vehicle in your lane, and cause your vehicle to accelerate to the set speed. Also, the vehicle speed will rapidly down when the vehicle ahead is recognized suddenly.
- Select the appropriate set speed on inclines and adjust your vehicle speed by depressing the accelerator or brake pedal according to the road condition ahead and driving condition.

Lane changing

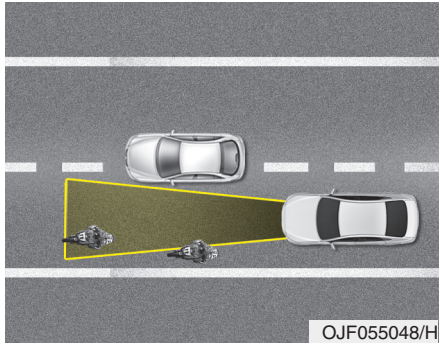

OJF055028/H

- A vehicle which moves into your lane from an adjacent lane cannot be recognized by the sensor until it is in the sensor's detection range.
- The sensor may not detect immediately when a vehicle cuts in suddenly. Always pay attention to the traffic, road and driving conditions.
- If a vehicle which moves into your lane is slower than your vehicle, your speed may decrease to maintain the distance to the vehicle ahead.
- If a vehicle which moves into your lane is faster than your vehicle, your vehicle will accelerate to the selected speed.


OJF055049/H

- Your vehicle may accelerate when a vehicle ahead of you disappears.
- When you are warned that the vehicle ahead of you is not detected, drive with caution.

Vehicle recognition


OJF055048/H

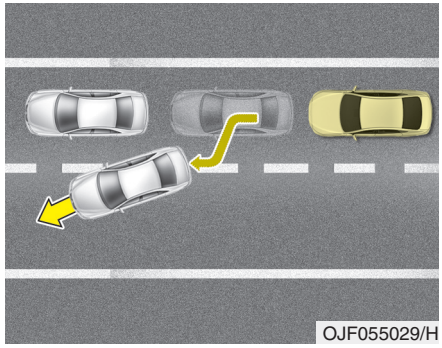
Some vehicles ahead in your lane cannot be recognized by the sensor as follows:

- Narrow vehicles such as motorcycles or bicycles
- Vehicles offset to one side
- Slow-moving vehicles or sudden-decelerating vehicles
- Stopped vehicles
- Vehicles with small rear profile such as trailers with no loads

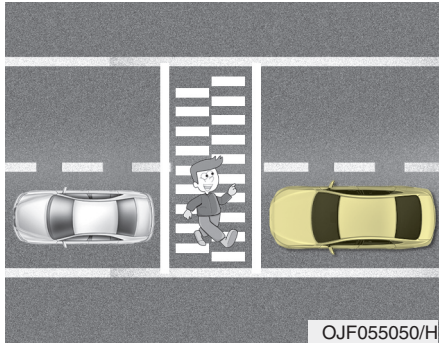
A vehicle ahead cannot be recognized correctly by the sensor if any of following occurs:

- When the vehicle is pointing upwards due to overloading in the trunk
- Whilst making turns by steering
- When driving to one side of the lane
- When driving on narrow lanes or on curves

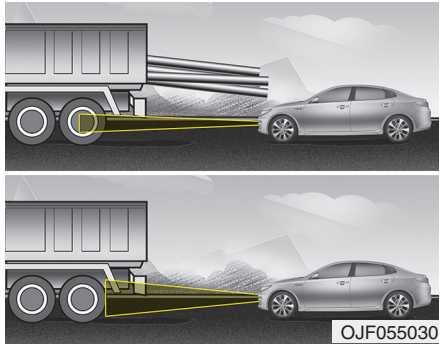
Adjust your vehicle speed by depressing the brake pedal according to the road condition ahead and driving condition.


OJF055029/H

- When vehicles are at a standstill and the vehicle in front of you changes to the next lane, be careful when your vehicle starts to move because it may not recognize the stopped vehicle in front of you.


OJF055050/H

- Always look out for pedestrians when your vehicle is maintaining a distance with the vehicle ahead.


OJF055030

- Always be cautious for vehicles with higher height or vehicles carrying loads that sticks out to the back of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

- **The advanced smart cruise control system cannot guarantee the stop for every emergency situation.**

  If an emergency stop is necessary, you must apply the brakes.
- **Keep a safe distance according to road conditions and vehicle speed. If the vehicle to vehicle distance is too close during a high-speed driving, a serious collision may result.**
- **The advanced smart cruise control system cannot recognize a stopped vehicle, pedestrians or an oncoming vehicle. Always look ahead cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.**
- **SCC system may have difficulty in maintaining the correct distance or speed, if the vehicle is driving on a steep incline or towing a trailer.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **When other vehicles are changing lanes in front of you frequently, the advanced smart cruise control system may not operate appropriately. Always look ahead cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.**
- **The advanced smart cruise control system is not a substitute for safe driving practices but a convenience function only. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the speed and the distance to the vehicle ahead.**
- **Always be aware of the selected speed and vehicle to vehicle distance.**
- **Always maintain sufficient braking distance and decelerate your vehicle by applying the brakes if necessary.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **As the advanced smart cruise control system may not recognize complex driving situations, always pay attention to driving conditions and control your vehicle speed.**
- **For safe operation, carefully read and follow the instructions in this manual before use.**
- **After an engine start, please stop for several seconds. If system initialization is not completed, the SCC does not normally operate.**
- **After an engine start, if any objects are not detected or the sensor cover is obscured with foreign substances, there is a possibility that the SCC system may not work.**
- **Below conditions are not allowed: over baggage loading in a trunk, suspension remodeling, tyre replacement with unauthorized tyres or tyres with different worn-out and pressure levels.**

⚠ CAUTION

The advanced smart cruise control system may not operate temporarily due to electrical interference.

ISG (IDLE STOP AND GO) SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with the ISG system, which reduces fuel consumption by automatically shutting down the engine, when the vehicle is at a standstill. (For example : red light, stop sign and traffic jam)

The engine starts automatically as soon as the starting conditions are met.

The ISG system is ON whenever the engine is running.

✻ NOTICE

When the engine automatically starts by the ISG system, some warning lights (ABS, ESC, ESC OFF, EPS or Parking brake warning light) may turn on for a few seconds.
This happens because of low battery voltage. It does not mean the system has malfunctioned.

Auto stop

To stop the engine in idle stop mode



OJF055031

With Dual clutch transmission

Stop the vehicle completely by pressing the brake pedal and the shift lever is in the D(Drive) or N(Neutral) position

The engine will stop and the green AUTO STOP(Ⓐ) indicator on the instrument cluster will illuminate.

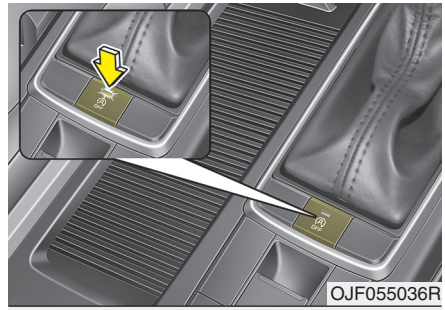


OJF055240L

Also, a message "Auto Stop" will appear on the LCD display.

✻ NOTICE

You must reach a speed of at least 8 km/h (5 mph) since last idle stop. (With Dual clutch transmission)



OJF055036R



OJF055241L

✻ NOTICE

If you open the engine bonnet in auto stop mode, the following will happen (With Dual clutch transmission):

- **The ISG system will deactivate (the light on the ISG OFF button will illuminate).**

(Continued)

■ Type A



OJF055242L

■ Type B



OJF055243L

(Continued)

- **A message "Auto Stop deactivated Start manually" will appear on the LCD display.**

Auto start

To restart the engine from idle stop mode

■ DCT



OJF055085L

With Dual clutch transmission

• Release the brake pedal.

or

• Move the shift gear to the R (Reverse) position or the manual mode whilst depressing the brake pedal.

The engine will start and the green AUTO STOP indicator (Ⓐ) on the instrument cluster will go out.

The engine will also restart automatically without the driver's any actions if the following occurs:

- The fan speed of manual climate control system is set above the 3rd position when the air conditioning is on.
- The fan speed of automatic climate control system is set above the 6th position when the air conditioning is on.
- When a certain amount of time has passed with the climate control system on.
- When the defroster is on.
- The brake vaccum pressure is low.
- The battery charging status is low.
- The vehicle speed exceeds 1 km/h (1 mph). (With Dual clutch transmission)
- Engine is turned off by Auto Stop for a long time. (With Dual clutch transmission)
- If you unfasten the seat belt or open the driver's door whilst depressing the brake pedal. (With Dual clutch transmission)



OJF055244L

The green AUTO STOP (Ⓐ) indicator on the instrument cluster will blink for 5 seconds and a message "Auto Start" will appear on the LCD display.

Condition of ISG system operation

The ISG system will operate under the following condition:

- The driver's seat belt is fastened.
- The driver's door and engine bonnet are closed.
- The brake vaccum pressure is adequate.
- The battery is sufficiently charged.
- The outside temperature is between -10°C to 35°C (14°F to 95°F).
- The engine coolant temperature is not too low.



OJF055245L

✻ NOTICE

- **If the ISG system does not meet the operation condition, the ISG system is deactivated. The light on the ISG OFF button will illuminate and a message "Auto Stop conditions not met" will appear on the LCD display.**
- **If the light or notice comes on continuously, please check the operation condition.**

ISG system deactivation



OJF055241L

- If you wish to deactivate the ISG system, press the ISG OFF button. The light on the ISG OFF button will illuminate and a message "Auto Stop OFF" will appear on the LCD display.
- If you press the ISG OFF button again, the system will be activated and the light on the ISG OFF button will turn off.

ISG system malfunction

The system may not operate when:



The ISG related sensors or system error occurs.

The following will happen:

- The yellow AUTO STOP (Ⓐ) indicator on the instrument cluster will stay on after blinking for 5 seconds.
- The light on the ISG OFF button will illuminate.

✻ NOTICE

- **If the ISG OFF button light is not turned off by pressing the ISG OFF button again or if the ISG system continuously does not work correctly, we recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer as soon as possible.**
- **When the ISG OFF button light comes on, it may stop illuminating after driving your vehicle at approximately 80 km/h for a maximum of two hours and setting the fan speed control knob below the 2nd position. If the ISG OFF button light continues to be illuminated in spite of the procedure, we recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer as soon as possible.**

⚠ WARNING

When the engine is in Idle Stop mode, it's possible to restart the engine without the driver taking any action.

Before leaving the car or doing anything in the engine room area, stop the engine by turning the ignition switch to the LOCK/OFF position or removing the ignition key.

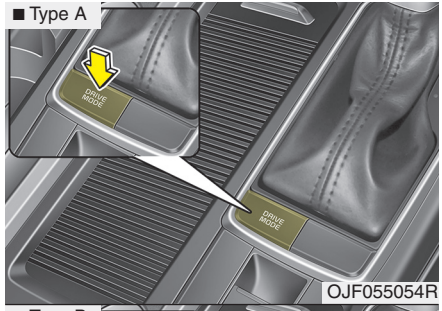
✻ NOTICE

If the AGM battery is reconnected or replaced, ISG function will not operate immediately.
If you want to use the ISG function, the battery sensor needs to be calibrated for approximately 4 hours with the ignition off and then, turn the engine on and off 2 or 3 times.

DRIVE MODE INTEGRATED CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

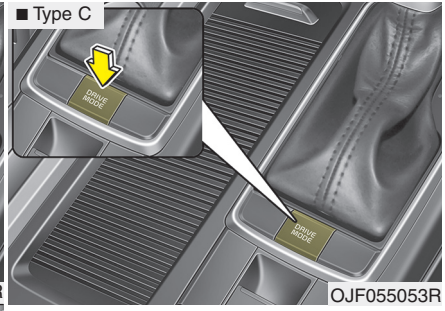
DRIVE mode

■ Type A



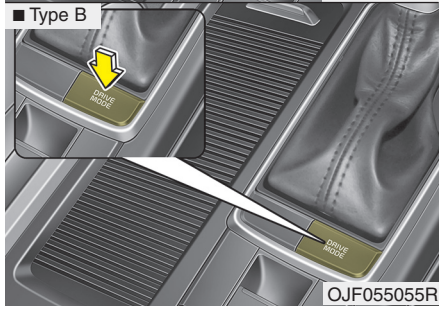
OJF055054R

■ Type C



OJF055053R

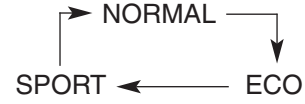
■ Type B



OJF055055R

The drive mode may be selected according to the driver's preference or road condition.

The mode changes whenever the DRIVE MODE button is pressed.



❊ When normal mode is selected, it is not displayed on the cluster.

ECO mode (Active ECO)

ECO

Active ECO helps improve fuel efficiency by controlling certain engine and transaxle system operating parameters. Fuel efficiency depends on the driver's driving habit and road condition.

- When the DRIVE MODE button is pressed and the ECO mode is selected, the ECO indicator (green) will illuminate to show that the Active ECO is operating.
- When the Active ECO is activated, it does not turn off even though the engine is restarted again. To turn off the system, press the DRIVE MODE button again.

When Active ECO is activated:

- The acceleration may slightly be reduced eventhough you depress the accelerator fully.
- The air conditioner performance may be limited
- The shift pattern of the automatic transaxle may change.
- The engine noise may get louder.
- The steering wheel and suspension may be optimized to smooth handling and comfortable ride by ECS.

The above situations are normal conditions when the active eco system is activated to improve fuel efficiency.

Limitation of Active ECO operation:

If the following conditions occur whilst Active ECO is operating, the system operation is limited even though there is no change in the ECO indicator.

- When the coolant temperature is low:

  The system will be limited until engine performance becomes normal.
- When driving up a hill:

  The system will be limited to gain power when driving uphill because the engine torque is restricted.
- When using manual mode:

  The system will be limited according to the shift location.
- When the accelerator pedal is deeply depressed for a few seconds:

  The system will be limited, judging that the driver wants to speed up.

SPORT mode

SPORT

SPORT mode focuses on dynamic driving by automatically controlling the steering wheel, engine and transaxle system.

- When the DRIVE MODE button is pressed and the SPORT mode is selected, the SPROT indicator (yellow) will illuminate.
- When the SPORT mode is activated, and the engine start/stop button is turned off and on it will change to NORMAL mode. To turn on the SPORT mode press DRIVE MODE button again.
- If the system is activated:
  - After speeding, it maintains the gear and RPM for some time even though the accelerator pedal is not depressed.
  - Up-shifting is delayed.
- The steering wheel and suspension may be optimized to sporty handling and hard ride by ECS.

✻ NOTICE

In Sport drive mode, the fuel efficiency may decrease.

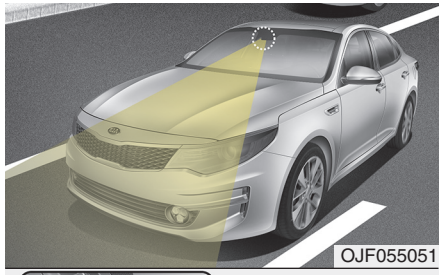
ECS (electronic controlled suspension) malfunction warning message

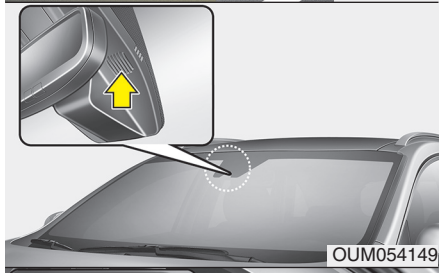


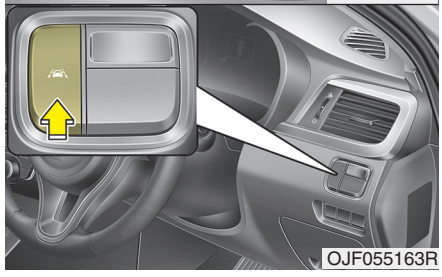
OJF055152L

If the ECS warning message may come on, you may have a problem with the ECS system. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

LANE DEPARTURE WARNING SYSTEM (LDWS) (IF EQUIPPED)


OJF055051


OUM054149


OJF055163R

This system detects the lane with the sensor at the front windscreen and warns you when your vehicle leaves the lane.

⚠ WARNING

- **The LDWS does not make the vehicle change lanes. It is the driver's responsibility to always check the road conditions.**
- **Do not turn the steering wheel suddenly, when the LDWS warns you that your vehicle is leaving the lane.**
- **If the sensor can not detect the lane or if the vehicle speed does not exceed around 60km/h, the LDWS won't warn you even though the vehicle leaves the lane.**
- **If your vehicle has window tint or other types of coating and accessory on the front windscreen, the LDWS may not work properly.**

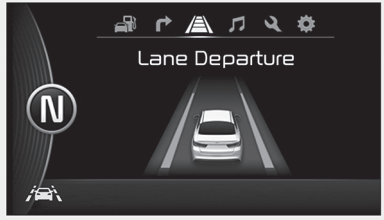
(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Do not let water or any kind of liquid come in contact with the LDWS sensor.**
- **Do not remove the LDWS parts and do not affect the sensor by a strong impact.**
- **Do not put objects that reflect light on the dash board.**
- **Always check road conditions because you may not hear the warning chime because of audio and external conditions.**

To operate the LDWS, press the switch with the ignition in the ON position. The indicator illuminates white on the cluster.

To cancel the LDWS, press LDWS button again. The indicator on the cluster will go off.



OJF055193L

If you select this symbol, the LDWS mode on the LCD display will appear.

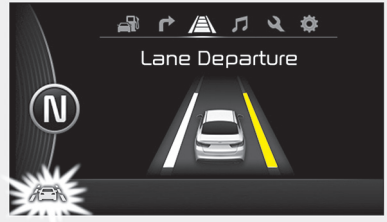
If your vehicle leaves the lane when the LDWS is operating and vehicle speed exceeds around 60km/h, the warning operates as follows:

■ Left lane departure warning



OJF055194L

■ Right lane departure warning



OJF055195L

1. Visual warning

If you leave a lane, the lane you cross will blink (yellow) and LDWS indicator will blink green on LCD during max 3 seconds.

2. Auditory warning

If you leave the lane, the warning sound operates for maximum 3 seconds.

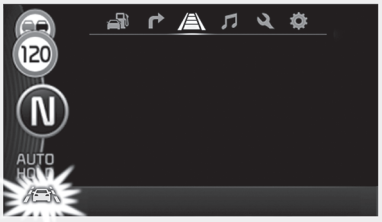
The colour of symbol will change depend on the condition of LDWS system.

- White colour : When you activate the lane departure warning system by pressing the LDWS button, system operating conditions are not satisfied or the sensor does not detect the lane line
- Green colour : When you activate the lane departure warning system by pressing the LDWS button, system operating conditions are satisfied and the sensor detect the lane line
- Yellow colour : When there is a malfunction with the lane departure warning system.

Warning indicator



OJF055246L



OJF055223L

When the LDWS is not working properly, the warning light will illuminate and the warning message will come on for a few second. After the message disappears, the master warning light will illuminate.

We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

The LDWS does not operate when:

- The driver turns on the turn signal or the hazard warning flasher to change lane.
- Driving on the lane line.

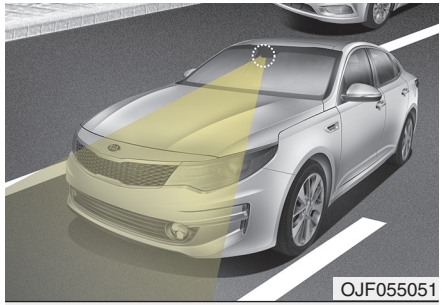
✻ NOTICE

To change lanes, operate the turn signal switch, then change the lane.

The LDWS may not warn you even if the vehicle leaves the lane, or may warn you even if the vehicle does not leave the lane when:

- The lane is not visible due to snow, rain, stain, a puddle or many other things.
- The brightness of the outside changes suddenly.
- The headlights are off at night or in a tunnel.
- The colour of the lane marking from the road is difficult to distinguish.
- Driving on a steep grade or a curve.
- Light reflects from the water on the road.
- The lens or windscreen is stained with foreign matter.
- The sensor can not detect the lane because of fog, heavy rain or heavy snow.
- The surrounding temperature of the inside rear view mirror is high due to a direct ray of light.
- The lane is very wide or narrow.
- The lane line is damaged or indistinct.
- The shadow is on the lane line by a median strip.
- There is a mark similar to a lane line.
- There is a boundary structure.
- The distance from vehicle ahead is very short or the vehicle ahead hides the lane line.
- The vehicle shakes heavily.
- The lane number increases or decreases or the lane lines are crossing complicatedly.
- Putting something on the dashboard.
- Driving with the sun in front of you.
- Driving in areas under construction.
- The lane line is more than two in either side (Left/Right).
- The windscreen is fogged by humid air in the vehicle.

LANE KEEPING ASSIST SYSTEM (LKAS) (IF EQUIPPED)



The Lane Keeping Assist System detects lane markers on the road, and assists the driver's steering to help keep the vehicle between lanes.

When the system detects the vehicle straying from its lane, it alerts the driver with a visual and audible warning, whilst applying a slight counter-steering torque, trying to prevent the vehicle from moving out of its lane.

⚠ WARNING

- **The steering wheel is not continuously controlled so if the vehicle speed is very fast when leaving a lane the vehicle may not be controlled by the system.**
- **It is the responsibility of the driver to drive safely.**
- **Do not steer the steering wheel suddenly when the steering wheel is being assisted by the system.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **LKAS prevents the driver from moving out of the lane unintentionally by assisting the driver's steering. However, the driver should not solely rely on the system but always pay attention on the steering wheel to stay in the lane.**
- **Always check the road condition and surroundings and be cautious when the system cancels, does not operate or malfunctions.**
- **Do not place any accessories, stickers or tint the windscreen near the rearview mirror.**
- **The system detects lane markers and controls the steering wheel by a camera, therefore, if the lane markers are hard to detect, the system may not work properly.**

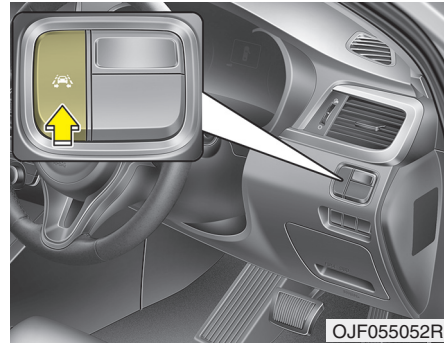
  Please refer to "Driver's Attention".

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Do not remove any LKAS parts or apply impact.**
- **Do not place objects on the dashboard that reflects light such as mirrors, white paper, etc. The system may malfunction if the sunlight is reflected.**
- **Loud audio sounds may interfere with the passenger from hearing warning chimes.**
- **Always have your hands on the steering wheel whilst the LKAS system is activated. If you continue to drive with your hands off the steering wheel after the "Hand on" warning, the system will turn off automatically.**
- **If you drive very fast, the vehicle may stray out of the lane. Always be cautious when using the system.**
- **When you tow the trailer, make sure that you turn off LKAS function.**

LKAS operation


OJF055052R

- To turn on the LKAS, push the button with the ignition switch in the ON position.
- The LKAS indicator (green) will illuminate.
- To turn off the system, press the button again. The indicator turns off.
- LKAS indicator
  - green : LKAS
  - white : LDWS
  - yellow : FAIL

LKAS activation



OJF055130L

- The LKAS screen will appear on the LCD display if the system is activated.
- When both lanes are detected and all the conditions to activate the LKAS are satisfied, the steering wheel will be controlled (green steering wheel indicator will illuminate).

⚠ WARNING

The Lane Keeping Assist System is a system to prevent the driver from leaving the lane. However, the driver should not solely rely on the system but always check the road conditions when driving.

■ Lane undetected ■ Lane detected



OJF055131L/OJF055130L

- If the system detects a lane, the colour changes from black to white.
- If the system detects the left lane, the left lane colour will change from black to white.
- If the system detects the right lane, the right lane colour will change from black to white.
- Both lanes must be detected for the system to fully activate.
- If only one of the lane is detected, the system will warn (warning beep and blinking yellow lane) the driver when the driver crosses the detected lane.

Warning

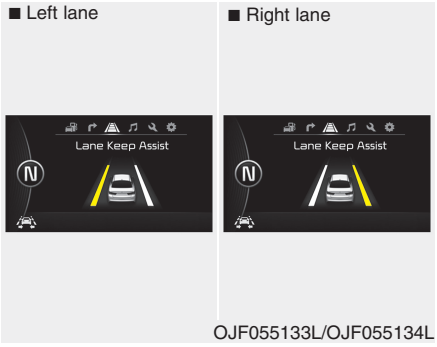
■ Left lane ■ Right lane



OJF055140L/OJF055141L

- If you cross a lane, the lane you cross will blink (yellow) and symbol will blink green on LCD with an audible warning during max 3 seconds.
- If the steering wheel appears, the system will control the vehicle's steering to prevent the vehicle from crossing the lane.

■ Left lane ■ Right lane



OJF055133L/OJF055134L

- If all the conditions to activate LKAS is not satisfied, the system will convert to LDWS and warn the driver only when the driver crosses the lane markers.



OJF055142L

- If the driver takes one's hands off the steering wheel whilst the LKAS is activated, the system will warn the driver after several seconds with a visual and audible warning.

⚠ WARNING

The warning message may appear late according to road conditions. Therefore, always have your hands on the steering wheel whilst driving.

If the driver hold the steering wheel weak whilst the LKAS is activated, the system will recognize the driver's hands off the steering wheel and visual, audible warning will appear.

- If the driver still does not have one's hand on the steering wheel after several seconds, LKAS does not activate. Whilst LKAS deactivation, if the driver have one's hand on the steering wheel, LKAS activate again. The warning message ("Driver's grasp not detected. LKAS will be disabled temporarily) will appear on the LCD.

⚠ WARNING

- **The driver is responsible for accurate steering.**
- **Turn off the system and drive the vehicle personally in below situations.**
  - **In bad weather**
  - **In bad road condition**
  - **When the steering wheel needs to be controlled by the driver frequently.**

✻ NOTICE

- **Even though the steering is assisted by the system, the driver may control the steering.**
- **The steering wheel may feel heavier when the steering wheel is assisted by the system than when it is not.**

The system will be cancelled when:

- Vehicle speed is below 55km/h (34.2mph) and over 180km/h (111.8 mph).
- Only one lane is detected.
- Always turn on the turn signal to change lanes. If you change lanes without the turn signal on, the steering wheel might be controlled.
- The hazard warning light is on.
- The width of the lane is below 2.6 m and over 4.5 m.
- ESC(Electronic Stability Control) and VSM(Vehicle stability management) are activated.
- When the system is on or after changing a lane, drive in the middle of the lane. If not, the system will not provide the steering assist function.
- The steering will not be assisted when you drive fast on a sharp curve.
- The steering will not be assisted when you change lanes fast.
- The steering will not be assisted when you brake suddenly.

DRIVER'S ATTENTION

The driver must be cautious in the below situations for the system may not assist the driver and may not work properly.

- **The lane is not visible due to snow, rain, stain, a puddle or many other things.**
- **The brightness of the outside changes suddenly such as passing through a tunnel.**
- **Not turning on the headlight or the light is weak even at night or in a tunnel.**
- **Difficult to distinguish the colour of the lane marker from the road.**
- **Driving on a steep grade or a curve.**
- **Light reflects from the water on the road such as sunlight, streetlight or the light of oncoming vehicles.**
- **The lens or windscreen is stained with foreign matter.**
- **The surrounding of the inside rear view mirror temperature is high due to direct light.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

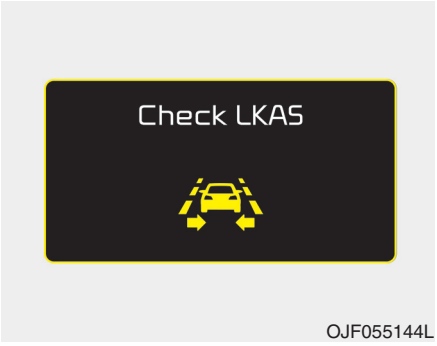
- **The lane is very wide or narrow.**
- **The lane marker is damaged or indistinct.**
- **The shadow is on the lane marker by a median strip.**
- **There is a mark similar to a lane marker.**
- **There is a boundary structure.**
- **The distance from vehicle ahead is very short or the vehicle ahead drives hiding the lane marker.**
- **The vehicle shakes heavily.**
- **The lane number increases or decreases or the lane marker are crossing complicatedly.**
- **Placing something on the dashboard.**
- **Driving with the sun in front of you.**
- **Driving in areas under construction.**
- **The lane marker is more than two.**
- **The lane marker in a tunnel is hard to distinguish due to dust or grease.**
- **The lane marker is hard to distinguish after raining at night.**
- **The lane marker is hard to distinguish due to dust.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **MDPS (motor driven power steering)is not operational.**
- **Some objects are attached in steering wheel.**
- **The windscreen is fogged by humid air in the vehicle.**
- **The distance from the vehicle ahead is very short or the vehicle ahead drives covering the lane line.**
- **The lane line is merged or divided.**
- **Driving through a toll plaza or toll gate.**

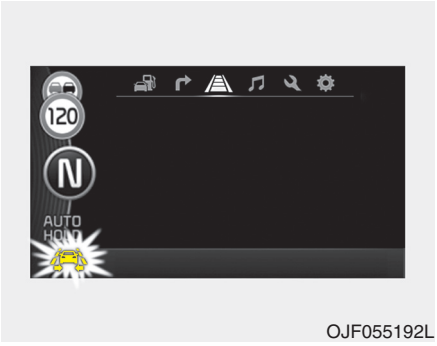
LKAS malfunction



OJF055144L

- If there is a problem with the system a message will appear. If the problem continues the LKAS fail indicator will illuminate.

LKAS fail indicator



OJF055192L

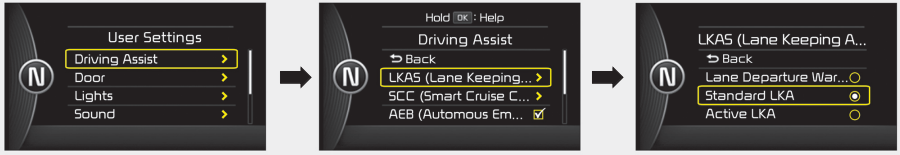
The LKAS fail indicator (yellow) will illuminate with an audible warning if the LKAS is not working properly. We recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.

When there is a problem with the system do one of the following:

- Turn the system on after turning the engine off and on again.
- Check if the ignition switch is in the ON position.
- Check if the system is affected by the weather. (ex: fog, heavy rain, etc.)
- Check if there is foreign matter on the camera lens

If the problem is not solved, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

LKAS function change



OJF055145L/OJF055073L/OJF055146L

The driver can change LKAS to Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) or change the LKAS mode between Standard LKA and Active LKA from the User Settings Mode on the LCD display. The system is automatically set to Standard LKA.

Lane Departure Warning system (LDWS)

- The system can be converted to LKA to LDW at the User setting mode.
- Refer to User setting in section 4.
- LDWS alerts the driver with a visual and audible warning when the system detects the vehicle straying from its lane.
- If the LDWS is operating the indicator green/white will illuminate.
- The steering wheel will not be controlled.

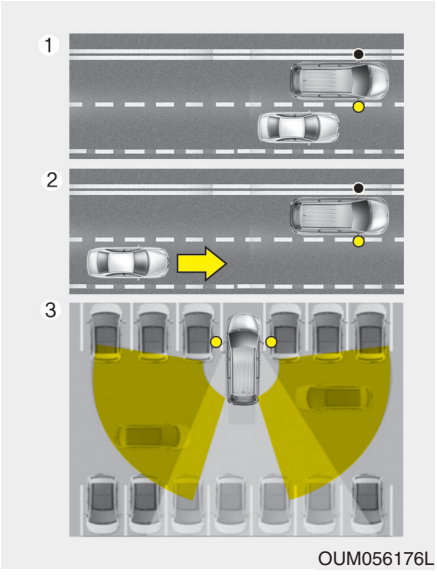
Standard LKA

- LKAS only starts intervention when the vehicle is predicted to cross the line.
- It's useful to a driver who dislikes frequent intervention by LKAS
- LDW is generated when the vehicle is about to cross the line.

Active LKA

- LKAS operates for a vehicle to keep the region of lane centre more efficiently.
- The steering assistance is activated more frequently and earlier than standard LKA.
- LDW is generated when the vehicle is about to cross the line.

BLIND SPOT DETECTION SYSTEM (BSD) (IF EQUIPPED)



OUM056176L

The BSD (Blind spot detection) system uses a radar sensor to alert the driver whilst driving.

It senses the rear side territory of the vehicle and provides information to the driver.

① BSD(Blind spot detection)

Warning range is dependent on your vehicle speed. However, if the speed of your vehicle is faster by 10km/h or more than other nearby vehicles, the warning is not operated.

② LCA(Lane change assist)

When vehicles are approaching to your vehicle at high speed, the warning is operated.

③ RCTA(Rear cross traffic alert)

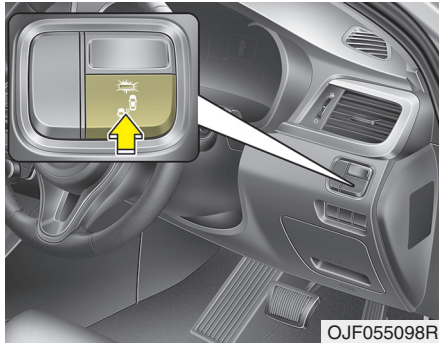
When your vehicle moves backward, the sensor detects approaching vehicles to the left or right side direction and warning is operated.

⚠ WARNING

- **Always check the road condition whilst driving for unexpected situations even though the BSD (Blind spot detection) system is operating.**
- **BSD (Blind spot detection) system is a system made for convenience. Do not solely rely on the system but always pay attention to drive safely.**

BSD (Blind Spot Detection) / LCA (Lane Change Assist)

Operating conditions


OJF055098R

The indicator on the switch will illuminate when the BSD (Blind spot detection) system switch is pressed with the ignition switch ON. If the vehicle speed exceeds 30 km/h (18.6 mph), the system will activate.

If you press the switch again, the switch indicator and system will be turned off.

If the ignition switch is turned OFF and ON the system returns to the previous state.

When the system is not used turn the system off by pressing the switch.

When the system is turned on the warning light will illuminate for 3 seconds on the outside rearview mirror.

Warning type

The system will activate when:

1. The system is on
2. Vehicle speed is above 30 km/h (18.6 mph)
3. Other vehicles are detected in the rear side

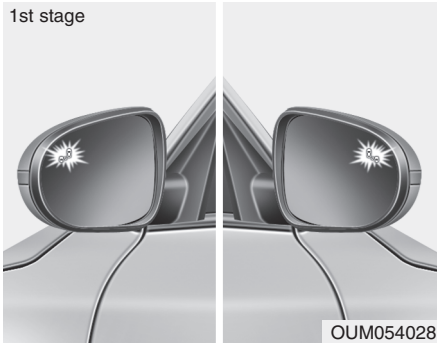
⚠ WARNING

- **Always check the road condition while driving for unexpected situations even though the Blind Spot Detection System (BSD) is operating.**
- **The Blind Spot Detection System (BSD) is a supplemental system to assist you. Do not entirely rely on the system. Always pay attention, while driving, for your safety.**

(Continued)

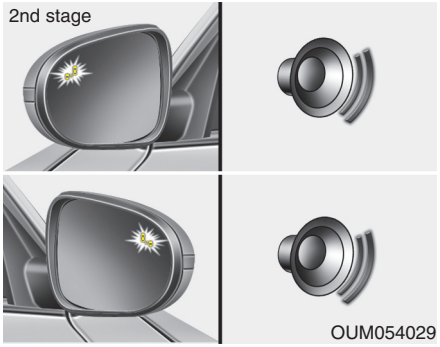
(Continued)

- **The Blind Spot Detection System (BSD) is not a substitute for proper and safe driving. Always drive safely and use caution when changing lanes or backing the vehicle up. The Blind Spot Detection System (BSD) may not detect every object alongside the vehicle.**



If a vehicle is detected within the boundary of the system, a warning light will illuminate on the outside rearview mirror.

If the detected vehicle is not in detection range, the warning will be turned off.



The second stage alarm will activate when:

1. The first stage alert is on
2. The turn signal is on to change a lane

When the second stage alert is activated, a warning light will be blinking on the outside rearview mirror and an alarm will sound.

If you move the turn signal switch to origin position, the second stage alert will be deactivated.

- The second stage alarm can be deactivated.

• To activate the alarm:

  Go to the User Settings Mode → Sound and select "BSD" on the LCD display.

• To deactivate the alarm:

  Go to the User Settings Mode → Sound and deselect "BSD" on the LCD display.

⚠ CAUTION

The alarm function helps alert the driver. Deactivate this function only when it is necessary

Detecting sensor



OJF055150

The sensors are located inside the rear bumper.

Always keep the rear bumper clean for the system to work properly.

Warning message



OJF055091L

The message will appear to notify the driver if there are foreign substances on the surface or inside the rear bumper or it is hot near the rear bumper. The light on the switch and the system will be turned off automatically.

Remove the foreign substance on the rear bumper.

After the foreign substance is removed, if you drive for approximately 10 minutes, the system will work normally.

If the system does not work normally even though the foreign substance is removed, take your vehicle to an authorised Kia dealer and have the system checked.

It is possible to get the message with no foreign substance on the rear bumper, for example, when driving in sparse rural or open area, such as desert, where there is insufficient data for operation.

This message may also activate during heavy rain or due to road spray.

In this case, the vehicle does not need service.



OJF055247L

If the system does not work properly, a warning message will appear and the light on the switch will turn off. The system will turn off automatically.

We recommend you to have the system checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

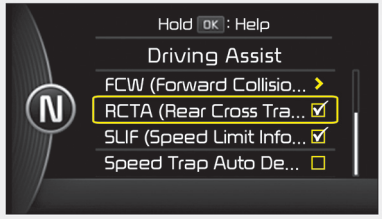
RCTA (Rear cross traffic alert)



OYP054026K

When your vehicle moves backwards from a parking position, the sensor detects approaching vehicles to the left or right side direction and gives information to the driver.

Operating conditions

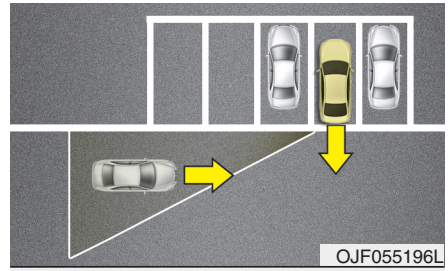


OJF055109L

- Select RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) in "User Settings" under "Driving Assist" on the instrument cluster. The system will turn on and stand by to be activated.
- Select RCTA again, to turn the system off.
- If the vehicle is turned off and on again, the RCTA system will return to the state right before the vehicle was turned off. Turn the RCTA system off when not in use.
- The system is operated when the vehicle speed is below 10km/h with the shift lever in R (Reverse).

- The RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) detection range is 0.5m~20m based on side direction. If an approaching vehicle speed is 4 km/h~36 km/h in detection range, The warning is on. However, the system sensing range is different based on conditions. Always pay attention to surrounding.

Warning type


OJF055196L



OJF055105L



OJF055106L

- If an approaching vehicle detected by sensors, the warning is chime and the warning light will blink on the outside rearview mirror.
- If the detected vehicle is out of detection range, moving away in the opposite direction or moving slow, the warning is cancelled.
- The system may not be operating properly due to other factors or circumstances, so always pay attention to your surrounding.

❊ If the bumper on either side is blocked by a barrier or vehicles, the system sensing ability may be deteriorated.

⚠ WARNING

- **The warning light on the outside rearview mirror will illuminate whenever a vehicle is detected at the rear side by the system.**

  To avoid accidents, do not focus only on the warning light and neglect to see the surrounding of the vehicle.
- **Drive safely even though the vehicle is equipped with a BSD (Blind spot detection) system. Do not solely rely on the system but check for yourself before changing lanes.**

  The system may not alert the driver in some conditions so always check the surroundings whilst driving.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***The system may not work properly if the bumper has been replaced or if a repair work has been done near the sensor.***
- ***The detection area differs according to the roads width. If the road is narrow the system may detect other vehicles in the second next lane.***
- ***On the contrary, if the road is very wide the system may not detect other vehicles in the next lane.***
- ***The system might be turned off due to strong electromagnetic waves.***

Non-operating condition

Outside rearview mirror may not alert the driver when:

- The outside rearview mirror housing is damaged or covered with debris.
- The window is covered with debris.
- The windows are severely tinted.

Driver's Attention

The driver must be cautious in the below situations, because the system may not detect other vehicles or objects in certain circumstances.

- **The vehicle drives on a curved road or through a tollgate.**
- **The sensor is polluted with rain, snow, mud, etc.**
- **The rear bumper, in which the sensor is located, is covered or blocked with a foreign matter such as a sticker, a bumper guard, a bicycle stand, etc.**
- **The rear bumper is damaged, or the sensor is out of the original default position.**
- **The vehicle height gets lower or higher due to heavy loading in a trunk, abnormal tyre pressure, etc.**
- **The vehicle drives in a bad weather such as heavy rain or snow.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **There is a fixed object near the vehicle, such as a guardrail.**
- **A big vehicle is near such as a bus or truck.**
- **A motorcycle or bicycle is near.**
- **A flat trailer is near.**
- **If the vehicle has started at the same time as the vehicle next to you and has accelerated.**
- **When the other vehicle passes at a very fast speed.**
- **Whilst changing lanes.**
- **Whilst going down or up a steep road where the height of the lane is different.**
- **When the other vehicle approaches very close.**
- **When a trailer or carrier is installed.**
- **When the temperature of the rear bumper is high.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **When the sensors are blocked by other vehicles, walls or parking-lot pillars.**
- **When the detected vehicle also moves back, as your vehicle drives back.**
- **If there are small things like shopping cart and baby carriage.**
- **If there is low height vehicle like sport vehicle.**
- **When other vehicles are close to your vehicle.**
- **When the vehicle in the next lane moves two lanes away from you OR when the vehicle two lanes away moves to the next lane from you.**

ECONOMICAL OPERATION

Your vehicle's fuel economy depends mainly on your style of driving, where you drive and when you drive.

Each of these factors affects how many kilometers (miles) you can get from a litre (gallon) of fuel. To operate your vehicle as economically as possible, use the following driving suggestions to help save money in both fuel and repairs:

- Drive smoothly. Accelerate at a moderate rate. Do not make "jackrabbit" starts or full-throttle shifts and maintain a steady cruising speed. Do not race between stoplights. Try to adjust your speed to the traffic so you do not have to change speeds unnecessarily. Avoid heavy traffic whenever possible. Always maintain a safe distance from other vehicles so you can avoid unnecessary braking. This also reduces brake wear.
- Drive at a moderate speed. The faster you drive, the more fuel your vehicle uses. Driving at a moderate speed, especially on the highway, is one of the most effective ways to reduce fuel consumption.
- Do not "ride" the brake or clutch pedal. This can increase fuel consumption and also increase wear on these components. In addition, driving with your foot resting on the brake pedal may cause the brakes to overheat, which reduces their effectiveness and may lead to more serious consequences.
- Take care of your tyres. Keep them inflated to the recommended pressure. Incorrect inflation, either too much or too little, results in unnecessary tyre wear. Check the tyre pressures at least once a month.
- Be sure that the wheels are aligned correctly. Improper alignment can result from hitting curbs or driving too fast over irregular surfaces. Poor alignment causes faster tyre wear and may also result in other problems as well as greater fuel consumption.
- Keep your vehicle in good condition. For better fuel economy and reduced maintenance costs, maintain your vehicle in accordance with the maintenance schedule in section 7. If you drive your vehicle in severe conditions, more frequent maintenance is required (see section 7 for details).
- Keep your vehicle clean. For maximum service, your vehicle should be kept clean and free of corrosive materials. It is especially important that mud, dirt, ice, etc. not be allowed to accumulate on the underside of the vehicle. This extra weight can result in increased fuel consumption and also contribute to corrosion.
- Travel lightly. Do not carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle. Weight reduces fuel economy.
- Do not let the engine idle longer than necessary. If you are waiting (and not in traffic), turn off your engine and restart only when you're ready to go.

- Remember, your vehicle does not require extended warm-up. After the engine has started, allow the engine to run for 10 to 20 seconds prior to placing the vehicle in gear. In very cold weather, however, give your engine a slightly longer warm-up period.
- Do not "lug" or "over-rev" the engine. Lugging is driving too slowly in too high a gear resulting engine bucking. If this happens, shift to a lower gear. Over-revving is racing the engine beyond its safe limit. This can be avoided by shifting at the recommended speeds.
- Use your air conditioning sparingly. The air conditioning system is operated by engine power so your fuel economy is reduced when you use it.
- Open windows at high speeds can reduce fuel economy.
- Fuel economy is less in crosswinds and headwinds. To help offset some of this loss, slow down when driving in these conditions.

Keeping a vehicle in good operating condition is important both for economy and safety. Therefore, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING - Engine off during motion

Never turn the engine off to coast down hills or anytime the vehicle is in motion. The power steering and power brakes will not function properly without the engine running. Instead, keep the engine on and downshift to an appropriate gear for engine braking effect. In addition, turning off the ignition whilst driving could engage the steering wheel lock (if equipped) resulting in loss of vehicle steering which could cause serious injury or death.

SPECIAL DRIVING CONDITIONS

Hazardous driving conditions

When hazardous driving conditions are encountered such as water, snow, ice, mud, sand, or similar hazards, follow these suggestions:

- Drive cautiously and allow extra distance for braking.
- Avoid sudden braking or steering.
- When braking with non-ABS brakes pump the brake pedal with a light up-and-down motion until the vehicle is stopped.

⚠ WARNING - ABS

Do not pump the brake pedal on a vehicle equipped with ABS.

- If stalled in snow, mud, or sand, use second gear. Accelerate slowly to avoid spinning the drive wheels.
- Use sand, rock salt, tyre chains, or other non-slip material under the drive wheels to provide traction when stalled in ice, snow, or mud.

⚠ WARNING - Downshifting

Downshifting with an automatic transaxle, whilst driving on slippery surfaces can cause an accident. The sudden change in tyre speed could cause the tyres to skid. Be careful when downshifting on slippery surfaces.

Rocking the vehicle

If it is necessary to rock the vehicle to free it from snow, sand, or mud, first turn the steering wheel right and left to clear the area around your front wheels. Then, shift back and forth between 1 (First) and R (Reverse) in vehicles equipped with a manual transaxle or R (Reverse) and any forward gear in vehicles equipped with an Automatic Transaxle / Dual clutch transmission. Do not race the engine, and spin the wheels as little as possible. If you are still stuck after a few tries, have the vehicle pulled out by a tow vehicle to avoid engine overheating and possible damage to the transaxle.

⚠ CAUTION

Prolonged rocking may cause engine over-heating, transaxle damage or failure, and tyre damage.

⚠ WARNING - Spinning tyres

Do not spin the wheels, especially at speeds more than 56 km/h (35 mph). Spinning the wheels at high speeds when the vehicle is stationary could cause a tyre to overheat which could result in tyre damage that may injure bystanders.

✻ NOTICE

The ESC system should be turned OFF prior to rocking the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

If your vehicle becomes stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., then you may attempt to rock the vehicle free by moving it forward and backward. Do not attempt this procedure if people or objects are anywhere near the vehicle. During the rocking operation the vehicle may suddenly move forward or backward as it becomes unstuck, causing injury or damage to nearby people or objects.

Smooth cornering


OJF055062L

Avoid braking or gear changing in corners, especially when roads are wet. Ideally, corners should always be taken under gentle acceleration. If you follow these suggestions, tyre wear will be held to a minimum.

Driving at night


OJF055063L

Because night driving presents more hazards than driving in the daylight, here are some important tips to remember:

- Slow down and keep more distance between you and other vehicles, as it may be more difficult to see at night, especially in areas where there may not be any street lights.
- Adjust your mirrors to reduce the glare from other driver's headlights.
- Keep your headlights clean and properly aimed on vehicles not equipped with the automatic headlight aiming feature. Dirty or improperly aimed headlights will make it much more difficult to see at night.
- Avoid staring directly at the headlights of oncoming vehicles. You could be temporarily blinded, and it will take several seconds for your eyes to readjust to the darkness.

Driving in the rain


OJF055064L

Rain and wet roads can make driving dangerous, especially if you're not prepared for the slick pavement. Here are a few things to consider when driving in the rain:

- A heavy rainfall will make it harder to see and will increase the distance needed to stop your vehicle, so slow down.
- Keep your windscreen wiping equipment in good shape. Replace your windscreen wiper blades when they show signs of streaking or missing areas on the windscreen.

- If your tyres are not in good condition, making a quick stop on wet pavement can cause a skid and possibly lead to an accident. Be sure your tyres are in good shape.
- Turn on your headlights to make it easier for others to see you.
- Driving too fast through large puddles can affect your brakes. If you must go through puddles, try to drive through them slowly.
- If you believe you may have gotten your brakes wet, apply them lightly whilst driving until normal braking operation returns.

Driving in flooded areas

Avoid driving through flooded areas unless you are sure the water is no higher than the bottom of the wheel hub. Drive through any water slowly. Allow adequate stopping distance because brake performance may be affected.

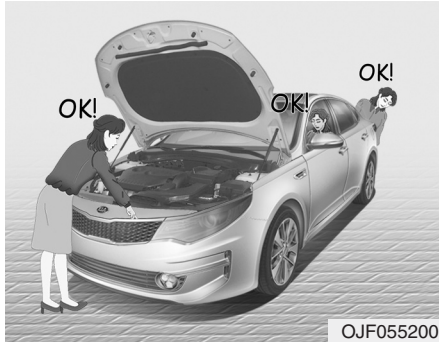
After driving through water, dry the brakes by gently applying them several times whilst the vehicle is moving slowly.

Driving off-road

Drive carefully off-road because your vehicle may be damaged by rocks of roots of trees. Become familiar with the off-road conditions where you are going to drive before you begin driving.

Highway driving

Tyres



Adjust the tyre inflation pressures to specification. Low tyre inflation pressures will result in overheating and possible failure of the tyres.

Avoid using worn or damaged tyres which may result in reduced traction or tyre failure.

✻ NOTICE

Never exceed the maximum tyre inflation pressure shown on the tyres.

⚠ WARNING

- **Underinflated or overinflated tyres can cause poor handling, loss of vehicle control, and sudden tyre failure leading to accidents, injuries, and even death. Always check the tyres for proper inflation before driving. For proper tyre pressures, refer to section 8, "Tyres and wheels".**
- **Driving on tyres with no or insufficient tread is dangerous. Worn-out tyres can result in loss of vehicle control, collisions, injury, and even death. Worn-out tyres should be replaced as soon as possible and should never be used for driving. Always check the tyre tread before driving your vehicle. For further information and tread limits, refer to section 7, "Tyres and wheels".**

Fuel, engine coolant and engine oil

High speed travel consumes more fuel than urban motoring. Do not forget to check both engine coolant and engine oil.

Drive belt

A loose or damaged drive belt may result in overheating of the engine.

WINTER DRIVING

Severe weather conditions in the winter result in greater wear and other problems. To minimise the problems of winter driving, you should follow these suggestions:

Snowy or Icy conditions

To drive your vehicle in deep snow, it may be necessary to use snow tyres or to install tyre chains on your tyres. If snow tyres are needed, it is necessary to select tyres equivalent in size and type of the original equipment tyres. Failure to do so may adversely affect the safety and handling of your vehicle. Furthermore, speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns are potentially very hazardous practices.

During deceleration, use engine braking to the fullest extent. Sudden brake applications on snowy or icy roads may cause skids to occur. You need to keep sufficient distance between the vehicle in operation in front and your vehicle. Also, apply the brake gently. It should be noted that installing tyre chains on the tyre will provide a greater driving force, but will not prevent side skids.

✻ NOTICE

Tyre chains are not legal in all countries. Check the country laws before fitting tyre chains.

Snow tyres

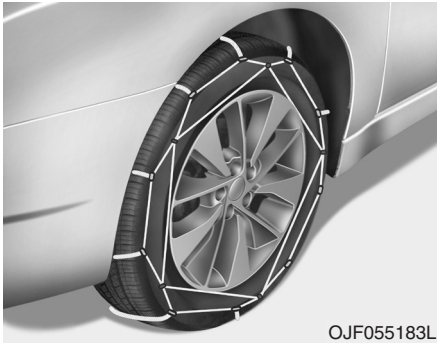
If you mount snow tyres on your vehicle, make sure they are radial tyres of the same size and load range as the original tyres. Mount snow tyres on all four wheels to balance your vehicle's handling in all weather conditions. Keep in mind that the traction provided by snow tyres on dry roads may not be as high as your vehicle's original equipment tyres. You should drive cautiously even when the roads are clear. Check with the tyre dealer for maximum speed recommendations.

⚠ WARNING - Snow tyre size

Snow tyres should be equivalent in size and type to the vehicle's standard tyres. Otherwise, the safety and handling of your vehicle may be adversely affected.

Do not install studded tyres without first checking local, state and municipal regulations for possible restrictions against their use.

Tyre chains



OJF055183L

Since the sidewalls of radial tyres are thinner, they can be damaged by mounting some types of snow chains on them. Therefore, the use of snow tyres is recommended instead of snow chains. Do not mount tyre chains on vehicles equipped with aluminum wheels; snow chains may cause damage to the wheels. If snow chains must be used, use wire-type chains with a thickness of less than 12 mm (0.47 in). Damage to your vehicle caused by improper snow chain use is not covered by your vehicle manufacturers warranty.

Install tyre chains only on the front tyres.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Make sure the snow chains are the correct size and type for your tyres. Incorrect snow chains can cause damage to the vehicle body and suspension and may not be covered by your vehicle manufacturer warranty. Also, the snow chain connecting hooks may be damaged from contacting vehicle components causing the snow chains to come loose from the tyre. Make sure the snow chains are SAE class "S" certified.***
- ***Always check chain installation for proper mounting after driving approximately 0.5 to 1 km (0.3 to 0.6 miles) to ensure safe mounting. Retighten or remount the chains if they are loose.***

Chain installation

When installing chains, follow the manufacturer's instructions and mount them as tightly as you can. Drive slowly with chains installed. If you hear the chains contacting the body or chassis, stop and tighten them. If they still make contact, slow down until it stops. Remove the chains as soon as you begin driving on cleared roads.

⚠ WARNING - Mounting chains

When mounting snow chains, park the vehicle on level ground away from traffic. Turn on the vehicle Hazard Warning flashers and place a triangular emergency warning device behind the vehicle if available. Always place the vehicle in P (Park), apply the parking brake and turn off the engine before installing snow chains.

⚠ WARNING - Tyre chains

- **The use of chains may adversely affect vehicle handling.**
- **Do not exceed 30 km/h (20 mph) or the chain manufacturer's recommended speed limit, whichever is lower.**
- **Drive carefully and avoid bumps, holes, sharp turns, and other road hazards, which may cause the vehicle to bounce.**
- **Avoid sharp turns or locked-wheel braking.**

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Chains that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body and wheels.***
- ***Stop driving and retighten the chains any time you hear them hitting the vehicle.***

Use high quality ethylene glycol coolant

Your vehicle is delivered with high quality ethylene glycol coolant in the cooling system. It is the only type of coolant that should be used because it helps prevent corrosion in the cooling system, lubricates the water pump and prevents freezing. Be sure to replace or replenish your coolant in accordance with the maintenance schedule in section 7. Before winter, have your coolant tested to assure that its freezing point is sufficient for the temperatures anticipated during the winter.

Check battery and cables

Winter puts additional burdens on the battery system. Visually inspect the battery and cables as described in section 7. We recommend that the level of charge in your battery be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

Change to "winter weight" oil if necessary

In some climates it is recommended that a lower viscosity "winter weight" oil be used during cold weather. See section 8 for recommendations. If you aren't sure what weight oil you should use, we recommend that you consult an authorised Kia dealer.

Check spark plugs and ignition system

Inspect your spark plugs as described in section 7 and replace them if necessary. Also check all ignition wiring and components to be sure they are not cracked, worn or damaged in any way.

To keep locks from freezing

To keep the locks from freezing, squirt an approved de-icer fluid or glycerine into the key opening. If a lock is covered with ice, squirt it with an approved de-icing fluid to remove the ice. If the lock is frozen internally, you may be able to thaw it out by using a heated key. Handle the heated key with care to avoid injury.

Use approved window washer anti-freeze in system

To keep the water in the window washer system from freezing, add an approved window washer anti-freeze solution in accordance with instructions on the container. Window washer anti-freeze is available from an authorised Kia dealer and most auto parts outlets. Do not use engine coolant or other types of anti-freeze as these may damage the paint finish.

Don't let your parking brake freeze

Under some conditions your parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or if the brakes are wet. If there is a risk the parking brake may freeze, apply it only temporarily whilst you put the shift lever in P (Automatic Transaxle / Dual clutch transmission) or in first or reverse gear (manual transaxle) and block the rear wheels so the vehicle cannot roll. Then release the parking brake.

Don't let ice and snow accumulate underneath

Under some conditions, snow and ice can build up under the fenders and interfere with the steering. When driving in severe winter conditions where this may happen, you should periodically check underneath the vehicle to be sure the movement of the front wheels and the steering components is not obstructed.

Carry emergency equipment

Depending on the severity of the weather, you should carry appropriate emergency equipment. Some of the items you may want to carry include tyre chains, tow straps or chains, flashlight, emergency flares, sand, shovel, jumper cables, window scraper, gloves, ground cloth, coveralls, blanket, etc.

TRAILER TOWING

If you are considering towing with your vehicle, you should first check with your country's Department of Motor Vehicles to determine their legal requirements.

Since laws vary the requirements for towing trailers, cars, or other types of vehicles or apparatus may differ. We recommend that you ask an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING - Towing a trailer

If you don't use the correct equipment and/or drive improperly, you can lose control when you pull a trailer. For example, if the trailer is too heavy, the brakes may not work well - or even at all. You and your passengers could be seriously or fatally injured. Pull a trailer only if you have followed all the steps in this section.

⚠ WARNING - Weight limits

Before towing, make sure the total trailer weight, GCW (gross combination weight), GVW (gross vehicle weight), GAW (gross axle weight) and trailer tongue load are all within the limits.

⚠ WARNING

When you tow the trailer, make sure that you turn off the ISG and LKAS Function.

✻ NOTICE - For Europe

- **The technically permissible maximum load on the rear axle(s) may be exceeded by not more than 15 % and the technically permissible maximum laden mass of the vehicle may be exceeded by not more than 10 % or 100 kg (220.4 lbs), whichever value is lower. In this case, do not exceed 100 km/h (62.1 mph) for vehicle of category M1 or 80 km/h (49.7 mph) for vehicle of category N1.**
- **When towing a trailer, the additional load imposed at the trailer coupling device may cause the rear tyre maximum load ratings to be exceeded, but not by more than 15%. In such a case, do not exceed 100km/h, and the rear tyre pressure should be at least 20 kPa(0.2 bar) above the tyre pressure(s) as recommended for normal use (i.e. without a trailer attached).**

⚠ CAUTION

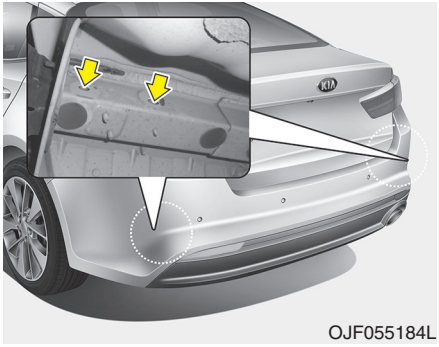
Pulling a trailer improperly can damage your vehicle and result in costly repairs not covered by your warranty. To pull a trailer correctly, follow the advice in this section.

Your vehicle can tow a trailer. To identify what the vehicle trailering capacity is for your vehicle, you should read the information in “Weight of the trailer” that appears later in this section.

Remember that trailering is different than just driving your vehicle by itself. Trailering means changes in handling, durability, and fuel economy. Successful, safe trailering requires correct equipment, and it has to be used properly.

This section contains many time-tested, important trailering tips and safety rules. Many of these are important for your safety and that of your passengers. Please read this section carefully before you pull a trailer.

Load-pulling components such as the engine, transaxle, wheel assemblies, and tyres are forced to work harder against the load of the added weight. The engine is required to operate at relatively higher speeds and under greater loads. This additional burden generates extra heat. The trailer also considerably adds wind resistance, increasing the pulling requirements.



✻ NOTICE - Location of trailer mounting

The mounting hole for hitches are located on both sides of the underbody behind the rear tyres.

Hitches

It's important to have the correct hitch equipment. Crosswinds, large trucks going by, and rough roads are a few reasons why you'll need the right hitch. Here are some rules to follow:

- Do you have to make any holes in the body of your vehicle when you install a trailer hitch? If you do, then be sure to seal the holes later when you remove the hitch.

  If you do not seal them, deadly carbon monoxide (CO) from your exhaust can get into your vehicle, as well as dirt and water.
- The bumpers on your vehicle are not intended for hitches. Do not attach rental hitches or other bumper-type hitches to them. Use only a frame-mounted hitch that does not attach to the bumper.
- Kia trailer hitch accessary is available at an authorised Kia dealer.

Safety chains

You should always attach chains between your vehicle and your trailer. Cross the safety chains under the tongue of the trailer so that the tongue will not drop to the road if it becomes separated from the hitch.

Instructions about safety chains may be provided by the hitch manufacturer or by the trailer manufacturer. Follow the manufacturer's recommendation for attaching safety chains. Always leave just enough slack so you can turn with your trailer. And, never allow safety chains to drag on the ground.

Trailer brakes

If your trailer is equipped with a braking system, make sure it conforms to your country's regulations and that it is properly installed and operating correctly.

If your trailer weight exceeds the maximum allowed weight without trailer brakes, then the trailer will also require its own brakes as well. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for the trailer brakes so you'll be able to install, adjust and maintain them properly.

- Do not tap into or modify your vehicle's brake system.

⚠ WARNING - Trailer brakes

Do not use a trailer with its own brakes unless you are absolutely certain that you have properly set up the brake system. This is not a task for amateurs. Use an experienced, competent trailer shop for this work.

Driving with a trailer

Towing a trailer requires a certain amount of experience. Before setting out for the open road, you must get to know your trailer. Acquaint yourself with the feel of handling and braking with the added weight of the trailer. And always keep in mind that the vehicle you are driving is now a good deal longer and not nearly so responsive as your vehicle is by itself.

Before you start, check the trailer hitch and platform, safety chains, electrical connector(s), lights, tyres and mirror adjustment. If the trailer has electric brakes, start your vehicle and trailer moving and then apply the trailer brake controller by hand to be sure the brakes are working. This lets you check your electrical connection at the same time.

During your trip, check occasionally to be sure that the load is secure, and that the lights and any trailer brakes are still working.

Following distance

Stay at least twice as far behind the vehicle ahead as you would when driving your vehicle without a trailer. This can help you avoid situations that require heavy braking and sudden turns.

Passing

You'll need more passing distance up ahead when you're towing a trailer. And, because of the increased vehicle length, you'll need to go much farther beyond the passed vehicle before you can return to your lane. Due to the added load to the engine when going uphill the vehicle may also take longer to pass than it would on flat ground.

Backing up

Hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. Then, to move the trailer to the left, just move your hand to the left. To move the trailer to the right, move your hand to the right. Always back up slowly and, if possible, have someone guide you.

Making turns

When you're turning with a trailer, make wider turns than normal. Do this so your trailer won't strike soft shoulders, curbs, road signs, trees, or other objects near the edge of the road. Avoid jerky or sudden maneuvers. Signal well in advance before turning or lane changes.

Turn signals when towing a trailer

When you tow a trailer, your vehicle has to have a different turn signal flasher and extra wiring. The green arrows on your instrument panel will flash whenever you signal a turn or lane change. Properly connected, the trailer lights will also flash to alert other drivers you're about to turn, change lanes, or stop.

When towing a trailer, the green arrows on your instrument panel will flash for turns even if the bulbs on the trailer are burned out. Thus, you may think drivers behind you are seeing your signals when, in fact, they are not. It is important to check occasionally to be sure the trailer bulbs are still working. You must also check the lights every time you disconnect and then reconnect the wires.

Do not connect a trailer lighting system directly to your vehicle's lighting system. Use only an approved trailer wiring harness.

An authorised Kia dealer can assist you in installing the wiring harness.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to use an approved trailer wiring harness could result in damage to the vehicle electrical system and/or personal injury.

Driving on grades

Reduce speed and shift to a lower gear before you start down a long or steep downgrade. If you don't shift down, you might have to use your brakes so much that they would get hot and no longer operate efficiently.

On a long uphill grade, shift down and reduce your speed to around 70 km/h (45 mph) to reduce the possibility of engine and transaxle overheating.

If your trailer weighs more than the maximum trailer weight without trailer brakes and you have an automatic transaxle, you should drive in D (Drive) when towing a trailer.

Operating your vehicle in D (Drive) when towing a trailer will minimise heat build up and extend the life of your transaxle.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***When towing a trailer on steep grades (in excess of 6%) pay close attention to the engine coolant temperature gauge to ensure the engine does not overheat.***

  If the needle of the coolant temperature gauge moves across the dial towards "130/H (HOT)", pull over and stop as soon as it is safe to do so, and allow the engine to idle until it cools down. You may proceed once the engine has cooled sufficiently.
- ***You must decide driving speed depending on trailer weight and uphill grade to reduce the possibility of engine and transaxle overheating.***

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ***For vehicles equipped with a dual clutch transmission when towing a trailer on steep grades, the clutch in the transmission could overheat.***

  When the clutch is overheated, the safe protection mode engages. If the safe protection mode engages, the gear position indicator on the cluster blinks with a chime sound.

  At this time, a warning message will appear on the LCD display and driving may not be smooth.

  If you ignore this warning, the driving condition may become worse.

  To return to normal driving condition, stop the vehicle on a flat road and apply the foot brake for a few minutes before driving off.

Parking on hills

Generally, if you have a trailer attached to your vehicle, you should not park your vehicle on a hill. People can be seriously or fatally injured, and both your vehicle and the trailer can be damaged if they unexpectedly roll down hill.

⚠ WARNING - Parking on a hill

Parking your vehicle on a hill with a trailer attached could cause serious injury or death, should the trailer break loose or the brake stops working.

Do not apply the accelerator pedal to hold the vehicle on an uphill.

However, if you ever have to park your trailer on a hill, here is how to do it:

1. Pull the vehicle into the parking space. Turn the steering wheel in the direction of the kerb (left if headed down hill, right if headed up hill).
2. If the vehicle has a manual transaxle, place the car in neutral. If the vehicle has an automatic transaxle, place the car in P (Park).
3. Set the parking brake and shut off the vehicle.
4. Place chocks under the trailer wheels on the down hill side of the wheels.
5. Start the vehicle, hold the brakes, shift to neutral, release the parking brake and slowly release the brakes until the trailer chocks absorb the load.
6. Reapply the brakes, reapply the parking brake and shift the vehicle to R (Reverse) for manual transaxle or P (Park) for automatic transaxle.
7. Shut off the vehicle and release the vehicle brakes but leave the parking brake set.

⚠ WARNING - Parking brake

It can be dangerous to get out of your vehicle if the parking brake is not firmly set.

If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be seriously or fatally injured.

When you are ready to leave after parking on a hill

1. With the manual transaxle in Neutral or Automatic Transaxle / Dual clutch transmission in P (Park), apply your brakes and hold the brake pedal down whilst you:
   - Start your engine;
   - Shift into gear; and
   - Release the parking brake.
2. Slowly remove your foot from the brake pedal.
3. Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
4. Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.

Maintenance when trailer towing

Your vehicle will need service more often when you regularly pull a trailer. Important items to pay particular attention to include engine oil, automatic transaxle fluid, axle lubricant and cooling system fluid. Brake condition is another important item to frequently check. Each item is covered in this manual, and the Index will help you find them quickly. If you're trailering, it is a good idea to review these sections before you start your trip.

Do not forget to also maintain your trailer and hitch. Follow the maintenance schedule that accompanied your trailer and check it periodically. Preferably, conduct the check at the start of each day's driving. Most importantly, all hitch nuts and bolts should be tight.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Due to higher load during trailer usage, overheating might occur in hot days or during uphill driving. If the coolant gauge indicates overheating, switch off the air conditioner and stop the vehicle in a safe area to cool down the engine.***
- ***When towing check transaxle fluid more frequently.***
- ***If your vehicle is not equipped with an air conditioner, you should install a condenser fan to improve engine performance when towing a trailer.***

If you do decide to pull a trailer

Here are some important points if you decide to pull a trailer:

- Consider using a sway control. You can ask a hitch dealer about sway control.
- Do not do any towing with your car during its first 2,000 km (1,200 miles) in order to allow the engine to properly break in. Failure to heed this caution may result in serious engine or transaxle damage.
- When towing a trailer, we recommend that you consult an authorised Kia dealer on additional requirements such as a towing kit, etc.
- Always drive your vehicle at a moderate speed (less than 100 km/h (60 mph)).
- On a long uphill grade, do not exceed 70 km/h (45 mph) or the posted towing speed limit, whichever is lower.
- The chart contains important considerations that have to do with weight:

For Australia

Item		Petrol Engine	
		Theta II 2.4 GDI	Theta II 2.0 T-GDI
		A/T	A/T
Maximum trailer weight kg (lbs.)	Without brake System	750 (1,653)	700 (1,543)
	With brake System	1,700 (3,748)	1,400 (3,086)
Maximum permissible static vertical load on the coupling device kg (lbs.)		80 (176)	80 (176)
Recommended distance from rear wheel centre to coupling point mm (inch)		1,185 (46.6)	

A/T : Automatic transaxle

For Europe

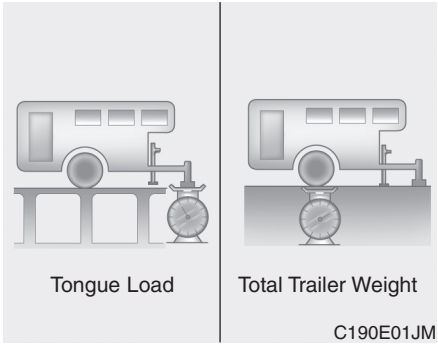
Item		Petrol Engine				Diesel Engine	
		Nu 2.0 CVVL		Theta II 2.4 MPI	Theta II 2.0 T-GDI	U2 1.7	
		A/T	M/T	A/T	A/T	M/T	DCT
Maximum trailer weight kg (lbs.)	Without brake System	650 (1,433)	750 (1,653)	500 (1,102)	700 (1,543)	750 (1,653)	750 (1,653)
	With brake System	1,300 (2,866)	1,700 (3,748)	1,000 (2,205)	1,400 (3,086)	1,800 (3,968)	1,500 (3,307)
Maximum permissible static vertical load on the coupling device kg (lbs.)		80 (176)	80 (176)	80 (176)	80 (176)	80 (176)	80 (176)
Recommended distance from rear wheel centre to coupling point mm (inch)		1,185 (46.6)					

M/T : Manual transaxle

A/T : Automatic transaxle

DCT : Dual clutch transmission

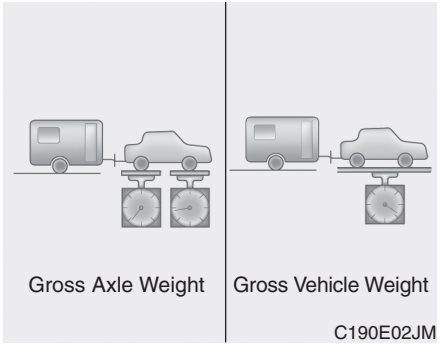
Weight of the trailer



What is the maximum safe weight of a trailer? It should never weigh more than the maximum trailer weight with trailer brakes. But even that can be too heavy.

It depends on how you plan to use your trailer. For example, speed, altitude, road grades, outside temperature and how often your vehicle is used to pull a trailer are all important. The ideal trailer weight can also depend on any special equipment that you have on your vehicle.

Weight of the trailer tongue



The tongue load of any trailer is an important weight to measure because it affects the total gross vehicle weight (GVW) of your vehicle. This weight includes the kerb weight of the vehicle, any cargo you may carry in it, and the people who will be riding in the vehicle. And if you will tow a trailer, you must add the tongue load to the GVW because your vehicle will also be carrying that weight.

The trailer tongue should weigh a maximum of 10% of the total loaded trailer weight, within the limits of the maximum permissible trailer tongue load.

After you've loaded your trailer, weigh the trailer and then the tongue, separately, to see if the weights are proper. If they aren't, you may be able to correct them simply by moving some items around in the trailer.

⚠ WARNING - Trailer

- **Never load a trailer with more weight in the rear than in the front. The front should be loaded with approximately 60% of the total trailer load; the rear should be loaded with approximately 40% of the total trailer load.**
- **Never exceed the maximum weight limits of the trailer or trailer towing equipment. Improper loading can result in damage to your vehicle and/or personal injury. Check weights and loading at a commercial scale or highway patrol office equipped with scales.**
- **An improperly loaded trailer can cause loss of vehicle control.**

✻ NOTICE

With increasing altitude the engine performance decreases. From 1,000m above sea level and for every 1,000m thereafter 10% of vehicle/trailer weight (trailer weighter + gross vehicle weight) must be deducted.

VEHICLE WEIGHT

This section will guide you in the proper loading of your vehicle and/or trailer, to keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of the vehicle design performance. Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's specifications and the certification label:

Base kerb weight

This is the weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

Vehicle kerb weight

This is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.

Cargo weight

This figure includes all weight added to the Base Kerb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment.

GAW (Gross axle weight)

This is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) - including vehicle kerb weight and all payload.

GAWR (Gross axle weight rating)

This is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). These numbers are shown on the certification label.

The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.

GVW (Gross vehicle weight)

This is the Base Kerb Weight plus actual Cargo Weight plus passengers.

GVWR (Gross vehicle weight rating)

This is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). The GVWR is shown on the certification label.

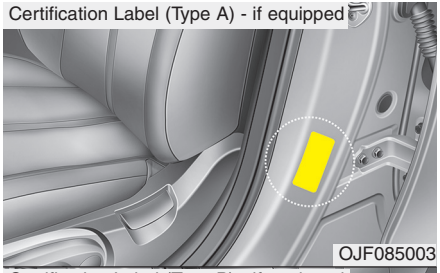
Overloading

⚠ WARNING - Vehicle weight

The gross axle weight rating (GAWR) and the gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) for your vehicle are on the certification label attached to the driver's (or front passenger's) door. Exceeding these ratings can cause an accident or vehicle damage. You can calculate the weight of your load by weighing the items (and people) before putting them in the vehicle. Be careful not to overload your vehicle.

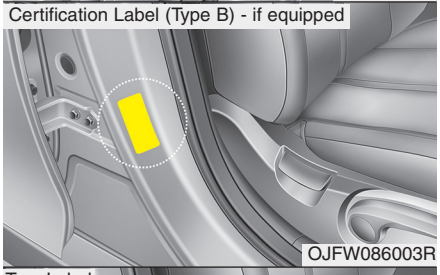
Loading Your Vehicle - For Australia

Certification Label (Type A) - if equipped



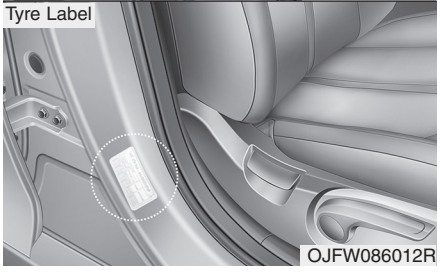
OJF085003

Certification Label (Type B) - if equipped



OJFW086003R

Tyre Label



OJFW086012R

The Certification/Tyre label is found on the front edge of the RH (or LH) “B” pillar. The label shows the size of your original tyres and inflation pressures needed to obtain the gross weight capacity of your vehicle.

This is called the GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating). The GVWR includes the weight of the vehicle, all occupants, fuel and cargo. The Certification/Tyre label also tells you the maximum weights for the front and rear axles, called Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR).

Never exceed the GVWR for your vehicle, or the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for either the front or rear axle. And, if you do have a heavy load, you should spread it out.

✻ NOTICE

Your warranty does not cover parts or components that fail because of overloading.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not load your vehicle any heavier than the GVWR or the maximum front and rear GAWRs. If you do, change to the vehicle may occur, or it can change the way your vehicle handles. These could cause you to lose control. Also, overloading can shorten the life of your vehicle.

What to do in an emergency

Road warning 7-2
- Hazard warning flasher 7-2

In case of an emergency whilst driving 7-3
- If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing. 7-3
- If you have a flat tyre whilst driving 7-3
- If engine stalls whilst driving 7-3

If the engine will not start 7-4
- If engine doesn't turn over or turns over slowly 7-4
- If engine turns over normally but does not start 7-4

Emergency starting 7-5
- Jump starting. 7-5
- Push-starting 7-7

If the engine overheats. 7-8

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 7-9
- Check tyre pressure. 7-9
- Low tyre pressure telltale 7-11
- Low tyre pressure position telltale. 7-11
- TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System) malfunction indicator 7-12
- Changing a tyre with TPMS. 7-13

If you have a flat tyre (with spare tyre) 7-16
- Jack and tools 7-16
- Removing and storing the spare tyre 7-17
- Changing tyres. 7-17
- Jack label 7-24
- EC Declaration of Conformity for Jack 7-25

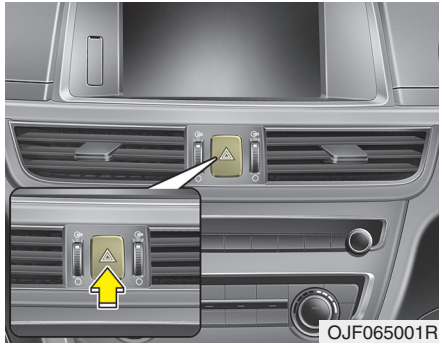
If you have a flat tyre (with Tyre Mobility Kit) . 7-26
- Introduction 7-26
- Components of the Tyre Mobility Kit (TMK) 7-27
- Using the TMK 7-28
- Distributing the sealant. 7-31
- Checking the tyre inflation pressure 7-32
- Notes on the safe use of the Tyre Mobility Kit 7-33
- Technical Data 7-33

Towing 7-34
- Towing service 7-34
- Removable towing hook 7-35
- Emergency towing. 7-35

Emergency commodity 7-38
- Fire extinguisher 7-38
- First aid kit 7-38
- Triangle reflector 7-38
- Tyre pressure gauge 7-38

ROAD WARNING

Hazard warning flasher


OJF065001R

The hazard warning flasher serves as a warning to other drivers to exercise extreme caution when approaching, overtaking, or passing your vehicle.

It should be used whenever emergency repairs are being made or when the vehicle is stopped near the edge of a roadway.

Depress the flasher switch with the ignition switch in any position. The flasher switch is located in the centre console switch panel. All turn signal lights will flash simultaneously.

- The hazard warning flasher operates whether your vehicle is running or not.
- The turn signals do not work when the hazard flasher is on.
- Care must be taken when using the hazard warning flasher whilst the vehicle is being towed.

IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY WHILST DRIVING

If the engine stalls at a cross-road or crossing

- If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing, set the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position and then push the vehicle to a safe place.
- If your vehicle has a manual transaxle not equipped with a ignition lock switch, the vehicle can move forward by shifting to the 2 (second) or 3 (third) gear and then turning the starter without depressing the clutch pedal.

If you have a flat tyre whilst driving

1. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and let the vehicle slow down whilst driving straight ahead. Do not apply the brakes immediately or attempt to pull off the road as this may cause a loss of control. When the vehicle has slowed down to such a speed that it is safe to do so, brake carefully and pull off the road. Drive off the road as far as possible and park on a firm level ground. If you are on a divided highway, do not park in the median area between the two traffic lanes.
2. When the vehicle is stopped, turn on your emergency hazard flashers, set the parking brake and put the transaxle in P (for Automatic transaxle / Dual clutch transmission) or reverse (manual transaxle).
3. Have all passengers get out of the vehicle. Be sure they all get out on the side of the vehicle that is away from traffic.
4. When changing a flat tyre, follow the instruction provided later in this section.

If engine stalls whilst driving

1. Reduce your speed gradually, keeping a straight line. Move cautiously off the road to a safe place.
2. Turn on your emergency flashers.
3. Try to start the engine again. If your vehicle does not start, we recommend that you consult an authorised Kia dealer.

IF THE ENGINE WILL NOT START

If engine doesn't turn over or turns over slowly

1. If your vehicle has an automatic transaxle / dual clutch transmission, be sure the shift lever is in N (Neutral) or P (Park) and the emergency brake is set.
2. Check the battery connections to be sure they are clean and tight.
3. Turn on the interior light. If the light dims or goes out when you operate the starter, the battery is discharged.
4. Check the starter connections to be sure they are securely tightened.
5. Do not push or pull the vehicle to start it. See instructions for "Jump starting".

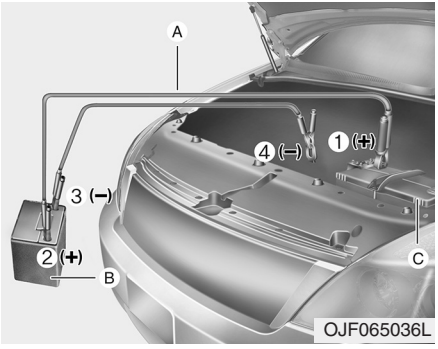
⚠ WARNING

If the engine will not start, do not push or pull the vehicle to start it. This could result in a collision or cause other damage. In addition, push or pull starting may cause the catalytic converter to be overloaded and create a fire hazard.

If engine turns over normally but does not start

1. Check the fuel level.
2. With the ignition switch in the LOCK position, check all connectors at the ignition coils and spark plugs. Reconnect any that may be disconnected or loose.
3. Check the fuel line in the engine compartment.
4. If the engine still does not start, we recommend that you call an authorised Kia dealer.

EMERGENCY STARTING



Connect cables in numerical order and disconnect in reverse order.

✻ (A) : Jumper Cables
(B) : Booster battery
(C) : Discharged battery

Jump starting

Jump starting can be dangerous if done incorrectly. Therefore, to avoid harm to yourself or damage to your vehicle or battery, follow the jump starting procedures. If in doubt, we strongly recommend that you have a competent technician or towing service jump start your vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

Use only a 12-volt jumper system. You can damage a 12-volt starting motor, ignition system, and other electrical parts beyond repair by use of a 24-volt power supply (either two 12-volt batteries in series or a 24-volt motor generator set).

⚠ WARNING - Battery

Never attempt to check the electrolyte level of the battery as this may cause the battery to rupture or explode causing serious injury.

⚠ WARNING - Battery

- **Keep all flames or sparks away from the battery. The battery produces hydrogen gas which may explode if exposed to flame or sparks.**

  If these instructions are not followed exactly, serious personal injury and damage to the vehicle may occur! If you are not sure how to follow this procedure, seek qualified assistance. Automobile batteries contain sulfuric acid. This is poisonous and highly corrosive. When jump starting, wear protective glasses and be careful not to get acid on yourself, your clothing or on the vehicle.

- **Do not attempt to jump start the vehicle if the discharged battery is frozen or if the electrolyte level is low; the battery may rupture or explode.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Do not allow the (+) and (-) jumper cables to touch. It may cause sparks.**
- **The battery may rupture or explode when you jump start with a low or frozen battery.**

Jump starting procedure

1. Make sure the booster battery is 12-volt and that its negative terminal is grounded.
2. If the booster battery is in another vehicle, do not allow the vehicles come in contact.
3. Turn off all unnecessary electrical loads.
4. Connect the jumper cables in the exact sequence shown in the illustration. First connect one end of a jumper cable to the positive terminal of the discharged battery (1), then connect the other end to the positive terminal on the booster battery (2).

   Proceed to connect one end of the other jumper cable to the negative terminal of the booster battery (3), then the other end to a solid, stationary, metallic point (for example, the engine lifting bracket) away from the battery (4). Do not connect it to or near any part that moves when the engine is cranked.

Do not allow the jumper cables to contact anything except the correct battery terminals or the correct ground. Do not lean over the battery when making connections.

⚠ CAUTION - Battery cables

Do not connect the jumper cable from the negative terminal of the booster battery to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. This can cause the discharged battery to overheat and crack, releasing battery acid.

5. Start the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery and let it run at 2,000 rpm, then start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.

If the cause of your battery discharging is not apparent, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

Push-starting

Your manual transaxle-equipped vehicle should not be push-started because it might damage the emission control system.

Vehicles equipped with automatic transaxle / dual clutch transmission cannot be push-started.

Follow the directions in this section for jump-starting.

⚠ WARNING

Never tow a vehicle to start it because the sudden surge forward when the engine starts could cause a collision with the tow vehicle.

IF THE ENGINE OVERHEATS

If your temperature gauge indicates overheating, you will experience a loss of power, or hear loud pinging or knocking, the engine is probably too hot. If this happens, you should:

1. Pull off the road and stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Place the shift lever in P (for Automatic transaxle / Dual clutch transmission) or neutral (manual transaxle) and set the parking brake. If the air conditioning is on, turn it off.
3. If engine coolant is running out under the vehicle or steam is coming out from the bonnet, stop the engine. Do not open the bonnet until the coolant has stopped running or the steaming has stopped. If there is no visible loss of engine coolant and no steam, leave the engine running and check to be sure the engine cooling fan is operating. If the fan is not running, turn the engine off.
4. Check to see if the water pump drive belt is missing. If it is not missing, check to see that it is tight.

   If the drive belt seems to be satisfactory, check for coolant leaking from the radiator, hoses or under the vehicle. (If the air conditioning had been in use, it is normal for cold water to be draining from it when you stop).

⚠ WARNING

Whilst the engine is running, keep hair, hands and clothing away from moving parts such as the fan and drive belts to prevent injury.

5. If the water pump drive belt is broken or engine coolant is leaking out, stop the engine immediately and we recommend that you call an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING

Do not remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot. This can allow coolant to blow out of the opening and cause serious burns.

6. If you cannot find the cause of the overheating, wait until the engine temperature has returned to normal. Then, if coolant has been lost, carefully add coolant to the reservoir to bring the fluid level in the reservoir up to the halfway mark.
7. Proceed with caution, keeping alert for further signs of overheating. If overheating happens again, we recommend that you call an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Serious loss of coolant indicates there is a leak in the cooling system and we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.***
- ***When the engine overheats from low engine coolant, suddenly adding engine coolant may cause cracks in the engine. To prevent damage, add engine coolant slowly in small quantities.***

TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS) (IF EQUIPPED)



OJF065027L

(1) Low tyre pressure telltale / TPMS malfunction indicator

(2) Low tyre pressure position telltale (Shown on the LCD display)

Check tyre pressure



OJF065026L

- You can check the tyre pressure in the information mode on the cluster.
  - Refer to “User settings mode” in chapter 4.
- Tyre pressure is displayed 1~2 minutes later after driving.
- If tyre pressure is not displayed when the vehicle is stopped, “Drive to display” message displays. After driving, check the tyre pressure.
- You can change the tyre pressure unit in the user settings mode on the cluster.
  - psi, kpa, bar (Refer to “User settings mode” in chapter 4).

Each tyre, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label.

(If your vehicle has tyres of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tyre inflation pressure for those tyres.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tyre pressure telltale when one or more of your tyres is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tyre pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tyre causes the tyre to overheat and can lead to tyre failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tyre tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tyre maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tyre pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tyre pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tyre pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately 1 minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the TPMS malfunction indicator remains illuminated after blinking for approximately 1 minute, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tyre pressure as intended.

TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tyres or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tyres or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tyres and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

✻ NOTICE

If any of the below happens, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

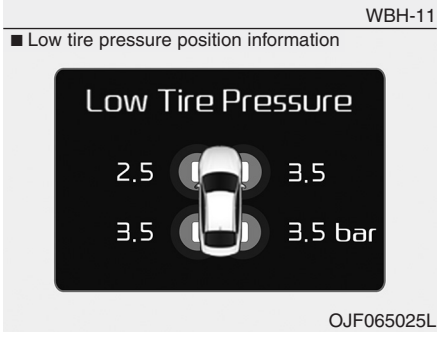
1. **The low tyre pressure telltale/ TPMS malfunction indicator do not illuminate for 3 seconds when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position or engine is running.**
2. **The TPMS malfunction indicator remains illuminated after blinking for approximately 1 minute.**
3. **The Low tyre pressure position telltale remains illuminated.**

Low tyre pressure telltale



WBH-11

■ Low tire pressure position information



OJF065025L

When the tyre pressure monitoring system warning indicators are illuminated and warning massage displayed on the cluster LCD display, one or more of your tyres is significantly under-inflated.

The low tyre pressure position telltale light will indicate which tyre is significantly under-inflated by illuminating the corresponding position light.

If either telltale illuminates, immediately reduce your speed, avoid hard cornering and anticipate increased stopping distances. You should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible. Inflate the tyres to the proper pressure as indicated on the vehicle's placard or tyre inflation pressure label located on the driver's side centre pillar outer panel. If you cannot reach a service station or if the tyre cannot hold the newly added air, replace the low pressure tyre with a spare tyre.

If you drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes at speeds above 25 km/h after replaceing the low pressure tyre with the spare tyre, one of the following will happen:

- The TPMS malfunction indicator may blink for approximately 1 minute and then remain continuously illuminated because the TPMS sensor is not mounted on the spare wheel. (changed tyre equipped with a sensor not in the vehicle)

- The TPMS malfunction indicator will remain continuously illuminated whilst driving because the TPMS sensor is not mounted on the spare wheel. (changed tyre equipped with a sensor in the vehicle)

⚠ CAUTION

In winter or cold weather, the low tyre pressure telltale may illuminate if the tyre pressure was adjusted to the recommended tyre inflation pressure in warm weather. It does not mean your TPMS is malfunctioning because the decreased temperature leads to a lowering of tyre pressure.

When you drive your vehicle from a warm area to a cold area or from a cold area to a warm area, or the outside temperature is higher or lower, you should check the tyre inflation pressure and adjust the tyres to the recommended tyre inflation pressure.

⚠ WARNING - Low pressure damage

Significantly low tyre pressure makes the vehicle unstable and can contribute to loss of vehicle control and increased braking distances.

Continued driving on low pressure tyres can cause the tyres to overheat and fail.



TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System) malfunction indicator

The TPMS malfunction indicator will illuminate after it blinks for approximately one minute when there is a problem with the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System.

We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer to determine the cause of the problem.

✻ NOTICE

If there is a malfunction with the TPMS, the low tyre pressure position telltale will not be displayed even though the vehicle has an under-inflated tyre.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***The TPMS malfunction indicator may blink for approximately 1 minute and then remain continuously illuminated if the vehicle is moving around electric power supply cables or radios transmitter such as at police stations, government and public offices, broadcasting stations, military installations, airports, or transmitting towers, etc. This can interfere with normal operation of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).***
- ***The TPMS malfunction indicator may blink for approximately 1 minute and then remain continuously illuminated if snow chains are used or some separate electronic devices such as notebook computer, mobile charger, remote starter or navigation etc., are used in the vehicle.***

(Continued)

(Continued)

This can interfere with normal operation of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).

Changing a tyre with TPMS

If you have a flat tyre, the low Tyre Pressure and Position telltales will come on. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

We recommend that you use the sealant approved by Kia.

The sealant on the tyre pressure sensor and wheel shall be eleminated when you replace the tyre with a new one.

Each wheel is equipped with a tyre pressure sensor mounted inside the tyre behind the valve stem. You must use TPMS specific wheels. It is recommended that you have your tyres serviced by an authorised Kia dealer.

If you drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes at speeds above 25 km/h after replaceing the low pressure tyre with the spare tyre, one of the following will happen:

- The TPMS malfunction indicator may blink for approximately 1 minute and then remain continuously illuminated because the TPMS sensor is not mounted on the spare wheel. (changed tyre equipped with a sensor not in the vehicle)
- The TPMS malfunction indicator will remain continuously illuminated whilst driving because the TPMS sensor is not mounted on the spare wheel. (changed tyre equipped with a sensor in the vehicle)

You may not be able identify a low tyre by simply looking at it. Always use a good quality tyre pressure gauge to measure the tyre's inflation pressure. Please note that a tyre that is hot (from being driven) will have a higher pressure measurement than a tyre that is cold (from sitting stationary for at least 3 hours and driven less than 1.6 km (1 mile) during that 3 hour period).

Allow the tyre to cool before measuring the inflation pressure. Always be sure the tyre is cold before inflating to the recommended pressure.

A cold tyre means the vehicle has been sitting for 3 hours and driven for less than 1.6 km (1 mile) in that 3 hour period.

⚠ CAUTION

We recommend that you use the sealant approved by Kia if your vehicle is equipped with a Tyre Pressure Monitoring System. The liquid sealant can damage the tyre pressure sensors.

⚠ WARNING - TPMS

- **The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tyre damage caused by external factors such as nails or road debris.**
- **If you feel any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator, apply the brakes gradually and with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.**

⚠ WARNING - Protecting TPMS

Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) components may interfere with the system's ability to warn the driver of low tyre pressure conditions and/or TPMS malfunctions. Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) components may void the warranty for that portion of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING - For EUROPE

- **Do not modify the vehicle, it may interfere with the TPMS function.**
- **The wheels on the market do not have a TPMS sensor.**

  For your safety, we recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorised Kia dealer.
- **If you use the wheels on the market, use a TPMS sensor approved by a Kia dealer.**

  If your vehicle is not equipped with a TPMS sensor or TPMS does not work properly, you may fail the periodic vehicle inspection conducted in your country.

(Continued)

(Continued)

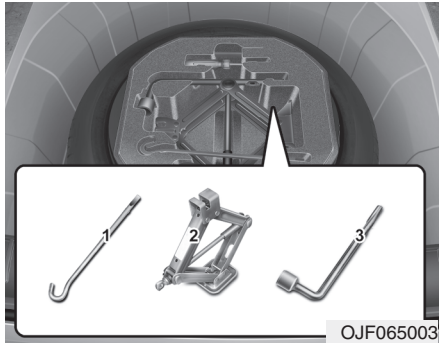
❋ All vehicles sold in the EUROPE market during below period must be equipped with TPMS.

- New model vehicle : Nov. 1, 2012 ~

- Current model vehicle : Nov. 1, 2014~ (Based on vehicle registrations)

IF YOU HAVE A FLAT TYRE (WITH SPARE TYRE, IF EQUIPPED)

Jack and tools



The jack, jack handle, wheel lug nut wrench are stored in the luggage compartment.

Pull up the luggage box cover to reach this equipment.

(1) Jack handle

(2) Jack

(3) Wheel lug nut wrench

Jacking instructions

The jack is provided for emergency tyre changing only.

To prevent the jack from “rattling” whilst the vehicle is in motion, store it properly.

Follow jacking instructions to reduce the possibility of personal injury.

⚠ WARNING - Changing tyres

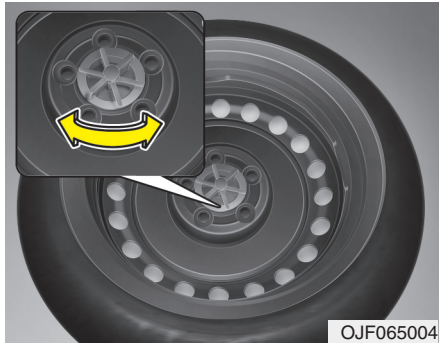
- **Never attempt vehicle repairs in the traffic lanes of a public road or highway.**
- **Always move the vehicle completely off the road and onto the shoulder before trying to change a tyre. The jack should be used on firm level ground. If you cannot find a firm level place off the road, call a towing service company for assistance.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Be sure to use the correct front and rear jacking positions on the vehicle; never use the bumpers or any other part of the vehicle for jacking support.**
- **The vehicle can roll off the jack causing serious injury or death.**
- **Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.**
- **Do not start or run the engine whilst the vehicle is on the jack.**
- **Do not allow anyone remain in the vehicle whilst it is on the jack.**
- **Make sure any children present are in a secure place away from the road and from the vehicle to be raised with the jack.**

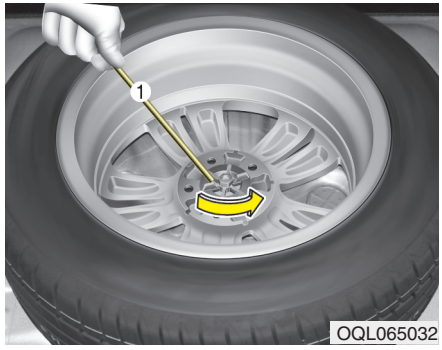
Removing and storing the spare tyre


OJF065004

Turn the tyre hold-down wing bolt counterclockwise.

Store the tyre in the reverse order of removal.

To prevent the spare tyre and tools from “rattling” whilst the vehicle is in motion, store them properly.



OQL065032

If it is hard to loosen the tyre hold-down wing bolt by hand, you can loosen it easily using the jack handle.

1. Put the jack handle (1) inside of the tyre hold-down wing bolt.
2. Turn the tyre hold-down wing bolt counterclockwise with the jack handle.

Changing tyres


OJF055258R

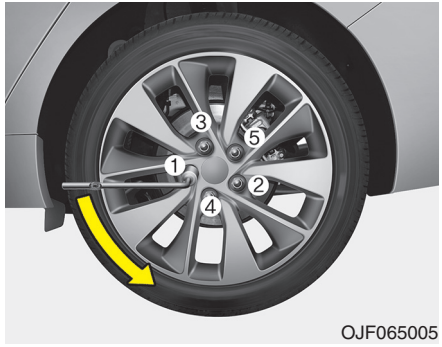
1. Park on a level surface and apply the parking brake firmly.
2. Move the shift lever into R (Reverse) with manual transaxle or P (Park) with automatic transaxle / dual clutch transmission.
3. Activate the hazard warning flasher.


1JBA6504

4. Remove the wheel lug nut wrench, jack, jack handle, and spare tyre from the vehicle.
5. Block both the front and rear of wheel that is diagonally opposite the jack position.

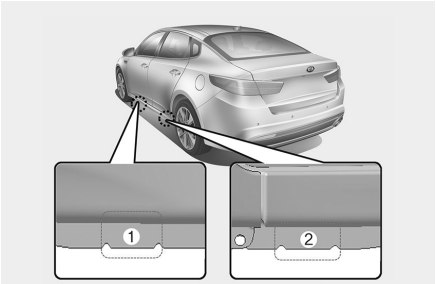
⚠ WARNING - Changing a tyre

- **To prevent vehicle movement whilst changing a tyre, always set the parking brake fully, and always block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed.**
- **We recommend that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.**

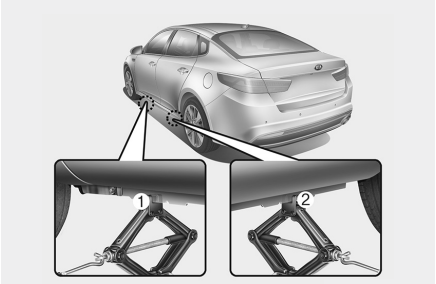


OJF065005

6. Loosen the wheel lug nuts counterclockwise one turn each, but do not remove any nut until the tyre has been raised off the ground.



OJF065007

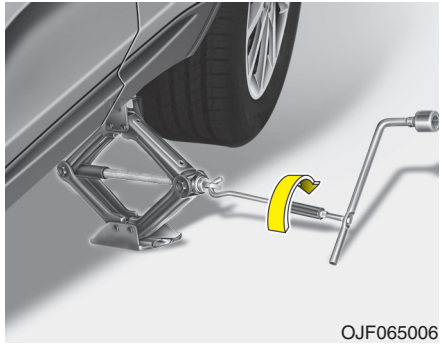


OJF065008

7. Place the jack at thefront(1) or rear(2) jacking position closest to the tyre you are changing. Place the jack at the designated locations under the frame. The jacking positions are plates welded to the frame with two tabs and a raised dot to index with the jack.

⚠ WARNING - Jack location

To reduce the possibility of injury, be sure to use only the jack provided with the vehicle and in the correct jack position; never use any other part of the vehicle for jack support.


OJF065006

8. Insert the jack handle into the jack and turn it clockwise, raising the vehicle until the tyre just clears the ground. This measurement is approximately 30 mm (1.2 in). Before removing the wheel lug nuts, make sure the vehicle is stable and that there is no chance for movement or slippage.

9. Loosen the wheel nuts and remove them with your fingers. Slide the wheel off the studs and lay it flat so it cannot roll away. To put the wheel on the hub, pick up the spare tyre, line up the holes with the studs and slide the wheel onto them.

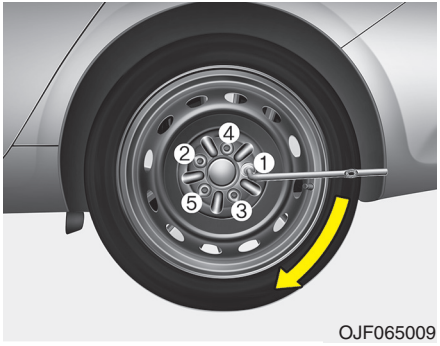
   If this is difficult, tip the wheel slightly and get the top hole in the wheel lined up with the top stud. Then jiggle the wheel back and forth until the wheel can be slid over the other studs.

⚠ WARNING

Wheels may have sharp edges. Handle them carefully to avoid possible severe injury. Before putting the wheel into place, be sure that there is nothing on the hub or wheel (such as mud, tar, gravel, etc.) that interferes with the wheel from fitting solidly against the hub.

If there is, remove it. If there is not good contact on the mounting surface between the wheel and hub, the wheel nuts could come loose and cause the loss of a wheel. Loss of a wheel may result in loss of control of the vehicle. This may cause serious injury or death.

10. To reinstall the wheel, hold it on the studs, put the wheel nuts on the studs and tighten them finger tight. Jiggle the tyre to be sure it is completely seated, then tighten the nuts as much as possible with your fingers again.
11. Lower the vehicle to the ground by turning the wheel nut wrench counterclockwise.



OJF065009

Then position the wrench as shown in the drawing and tighten the wheel nuts. Be sure the socket is seated completely over the nut. Do not stand on the wrench handle or use an extension pipe over the wrench handle. Go around the wheel tightening every other nut until they are all tight. Then double-check each nut for tightness. After changing wheels, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

Wheel nut tightening torque:

Steel wheel & aluminum alloy wheel:

9~11 kgf·m (65~79 lbf·ft)

If you have a tyre gauge, remove the valve cap and check the air pressure. If the pressure is lower than recommended, drive slowly to the nearest service station and inflate to the correct pressure. If it is too high, adjust it until it is correct. Always reinstall the valve cap after checking or adjusting tyre pressure. If the cap is not replaced, air may leak from the tyre. If you lose a valve cap, buy another and install it as soon as possible.

After you have changed wheels, always secure the flat tyre in its place and return the jack and tools to their proper storage locations.

⚠ CAUTION

Your vehicle has metric threads on the wheel studs and nuts. Make certain during wheel removal that the same nuts that were removed are reinstalled - or, if replaced, that nuts with metric threads and the same chamfer configuration are used. Installation of a non-metric thread nut on a metric stud or vice-versa will not secure the wheel to the hub properly and will damage the stud so that it must be replaced.

Note that most lug nuts do not have metric threads. Be sure to use extreme care in checking for thread style before installing aftermarket lug nuts or wheels. If in doubt, consult an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING - Wheel studs

If the studs are damaged, they may lose their ability to retain the wheel. This could lead to the loss of the wheel and a collision resulting in serious injuries.

To prevent the jack, jack handle, wheel lug nut wrench and spare tyre from rattling whilst the vehicle is in motion, store them properly.

⚠ WARNING - Inadequate spare tyre pressure

Check the inflation pressures as soon as possible after installing the spare tyre. Adjust it to the specified pressure, if necessary. Refer to "Tyres and wheels" in chapter 9.

Important - use of compact spare tyre (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with a compact spare tyre. This compact spare tyre takes up less space than a regular-size tyre. This tyre is smaller than a conventional tyre and is designed for temporary use only.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***You should drive carefully when the compact spare is in use. The compact spare should be replaced by the proper conventional tyre and rim at the first opportunity.***
- ***The operation of this vehicle is not recommended with more than one compact spare tyre in use at the same time.***

⚠ WARNING

The compact spare tyre is for emergency use only. Do not operate your vehicle on this compact spare at the speed over 80 km/h (50 mph). The original tyre should be repaired or replaced as soon as possible to avoid failure of the spare possibly leading to personal injury or death.

The compact spare should be inflated to 420 kPa (60 psi).

✻ NOTICE

Check the inflation pressure after installing the spare tyre. Adjust it to the specified pressure, as necessary.

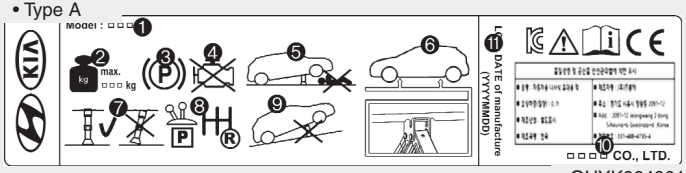
When using a compact spare tyre, observe the following precautions:

- Under no circumstances should you exceed 80 km/h (50 mph); a higher speed could damage the tyre.
- Ensure that you drive slowly enough to avoid all hazards. Any road hazard, such as a pothole or debris, could seriously damage the compact spare.
- Any continuous road use of this tyre could result in tyre failure, loss of vehicle control, and possible personal injury.
- Do not exceed the vehicle's maximum load rating or the load-carrying capacity shown on the sidewall of the compact spare tyre.
- Avoid driving over obstacles. The compact spare tyre diameter is smaller than the diameter of a conventional tyre and reduces the ground clearance approximately 2.5 cm (1 inch), which could result in damage to the vehicle.
- Do not take the vehicle through an automatic car wash whilst the compact spare tyre is installed.
- Do not use tyre chains on the temporary compact tyre. Because of the smaller size, a tyre chain will not fit properly. This could damage the vehicle and result in loss of the chain.
- Temporary compact tyre should not be installed on the front axle if the vehicle must be driven in snow or on ice.
- Do not use the temporary compact tyre on any other vehicle because this tyre has been designed especially for your vehicle.
- The temporary compact tyre tread life is shorter than a regular tyre. Inspect your temporary compact tyre regularly and replace worn compact spare tyres with the same size and design, mounted on the same wheel.
- The temporary compact tyre should not be used on any other wheels, nor should standard tyres, snow tyres, wheel covers or trim rings be used with the temporary compact spare wheel. If such use is attempted, damage to these items or other car components may occur.
- Do not use more than one temporary compact tyre at a time.
- Do not tow a trailer whilst the temporary compact tyre is installed.

Jack label

■ Example

• Type A



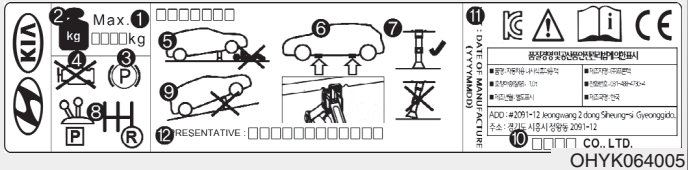
OHYK064001

• Type C



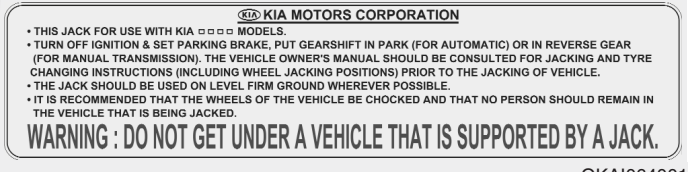
OHYK064002

• Type B



OHYK064005

• Type D (for Australia)

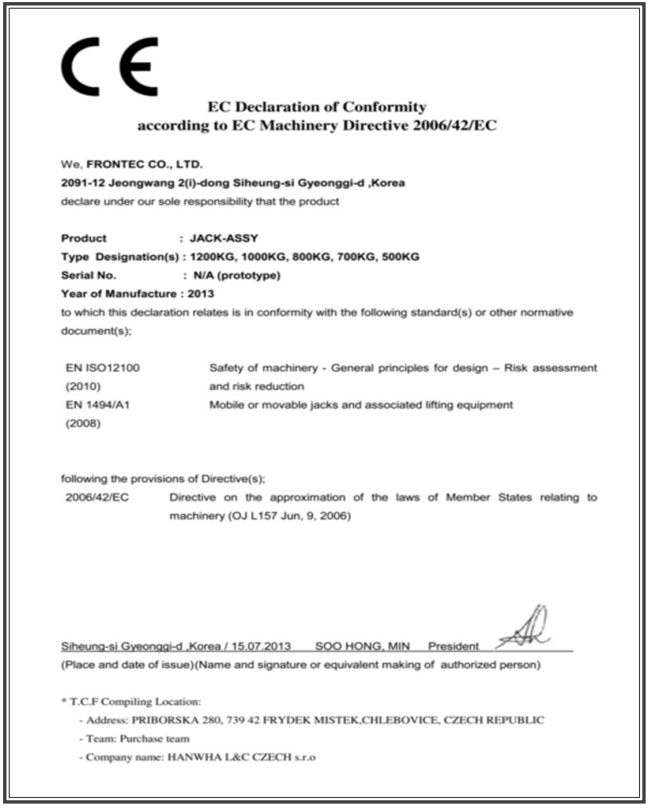


OKAI064001

❊ The actual Jack label in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.
For more detailed specifications, refer to the label attached to the jack.

1. Model Name
2. Maximum allowable load
3. When using the jack, set your parking brake.
4. When using the jack, stop the engine.
5. Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.
6. The designated locations under the frame
7. When supporting the vehicle, the base plate of jack must be vertical under the lifting point.
8. Shift into Reverse gear on vehicles with manual transmission or move the shift lever to the P position on vehicles with automatic transmission.
9. The jack should be used on firm level ground.
10. Jack manufacturer
11. Production date
12. Representative company and address

EC Declaration of Conformity for Jack



CE

EC Declaration of Conformity
according to EC Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC

We, **FRONTEC CO., LTD.**
2091-12 Jeongwang 2(i)-dong Siheung-si Gyeonggi-d ,Korea
declare under our sole responsibility that the product

Product : JACK-ASSY
Type Designation(s) : 1200KG, 1000KG, 800KG, 700KG, 500KG
Serial No. : N/A (prototype)
Year of Manufacture : 2013
to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the following standard(s) or other normative document(s);

EN ISO12100 (2010)	Safety of machinery - General principles for design – Risk assessment and risk reduction
EN 1494/A1 (2008)	Mobile or movable jacks and associated lifting equipment

following the provisions of Directive(s);

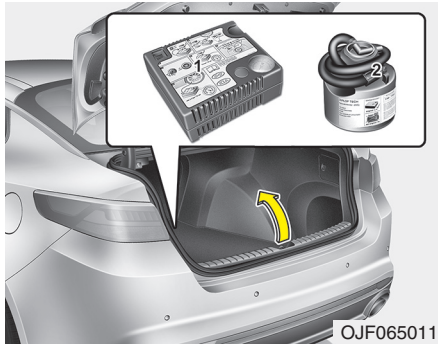
2006/42/EC	Directive on the approximation of the laws of Member States relating to machinery (OJ L157 Jun, 9, 2006)

Siheung-si Gyeonggi-d ,Korea / 15.07.2013 SOO HONG, MIN President
(Place and date of issue)(Name and signature or equivalent making of authorized person)

* T.C.F Compiling Location:
- Address: PRIBORSKA 280, 739 42 FRYDEK MISTEK,CHLEBOVICE, CZECH REPUBLIC
- Team: Purchase team
- Company name: HANWHA L&C CZECH s.r.o

OUM074110L

IF YOU HAVE A FLAT TYRE (WITH TYRE MOBILITY KIT, IF EQUIPPED)



Please read the instructions before using the Tyre Mobility Kit.

(1) Compressor

(2) Sealant bottle

The Tyre Mobility Kit is a temporary fix to the tyre and we recommend that the tyre inspected by an authorised Kia dealer as soon as possible.

⚠ CAUTION - One sealant for one tyre

When two or more tyres are flat, do not use the tyre mobility kit because the supported one sealant of Tyre Mobility Kit is only used for one flat tyre.

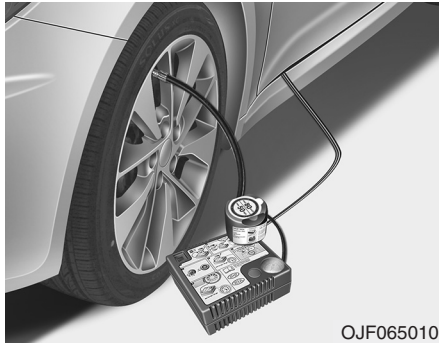
⚠ WARNING - Tyre wall

Do not use the Tyre Mobility Kit to repair punctures in the tyre walls. This can result in an accident due to tyre failure.

⚠ WARNING - Temporary fix

Have your tyre repaired as soon as possible. The tyre may lose air pressure at any time after inflating with the Tyre Mobility Kit.

Introduction



With the Tyre Mobility Kit (TMK) you stay mobile even after experiencing a tyre puncture.

The system of compressor and sealing compound effectively and comfortably seals most punctures in a passenger car tyre caused by nails or similar objects and reinflates the tyre.

After you ensured that the tyre is properly sealed you can drive cautiously on the tyre (up to 200 km (120 miles)) at a max. speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) in order to reach a vehicle or tyre dealer to have the tyre replaced.

It is possible that some tyres, especially with larger punctures or damage to the sidewall, cannot be sealed completely.

Air pressure loss in the tyre may adversely affect tyre performance.

For this reason, you should avoid abrupt steering or other driving maneuvers, especially if the vehicle is heavily loaded or if a trailer is in use.

The TMK is not designed or intended as a permanent tyre repair method and is to be used for one tyre only.

This instruction shows you step by step how to temporarily seal the puncture simply and reliably.

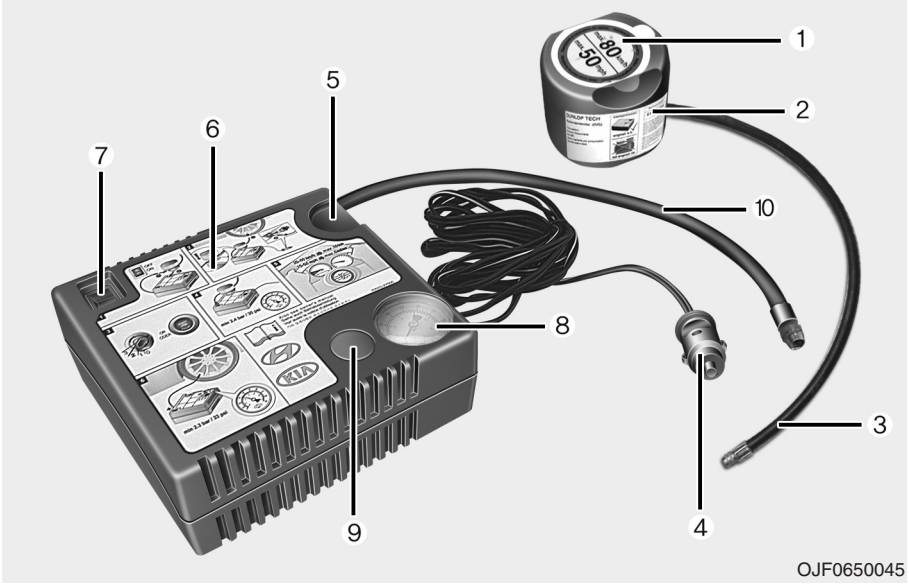
Read the section "Notes on the safe use of the TMK".

⚠ WARNING

Do not use the TMK if a tyre is severely damaged by driving run flat or with insufficient air pressure.

Only punctured areas located within the tread region of the tyre can be sealed using the TMK.

Components of the Tyre Mobility Kit (TMK)



1. Speed restriction label
2. Sealant bottle and label with speed restriction
3. Filling hose from sealant bottle to wheel
4. Connectors and cable for the battery direct connection
5. Holder for the sealant bottle
6. Compressor
7. On/off switch
8. Pressure gauge for displaying the tyre inflation pressure

9. Button for reducing tyre inflation pressure
10. Hose to connect compressor and sealant bottle or compressor and wheel

Connectors, cable and connection hose are stored in the compressor housing.

⚠ WARNING - Expired sealant

Do not use the tyre sealant after the sealant has expired (i.e. pasted the expiration date on the sealant container). This can increase the risk of tyre failure.

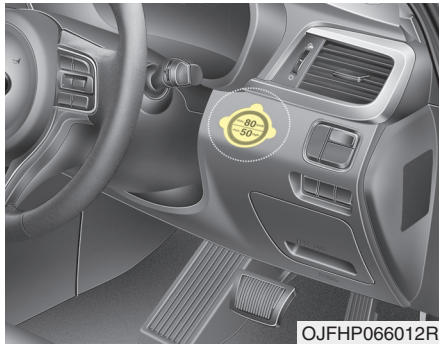
⚠ WARNING - Sealant

- **Keep out of reach of children.**
- **Avoid contact with eyes.**
- **Do not swallow.**

Strictly follow the specified sequence, otherwise the sealant may escape under high pressure.

Using the TMK

1. Detach the speed restriction label (1) from the sealant bottle (2), and place it in a highly visible place inside the vehicle such as on the steering wheel to remind the driver not to drive too fast.



OJFHP066012R

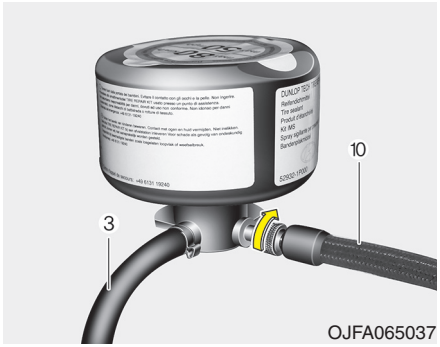
⚠ CAUTION

Before using the tyre repair kit, please read carefully the instruction attached on the sealant case. Detach the speed limit label on the sealant case and put it on a highly visible place. Always drive within the speed limit.


OTAM061022

Carefully follow below steps.

2. Shake the sealant case.



OJFA065037

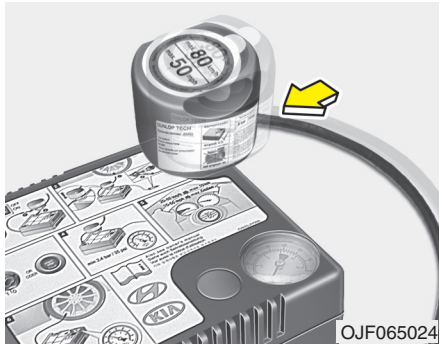
3.Screw connection hose (10) onto the connector of the sealant bottle.

4.Ensure that button (9) on the compressor is not pressed.



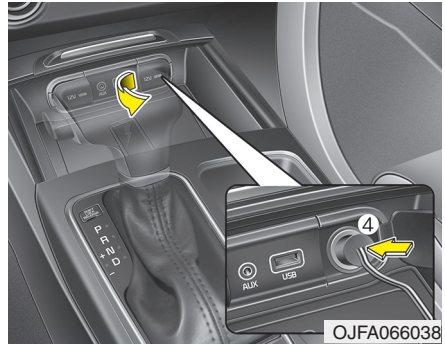
OJFA065013

5.Unscrew the valve cap from the valve of the flat tyre and screw filling hose (3) of the sealant bottle onto the valve.



6.Insert the sealant bottle into the housing (5) of the compressor so that the bottle is upright.

7.Ensure that the compressor is switched off, position 0.



8.Plug the compressor power cord into the vehicle battery.

9.With the engine start/stop button position on or ignition switch position on, switch on the compressor and let it run for approximately 5~7 minutes to fill the sealant up to proper pressure. (refer to the Tyre and Wheels, chapter 9). The inflation pressure of the tyre after filling is unimportant and will be checked/corrected later.

Be careful not to overinflate the tyre and stay away from the tyre when filling it.

When the tyre and wheel are damaged, do not use Tyre Mobility Kit for your safety.

⚠ CAUTION - Tyre pressure

Do not attempt to drive your vehicle if the tyre pressure is below 200 kpa (29 psi). This could result in an accident due to sudden tyre failure.

10. Switch off the compressor.
11. Detach the hoses from the sealant bottle connector and from the tyre valve.

Return the TMK to its storage location in the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING - Carbon monoxide

Carbon monoxide poisoning and suffocation is possible if the engine is left running in a poorly ventilated or unventilated location (such as inside a building).

Distributing the sealant

12. Immediately drive approximately 7~10km (4~6miles or, about 10min) to evenly distribute the sealant in the tyre.

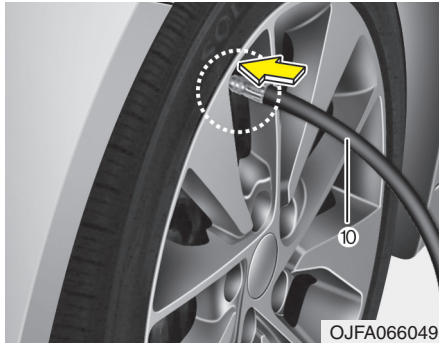
⚠ CAUTION

Do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h (50 mph). If possible, do not fall below a speed of 20 km/h (12 mph).

Whilst driving, if you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise, reduce your speed and drive with caution until you can safely pull off of the side of the road. Call for road side service or towing.

When you use the Tyre Mobility Kit, the tyre pressure sensors and wheel may be stained by sealant. Therefore, remove the tyre pressure sensors and wheel stained by sealant and we recommend that inspect at an authorised Kia dealer.

Checking the tyre inflation pressure



1. After driving approximately 7~10 km (4~6 miles or about 10 minutes), stop at a suitable location.
2. Connect connection hose (10) of the compressor directly to the tyre valve.
3. Connect between compressor and the vehicle power outlet using the cable and connectors.
4. Adjust the tyre inflation pressure to 200 kPa (29 psi). With the ignition switched on, proceed as follows.
   - **To increase the inflation pressure:** Switch on the compressor, position I. To check the current inflation pressure setting, briefly switch off the compressor.

⚠ WARNING

Do not let the compressor run for more than 10 minutes, otherwise the device will overheat and may be damaged.

   - **To reduce the inflation pressure:** Press the button (9) on the compressor.

⚠ CAUTION

If the inflation pressure is not maintained, drive the vehicle a second time, refer to Distributing the sealant. Then repeat steps 1 to 4.

Use of the TMK may be ineffectual for tyre damage larger than approximately 4 mm (0.16 in).

We recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer if the tyre cannot be made roadworthy with the Tyre Mobility Kit.

⚠ WARNING

The tyre inflation pressure must be at least 200 kPa (29 psi). If it is not, do not continue driving.

Call for road side service or towing.

Notes on the safe use of the Tyre Mobility Kit

- Park your car at the side of the road so that you can work with the TMK away from moving traffic. Place your warning triangle in a prominent place to make passing vehicles aware of your location.
- To be sure your vehicle will not move, even when you're on fairly level ground, always set your parking brake.
- Only use the TMK for sealing/inflation passenger car tyres. Do not use on motorcycles, bicycles or any other type of tyres.
- Do not remove any foreign objects-such as nails or screws -that have penetrated the tyre.
- Before using the TMK, read the precautionary advice printed on the sealant bottle!
- Provided the car is outdoors, leave the engine running. Otherwise operating the compressor may eventually drain the car battery.
- Never leave the TMK unattended whilst it is being used.
- Do not leave the compressor running for more than 10 min. at a time or it may overheat.
- Do not use the TMK if the ambient temperature is below -30°C (-22°F).
- When the tyre and wheel are damaged, do not use Tyre Mobility Kit for your safety.

Technical Data

System voltage: DC 12 V

Working voltage: DC 10 - 15 V

Amperage rating: max. 15 A

Suitable for use at temperatures:

-30 ~ +70°C (-22 ~ +158°F)

Max. working pressure:

6 bar (87 psi)

Size

Compressor : 1 6 8 x 1 5 0 x 6 8 m m (6.6x5.9x2.7in)

Sealant bottle: 104 x 85 ø mm (4.1 x 3.3 ø in.)

Compressor weight:

1.8 kg (3.97 lbs)

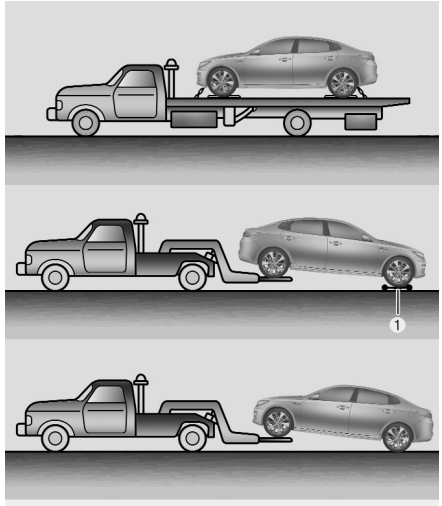
Sealant volume:

300 ml (18.3 cu. in.)

❈ Sealant and spare parts can be obtained and replaced at an authorised vehicle or tyre dealer. Empty sealant bottles may be disposed of at home. Liquid residue from the sealant should be disposed of by your vehicle or tyre dealer or in accordance with local waste disposal regulations.

TOWING

Towing service



OJF075158L

If emergency towing is necessary, we recommend having it done by an authorised Kia dealer or a commercial tow-truck service. Proper lifting and towing procedures are necessary to prevent damage to the vehicle. The use of wheel dollies (1) or flatbed is recommended.

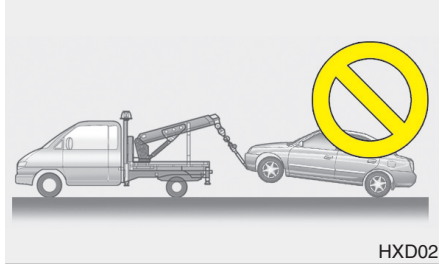
It is acceptable to tow the vehicle with the rear wheels on the ground (without dollies) and the front wheels off the ground.

If any of the loaded wheels or suspension components are damaged or the vehicle is being towed with the front wheels on the ground, use a towing dolly under the front wheels.

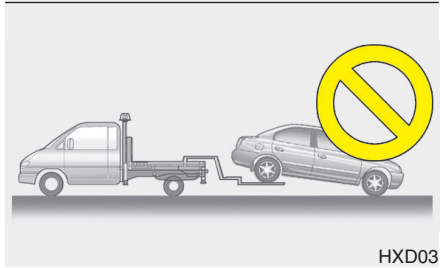
When being towed by a commercial tow truck and wheel dollies are not used, the front of the vehicle should always be lifted, not the rear.

✻ NOTICE

If the EPB does not release normally, we recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.



HXD02



HXD03

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not tow the vehicle backwards with the front wheels on the ground as this may cause damage to the vehicle.***
- ***Do not tow with sling-type equipment. Use wheel lift or flatbed equipment.***

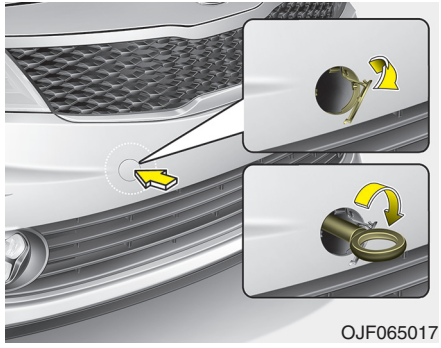
When towing your vehicle in an emergency without wheel dollies :

1. Set the ignition switch in the ACC position.
2. Place the transaxle shift lever in N (Neutral).
3. Release the parking brake.

⚠ CAUTION

Failure to place the transaxle shift lever in N (Neutral) may cause internal damage to the transaxle.

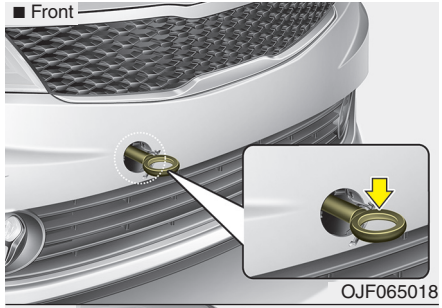
Removable towing hook (if equipped)



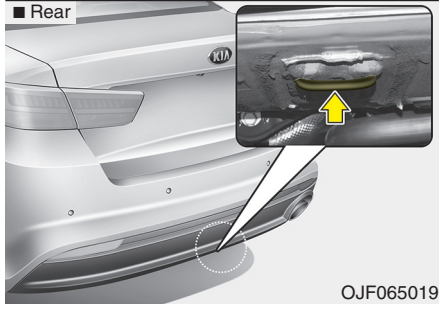
OJF065017

1. Open the trunk, and remove the towing hook from the tool case.
2. Remove the hole cover pressing the lower part of the cover on the bumper.
3. Install the towing hook by turning it clockwise into the hole until it is fully secured.
4. Remove the towing hook and install the cover after use.

Emergency towing



OJF065018



OJF065019

If towing is necessary, we recommend you to have it done by an authorised Kia dealer or a commercial tow truck service.

If towing service is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a cable or chain secured to the emergency towing hook under the front (or rear) of the vehicle. Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle. A driver must be in the vehicle to steer it and operate the brakes.

Towing in this manner may be done only on hard-surfaced roads for a short distance and at low speed. Also, the wheels, axles, power train, steering and brakes must all be in good condition.

- Do not use the tow hooks to pull a vehicle out of mud, sand or other conditions from which the vehicle cannot be driven out under its own power.
- Avoid towing a vehicle heavier than the vehicle doing the towing.
- The drivers of both vehicles should communicate with each other frequently.

⚠ CAUTION

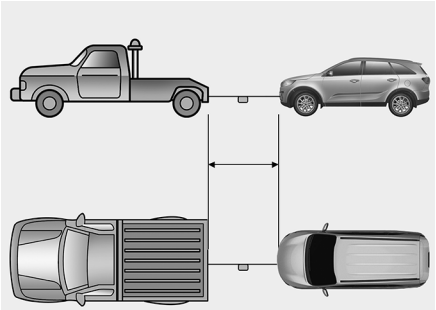
- ***Attach a towing strap to the tow hook.***
- ***Using a portion of the vehicle other than the tow hooks for towing may damage the body of your vehicle.***
- ***Use only a cable or chain specifically intended for use in towing vehicles. Securely fasten the cable or chain to the towing hook provided.***

- Before emergency towing, check if the hook is not broken or damaged.
- Fasten the towing cable or chain securely to the hook.
- Do not jerk the hook. Apply it steadily and with even force.
- To avoid damaging the hook, do not pull from the side or at a vertical angle. Always pull straight ahead.

⚠ WARNING

Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle.

- **Avoid sudden starts or erratic driving maneuvers which would place excessive stress on the emergency towing hook and towing cable or chain. The hook and towing cable or chain may break and cause serious injury or damage.**
- **If the disabled vehicle is unable to be moved, do not forcibly continue the towing. We recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer or a commercial tow truck service for assistance.**
- **Tow the vehicle as straight ahead as possible.**
- **Keep away from the vehicle during towing.**


OUM064014

- Use a towing strap less than 5 m (16 feet) long. Attach a white or red cloth (about 30 cm (12 inches) wide) in the middle of the strap for easy visibility.
- Drive carefully so that the towing strap is not loosened during towing.

Emergency towing precautions

- Turn the ignition switch to ACC so the steering wheel isn't locked.
- Place the transaxle shift lever in N (Neutral).
- Release the parking bake.
- Press the brake pedal with more force than normal since you will have reduced brake performance.
- More steering effort will be required because the power steering system will be disabled.
- If you are driving down a long hill, the brakes may overheat and brake performance will be reduced. Stop often and let the brakes cool off.

⚠ CAUTION

- Automatic transaxle / Dual clutch transmission

- ***If the car is being towed with all four wheels on the ground, it can be towed only from the front. Be sure that the transaxle is in neutral. Be sure the steering is unlocked by placing the ignition switch in the ACC position. A driver must be in the towed vehicle to operate the steering and brakes.***
- ***To avoid serious damage to the automatic transaxle / dual clutch transmission, limit the vehicle speed to 15 km/h (10 mph) and drive less than 1.5 km (1 mile) when towing.***
- ***Before towing, check the automatic transaxle / dual clutch transmission for fluid leaks under your vehicle. If the automatic transaxle / dual clutch transmission fluid is leaking, flatbed equipment or a towing dolly must be used.***

EMERGENCY COMMODITY (IF EQUIPPED)

There are some emergency commodities in the vehicle to help you respond to the emergency situation.

Fire extinguisher

If there is small fire and you know how to use the fire extinguisher, take the following steps carefully.

1. Pull the pin at the top of the extinguisher that keeps the handle from being accidentally pressed.
2. Aim the nozzle toward the base of the fire.
3. Stand approximately 2.5 m (8 ft) away from the fire and squeeze the handle to discharge the extinguisher. If you release the handle, the discharge will stop.
4. Sweep the nozzle back and forth at the base of the fire. After the fire appears to be out, watch it carefully since it may re-ignite.

First aid kit

There are some items such as scissors, bandage and adhesive tape and etc. in the kit to give first aid to an injured person.

Triangle reflector

Place the triangle reflector on the road to warn oncoming vehicles during emergencies, such as when the vehicle is parked by the roadside due to any problems.

Tyre pressure gauge (If equipped)

Tyres normally lose some air in day-to-day use, and you may have to add a few pounds of air periodically and it is not usually a sign of a leaking tyre, but of normal wear. Always check tyre pressure when the tyres are cold because tyre pressure increases with temperature.

To check the tyre pressure, take the following steps;

1. Unscrew the inflation valve cap that is located on the rim of the tyre.
2. Press and hold the gauge against the tyre valve. Some air will escape as you begin and more will escape if you don't press the gauge in firmly.
3. A firm non-leaking push will activate the gauge.
4. Read the tyre pressure on the gauge to know whether the tyre pressure is low or high.
5. Adjust the tyre pressures to the specified pressure. Refer to “Tyres and wheels” in chapter 9.
6. Reinstall the inflation valve cap.

Maintenance

Engine compartment 8-4
Maintenance services 8-7
• Owner's responsibility 8-7
• Owner maintenance precautions 8-7
Owner maintenance 8-9
• Owner maintenance schedule 8-9
Scheduled maintenance service 8-11
• Scheduled maintenanceservice precaution 8-11
Explanation of scheduled maintenance items . . . 8-51
• Engine oil and filter. 8-51
• Drive belts 8-51
• Fuel filter cartridge (for diesel) 8-51
• Fuel filter (for petrol) 8-51
• Fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections 8-51
• Vapour hose (for petrol engine) and fuel filler cap . . 8-52
• Vacuum crankcase ventilation hoses 8-52
• Air cleaner filter 8-52
• Spark plugs (for petrol engine) 8-52
• Valve clearance (for petrol engine) 8-52
• Cooling system 8-53
• Coolant 8-53
• Manual transaxle fluid 8-53
• Dual clutch transmission fluid 8-53
• Automatic transaxle fluid 8-53
• Brake hoses and lines 8-54
• Brake/Clutch fluid. 8-54
• Parking brake 8-54
• Brake discs, pads, calipers and rotors. 8-54
• Suspension mounting bolts 8-54
• Steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint 8-54
• Drive shafts and boots. 8-54
• Air conditioning refrigerant. 8-54
Engine oil. 8-55
• Checking the engine oil level 8-55
• Changing the engine oil and filter 8-58
Engine coolant 8-59
• Checking the coolant level 8-59
• Changing the coolant 8-61
Brake/clutch fluid. 8-62
• Checking the brake/clutch fluid level 8-62
Washer fluid 8-63
• Checking the washer fluid level 8-63
Parking brake 8-64
• Checking the parking brake. 8-64
Fuel Filter (For Diesel) 8-65
• Draining water from the fuel filter 8-65
• Fuel filter cartridge replacement 8-65
Air cleaner. 8-66
• Filter replacement 8-66

Climate control air filter 8-68
- Filter inspection 8-68

Wiper blades 8-70
- Blade inspection 8-70
- Blade replacement 8-70

Battery 8-74
- For best battery service 8-74
- Battery capacity label 8-76
- Battery recharging 8-76
- Reset items 8-77

Tyres and wheels 8-78
- Tyre care 8-78
- Recommended cold tyre inflation pressures 8-78
- Checking tyre inflation pressure 8-79
- Tyre rotation 8-80
- Wheel alignment and tyre balance 8-81
- Tyre replacement 8-82
- Wheel replacement 8-83
- Tyre traction 8-84
- Tyre maintenance 8-84
- Tyre sidewall labeling 8-84
- Low aspect ratio tyre 8-88

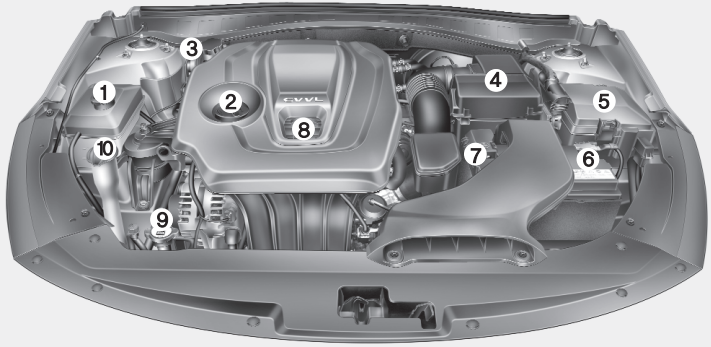
Fuses 8-90
- Inner panel fuse replacement 8-91
- Engine compartment fuse replacement 8-93
- Fuse/relay panel description 8-95

Light bulbs 8-114
- Bulb replacement precaution 8-114
- Light bulb position (Front) 8-116
- Light bulb position (Rear - Sedan) 8-117
- Light bulb position (Rear - Wagon) 8-118
- Light bulb position (Side) 8-119
- Headlamp (HID type) bulb replacement 8-119
- Headlamp (Low beam) bulb replacement 8-120
- Headlamp (High beam) bulb replacement 8-121
- Headlamp (High/Low beam) LED replacement 8-122
- Smart cornering lamp bulb replacement 8-122
- Position lamp bulb replacement 8-123
- Front turn signal lamp bulb replacement 8-123
- Front fog lamp (LED type) bulb replacement 8-124
- Position lamp + DRL (LED type) bulb replacement 8-124
- Side repeater lamp bulb replacement 8-125
- Rear turn signal lamp bulb replacement 8-125
- Stop and tail lamp bulb replacement 8-126
- Stop and tail lamp (LED type) bulb replacement 8-128
- Back-up lamp bulb replacement 8-128
- Rear fog lamp bulbreplacement 8-129
- Tail lamp bulb replacement 8-130
- License plate lamp bulb replacement 8-131

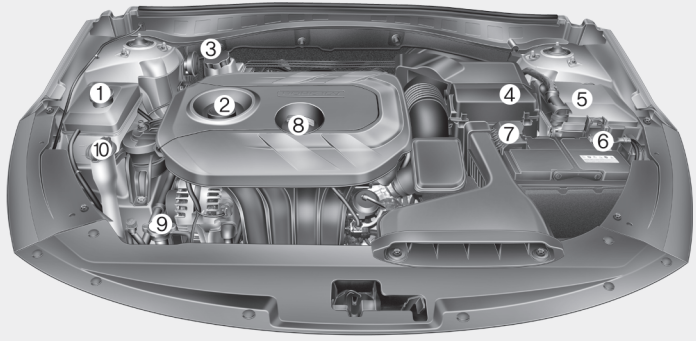
• High mounted stop lamp bulb replacement 8-132
• Rear turn signal lamp bulb replacement (Wagon) . . 8-132
• Stop and tail lamp bulb replacement (Wagon). . . . 8-133
• Stop and tail lamp (LED type) bulb replacement (Wagon) 8-135
• Back-up lamp bulb replacement (Wagon) 8-135
• Tail lamp (inside) bulb replacement (Wagon) 8-136
• Rear fog lamp bulb replacement (Wagon) 8-136
• High mounted stop lamp bulb replacement (Wagon) . . 8-137
• Map lamp bulb replacement 8-137
• Vanity mirror lamp bulb replacement 8-138
• Room lamp bulb replacement 8-138
• Personal lamp bulb replacement 8-139
• Glove box lamp bulb replacement 8-139
• Trunk lamp bulb replacement (Sedan) 4-140
• Tailgate room lamp bulb replacement (Wagon) . . . 4-140
• Headlamp and front fog lamp aiming (for Europe). . 8-141
Appearance care 8-149
• Exterior care 8-149
• Interior care 8-155
Emission control system 8-156
• 1. Crankcase emission control system 8-156
• 2. Evaporative emission control system 8-156
• 3. Exhaust emission control system 8-157
• Lean NOx Trap 8-160

ENGINE COMPARTMENT

■ **Petrol Engine (Nu 2.0L - CVVL)**



■ **Petrol Engine (Nu 2.0L - MPI)**

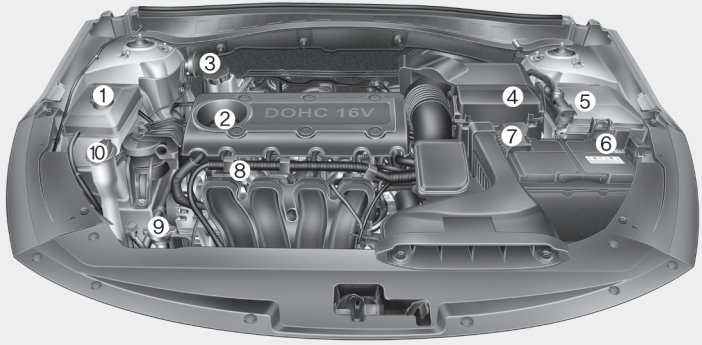


1. Engine coolant reservoir
2. Engine oil filler cap
3. Brake/clutch fluid reservoir (if equipped)
4. Air cleaner
5. Fuse box
6. Negative battery terminal
7. Positive battery terminal
8. Engine oil dipstick
9. Radiator cap
10. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

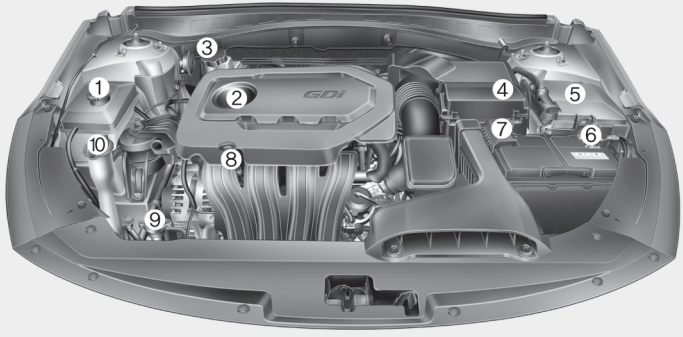
❈ The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OJF075074R/OJF075140R

■ **Petrol Engine (THETA 2.4L - MPI)**



■ **Petrol Engine (THETA 2.4L - GDI)**

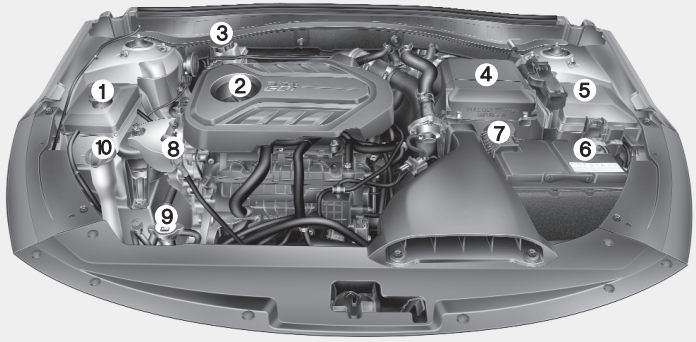


1. Engine coolant reservoir
2. Engine oil filler cap
3. Brake/clutch fluid reservoir (if equipped)
4. Air cleaner
5. Fuse box
6. Negative battery terminal
7. Positive battery terminal
8. Engine oil dipstick
9. Radiator cap
10. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

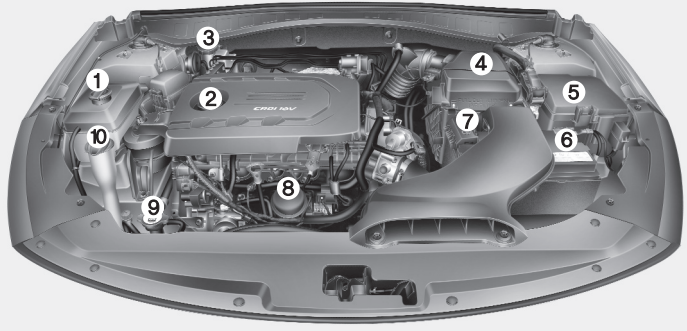
❈ The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OJF075139R/OJF075141R

■ **Petrol Engine (THETA 2.0L T-GDI)**



■ **Diesel Engine (U2 1.7)**



1. Engine coolant reservoir
2. Engine oil filler cap
3. Brake/clutch fluid reservoir (if equipped)
4. Air cleaner
5. Fuse box
6. Negative battery terminal
7. Positive battery terminal
8. Engine oil dipstick
9. Radiator cap
10. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

❈ The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OJF075001R/OJF075003R

MAINTENANCE SERVICES

You should exercise the utmost care to prevent damage to your vehicle and injury to yourself whenever performing any maintenance or inspection procedures.

Inadequate, incomplete or insufficient servicing may result in operational problems with your vehicle that could lead to vehicle damage, an accident, or personal injury.

Owner's responsibility

✻ NOTICE

Maintenance Service and Record Retention are the owner's responsibility.

We recommend in general that you have your vehicle serviced by an authorised Kia dealer.

You should retain documents that show proper maintenance has been performed on your vehicle in accordance with the scheduled maintenance service charts shown on the following pages.

You need this information to establish your compliance with the servicing and maintenance requirements of your vehicle warranties.

Detailed warranty information is provided in your Warranty & Maintenance book.

Repairs and adjustments required as a result of improper maintenance or a lack of required maintenance are not covered when your vehicle is covered by warranty.

Owner maintenance precautions

Improper or incomplete service may result in problems. This section gives instructions only for the maintenance items that are easy to perform.

✻ NOTICE

Improper owner maintenance during the warranty period may affect warranty coverage. For details, read the separate Warranty & Maintenance book provided with the vehicle. If you're unsure about any servicing or maintenance procedure, we recommend that the system be seviced by an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING - Maintenance work

- **Performing maintenance work on a vehicle can be dangerous. You can be seriously injured whilst performing some maintenance procedures. If you lack sufficient knowledge and experience or the proper tools and equipment to do the work, we recommend that the system be servied by an authorised Kia dealer.**
- **Working under the bonnet with the engine running is dangerous. It becomes even more dangerous when you wear jewelry or loose clothing. These can become entangled in moving parts and result in injury. Therefore, if you must run the engine whilst working under the bonnet, make certain that you remove all jewelry (especially rings, bracelets, watches, and necklaces) and all neckties, scarves, and similar loose clothing before getting near the engine or cooling fans.**

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not put heavy objects or apply excessive force on top of the engine cover (if equipped) or fuel related parts.***
- ***When you inspect the fuel system (fuel lines and fuel injection devices), we recommend that you contact an authorised kia dealer.***
- ***Do not drive long time with the engine cover (if equipped) removed.***
- ***When checking the engine room, do not go near fire.***

  Fuel, washer fluid, etc. are flammable oils that may cause fire.
- ***Before touching the battery, ignition cables and electrical wiring, you should disconnect the battery "-" terminal. You may get an electric shock from the electric current.***

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ***When you remove the interior trim cover with a flat bed (-) driver, be careful not to damage the cover.***
- ***Be careful when you replace and clean bulbs to avoid burns or electrical shock.***

OWNER MAINTENANCE

The following lists are vehicle checks and inspections that should be performed at the frequencies indicated to help ensure safe, dependable operation of your vehicle.

Any adverse conditions should be brought to the attention of your dealer as soon as possible.

These Owner Maintenance Checks are generally not covered by warranties and you may be charged for labour, parts and lubricants used.

Owner maintenance schedule

When you stop for fuel:

- Check the engine oil level.
- Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir.
- Check the windscreen washer fluid level.
- Look for low or under-inflated tyres.

⚠ WARNING

Be careful when checking your engine coolant level when the engine is hot. Scalding hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure. This could cause burns or other serious injury.

Whilst operating your vehicle:

- Note any changes in the sound of the exhaust or any smell of exhaust fumes in the vehicle.
- Check for vibrations in the steering wheel. Notice any increased steering effort or looseness in the steering wheel, or change in its straight-ahead position.
- Notice if your vehicle constantly turns slightly or “pulls” to one side when travelling on smooth, level road.
- When stopping, listen and check for unusual sounds, pulling to one side, increased brake pedal travel or “hard-to-push” brake pedal.
- If any slipping or changes in the operation of your transaxle occurs, check the transaxle fluid level.
- Check manual transaxle operation, including clutch operation.
- Check the automatic transaxle P (Park) function.
- Check the parking brake.
- Check for fluid leaks under your vehicle (water dripping from the air conditioning system during or after use is normal).

At least monthly:

- Check the coolant level in the engine coolant reservoir.
- Check the operation of all exterior lights, including the stoplights, turn signals and hazard warning flashers.
- Check the inflation pressures of all tyres including the spare.

At least twice a year (i.e., every Spring and Fall):

- Check the radiator, heater and air conditioning hoses for leaks or damage.
- Check the windscreen washer spray and wiper operation. Clean the wiper blades with clean cloth dampened with washer fluid.
- Check the headlight alignment.
- Check the muffler, exhaust pipes, shields and clamps.
- Check the lap/shoulder belts for wear and function.
- Check for worn tyres and loose wheel lug nuts.

At least once a year:

- Clean the body and door drain holes.
- Lubricate the door hinges and checks, and bonnet hinges.
- Lubricate the door and bonnet locks and latches.
- Lubricate the door rubber weatherstrips.
- Check the air conditioning system.
- Inspect and lubricate the automatic transaxle linkage and controls.
- Clean the battery and terminals.
- Check the brake fluid level.

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE SERVICE

Scheduled maintenance service precaution

Follow the Normal Maintenance Schedule if the vehicle is usually operated where none of the following conditions apply. If any of the following conditions apply, follow the Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions.

- Repeated driving short distance of less than 8 km (5 miles) in normal temperature or less than 16 km(10 miles) in freezing temperature
- Extensive engine idling or low speed driving for long distances
- Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled or salt-spread roads
- Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
- Driving in heavy dust condition
- Driving in heavy traffic area
- Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain road repeatedly
- Towing a trailer or using a camper, or roof rack
- Driving as a patrol car, taxi, other commercial use of vehicle towing
- Driving over 170 km/h (106 mile/h)
- Frequently driving in stop-and-go condition

If your vehicle is operated under the above conditions, you should inspect, replace or refill more frequently than the following Normal Maintenance Schedule. After the periods or distance shown in the chart, continue to follow the prescribed maintenance intervals.

Normal Maintenance Schedule - For Petrol Engine [For Australia & New Zealand Only]

The following maintenance services must be performed to ensure good emission control and performance. Keep receipts for all vehicle emission services to protect your warranty.Where both mileage and time are shown, the frequency of service is determined by whichever occurs first.

NO.	ITEM	REMARK
*1	Coolant (Engine)	When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage.
*2	Drive belts (Engine)	• Adjust alternator, water pump and air conditioner (if equipped) drive belt. Inspect and if necessary repair or replace. • Inspect drive belt tensioner, idler and alternator pulley and if necessary correct or replace.
*3	Dual clutch transmission (DCT) fluid	Dual clutch transmission (DCT) fluid should be changed anytime it has been submerged in water.
*4	Engine oil and engine oil filter	Check the engine oil level and leak every 500 km (350 miles) or before starting a long trip.
*5	Engine oil and engine oil filter (For Diesel Engine)	• If the recommended oil is not available, replace engine oil and engine oil filter every 20,000 km (13,000 miles) or 12 months. • The engine oil level should be checked regularly and maintained properly. Operating with an insufficient amount oil can damage the engine, and such damage is not covered by warranty. • This maintenance schedule de. pends on fuel quality. It is applicable only when using a qualified fuel <"EN590 or equivalent">. If the diesel fuel specifications don't meet the EN590, it must be replaced according to the severe maintenance schedule.

NO.	ITEM	REMARK
*6	Fuel additives (Petrol)	Kia recommends that you use unleaded petrol which has an octane rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 95 / AKI (Anti Knock Index) 91 or higher (for Europe) or Octane Rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 91 / AKI (Anti-Knock Index) 87 or higher (except Europe). For customers who do not use good quality gasolines including fuel additives regularly, and have problems starting or the engine does not run smoothly, one bottle of additives added to the fuel tank at every 15,000km (10,000 miles) (for Europe, Australia and New Zealand)/ 10,000km (6,500 miles) (except Europe, Australia and New Zealand). Additives are available from your authorised Kia dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.
*7	Fuel filter cartridge (Diesel)	This maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. It is applicable only when using a qualified fuel <"EN590 or equivalent">. If the diesel fuel specifications don't meet the EN590, it must be replaced more frequently. If there are some important safety matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc., replace the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule and we recommend that you consult an authorised Kia dealer for details.
*8	Manual transaxle fluid	Manual transaxle fluid should be changed anytime it has been submerged in water.
*9	Valve clearance	Inspect for excessive valve noise and/or engine vibration and adjust if necessary. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.
*10	Spark plug	For your convenience, it can be replaced prior to it's interval when you do maintenance of other items.

Normal Maintenance Schedule - For Petrol Engine [For Australia & New Zealand Only] (Continue)

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM		Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first							
	Months	**12**	**24**	**36**	**48**	**60**	**72**	**84**	**96**
	Miles×1,000	**10**	**20**	**30**	**40**	**50**	**60**	**70**	**80**
	Km×1,000	**15**	**30**	**45**	**60**	**75**	**90**	**105**	**120**
Engine oil and engine oil filter *4	Nu 2.0L CVVL	Replace every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12 months							
	Theta II 2.4L GDI								
	Theta II 2.0L T-GDI	Replace every 7,500 km (5,000 miles) or 6 months							
Coolant (Engine) *1		At first, Replace 210,000 km (140,000 miles) or 120 months after that, Replace every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months							
Drive belts (Engine) *2		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Valve clearance *9	Theta II 2.4L GDI	-	-	-	-	-	I	-	-
	Theta II 2.0L T-GDI	-	-	-	-	-	I	-	-
Vacuum hoses and crankcase ventilation hoses		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Spark plugs *10	Nu 2.0L CVVL	Replace every 150,000 km (100,000 miles) or 120 months							
	Theta II 2.4L GDI	Replace every 150,000 km (100,000 miles) or 120 months							
	Theta II 2.0L T-GDI	Replace every 75,000 km (50,000 miles) or 60 months							

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

Normal Maintenance Schedule - For Petrol Engine [For Australia & New Zealand Only] (Continue)

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM	Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first							
Months	**12**	**24**	**36**	**48**	**60**	**72**	**84**	**96**
Miles×1,000	**10**	**20**	**30**	**40**	**50**	**60**	**70**	**80**
Km×1,000	**15**	**30**	**45**	**60**	**75**	**90**	**105**	**120**
Automatic transaxle fluid (if equipped)	No check, No service required							
Manual transaxle fluid (if equipped) *8	-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I
Drive shaft and boots	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Fuel tank air filter	-	I	-	R	-	I	-	R
Fuel additives (Petrol) *6	Add every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12 months							
Fuel lines, hoses and connections	-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I
Vapour hose and fuel filler cap	-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I
Air cleaner filter	I	I	R	I	I	R	I	I
Exhaust system	-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Cooling system	At first, Inspect 60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48months after that, Inspect every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months							
Air conditioner compressor/refrigerant (if equipped)	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Climate control air filter (if equipped)	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

Normal Maintenance Schedule - For Petrol Engine [For Australia & New Zealand Only] (Continue)

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM	Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first							
Months	**12**	**24**	**36**	**48**	**60**	**72**	**84**	**96**
Miles×1,000	**10**	**20**	**30**	**40**	**50**	**60**	**70**	**80**
Km×1,000	**15**	**30**	**45**	**60**	**75**	**90**	**105**	**120**
Brake discs and pads	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake lines, hoses and connections	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake/clutch (if equipped) fluid	I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R
Parking brake	-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Suspension ball joints	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tyre (pressure & tread wear)	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Battery condition	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions - For Petrol Engine [For Australia & New Zealand Only]

MAINTENANCE ITEM		MAINTENANCE OPERATION	MAINTENANCE INTERVALS	DRIVING CONDITION
Engine oil and engine oil filter	Theta 2.4L Nu 2.0L	R	Every 7,500 km (5,000 miles) or 6 months	A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L
	Theta 2.0 T-GDI	R	Every 3,250 km (2,000 miles) or 3 months	A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L
Air cleaner filter		R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	C, E
Spark plugs		R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	B, H, I, L
Manual transaxle fluid (if equipped)		R	Every 120,000 km (80,000 miles)	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K
Automatic transaxle fluid (if equipped)		R	Every 100,000 km (60,000 miles)	A, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots		I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G
Suspension ball joints		I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G
Brake discs and pads, calipers and rotors		I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, G, H

MAINTENANCE ITEM	MAINTENANCE OPERATION	MAINTENANCE INTERVALS	DRIVING CONDITION
Brake drums and linings (if equipped)	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, G, H
Parking brake	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, G, H
Drive shaft and boots	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K
Climate control air filter (if equipped)	R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	C, E, G

Maintenance operation
I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.
R : Replace.

SEVERE DRIVING CONDITIONS

A : Repeatedly driving short distance of less than 8 km (5 miles) in normal temperature or less than 16 km (10 miles) in freezing temperature.
B : Extensive engine idling or low speed driving for long distances.
C : Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled or salt-spread roads.
D : Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
E : Driving in heavy dust condition.
F : Driving in heavy traffic area.
G : Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain roads.
H : Towing a trailer or using a camper on roof rack.
I : Driving for patrol car, taxi, commercial car or vehicle towing.
J : Driving in very cold weather.
K : Driving over 170 km/h (106 mile/h).
L : Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions.

Normal Maintenance Schedule - For Petrol Engine [For Europe (Except Russia)]

The following maintenance services must be performed to ensure good emission control and performance. Keep receipts for all vehicle emission services to protect your warranty. Where both mileage and time are shown, the frequency of service is determined by whichever occurs first.

NO.	ITEM	REMARK
*1	Coolant (Engine)	When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage.
*2	Drive belts (Engine)	• Adjust alternator, water pump and air conditioner (if equipped) drive belt. Inspect and if necessary repair or replace. • Inspect drive belt tensioner, idler and alternator pulley and if necessary correct or replace.
*3	Dual clutch transmission (DCT) fluid	Dual clutch transmission (DCT) fluid should be changed anytime it has been submerged in water.
*4	Engine oil and engine oil filter	Check the engine oil level and leak every 500 km (350 miles) or before starting a long trip.
*5	Engine oil and engine oil filter (For Diesel Engine)	• If the recommended oil is not available, replace engine oil and engine oil filter every 20,000 km (13,000 miles) or 12 months. • The engine oil level should be checked regularly and maintained properly. Operating with an insufficient amount oil can damage the engine, and such damage is not covered by warranty. • This maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. It is applicable only when using a qualified fuel <"EN590 or equivalent">. If the diesel fuel specifications don't meet the EN590, it must be replaced according to the severe maintenance schedule.

NO.	ITEM	REMARK
*6	Fuel additives (Petrol)	Kia recommends that you use unleaded petrol which has an octane rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 95 / AKI (Anti Knock Index) 91 or higher (for Europe) or Octane Rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 91 / AKI (Anti-Knock Index) 87 or higher (except Europe). For customers who do not use good quality gasolines including fuel additives regularly, and have problems starting or the engine does not run smoothly, one bottle of additives added to the fuel tank at every 15,000km (10,000 miles) (for Europe, Australia and New Zealand) / 10,000 km (6,500 miles) (except Europe, Australia and New Zealand). Additives are available from your authorised Kia dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.
*7	Fuel filter cartridge (Diesel)	This maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. It is applicable only when using a qualified fuel <"EN590 or equivalent">. If the diesel fuel specifications don't meet the EN590, it must be replaced more frequently. If there are some important safety matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc., replace the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule and we recommend that you consult an authorised Kia dealer for details.
*8	Manual transaxle fluid	Manual transaxle fluid should be changed anytime it has been submerged in water.
*9	Valve clearance	Inspect for excessive valve noise and/or engine vibration and adjust if necessary. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.
*10	Spark plug	For your convenience, it can be replaced prior to it's interval when you do maintenance of other items.

Normal Maintenance Schedule - For Petrol Engine [For Europe (Except Russia)] (Continue)

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM		Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first							
	Months	**12**	**24**	**36**	**48**	**60**	**72**	**84**	**96**
	Miles×1,000	**10**	**20**	**30**	**40**	**50**	**60**	**70**	**80**
	Km×1,000	**15**	**30**	**45**	**60**	**75**	**90**	**105**	**120**
Engine oil and engine oil filter *4	Nu 2.0L CVVL	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
	Theta II 2.4L MPI	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
	Theta II 2.0L T-GDI	Replace every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12 months							
Coolant (Engine) *1		At first, Replace 210,000 km (140,000 miles) or 120 months after that, Replace every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months							
Drive belts (Engine) *2		At first, Inspect 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 72 months after that, Inspect every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months							
Valve clearance *9	Theta II 2.4L MPI	-	-	-	-	-	I	-	-
	Theta II 2.0L T-GDI	-	-	-	-	-	I	-	-
Vacuum hoses and crankcase ventilation hoses		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Spark plugs *10	Nu 2.0L CVVL	Replace every 150,000 km (100,000 miles) or 120 months							
	Theta II 2.4L MPI	Replace every 45,000 km (30,000 miles) or 36 months							
	Theta II 2.0L T-GDI	Replace every 75,000 km (50,000 miles) or 60 months							

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

Normal Maintenance Schedule - For Petrol Engine [For Europe (Except Russia)] (Continue)

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM	Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first							
Months	**12**	**24**	**36**	**48**	**60**	**72**	**84**	**96**
Miles×1,000	**10**	**20**	**30**	**40**	**50**	**60**	**70**	**80**
Km×1,000	**15**	**30**	**45**	**60**	**75**	**90**	**105**	**120**
Automatic transaxle fluid (if equipped)	No check, No service required							
Manual transaxle fluid (if equipped) *8	-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I
Drive shaft and boots	-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Fuel additives (Petrol) *6	Add every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12 months							
Fuel lines, hoses and connections	-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I
Fuel tank air filter	-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I
Vapour hose and fuel filler cap	-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I
Air cleaner filter	I	I	R	I	I	R	I	I
Exhaust system	-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Cooling system	At first, Inspect 60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48 months after that, Inspect every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months							
Air conditioner compressor/refrigerant (if equipped)	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Climate control air filter (if equipped)	-	R	-	R	-	R	-	R

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

Normal Maintenance Schedule - For Petrol Engine [For Europe (Except Russia)] (Continue)

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM	Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first							
Months	**12**	**24**	**36**	**48**	**60**	**72**	**84**	**96**
Miles×1,000	**10**	**20**	**30**	**40**	**50**	**60**	**70**	**80**
Km×1,000	**15**	**30**	**45**	**60**	**75**	**90**	**105**	**120**
Brake discs and pads	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake lines, hoses and connections	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake/clutch (if equipped) fluid	I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R
Parking brake	-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Suspension ball joints	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tyre (pressure & tread wear)	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Battery condition	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions - For Petrol Engine [For Europe (Except Russia)]

MAINTENANCE ITEM		MAINTENANCE OPERATION	MAINTENANCE INTERVALS	DRIVING CONDITION
Engine oil and engine oil filter	Theta 2.4L	R	Every 7,500 km (5,000 miles) or 6 months	A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L
	Nu 2.0L			
	Theta 2.0 T-GDI	R	Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6 months	A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L
Air cleaner filter		R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	C, E
Spark plugs		R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	B, H, I, L
Manual transaxle fluid (if equipped)		R	Every 120,000 km (80,000 miles)	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K
Automatic transaxle fluid (if equipped)		R	Every 90,000 km (60,000 miles)	A, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots		I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G
Suspension ball joints		I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G
Brake discs and pads, calipers and rotors		I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, G, H

MAINTENANCE ITEM	MAINTENANCE OPERATION	MAINTENANCE INTERVALS	DRIVING CONDITION
Brake drums and linings (if equipped)	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, G, H
Parking brake	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, G, H
Drive shaft and boots	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K
Climate control air filter (if equipped)	R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	C, E, G

Maintenance operation
I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.
R : Replace.

SEVERE DRIVING CONDITIONS

A : Repeatedly driving short distance of less than 8 km (5 miles) in normal temperature or less than 16 km (10 miles) in freezing temperature.

B : Extensive engine idling or low speed driving for long distances.

C : Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled or salt-spread roads.

D : Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather

E : Driving in heavy dust condition.

F : Driving in heavy traffic area.

G : Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain roads.

H : Towing a trailer or using a camper on roof rack.

I : Driving for patrol car, taxi, commercial car or vehicle towing.

J : Driving in very cold weather.

K : Driving over 170 km/h (106 mile/h).

L : Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions.

Normal Maintenance Schedule - For Petrol Engine [Except Europe (Including Russia)]

The following maintenance services must be performed to ensure good emission control and performance. Keep receipts for all vehicle emission services to protect your warranty.Where both mileage and time are shown, the frequency of service is determined by whichever occurs first.

NO.	ITEM	REMARK
*1	Coolant (Engine)	When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage.
*2	Drive belts (Engine)	• Adjust alternator, water pump and air conditioner (if equipped) drive belt. Inspect and if necessary repair or replace. • Inspect drive belt tensioner, idler and alternator pulley and if necessary correct or replace.
*3	Dual clutch transmission (DCT) fluid	Dual clutch transmission (DCT) fluid should be changed anytime it has been submerged in water.
*4	Engine oil and engine oil filter	Check the engine oil level and leak every 500 km (350 miles) or before starting a long trip.
*5	Engine oil and engine oil filter (For Diesel Engine)	• If the recommended oil is not available, replace engine oil and engine oil filter every 20,000 km (13,000 miles) or 12 months. • The engine oil level should be checked regularly and maintained properly. Operating with an insufficient amount oil can damage the engine, and such damage is not covered by warranty. • This maintenance schedule de. pends on fuel quality. It is applicable only when using a qualified fuel <"EN590 or equivalent">. If the diesel fuel specifications don't meet the EN590, it must be replaced according to the severe maintenance schedule.

NO.	ITEM	REMARK
*6	Fuel additives (Petrol)	Kia recommends that you use unleaded petrol which has an octane rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 95 / AKI (Anti Knock Index) 91 or higher (for Europe) or Octane Rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 91 / AKI (Anti-Knock Index) 87 or higher (except Europe). For customers who do not use good quality gasolines including fuel additives regularly, and have problems starting or the engine does not run smoothly, one bottle of additives added to the fuel tank at every 15,000km (10,000 miles) (for Europe, Australia and New Zealand) / 10,000km (6,500 miles) (except Europe, Australia and New Zealand). Additives are available from your authorised Kia dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.
*7	Fuel filter cartridge (Diesel)	This maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. It is applicable only when using a qualified fuel <"EN590 or equivalent">. If the diesel fuel specifications don't meet the EN590, it must be replaced more frequently. If there are some important safety matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc., replace the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule and we recommend that you consult an authorised Kia dealer for details.
*8	Manual transaxle fluid	Manual transaxle fluid should be changed anytime it has been submerged in water.
*9	Valve clearance	Inspect for excessive valve noise and/or engine vibration and adjust if necessary. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.
*10	Spark plug	For your convenience, it can be replaced prior to it's interval when you do maintenance of other items.

Normal Maintenance Schedule - For Petrol Engine [Except Europe (Including Russia)] (Continue)

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM		Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first							
	Months	**12**	**24**	**36**	**48**	**60**	**72**	**84**	**96**
	Miles×1,000	**10**	**20**	**30**	**40**	**50**	**60**	**70**	**80**
	Km×1,000	**15**	**30**	**45**	**60**	**75**	**90**	**105**	**120**
Engine oil and engine oil filter *4	Nu 2.0L CVVL	Except Middle East, Brazil : Replace every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12 months For Middle East, Brazil : Replace every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12 months							
	Nu 2.0L MPI								
	Theta II 2.4L GDI								
	Theta II 2.4L MPI								
	Theta II 2.0L T-GDI	Except China : Replace every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 6 months For China: Replace every 5,000km (3,000 miles) or 6months							
Coolant (Engine) *1		At first, Replace 210,000 km (140,000 miles) or 120 months after that, Replace every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months							
Drive belts (Engine) *2		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Valve clearance *9	Theta II 2.4L GDI	-	-	-	-	-	I	-	-
	Theta II 2.4L MPI	-	-	-	-	-	I	-	-
	Theta II 2.0L T-GDI	-	-	-	-	-	I	-	-
Vacuum hoses and crankcase ventilation hoses		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

Normal Maintenance Schedule - For Petrol Engine [Except Europe (Including Russia)] (Continue)

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM		Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first							
	Months	**12**	**24**	**36**	**48**	**60**	**72**	**84**	**96**
	Miles×1,000	**10**	**20**	**30**	**40**	**50**	**60**	**70**	**80**
	Km×1,000	**15**	**30**	**45**	**60**	**75**	**90**	**105**	**120**
Spark plugs *[10]	Nu 2.0L CVVL	Replace every 150,000 km (100,000 miles) or 120 months							
	Nu 2.0L MPI	Replace every 150,000 km (100,000 miles) or 120 months							
	Theta II 2.4L GDI	Replace every 150,000 km (100,000 miles) or 120 months							
	Theta II 2.4L MPI	Replace every 45,000 km (30,000 miles) or 36 months							
	Theta II 2.0L T-GDI	Replace every 75,000 km (50,000 miles) or 60 months							
Automatic transaxle fluid (if equipped)		No check, No service required							
Manual transaxle fluid (if equipped) *[8]		-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I
Drive shaft and boots		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Fuel tank air filter		-	I	-	R	-	I	-	R
Fuel additives (Petrol) *[6]		Add every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 6 months							
Fuel filtrer (Petrol)	For China, Brazil	-	I	-	R	-	I	-	R
Fuel lines, hoses and connections		-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I
Vapour hose and fuel filler cap		-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

Normal Maintenance Schedule - For Petrol Engine [Except Europe (Including Russia)] (Continue)

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM		Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first							
	Months	**12**	**24**	**36**	**48**	**60**	**72**	**84**	**96**
	Miles×1,000	**10**	**20**	**30**	**40**	**50**	**60**	**70**	**80**
	Km×1,000	**15**	**30**	**45**	**60**	**75**	**90**	**105**	**120**
Air cleaner filter	Except China, India, Middle East	I	I	R	I	I	R	I	I
	For China, India, Middle East	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Exhaust system		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Cooling system		At first, Inspect 60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48months after that, Inspect every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months							
Air conditioner compressor/refrigerant (if equipped)		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Climate control air filter (if equipped)		R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Brake discs and pads		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake lines, hoses and connections		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake/clutch (if equipped) fluid		I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R
Parking brake		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Suspension ball joints		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tyre (pressure & tread wear)		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Battery condition		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions - For Petrol Engine [Except Europe (Including Russia)]

MAINTENANCE ITEM		MAINTENANCE OPERATION	MAINTENANCE INTERVALS	DRIVING CONDITION
Engine oil and engine oil filter	Theta 2.4L Nu 2.0L	R	Every 7,500 km (5,000 miles) or 6 months	A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L
	Theta 2.0 T-GDI	R	Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 3 months	A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L
Air cleaner filter		R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	C, E
Spark plugs		R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	B, H, I, L
Manual transaxle fluid (if equipped)		R	Every 120,000 km (80,000 miles)	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K
Automatic transaxle fluid (if equipped)		R	Every 90,000 km (60,000 miles)	A, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots		I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G
Suspension ball joints		I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G
Brake discs and pads, calipers and rotors		I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, G, H

MAINTENANCE ITEM	MAINTENANCE OPERATION	MAINTENANCE INTERVALS	DRIVING CONDITION
Brake drums and linings (if equipped)	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, G, H
Parking brake	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, G, H
Drive shaft and boots	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K
Climate control air filter (if equipped)	R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	C, E, G

Maintenance operation
I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.
R : Replace.

SEVERE DRIVING CONDITIONS

A : Repeatedly driving short distance of less than 8 km (5 miles) in normal temperature or less than 16 km (10 miles) in freezing temperature.
B : Extensive engine idling or low speed driving for long distances.
C : Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled or salt-spread roads.
D : Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
E : Driving in heavy dust condition.
F : Driving in heavy traffic area.
G : Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain roads.
H : Towing a trailer or using a camper on roof rack.
I : Driving for patrol car, taxi, commercial car or vehicle towing.
J : Driving in very cold weather.
K : Driving over 170 km/h (106 mile/h).
L : Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions.

Normal Maintenance Schedule - For Diesel Engine [For New Zealand Only]

The following maintenance services must be performed to ensure good emission control and performance. Keep receipts for all vehicle emission services to protect your warranty. Where both mileage and time are shown, the frequency of service is determined by whichever occurs first.

NO.	ITEM	REMARK
*1	Coolant (Engine)	When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage.
*2	Drive belts (Engine)	• Adjust alternator, water pump and air conditioner (if equipped) drive belt. Inspect and if necessary repair or replace. • Inspect drive belt tensioner, idler and alternator pulley and if necessary correct or replace.
*3	Dual clutch transmission (DCT) fluid	Dual clutch transmission (DCT) fluid should be changed anytime it has been submerged in water.
*4	Engine oil and engine oil filter	Check the engine oil level and leak every 500 km (350 miles) or before starting a long trip.
*5	Engine oil and engine oil filter (For Diesel Engine)	• If the recommended oil is not available, replace engine oil and engine oil filter every 20,000 km (13,000 miles) or 12 months. • The engine oil level should be checked regularly and maintained properly. Operating with an insufficient amount oil can damage the engine, and such damage is not covered by warranty. • This maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. It is applicable only when using a qualified fuel <"EN590 or equivalent">. If the diesel fuel specifications don't meet the EN590, it must be replaced according to the severe maintenance schedule.

NO.	ITEM	REMARK
*6	Fuel additives (Petrol)	Kia recommends that you use unleaded petrol which has an octane rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 95 / AKI (Anti Knock Index) 91 or higher (for Europe) or Octane Rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 91 / AKI (Anti-Knock Index) 87 or higher (except Europe). For customers who do not use good quality gasolines including fuel additives regularly, and have problems starting or the engine does not run smoothly, one bottle of additives added to the fuel tank at every 15,000km (10,000 miles) (for Europe, Australia and New Zealand) / 10,000km (6,500 miles) (except Europe, Australia and New Zealand). Additives are available from your authorised Kia dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.
*7	Fuel filter cartridge (Diesel)	This maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. It is applicable only when using a qualified fuel <"EN590 or equivalent">. If the diesel fuel specifications don't meet the EN590, it must be replaced more frequently. If there are some important safety matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc., replace the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule and we recommend that you consult an authorised Kia dealer for details.
*8	Manual transaxle fluid	Manual transaxle fluid should be changed anytime it has been submerged in water.
*9	Valve clearance	Inspect for excessive valve noise and/or engine vibration and adjust if necessary. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.
*10	Spark plug	For your convenience, it can be replaced prior to it's interval when you do maintenance of other items.

Normal Maintenance Schedule - For Diesel Engine [For New Zealand Only] (Continue)

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM		Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first							
	Months	**12**	**24**	**36**	**48**	**60**	**72**	**84**	**96**
	Miles×1,000	**10**	**20**	**30**	**40**	**50**	**60**	**70**	**80**
	Km×1,000	**15**	**30**	**45**	**60**	**75**	**90**	**105**	**120**
Engine oil and engine oil filter *4	U-II 1.7	Replace every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12 months							
Coolant (Engine) *1		At first, Replace 210,000 km (140,000 miles) or 120 months after that, Replace every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months							
Drive belts (Engine) *2		At first, Inspect 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 48 months after that, Inspect every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months							
Automatic transaxle fluid (if equipped)		No check, No service required							
Manual transaxle fluid (if equipped) *8		-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I
Dual clutch transmission (DCT) fluid (if equipped) *3		-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I
Drive shaft and boots		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Fuel filler cap (Diesel)		-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I
Fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *7		-	I	-	R	-	I	-	R
Fuel lines, hoses and connections		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Air cleaner filter		I	I	R	I	I	R	I	I

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

Normal Maintenance Schedule - For Diesel Engine [For New Zealand Only] (Continue)

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM	Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first							
Months	**12**	**24**	**36**	**48**	**60**	**72**	**84**	**96**
Miles×1,000	**10**	**20**	**30**	**40**	**50**	**60**	**70**	**80**
Km×1,000	**15**	**30**	**45**	**60**	**75**	**90**	**105**	**120**
Exhaust system	-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Cooling system	At first, Inspect 60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48 months after that, Inspect every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months							
Air conditioner compressor/refrigerant (if equipped)	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Climate control air filter (if equipped)	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Brake discs and pads	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake lines, hoses and connections	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake/clutch (if equipped) fluid	I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R
Parking brake	-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Suspension ball joints	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tyre (pressure & tread wear)	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Battery condition	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions - For Diesel Engine [For New Zealand Only]

MAINTENANCE ITEM	MAINTENANCE OPERATION	MAINTENANCE INTERVALS	DRIVING CONDITION
Engine oil and engine oil filter	R	Every 7,500 km (5,000 miles) or 6 months	A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L
Air cleaner filter	R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	C, E
Manual transaxle fluid (if equipped)	R	Every 120,000 km (80,000 miles)	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K
Dual clutch transmission (DCT) fluid (if equipped)	R	Every 120,000 km (80,000 miles)	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K
Automatic transaxle fluid (if equipped)	R	Every 100,000 km (60,000 miles)	A, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G
Suspension ball joints	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G
Brake discs and pads, calipers and rotors	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, G, H
Brake drums and linings (if equipped)	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, G, H

MAINTENANCE ITEM	MAINTENANCE OPERATION	MAINTENANCE INTERVALS	DRIVING CONDITION
Parking brake	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, G, H
Drive shaft and boots	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K
Climate control air filter (if equipped)	R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	C, E, G

Maintenance operation
I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.
R : Replace.

SEVERE DRIVING CONDITIONS

A : Repeatedly driving short distance of less than 8 km (5 miles) in normal temperature or less than 16 km (10 miles) in freezing temperature.

B : Extensive engine idling or low speed driving for long distances.

C : Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled or salt-spread roads.

D : Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather

E : Driving in heavy dust condition.

F : Driving in heavy traffic area.

G : Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain roads.

H : Towing a trailer or using a camper on roof rack.

I : Driving for patrol car, taxi, commercial car or vehicle towing.

J : Driving in very cold weather.

K : Driving over 170 km/h (106 mile/h).

L : Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions.

Normal Maintenance Schedule - For Diesel Engine [For Europe (Except Russia)]

The following maintenance services must be performed to ensure good emission control and performance. Keep receipts for all vehicle emission services to protect your warranty. Where both mileage and time are shown, the frequency of service is determined by whichever occurs first.

NO.	ITEM	REMARK
*1	Coolant (Engine)	When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage.
*2	Drive belts (Engine)	• Adjust alternator, water pump and air conditioner (if equipped) drive belt. Inspect and if necessary repair or replace. • Inspect drive belt tensioner, idler and alternator pulley and if necessary correct or replace.
*3	Dual clutch transmission (DCT) fluid	Dual clutch transmission (DCT) fluid should be changed anytime it has been submerged in water.
*4	Engine oil and engine oil filter	Check the engine oil level and leak every 500 km (350 miles) or before starting a long trip.
*5	Engine oil and engine oil filter (For Diesel Engine)	• If the recommended oil is not available, replace engine oil and engine oil filter every 20,000 km (13,000 miles) or 12 months. • The engine oil level should be checked regularly and maintained properly. Operating with an insufficient amount oil can damage the engine, and such damage is not covered by warranty. • This maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. It is applicable only when using a qualified fuel <"EN590 or equivalent">. If the diesel fuel specifications don't meet the EN590, it must be replaced according to the severe maintenance schedule.

NO.	ITEM	REMARK
*6	Fuel additives (Petrol)	Kia recommends that you use unleaded petrol which has an octane rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 95 / AKI (Anti Knock Index) 91 or higher (for Europe) or Octane Rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 91 / AKI (Anti-Knock Index) 87 or higher (except Europe). For customers who do not use good quality gasolines including fuel additives regularly, and have problems starting or the engine does not run smoothly, one bottle of additives added to the fuel tank at every 15,000km (10,000 miles) (for Europe, Australia and New Zealand) / 10,000km (6,500 miles) (except Europe, Australia and New Zealand). Additives are available from your authorised Kia dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.
*7	Fuel filter cartridge (Diesel)	This maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. It is applicable only when using a qualified fuel <"EN590 or equivalent">. If the diesel fuel specifications don't meet the EN590, it must be replaced more frequently. If there are some important safety matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc., replace the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule and we recommend that you consult an authorised Kia dealer for details.
*8	Manual transaxle fluid	Manual transaxle fluid should be changed anytime it has been submerged in water.
*9	Valve clearance	Inspect for excessive valve noise and/or engine vibration and adjust if necessary. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.
*10	Spark plug	For your convenience, it can be replaced prior to it's interval when you do maintenance of other items.

Normal Maintenance Schedule - For Diesel Engine [For Europe (Except Russia)] (Continue)

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM		Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first							
	Months	**24**	**48**	**72**	**96**	**120**	**144**	**168**	**192**
	Miles×1,000	**20**	**40**	**60**	**80**	**100**	**120**	**140**	**160**
	Km×1,000	**30**	**60**	**90**	**120**	**150**	**180**	**210**	**240**
Engine oil and engine oil filter *4 *5	U-II 1.7	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Coolant (Engine) *1		At first, Replace 210,000 km (140,000 miles) or 120 months after that, Replace every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months							
Drive belts (Engine) *2		At first, Inspect 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 48months after that, Inspect every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months							
Automatic transaxle fluid (if equipped)		No check, No service required							
Manual transaxle fluid (if equipped) *8		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Dual clutch transmission (DCT) fluid (if equipped) *3		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Drive shaft and boots		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Fuel filler cap (Diesel)		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *7		I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R
Fuel lines, hoses and connections		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air cleaner filter		I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R
Exhaust system		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

Normal Maintenance Schedule - For Diesel Engine [For Europe (Except Russia)] (Continue)

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM	Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first							
Months	**24**	**48**	**72**	**96**	**120**	**144**	**168**	**192**
Miles×1,000	**20**	**40**	**60**	**80**	**100**	**120**	**140**	**160**
Km×1,000	**30**	**60**	**90**	**120**	**150**	**180**	**210**	**240**
Cooling system	At first, Inspect 60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48 months after that, Inspect every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months							
Air conditioner compressor/refrigerant (if equipped)	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Climate control air filter (if equipped)	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Brake discs and pads	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake lines, hoses and connections	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake/clutch (if equipped) fluid	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Parking brake	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Suspension ball joints	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tyre (pressure & tread wear)	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Battery condition	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions - For Diesel Engine [For Europe (Except Russia)]

MAINTENANCE ITEM	MAINTENANCE OPERATION	MAINTENANCE INTERVALS	DRIVING CONDITION
Engine oil and engine oil filter	R	Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12 months	A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L
Air cleaner filter	R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	C, E
Manual transaxle fluid (if equipped)	R	Every 120,000 km (80,000 miles)	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K
Dual clutch transmission (DCT) fluid (if equipped)	R	Every 120,000 km (80,000 miles)	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K
Automatic transaxle fluid (if equipped)	R	Every 90,000 km (60,000 miles)	A, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G
Suspension ball joints	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G
Brake discs and pads, calipers and rotors	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, G, H
Brake drums and linings (if equipped)	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, G, H

MAINTENANCE ITEM	MAINTENANCE OPERATION	MAINTENANCE INTERVALS	DRIVING CONDITION
Parking brake	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, G, H
Drive shaft and boots	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K
Climate control air filter (if equipped)	R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	C, E, G

Maintenance operation
I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.
R : Replace.

SEVERE DRIVING CONDITIONS

A : Repeatedly driving short distance of less than 8 km (5miles) in normal temperature or less than 16 km (10 miles) in freezing temperature.

B : Extensive engine idling or low speed driving for long distances.

C : Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled or salt-spread roads.

D : Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather.

E : Driving in heavy dust condition.

F : Driving in heavy traffic area.

G : Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain roads.

H : Towing a trailer or using a camper on roof rack.

I : Driving for patrol car, taxi, commercial car or vehicle towing.

J : Driving in very cold weather.

K : Driving over 170 km/h (106 mile/h).

L : Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions.

Normal Maintenance Schedule - For Diesel Engine [Except Europe (Including Russia)]

The following maintenance services must be performed to ensure good emission control and performance. Keep receipts for all vehicle emission services to protect your warranty. Where both mileage and time are shown, the frequency of service is determined by whichever occurs first.

NO.	ITEM	REMARK
*1	Coolant (Engine)	When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage.
*2	Drive belts (Engine)	• Adjust alternator, water pump and air conditioner (if equipped) drive belt. Inspect and if necessary repair or replace. • Inspect drive belt tensioner, idler and alternator pulley and if necessary correct or replace.
*3	Dual clutch transmission (DCT) fluid	Dual clutch transmission (DCT) fluid should be changed anytime it has been submerged in water.
*4	Engine oil and engine oil filter	Check the engine oil level and leak every 500 km (350 miles) or before starting a long trip.
*5	Engine oil and engine oil filter (For Diesel Engine)	• If the recommended oil is not available, replace engine oil and engine oil filter every 20,000 km (13,000 miles) or 12 months. • The engine oil level should be checked regularly and maintained properly. Operating with an insufficient amount oil can damage the engine, and such damage is not covered by warranty. • This maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. It is applicable only when using a qualified fuel <"EN590 or equivalent">. If the diesel fuel specifications don't meet the EN590, it must be replaced according to the severe maintenance schedule.

NO.	ITEM	REMARK
*6	Fuel additives (Petrol)	Kia recommends that you use unleaded petrol which has an octane rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 95 / AKI (Anti Knock Index) 91 or higher (for Europe) or Octane Rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 91 / AKI (Anti-Knock Index) 87 or higher (except Europe). For customers who do not use good quality gasolines including fuel additives regularly, and have problems starting or the engine does not run smoothly, one bottle of additives added to the fuel tank at every 15,000km (10,000 miles) (for Europe, Australia and New Zealand) / 10,000km (6,500 miles) (except Europe, Australia and New Zealand). Additives are available from your authorised Kia dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.
*7	Fuel filter cartridge (Diesel)	This maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. It is applicable only when using a qualified fuel <"EN590 or equivalent">. If the diesel fuel specifications don't meet the EN590, it must be replaced more frequently. If there are some important safety matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc., replace the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule and we recommend that you consult an authorised Kia dealer for details.
*8	Manual transaxle fluid	Manual transaxle fluid should be changed anytime it has been submerged in water.
*9	Valve clearance	Inspect for excessive valve noise and/or engine vibration and adjust if necessary. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.
*10	Spark plug	For your convenience, it can be replaced prior to it's interval when you do maintenance of other items.

Normal Maintenance Schedule - For Diesel Engine [Except Europe (Including Russia)] (Continue)

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM		Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first							
	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96
	Miles×1,000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80
	Km×1,000	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120
Engine oil and engine oil filter *4	U-II 1.7	For Russia : Replace every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12 months Except Russia : Replace every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12 months							
Coolant (Engine) *1		At first, Replace 210,000 km (140,000 miles) or 120 months after that, Replace every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months							
Drive belts (Engine) *2		At first, Inspect 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 48 months after that, Inspect every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months							
Automatic transaxle fluid (if equipped)		No check, No service required							
Manual transaxle fluid (if equipped) *8		-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I
Dual clutch transmission (DCT) fluid (if equipped) *3		-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I
Drive shaft and boots		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Fuel filler cap (Diesel)		-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I
Fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *7		-	I	-	R	-	I	-	R
Fuel lines, hoses and connections		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Air cleaner filter	Except China, India, Middle East	I	I	R	I	I	R	I	I
	For China, India, Middle East	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

Normal Maintenance Schedule - For Diesel Engine [Except Europe (Including Russia)] (Continue)

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM	Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first							
Months	**12**	**24**	**36**	**48**	**60**	**72**	**84**	**96**
Miles×1,000	**10**	**20**	**30**	**40**	**50**	**60**	**70**	**80**
Km×1,000	**15**	**30**	**45**	**60**	**75**	**90**	**105**	**120**
Exhaust system	-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Cooling system	At first, Inspect 60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48 months after that, Inspect every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months							
Air conditioner compressor/refrigerant (if equipped)	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Climate control air filter (if equipped)	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Brake discs and pads	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake lines, hoses and connections	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake/clutch (if equipped) fluid	I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R
Parking brake	-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Suspension ball joints	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tyre (pressure & tread wear)	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Battery condition	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions - For Diesel Engine [Except Europe (Including Russia)]

MAINTENANCE ITEM		MAINTENANCE OPERATION	MAINTENANCE INTERVALS	DRIVING CONDITION
Engine oil and engine oil filter	For Russia	R	Every 7,500 km (5,000 miles) or 6 months	A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L
	Except Russia	R	Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6 months	A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L
Air cleaner filter		R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	C, E
Manual transaxle fluid (if equipped)		R	Every 120,000 km (80,000 miles)	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K
Dual clutch transmission (DCT) fluid (if equipped)		R	Every 120,000 km (80,000 miles)	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K
Automatic transaxle fluid (if equipped)		R	Every 90,000 km (60,000 miles)	A, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots		I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G
Suspension ball joints		I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G
Brake discs and pads, calipers and rotors		I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, G, H
Brake drums and linings (if equipped)		I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, G, H

MAINTENANCE ITEM	MAINTENANCE OPERATION	MAINTENANCE INTERVALS	DRIVING CONDITION
Parking brake	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, G, H
Drive shaft and boots	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K
Climate control air filter (if equipped)	R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	C, E, G

Maintenance operation
I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.
R : Replace.

SEVERE DRIVING CONDITIONS

A : Repeatedly driving short distance of less than 8 km (5miles) in normal temperature or less than 16 km (10 miles) in freezing temperature.

B : Extensive engine idling or low speed driving for long distances.

C : Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled or salt-spread roads.

D : Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather

E : Driving in heavy dust condition.

F : Driving in heavy traffic area.

G : Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain roads.

H : Towing a trailer or using a camper on roof rack.

I : Driving for patrol car, taxi, commercial car or vehicle towing.

J : Driving in very cold weather.

K : Driving over 170 km/h (106 mile/h).

L : Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions.

EXPLANATION OF SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE ITEMS

Engine oil and filter

The engine oil and filter should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. If the vehicle is being driven in severe conditions, more frequent oil and filter changes are required.

Drive belts

Inspect all drive belts for evidence of cuts, cracks, excessive wear or oil saturation and replace if necessary. Drive belts should be checked periodically for proper tension and adjusted as necessary.

⚠ CAUTION

When you are inspecting the belt, place the ignition

switch in the LOCK/OFF or ACC position.

Fuel filter cartridge (for diesel)

A clogged filter can limit the speed at which the vehicle may be driven, damage the emission system and cause multiple issues such as hard starting. If an excessive amount of foreign matter accumulates in the fuel tank, the filter may require replacement more frequently.

After installing a new filter, run the engine for several minutes, and check for leaks at the connections.

We recommend that the fuel filter be replaced by an authorised Kia dealer.

Fuel filter (for petrol)

Kia petrol vehicle is equipped a lifetime fuel filter that integrated with the fuel tank. Regular maintenance or replacement is not needed but depends on fuel quality. If there are some important safety matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc, fuel filter inspection or replace is needed.

We recommend that the fuel filter be Inspected or replaced by an authorised Kia dealer.

Fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections

Check the fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections for leakage and damage. We recommend that the fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections be replaced by an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING - Diesel only

Never work on the injection system with the engine running or within 30 seconds after shutting off the engine. High pressure pump, rail, injectors and high pressure pipes are subject to high pressure even after the engine stops. The fuel jet produced by fuel leaks may cause serious injury, if it touches the body. People using pacemakers should not more move than 30 cm closer to the ECU or wiring harness within the engine room whilst the engine is running, since the high currents in the Common Rail system produce considerable magnetic fields.

Vapour hose (for petrol engine) and fuel filler cap

The vapour hose and fuel filler cap should be inspected at those intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. Make sure that a new vapour hose or fuel filler cap is correctly replaced.

Vacuum crankcase ventilation hoses (if equipped)

Inspect the surface of hoses for evidence of heat and/or mechanical damage. Hard and brittle rubber, cracking, tears, cuts, abrasions, and excessive swelling indicate deterioration. Particular attention should be paid to examine those hose surfaces nearest to high heat sources, such as the exhaust manifold.
Inspect the hose routing to assure that the hoses do not come in contact with any heat source, sharp edges or moving component which might cause heat damage or mechanical wear. Inspect all hose connections, such as clamps and couplings, to make sure they are secure, and that no leaks are present. Hoses should be replaced immediately if there is any evidence of deterioration or damage.

Air cleaner filter

We recommend that the air cleaner filter be replaced by an authorised Kia dealer.

Spark plugs (for petrol engine)

Make sure to install new spark plugs of the correct heat range.

⚠ WARNING

Do not disconnect and inspect spark plugs when the engine is hot. You may burn yourself.

Valve clearance (for petrol engine) (Except for Nu 2.0 Engine)

Inspect for excessive valve noise and/or engine vibration and adjust if necessary. We recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised Kia dealer.

Cooling system

Check the cooling system components, such as the radiator, coolant reservoir, hoses and connections for leakage and damage. Replace any damaged parts.

Coolant

The coolant should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule.

Manual transaxle fluid (if equipped)

Inspect the manual transaxle fluid according to the maintenance schedule.

Dual clutch transmission fluid (if equipped)

Inspect the dual clutch transmission fluid according to the maintenance schedule.

Automatic transaxle fluid (if equipped)

Automatic transaxle fluid should not be checked under normal usage conditions.
We recommend that the automatic transmission fluid changed by an authorised Kia dealer according to the maintenance schedule.

✻ NOTICE

Automatic transaxle fluid colour is basically red.
As the vehicle is driven, the automatic transaxle fluid will begin to look darker. It is normal condition and you should not judge the need to replace the fluid based upon the changed colour.

⚠ CAUTION

The use of a non-specified fluid could result in transaxle malfunction and failure.

Use only specified automatic transaxle fluid. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" in chapter 9.)

Brake hoses and lines

Visually check for proper installation, chafing, cracks, deterioration and any leakage. Replace any deteriorated or damaged parts immediately.

Brake/Clutch fluid (if equipped)

Check the brake/clutch fluid level in the brake/clutch fluid reservoir. The level should be between “MIN” and “MAX” marks on the side of the reservoir. Use only hydraulic brake/clutch fluid conforming to DOT 3 or DOT 4 specification.

Parking brake

Inspect the parking brake system including the parking brake lever (or pedal) and cables.

Brake discs, pads, calipers and rotors

Check the pads for excessive wear, discs for run out and wear, and calipers for fluid leakage.

For more information on checking the pads or lining wear limit, we recommend to refer to the Kia web site.

(**https://kia-hotline.com**)

Suspension mounting bolts

Check the suspension connections for looseness or damage. Retighten to the specified torque.

Steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint

With the vehicle stopped and engine off, check for excessive free-play in the steering wheel.

Check the linkage for bends or damage. Check the dust boots and ball joints for deterioration, cracks, or damage. Replace any damaged parts.

Drive shafts and boots

Check the drive shafts, boots and clamps for cracks, deterioration, or damage. Replace any damaged parts and, if necessary, repack the grease.

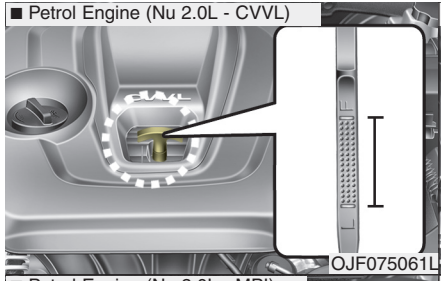
Air conditioning refrigerant (if equipped)

Check the air conditioning lines and connections for leakage and damage.

ENGINE OIL

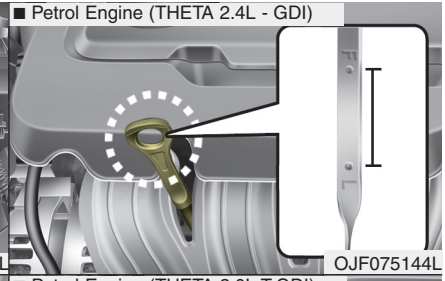
Checking the engine oil level

■ Petrol Engine (Nu 2.0L - CVVL)



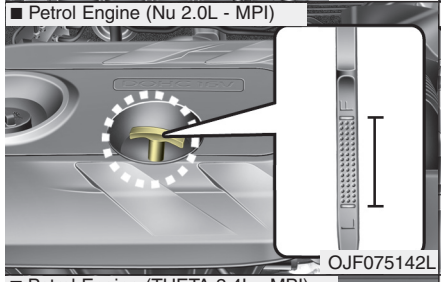
OJF075061L

■ Petrol Engine (THETA 2.4L - GDI)



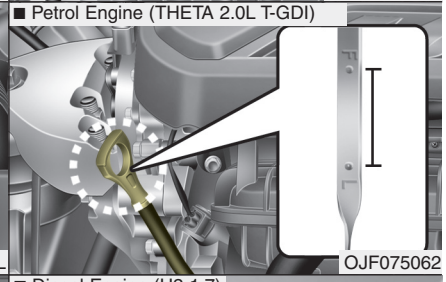
OJF075144L

■ Petrol Engine (Nu 2.0L - MPI)



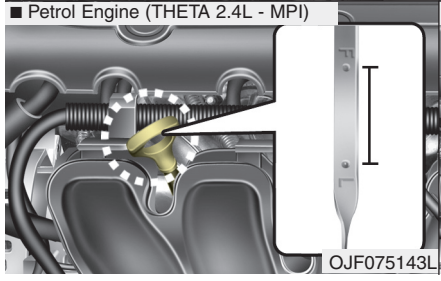
OJF075142L

■ Petrol Engine (THETA 2.0L T-GDI)



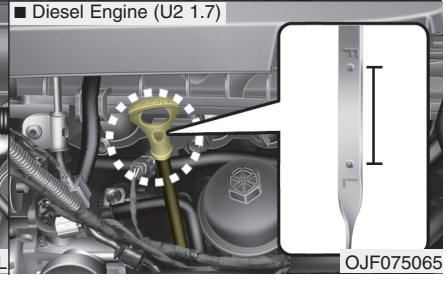
OJF075062

■ Petrol Engine (THETA 2.4L - MPI)



OJF075143L

■ Diesel Engine (U2 1.7)



OJF075065

1. Be sure the vehicle is on level ground.
2. Start the engine and allow it to reach normal operating temperature.
3. Turn the engine off and wait for a few minutes (about 5 minutes) for the oil to return to the oil pan.
4. Pull the dipstick out, wipe it clean, and re-insert it fully.

⚠ WARNING - Radiator hose

Be very careful not to touch the radiator hose when checking or adding the engine oil as it may be hot enough to burn you.

5. Pull the dipstick out again and check the level. The level should be between F (Full) and L (Low).

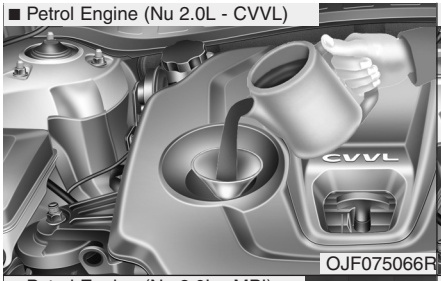
⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not overfill the engine oil. It may damage the engine.***
- ***Do not spill engine oil, when adding or changing engine oil. If you drop the engine oil on the engine room, wipe it off immediately.***
- ***When you wipe the oil level gauge, you should wipe it with a clean cloth. When mixed with debris, it can cause engine damage.***

⚠ CAUTION - Diesel engine

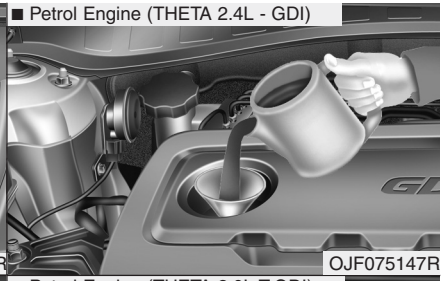
Overfilling the engine oil may cause severe dieseling due to churning effect. It may lead to engine damage accompanied with abrupt engine speed increment, combustion noise and white smoke emission.

■ Petrol Engine (Nu 2.0L - CVVL)



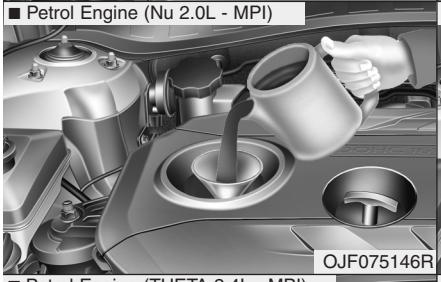
OJF075066R

■ Petrol Engine (THETA 2.4L - GDI)



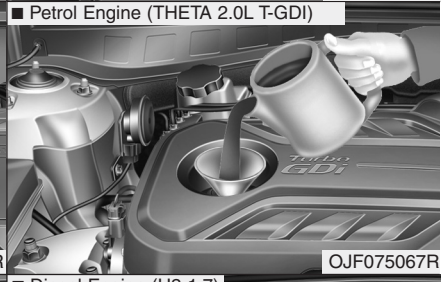
OJF075147R

■ Petrol Engine (Nu 2.0L - MPI)



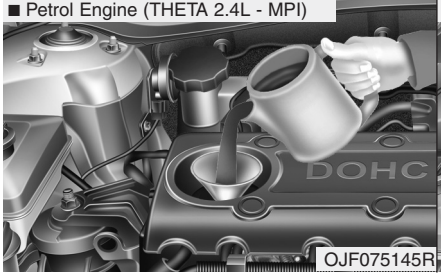
OJF075146R

■ Petrol Engine (THETA 2.0L T-GDI)



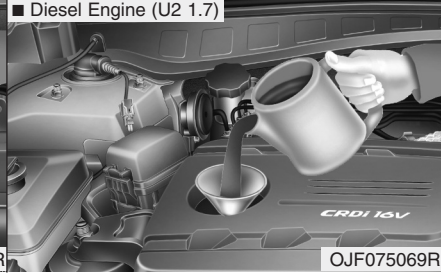
OJF075067R

■ Petrol Engine (THETA 2.4L - MPI)



OJF075145R

■ Diesel Engine (U2 1.7)



OJF075069R

If it is near or at L (Low), add enough oil to bring the level to F (Full). **Do not overfill.**

Use a funnel to help prevent oil from being spilled on engine components.

Use only the specified engine oil. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" in chapter 9.)

Changing the engine oil and filter

We recommend that the engine oil and filter be replaced by an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING

Used engine oil may cause skin irritation or cancer if left in contact with the skin for prolonged periods of time. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing your hands thoroughly with soap and warm water as soon as possible after handling used oil.

ENGINE COOLANT

The high-pressure cooling system has a reservoir filled with year round antifreeze coolant. The reservoir is filled at the factory.

Check the antifreeze protection and coolant level at least once a year, at the beginning of the winter season, and before travelling to a colder climate.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***When the engine overheats from low engine coolant, suddenly adding engine coolant may cause cracks in the engine. To prevent damage, add engine coolant slowly in small quantities.***
- ***Do not drive with no engine coolant. It may cause water pump failure and engine seizure, etc.***

Checking the coolant level

⚠ WARNING



Removing radiator cap

- **Never attempt to remove the radiator cap whilst the engine is operating or hot. Doing so might lead to cooling system and engine damage. Also, hot coolant or steam could cause serious personal injury.**
- **Turn the engine off and wait until it cools down. Use extreme care when removing the radiator cap. Wrap a thick towel around it, and turn it counterclockwise slowly to the first stop. Step back whilst the pressure is released from the cooling system.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

When you are sure all the pressure has been released, press down on the cap, using a thick towel, and continue turning counterclockwise to remove it.

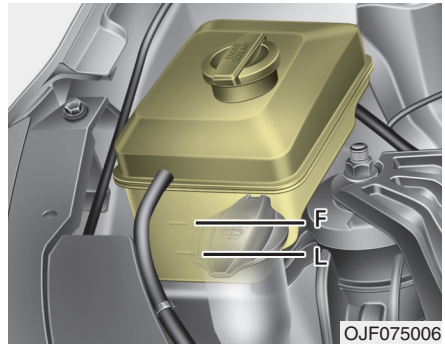
- **Even if the engine is not operating, do not remove the radiator cap or the drain plug whilst the engine and radiator are hot. Hot coolant and steam may still blow out under pressure, causing serious injury.**

⚠ WARNING



The electric motor (cooling fan) is controlled by engine coolant temperature, refrigerant pressure and vehicle speed. It may sometimes operate even when the engine is not running. Use extreme caution when working near the blades of the cooling fan so that you are not injured by a rotating fan blades. As the engine coolant temperature decreases, the electric motor will automatically shut off. This is a normal condition.

If your vehicle is equipped with GDI, the electric motor (cooling fan) may operate until you disconnect the negative battery cable.



Check the condition and connections of all cooling system hoses and heater hoses. Replace any swollen or deteriorated hoses.

The coolant level should be filled between F (Full) and L (Low) marks on the side of the coolant reservoir when the engine is cool.

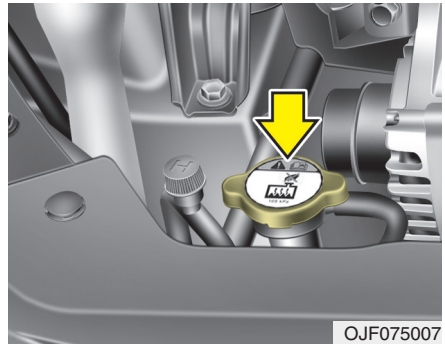
If the coolant level is low, add enough specified coolant to provide protection against freezing and corrosion. Bring the level to F (Full), but do not overfill. If frequent additions are required, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

Recommended engine coolant

- When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage.
- The engine in your vehicle has aluminum engine parts and must be protected by an ethylene-glycol with phosphate based coolant to prevent corrosion and freezing.
- DO NOT USE alcohol or methanol coolant or mix them with the specified coolant.
- Do not use a solution that contains more than 60% antifreeze or less than 35% antifreeze, which would reduce the effectiveness of the solution.

For mixture percentage, refer to the following table.

Ambient Temperature	Mixture Percentage (volume)	
	Antifreeze	Water
-15°C (5°F)	35	65
-25°C (-13°F)	40	60
-35°C (-31°F)	50	50
-45°C (-49°F)	60	40


OJF075007

⚠ WARNING

Radiator cap

Do not remove the radiator cap when the engine and radiator are hot. Scalding hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure causing serious injury.

Changing the coolant

We recommend that the coolant be replaced by an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

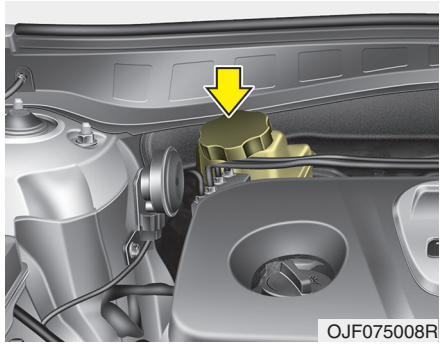
Put a thick cloth around the radiator cap before refilling the coolant in order to prevent the coolant from overflowing into engine parts such as the alternator.

⚠ WARNING - Coolant

- **Do not use radiator coolant or antifreeze in the washer fluid reservoir.**
- **Radiator coolant can severely obscure visibility when sprayed on the windscreen and may cause loss of vehicle control or damage the paint and body trim.**

BRAKE/CLUTCH FLUID (IF EQUIPPED)

Checking the brake/clutch fluid level



Check the fluid level in the reservoir periodically. The fluid level should be between MAX and MIN marks on the side of the reservoir.

Before removing the reservoir cap and adding brake/clutch fluid, clean the area around the reservoir cap thoroughly to prevent brake/clutch fluid contamination.

If the level is low, add fluid to the MAX level. The level will fall with accumulated mileage. This is a normal condition associated with the wear of the brake linings.

If the fluid level is excessively low, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

Use only the specified brake fluid. (Refer to “Recommended lubricants or capacities” in chapter 9.)

Never mix different types of fluid.

⚠ WARNING - Loss of brake/clutch fluid

In the event the brake/clutch system requires frequent additions of fluid, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING - Brake / clutch fluid

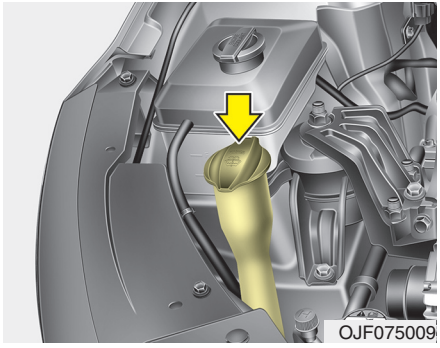
When changing and adding brake/clutch fluid, handle it carefully. Do not let it come in contact with your eyes. If brake/clutch fluid should come in contact with your eyes, immediately flush them with a large quantity of fresh tap water. Have your eyes examined by a doctor as soon as possible.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not allow brake/clutch fluid to contact the vehicle's body paint, as paint damage will result. Brake/clutch fluid, which has been exposed to open air for an extended time should never be used as its quality cannot be guaranteed. It should be properly disposed. Don't put in the wrong kind of fluid. A few drops of mineral-based oil, such as engine oil, in your brake/clutch system can damage brake/clutch system parts.

WASHER FLUID

Checking the washer fluid level



The reservoir is translucent so that you can check the level with a quick visual inspection.

Check the fluid level in the washer fluid reservoir and add fluid if necessary. Plain water may be used if washer fluid is not available. However, use washer solvent with antifreeze characteristics in cold climates to prevent freezing.

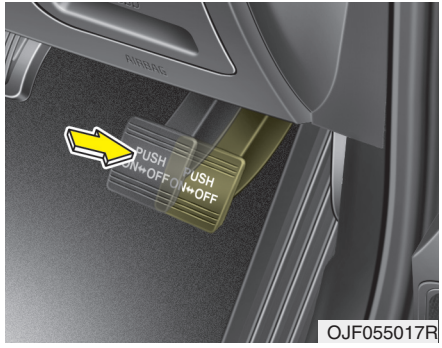
⚠ WARNING - Coolant

- **Do not use radiator coolant or antifreeze in the washer fluid reservoir.**
- **Radiator coolant can severely obscure visibility when sprayed on the windscreen and may cause loss of vehicle control or damage to paint and body trim.**
- **Windscreen Washer fluid agents contain some amounts of alcohol and can be flammable under certain circumstances. Do not allow sparks or flame to contact the washer fluid or the washer fluid reservoir. Damage to the vehicle or occupants could occur.**
- **Windscreen washer fluid is poisonous to humans and animals. Do not drink and avoid contacting windscreen washer fluid. Serious injury or death could occur.**

PARKING BRAKE

Checking the parking brake

Type A

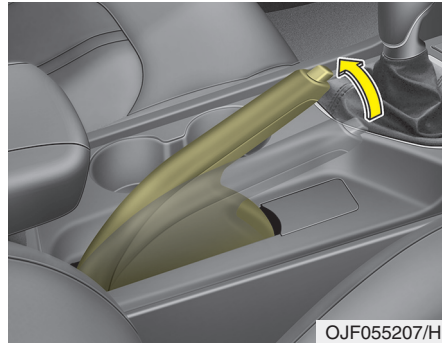


OJF055017R

Check whether the stroke is within specification when the parking brake pedal is depressed with 30 kg (66 lb, 294N) of force. Also, the parking brake alone should securely hold the vehicle on a fairly steep grade. If the stroke is more or less than specified, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised Kia dealer.

Stroke : 6~7 notch

Type B



OJF055207/H

Check the stroke of the parking brake by counting the number of “clicks” heard whilst fully applying it from the released position. Also, the parking brake alone should securely hold the vehicle on a fairly steep grade. If the stroke is more or less than specified, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised Kia dealer.

Stroke : 5 “clicks” at a force of 20 kg (44 lbs, 196 N).

FUEL FILTER (FOR DIESEL)

Draining water from the fuel filter

The fuel filter for diesel engine plays an important role of separating water from fuel and accumulating the water in its bottom.

If water accumulates in the fuel filter, the warning light comes on when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

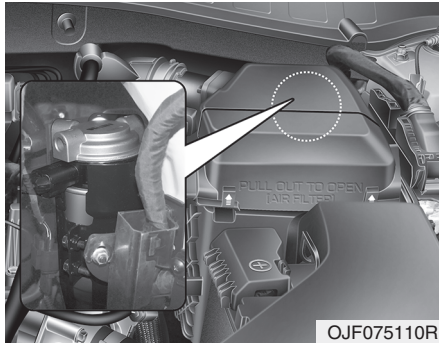


If this warning light illuminates, take your car to an authorised Kia dealer and have drain the water and checked the system.

⚠ CAUTION

If the water accumulated in the fuel filter is not drained at proper times, damages to the major parts such as the fuel system can be caused by water permeation in the fuel filter.

Fuel filter cartridge replacement



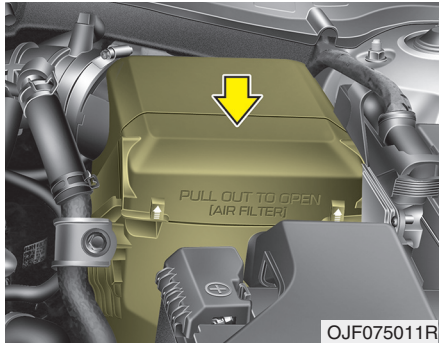
OJF075110R

✻ NOTICE

When replacing the fuel filter cartridge, we recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorised Kia dealer.

AIR CLEANER

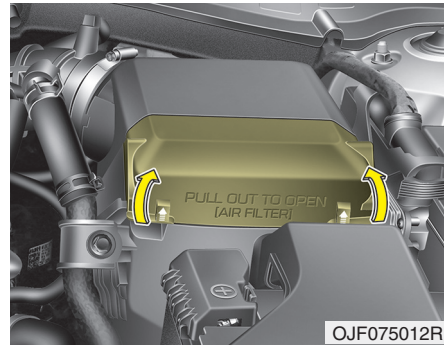
Filter replacement



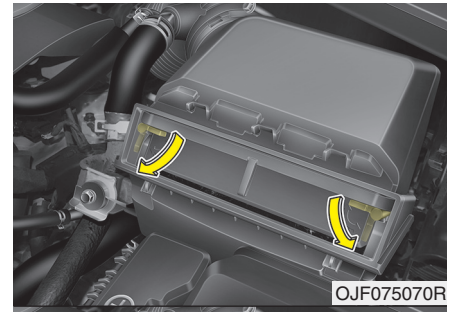
It must be replaced when necessary, and should not be washed.

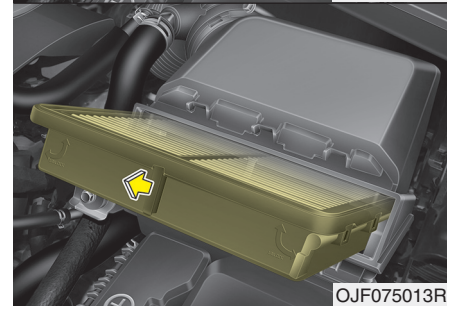
You can clean the filter when inspecting the air cleaner element.

Clean the filter by using compressed air.



1. Pull out the air cleaner cover.





2. Unlock by turning the locking lever downward.
3. Pull the air cleaner filter to replace.
4. Lock the cover with the reverse order.

Replace the filter according to the Maintenance Schedule.

If the vehicle is operated in extremely dusty or sandy areas, replace the element more often than the usual recommended intervals. (Refer to “Maintenance under severe usage conditions” in this chapter 9.)

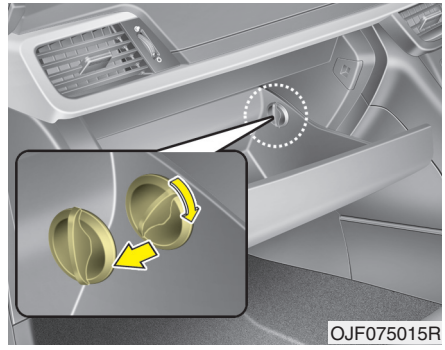
⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not drive with the air cleaner removed; this will result in excessive engine wear.***
- ***When removing the air cleaner filter, be careful that dust or dirt does not enter the air intake, or damage may result.***
- ***We recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorised Kia dealer.***

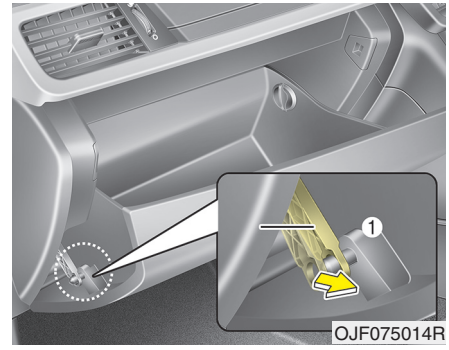
CLIMATE CONTROL AIR FILTER

Filter inspection

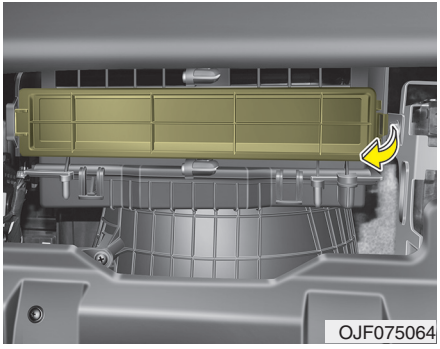
The climate control air filter should be replaced according to the maintenance schedule. If the vehicle is operated in severely air-polluted cities or on dusty rough roads for a long period, it should be inspected more frequently and replaced earlier. When you replace the climate control air filter, replace it performing the following procedure, and be careful to avoid damaging other components.



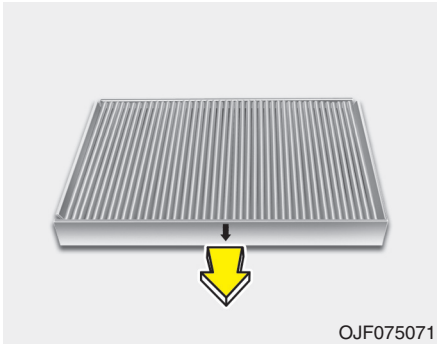
1. Open the glove box and remove the stoppers on both sides.



2. With the glove box open, pull the support strap (1).



3. Remove the climate control air filter cover whilst pressing the lock on the right side of the cover.



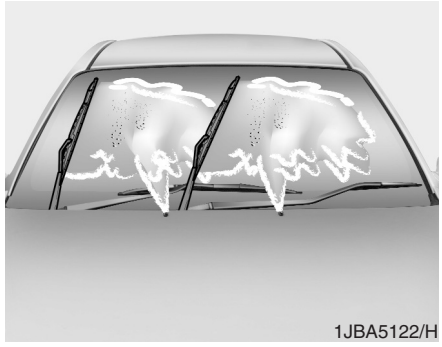
4. Replace the climate control air filter.
5. Reassemble in the reverse order of disassembly.

✻ NOTICE

When replacing the climate control air filter install it properly. Otherwise, the system may produce noise and the effectiveness of the filter may be reduced.

WIPER BLADES

Blade inspection


1JBA5122/H

✻ NOTICE

Commercial hot waxes applied by automatic car washes have been known to make the windscreen difficult to clean.

Contamination of either the windscreen or the wiper blades with foreign matter can reduce the effectiveness of the windscreen wipers. Common sources of contamination are insects, tree sap, and hot wax treatments used by some commercial car washes. If the blades are not wiping properly, clean both the window and the blades with a good cleaner or mild detergent, and rinse thoroughly with clean water.

⚠ CAUTION

To prevent damage to the wiper blades, do not use petrol, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.

Blade replacement

When the wipers no longer clean adequately, the blades may be worn or cracked, and require replacement.

⚠ CAUTION

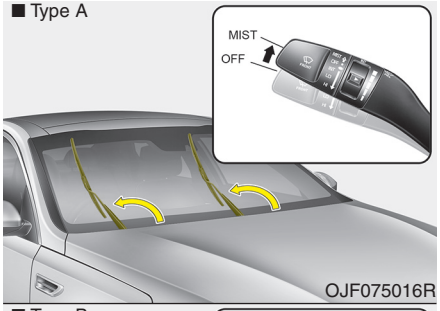
To prevent damage to the wiper arms or other components, do not attempt to move the wipers manually.

⚠ CAUTION

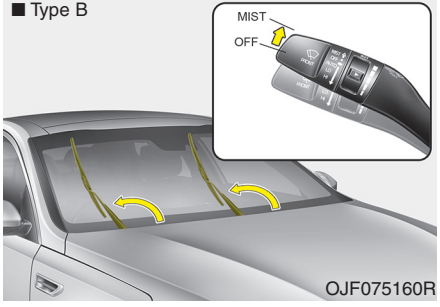
The use of a non-specified wiper blade could result in wiper malfunction and failure.

Front windscreen wiper blade

■ Type A



■ Type B

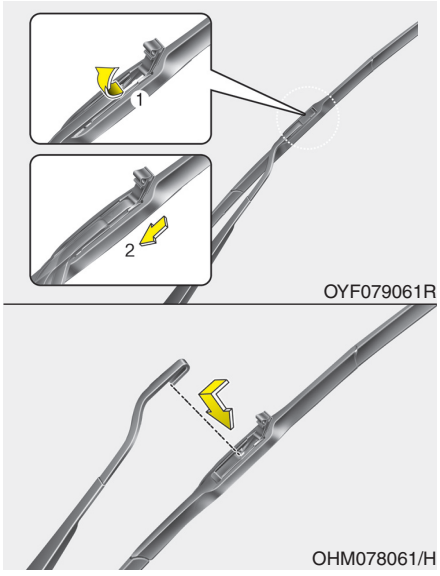


For your convenience, move the windscreen wiper blades to the service position as follows;

After turning off the engine, move the wiper switch to the single wiping (MIST) position within 20 seconds and hold the switch more than 2 seconds until the wiper blade is in the fully up position.

⚠ CAUTION

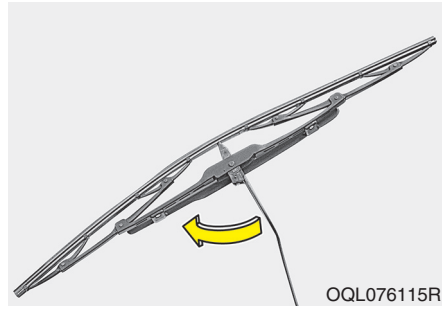
Do not allow the wiper arm to fall against the windscreen, since it may chip or crack the windscreen.



Type A

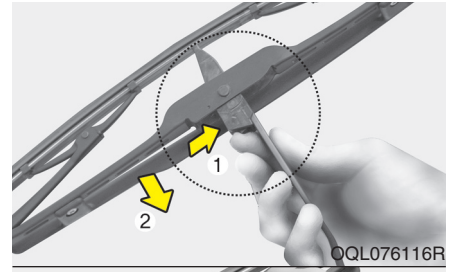
1. Raise the wiper arm.
2. Lift up the wiper blade clip. Then pull down the blade assembly and remove it.
3. Install the new blade assembly.

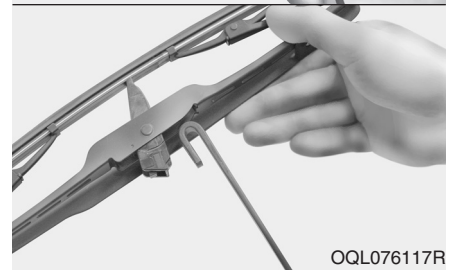
4. Return the wiper arm on the windscreen.
5. Turn ignition to the ON position and wiper arms will return to the normal operating position.



Type B

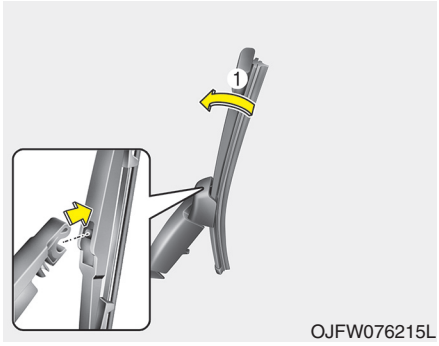
1. Raise the wiper arm and turn the wiper blade assembly to expose the plastic locking clip.



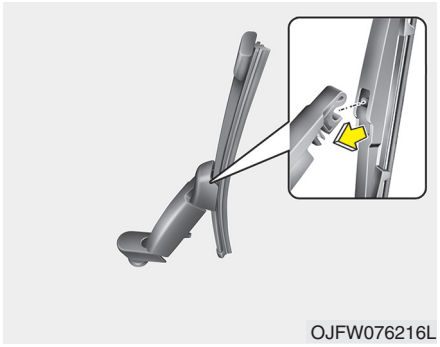


2. Compress the clip and slide the blade assembly downward.
3. Lift it off the arm.
4. Install the new blade assembly.
5. Return the wiper arm on the windscreen.
6. Turn ignition to the ON position and wiper arms will return to the normal operating position.

Rear window wiper blade



1. Raise the wiper arm and pull out the wiper blade assembly.

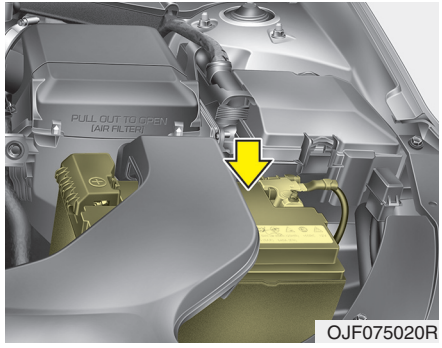


2. Install the new blade assembly by inserting the centre part into the slot in the wiper arm until it clicks into place.
3. Make sure the blade assembly is installed firmly by trying to pull it slightly.

To prevent damage to the wiper arms or other components, we recommend that the wiper blade be replaced by an authorised Kia dealer.

BATTERY

For best battery service



OJF075020R

- Keep the battery securely mounted.
- Keep the battery top clean and dry.
- Keep the terminals and connections clean, tight, and coated with petroleum jelly or terminal grease.
- Rinse any spilled electrolyte from the battery immediately with a solution of water and baking soda.
- If the vehicle is not going to be used for an extended time, disconnect the battery cables.

✻ NOTICE

Basically equipped battery is maintenance free type. If your vehicle is equipped with the battery marked with LOWER and UPPER on the side, you can check the electrolyte level. The electrolyte level should be between LOWER and UPPER. If the electrolyte level is low, it needs to add distilled (demineralized) water (Never add sulfuric acid or other electrolyte). When refill, be careful not to splash the battery and adjacent components. And do not overfill the battery cells. It can cause corrosion on other parts. After then ensure that tighten the cell caps. We recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING - Battery dangers

Always read the following instructions carefully when handling a battery.

Keep lighted cigarettes and all other flames or sparks away from the battery.

Hydrogen, a highly combustible gas, is always present in battery cells and may explode if ignited.

Keep batteries out of the reach of children because batteries contain highly corrosive SULFURIC ACID. Do not allow battery acid to contact your skin, eyes, clothing or paint finish.

(Continued)

(Continued)



If any electrolyte gets into your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention.

If electrolyte gets on your skin, thoroughly wash the contacted area. If you feel pain or burning sensation, get medical attention immediately.



Wear eye protection when charging or working near a battery. Always provide ventilation when working in an enclosed space.



An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose the battery according to your local law(s) or regulation.

(Continued)

(Continued)



The battery contains lead. Do not dispose of it after use. We recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.

- **When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the case may cause battery acid to leak, resulting in personal injury. Lift with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.**
- **Never attempt to recharge the battery when the battery cables are connected.**
- **The electrical ignition system works with high voltage. Never touch these components with the engine running or the ignition switched on.**

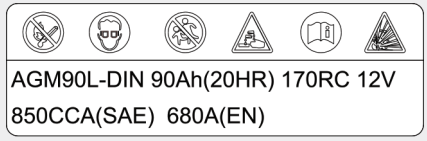
Failure to follow the above warnings can result in serious bodily injury or death.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***When you don't use the vehicle for a long time in the low temperature area, separate the battery and keep it indoors.***
- ***Always charge the battery fully to prevent battery case damage in low temperature area.***
- ***If you connect unauthorised electronic devices to the battery, the battery may be discharged. Never use unauthorised devices.***

Battery capacity label

■ Example



OUM074113L

❊ The actual battery label in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

1. AGM90L-DIN : The Kia model name of battery
2. 90Ah(20HR) : The nominal capacity (in Ampere hours)
3. 170RC : The nominal reserve capacity (in min.)
4. 12V : The nominal voltage
5. 850CCA (SAE) : The cold-test current in amperes by SAE
6. 680A : The cold-test current in amperes by EN

Battery recharging

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free, calcium-based battery.

- If the battery becomes discharged in a short time (because, for example, the headlights or interior lights were left on whilst the vehicle was not in use), recharge it by slow charging (trickle) for 10 hours.
- If the battery gradually discharges because of high electric load whilst the vehicle is being used, recharge it at 20-30A for two hours.

⚠ WARNING - Recharging battery

When recharging the battery, observe the following precautions:

- **The battery must be removed from the vehicle and placed in an area with good ventilation.**
- **Do not allow cigarettes, sparks, or flame near the battery.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Watch the battery during charging, and stop or reduce the charging rate if the battery cells begin gassing (boiling) violently or if the temperature of the electrolyte of any cell exceeds 49°C (120°F).**
- **Wear eye protection when checking the battery during charging.**
- **Disconnect the battery charger in the following order.**
  1. **Turn off the battery charger main switch.**
  2. **Unhook the negative clamp from the negative battery terminal.**
  3. **Unhook the positive clamp from the positive battery terminal.**

⚠ WARNING

- **Before performing maintenance or recharging the battery, turn off all accessories and stop the engine.**
- **The negative battery cable must be removed first and installed last when the battery is disconnected.**
- **Operation related to the battery is recommended to an authorised Kia dealer.**

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Keep the battery away from water or any liquid.***
- ***For your safety, we recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorised Kia dealer.***

⚠ CAUTION - AGM battery (if equipped)

- ***Absorbent Glass Matt (AGM) batteries are maintenance-free and we recommend that the AGM battery be serviced by an authorised Kia dealer. For charging your AGM battery, use only fully automatic battery chargers that are specially developed for AGM batteries.***
- ***When replacing the AGM battery, we recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorised Kia dealer.***
- ***Do not open or remove the cap on top of the battery. This may cause leaks of internal electrolyte that could result in severe injury.***

Reset items

Items should be reset after the battery has been discharged or the battery has been disconnected.

- Auto up/down window
- Sunroof
- Trip computer
- Climate control system
- Integrated Memory System
- Audio

TYRES AND WHEELS

Tyre care

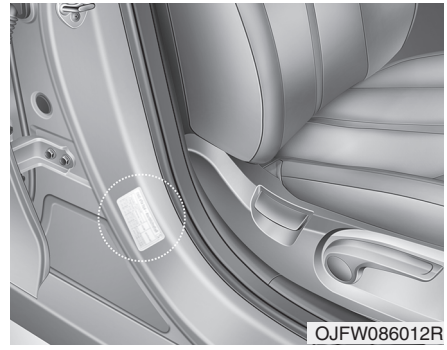
For proper maintenance, safety, and maximum fuel economy, you must always maintain recommended tyre inflation pressures and stay within the load limits and weight distribution recommended for your vehicle.

Recommended cold tyre inflation pressures

All tyre pressures (including the spare) should be checked when the tyres are cold. “Cold Tyres” means the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours or driven less than 1.6 km (one mile).

Recommended pressures must be maintained for the best ride, top vehicle handling, and minimum tyre wear.

For recommended inflation pressure, refer to “Tyre and wheels” in chapter 9.


OJFW086012R

All specifications (sizes and pressures) can be found on a label attached to the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING - Tyre underinflation

Severe underinflation (70 kPa (10 psi) or more) can lead to severe heat build-up, causing blowouts, tread separation and other tyre failures that can result in the loss of vehicle control leading to severe injury or death. This risk is much higher on hot days and when driving for long periods at high speeds.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Underinflation also results in excessive wear, poor handling and reduced fuel economy. Wheel deformation also is possible. Keep your tyre pressures at the proper levels. If a tyre frequently needs refilling, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Kia dealer.***
- ***Overinflation produces a harsh ride, excessive wear at the centre of the tyre tread, and a greater possibility of damage from road hazards.***

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Warm tyres normally exceed recommended cold tyre pressures by 28 to 41 kPa (4 to 6 psi). Do not release air from warm tyres to adjust the pressure or the tyres will be underinflated.***
- ***Be sure to reinstall the tyre inflation valve caps. Without the valve cap, dirt or moisture could get into the valve core and cause air leakage. If a valve cap is missing, install a new one as soon as possible.***

⚠ WARNING - Tyre Inflation

Overinflation or underinflation can reduce tyre life, adversely affect vehicle handling, and lead to sudden tyre failure. This could result in loss of vehicle control and potential injury.

⚠ CAUTION - Tyre pressure

Always observe the following:

- ***Check tyre pressure when the tyres are cold. (After vehicle has been parked for at least three hours or hasn't been driven more than 1.6 km (one mile) since startup.)***
- ***Check the pressure of your spare tyre each time you check the pressure of other tyres.***
- ***Never overload your vehicle. Be careful not to overload a vehicle luggage rack if your vehicle is equipped with one.***
- ***Worn, old tyres can cause accidents. If your tread is badly worn, or if your tyres have been damaged, replace them.***

Checking tyre inflation pressure

Check your tyres once a month or more.

Also, check the tyre pressure of the spare tyre.

How to check

Use a good quality gauge to check tyre pressure. You can not tell if your tyres are properly inflated simply by looking at them. Radial tyres may look properly inflated even when they're underinflated.

Check the tyre's inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. - "Cold" means your vehicle has been sitting for at least three hours or driven no more than 1.6 km (1 mile).

Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem. Press the tyre gauge firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement. If the cold tyre inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the tyre and loading information label, no further adjustment is necessary. If the pressure is low, add air until you reach the recommended amount.

If you overfill the tyre, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the centre of the tyre valve. Recheck the tyre pressure with the tyre gauge. Be sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. They help prevent leaks by keeping out dirt and moisture.

⚠ WARNING

- **Inspect your tyres frequently for proper inflation as well as wear and damage. Always use a tyre pressure gauge.**
- **Tyres with too much or too little pressure wear unevenly causing poor handling, loss of vehicle control, and sudden tyre failure leading to accidents, injuries, and even death. The recommended cold tyre pressure for your vehicle can be found in this manual and on the tyre label located on the driver's side centre pillar.**
- **Worn tyres can cause accidents. Replace tyres that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged.**
- **Remember to check the pressure of your spare tyre. Kia recommends that you check the spare every time you check the pressure of the other tyres on your vehicle.**

Tyre rotation

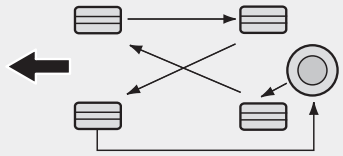
To equalize tread wear, it is recommended that the tyres be rotated every 12,000 km (7,500 miles) or sooner if irregular wear develops.

During rotation, check the tyres for correct balance.

When rotating tyres, check for uneven wear and damage. Abnormal wear is usually caused by incorrect tyre pressure, improper wheel alignment, out-of-balance wheels, severe braking or severe cornering. Look for bumps or bulges in the tread or side of tyre. Replace the tyre if you find either of these conditions. Replace the tyre if fabric or cord is visible. After rotation, be sure to bring the front and rear tyre pressures to specification and check lug nut tightness.

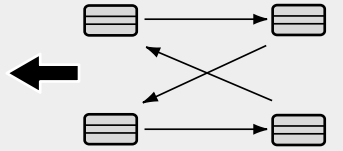
Refer to “Tyre and wheels” in chapter 9.

With a full-size spare tyre
(Only the vehicle without TPMS system)



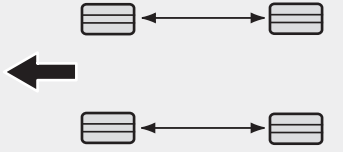
CBGQ0706

Without a spare tyre



S2BLA790A

Directional tyres (if equipped)



CBGQ0707A

Disc brake pads should be inspected for wear whenever tyres are rotated.

✻ NOTICE

Rotate radial tyres that have an asymmetric tread pattern only from front to rear and not from right to left.

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not use the compact spare tyre (if equipped) for tyre rotation.**
- **Do not mix bias ply and radial ply tyres under any circumstances. This may cause unusual handling characteristics that could result in death, severe injury, or property damage.**

Wheel alignment and tyre balance

The wheels on your vehicle were aligned and balanced carefully at the factory to give you the longest tyre life and best overall performance.

In most cases, you will not need to have your wheels aligned again. However, if you notice unusual tyre wear or your vehicle pulling one way or the other, the alignment may need to be reset.

If you notice your vehicle vibrating when driving on a smooth road, your wheels may need to be rebalanced.

⚠ CAUTION

Improper wheel weights can damage your vehicle's aluminum wheels. Use only approved wheel weights.

Tyre replacement



If the tyre is worn evenly, a tread wear indicator (A) will appear as a solid band across the tread. This shows there is less than 1.6 mm (1/16 in.) of tread left on the tyre. Replace the tyre when this happens.

Do not wait for the band to appear across the entire tread before replacing the tyre.

✻ NOTICE

We recommend that when replacing tyres, use the same originally supplied with the vehicles.
If not, that affects driving performance.

⚠ CAUTION

When replacing the tyres, recheck and tighten the wheel nuts after driving about 50 km (31 miles) and recheck after driving about 1,000 km (620miles). If the steering wheel shakes or the vehicle vibrates whilst driving, the tyre is out of balance. Align the tyre balance. If the problem is not solved, we recommend that you contact an authorised kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING - Replacing tyres

To reduce the chance of serious or fatal injuries from an accident caused by tyre failure or loss of vehicle control:

- **Replace tyres that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged. Worn tyres can cause loss of braking effectiveness, steering control, and traction.**
- **Do not drive your vehicle with too little or too much pressure in your tyres. This can lead to uneven wear and tyre failure.**
- **When replacing tyres, never mix radial and bias-ply tyres on the same car. You must replace all tyres (including the spare) if moving from radial to bias-ply tyres.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Using tyres and wheels other than the recommended sizes could cause unusual handling characteristics and poor vehicle control, resulting in a serious accident.**
- **Wheels that do not meet Kia's specifications may fit poorly and result in damage to the vehicle or unusual handling and poor vehicle control.**
- **The ABS works by comparing the speed of the wheels. The tyre size affects wheel speed. When replacing tyres, all 4 tyres must use the same size originally supplied with the vehicle. Using tyres of a different size can cause the ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) and ESC (Electronic Stability Control) to work irregularly.**

Compact spare tyre replacement (if equipped)

A compact spare tyre has a shorter tread life than a regular size tyre. Replace it when you can see the tread wear indicator bars on the tyre. The replacement compact spare tyre should be the same size and design tyre as the one provided with your new vehicle and should be mounted on the same compact spare tyre wheel. The compact spare tyre is not designed to be mounted on a regular size wheel, and the compact spare tyre wheel is not designed for mounting a regular size tyre.

Wheel replacement

When replacing the metal wheels for any reason, make sure the new wheels are equivalent to the original factory units in diameter, rim width and offset.

⚠ WARNING

A wheel that is not the correct size may adversely affect wheel and bearing life, braking and stopping abilities, handling characteristics, ground clearance, body-to-tyre clearance, snow chain clearance, speedometer and odometer calibration, headlight aim and bumper height.

Tyre traction

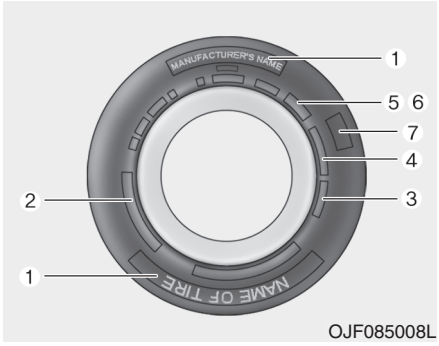
Tyre traction can be reduced if you drive on worn tyres, tyres that are improperly inflated or on slippery road surfaces. Tyres should be replaced when tread wear indicators appear. Slow down whenever there is rain, snow or ice on the road to reduce the possibility of losing control of the vehicle.

Tyre maintenance

In addition to proper inflation, correct wheel alignment helps to decrease tyre wear. If you find a tyre is worn unevenly, have your dealer check the wheel alignment.

When you have new tyres installed, make sure they are balanced. This will increase vehicle ride comfort and tyre life. Additionally, a tyre should always be rebalanced if it is removed from the wheel.

Tyre sidewall labeling



OJF085008L

This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tyre and also provides the tyre identification number (TIN) for safety standard certification. The TIN can be used to identify the tyre in case of a recall.

1. Manufacturer or brand name

Manufacturer or Brand name is shown.

2. Tyre size designation

A tyre's sidewall is marked with a tyre size designation. You will need this information when selecting replacement tyres for your vehicle. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the tyre size designation mean.

Example tyre size designation:

(These numbers are provided as an example only; your tyre size designator could vary depending on your vehicle.)

P235/55R19 108T

P - Applicable vehicle type (tyres marked with the prefix “P” are intended for use on passenger vehicles or light trucks; however, not all tyres have this marking).

235 - Tyre width in millimeters.

55 - Aspect ratio. The tyre’s section height as a percentage of its width.

R - Tyre construction code (Radial).

19 - Rim diameter in inches.

108 - Load Index, a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tyre can carry.

T - Speed Rating Symbol. See the speed rating chart in this section for additional information.

Wheel size designation

Wheels are also marked with important information that you need if you ever have to replace one. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the wheel size designation mean.

Example wheel size designation:

7.5JX19

7.5 - Rim width in inches.

J - Rim contour designation.

19 - Rim diameter in inches.

Tyre speed ratings

The chart below lists many of the different speed ratings currently being used for passenger car tyres. The speed rating is part of the tyre size designation on the sidewall of the tyre. This symbol corresponds to that tyre's designed maximum safe operating speed.

Speed Rating Symbol	Maximum Speed
S	180 km/h (112 mph)
T	190 km/h (118 mph)
H	210 km/h (130 mph)
V	240 km/h (149 mph)
Z	Above 240 km/h (149 mph)

3. Checking tyre life (TIN : Tyre Identification Number)

Any tyres that are over 6 years old, based on the manufacturing date, (including the spare tyre) should be replaced by new ones. You can find the manufacturing date on the tyre sidewall (possibly on the inside of the wheel), displaying the DOT Code. The DOT Code is a series of numbers on a tyre consisting of numbers and English letters. The manufacturing date is designated by the last four digits (characters) of the DOT code.

DOT : XXXX XXXX OOOO

The front part of the DOT means a plant code number, tyre size and tread pattern and the last four numbers indicate week and year manufactured.

For example:

DOT XXXX XXXX 1616 represents that the tyre was produced in the 16th week of 2016.

⚠ WARNING - Tyre age

Tyres degrade over time, even when they are not being used.

Regardless of the remaining tread, we recommend that tyres be replaced after approximately six (6) years of normal service. Heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process. Failure to follow this warning can result in sudden tyre failure, which could lead to a loss of control and an accident involving serious injury or death.

4. Tyre ply composition and material

The number of layers or plies of rubber-coated fabric in the tyre. Tyre manufacturers also must indicate the materials in the tyre, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others. The letter "R" means radial ply construction; the letter "D" means diagonal or bias ply construction; and the letter "B" means belted-bias ply construction.

5. Maximum permissible inflation pressure

This number is the greatest amount of air pressure that should be put in the tyre. Do not exceed the maximum permissible inflation pressure. Refer to the Tyre and Loading Information label for recommended inflation pressure.

6. Maximum load rating

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tyre. When replacing the tyres on the vehicle, always use a tyre that has the same load rating as the factory installed tyre.

7. Uniform tyre quality grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tyre sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example:

TREADWEAR 200

TRACTION AA

TEMPERATURE A

Tread wear

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tyre when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tyre graded 150 would wear one-and-a-half times (1½) as well on the government course as a tyre graded 100.

The relative performance of tyres depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

These grades are molded on the side-walls of passenger vehicle tyres. The tyres available as standard or optional equipment on your vehicle may vary with respect to grade.

Traction - AA, A, B & C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tyre's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tyre marked C may have poor traction performance.

Temperature -A, B & C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tyre's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tyre to degenerate and reduce tyre life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tyre failure. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

⚠ WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tyre is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

⚠ WARNING - Tyre temperature

The temperature grade for this tyre is established for a tyre that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat build-up and possible sudden tyre failure. This can cause loss of vehicle control and serious injury or death.

Low aspect ratio tyre (if equipped)

Low aspect ratio tyres, whose aspect ratio is lower than 50, are provided for sporty looks.

Because the low aspect ratio tyres are optimized for handling and braking, it may be more uncomfortable to ride in and there is more noise compare with normal tyres.

⚠ CAUTION

Because the sidewall of the low aspect ratio tyre is shorter than the normal, the wheel and tyre of the low aspect ratio tyre is easier to be damaged. So, follow the instructions below.

- ***When driving on a rough road or off road, drive cautiously because tyres and wheels may be damaged. And after driving, inspect tyres and wheels.***
- ***When passing over a pothole, speed bump, manhole, or kerb stone, drive slowly so that the tyres and wheels are not damaged.***
- ***If the tyre is impacted, we recommend that you inspect the tyre condition or contact an authorised Kia dealer.***
- ***To prevent damage to the tyre, inspect the tyre condition and pressure every 3,000km.***

⚠ CAUTION

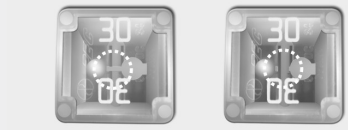
- ***It is not easy to recognize the tyre damage with your own eyes. But if there is the slightest hint of tyre damage, even though you cannot see the tyre damage with your own eyes, have the tyre checked or replaced because the tyre damage may cause air leakage from the tyre.***
- ***If the tyre is damaged by driving on a rough road, off road, pothole, manhole, or kerb stone, it will not be covered by the warranty.***
- ***You can find out the tyre information on the tyre sidewall.***

FUSES

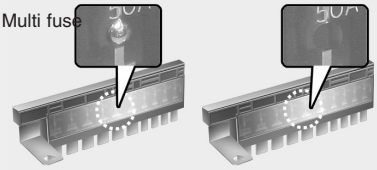
■ Blade type



■ Cartridge type



■ Multi fuse



■ BFT



OJF075021

❊ Left side : Normal
Right side : Blown

A vehicle's electrical system is protected from electrical overload damage by fuses.

This vehicle has 2 (or 3) fuse panels, one located in the driver's side panel bolster, the others in the engine compartment near the battery.

If any of your vehicle's lights, accessories, or controls do not work, check the appropriate circuit fuse. If a fuse has blown, the element inside the fuse will melt.

If the electrical system does not work, first check the driver's side fuse panel.

Before replacing a blown fuse, disconnect the negative battery cable.

Always replace a blown fuse with one of the same rating.

If the replacement fuse blows, this indicates an electrical problem. Avoid using the system involved and immediately consult an authorised Kia dealer.

Three kinds of fuses are used: blade type for lower amperage rating, cartridge type, and multi fuse for higher amperage ratings.

⚠ WARNING - Fuse replacement

- **Never replace a fuse with anything but another fuse of the same rating.**
- **A higher capacity fuse could cause damage and possibly a fire.**
- **Never install a wire or aluminum foil instead of the proper fuse even as a temporary repair. It may cause extensive wiring damage and a possible fire.**
- **Do not arbitrarily modify or add-on electric wiring of the vehicle.**

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use a screwdriver or any other metal object to remove fuses because it may cause a short circuit and damage the system.

✻ NOTICE

The actual fuse/relay panel label may differ from equipped items.

⚠ CAUTION

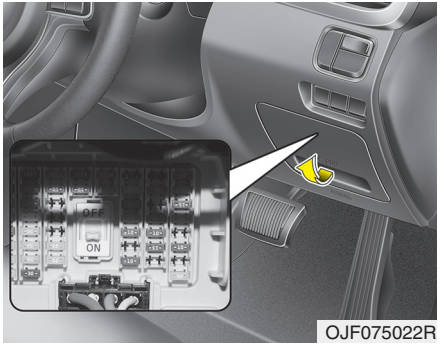
- ***When replacing a blown fuse or relay with a new one, make sure the new fuse or relay fits tightly into the clips. The incomplete fastening fuse or relay may cause the vehicle wiring and electric systems damage and a possible fire.***
- ***Do not remove fuses, relays and terminals fastened with bolts or nuts. The fuses, relays and terminals may be fastened incompletely, and it may cause a possible fire. If fuses, relays and terminals fastened with bolts or nuts are blown, we recommend that you consult an authorised Kia dealer.***
- ***Do not input any other objects except fuses or relays into fuse/relay terminals such as a driver or wiring. It may cause contact failure and system malfunction.***

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ***Do not plug in screwdrivers or aftermarket wiring into the terminal originally designed for fuse and relays only. The electrical system and wiring of the vehicle interior may be damaged or burned due to contact failure.***

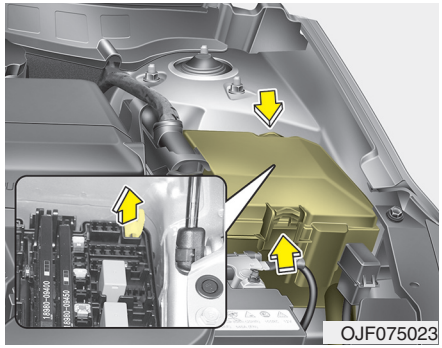
Inner panel fuse replacement



OJF075022R

1. Turn the ignition switch and all other switches off.
2. Open the fuse panel cover.

If the switch is located in the “OFF”, caution will be displayed in the cluster.


OJF075023

3. Pull the suspected fuse straight out. Use the removal tool provided in the main fuse box in the engine compartment.
4. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown.

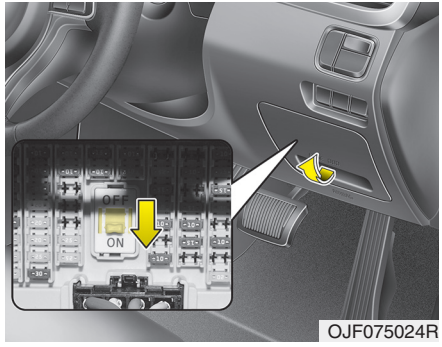
   Spare fuses are provided in the instrument panel fuse panel (or in the engine compartment fuse panel).
5. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips.

If it fits loosely, we recommend that you consult an authorised Kia dealer.

If you do not have a spare, use a fuse of the same rating from a circuit you may not need for operating the vehicle, such as the cigarette lighter fuse.

If the headlights or taillights, stoplights, courtesy lamp, day time running lights (D.R.L) do not work and the fuses are OK, check the fuse panel in the engine compartment. If a fuse is blown, it must be replaced.

Fuse switch



OJF075024R

Always, put the fuse switch at the ON position.

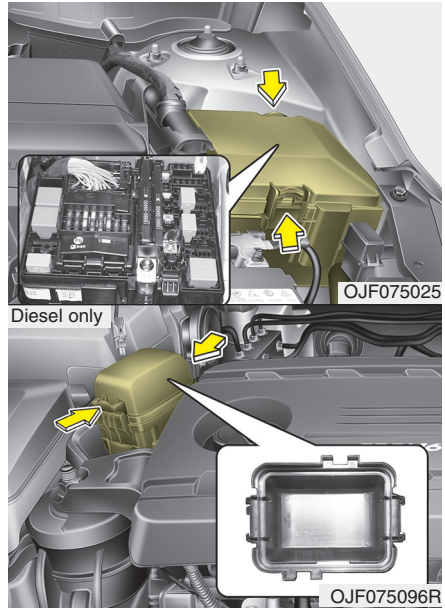
If you move the switch to the OFF position, some items such as audio and digital clock must be reset and transmitter (or smart key) may not work properly.

If the fuse switch is in OFF, a warning sign will illuminate on the dashboard.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Put all switches in ON when driving.***
- ***If the vehicle remains idle for over 1 month, put all switches in OFF to prevent the batteries from being discharged.***
- ***Excluding long-term parking for over 1 month, the contact points of switches may wear out upon extensive use. Please refrain from excessive use of switches.***

Engine compartment fuse replacement

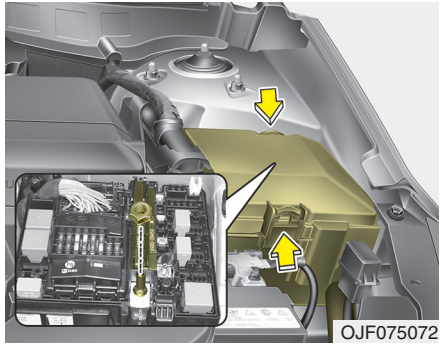


1. Turn the ignition switch and all other switches off.
2. Remove the fuse panel cover by pressing the tab and pulling the cover up. When the blade type fuse is disconnected, remove it by using the clip designed for changing fuses located in the engine room fuse box. Upon removal, securely insert reserve fuse of equal quantity.
3. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown. To remove or insert the fuse, use the fuse puller in the engine compartment fuse panel.
4. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips. If it fits loosely, we recommend that you consult an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

After checking the fuse panel in the engine compartment, securely install the fuse panel. If not, cover through the audible clicking sound. Electrical failures may occur from water contact.

Multi fuse


OJF075072

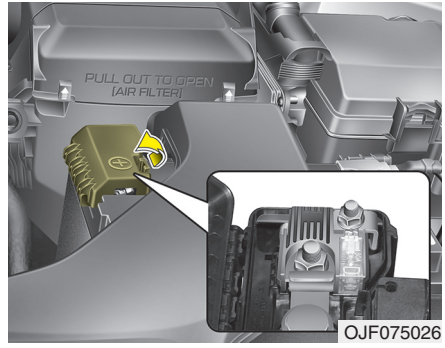
If the multi fuse is blown, it must be removed as follows:

1. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
2. Remove the nuts shown in the picture above.
3. Replace the fuse with a new one of the same rating.
4. Reinstall in the reverse order of removal.

✻ NOTICE

If the multi fuse is blown, we recommend that you consult an authorised Kia dealer.

Main fuse



OJF075026

If the main fuse is blown, it must be removed as follows:

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
3. Remove the nuts shown in the picture above.
4. Replace the fuse with a new one of the same rating.
5. Reinstall in the reverse order of removal

✻ NOTICE

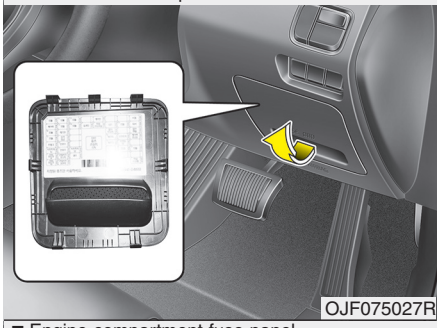
The electronic system may not function correctly even when the engine room and internal fuse box's individual fuses are not disconnected. In such case the cause of the problem may be disconnection of the main fuse (BFT type), which is located inside the positive battery terminal (+) cap. Since the main fuse is designed more intricately than other parts, please visit the nearest Kia dealer and service centre.

⚠ CAUTION

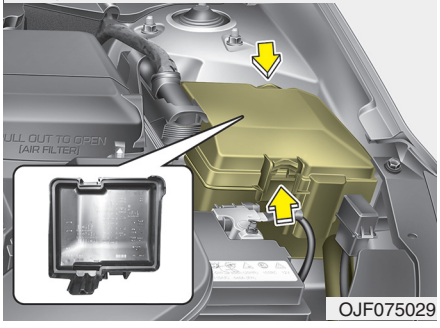
Visually inspect the battery cap for secure closing. If the battery cap is not securely latched, the electrical system may be damaged to due influx of moisture into the system.

Fuse/relay panel description

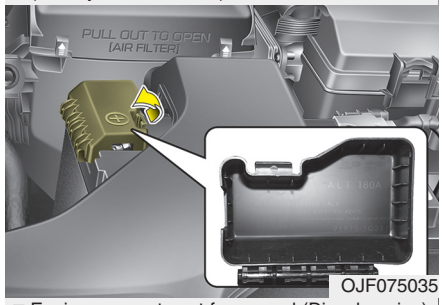
■ Driver's side fuse panel



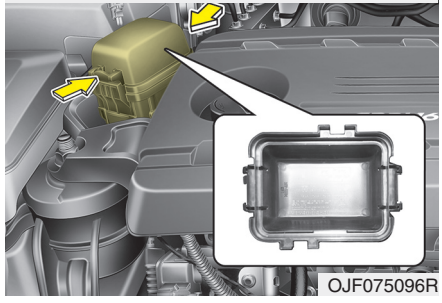
■ Engine compartment fuse panel



■ Engine compartment fuse panel (Battery terminal cover)



■ Engine compartment fuse panel (Passenger side)

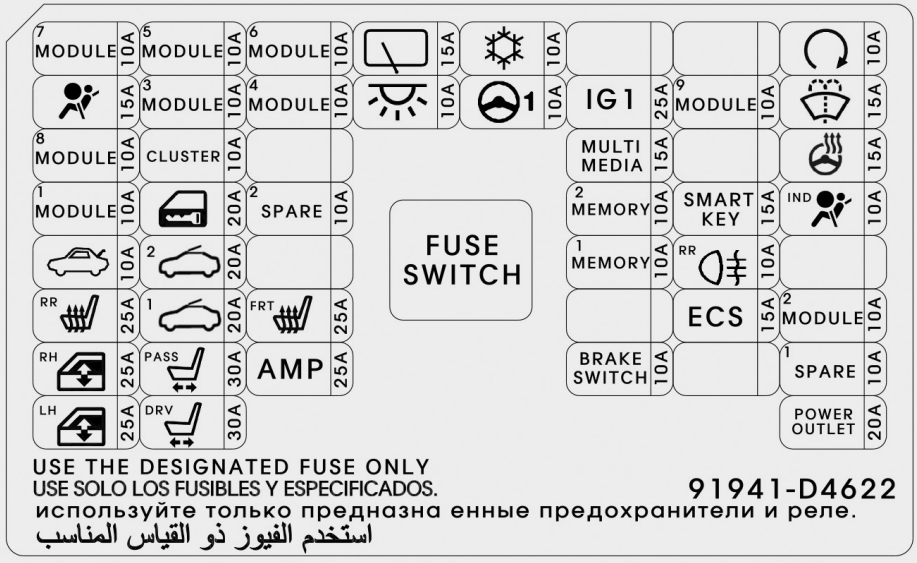


Inside the fuse/relay panel covers, you can find the fuse/relay label describing fuse/relay name and capacity.

✻ NOTICE

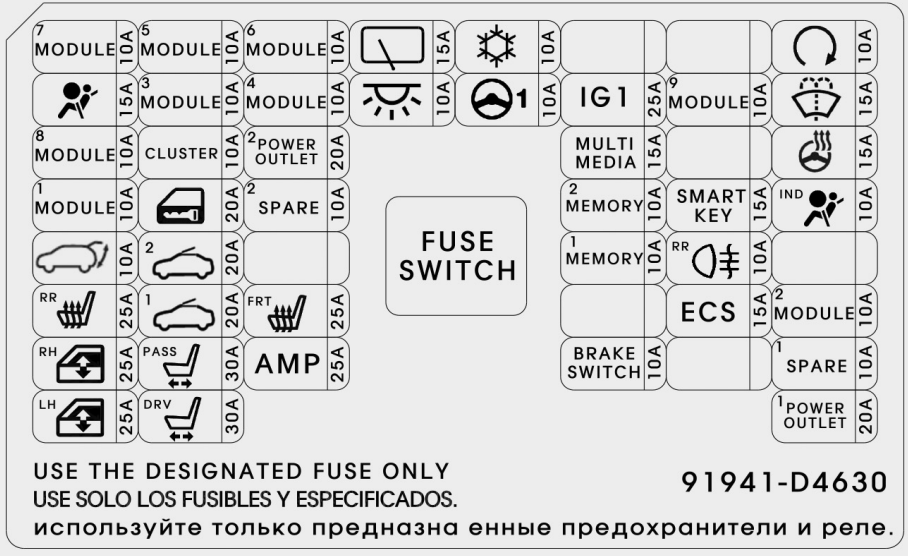
Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle. It is accurate at the time of printing. When you inspect the fuse panel in your vehicle, refer to the fuse panel label.

Driver's side fuse panel (Sedan)



OJFW076199L

Driver's side fuse panel (Wagon)



OJFW076217L

Instrument panel (Driver's side fuse panel)

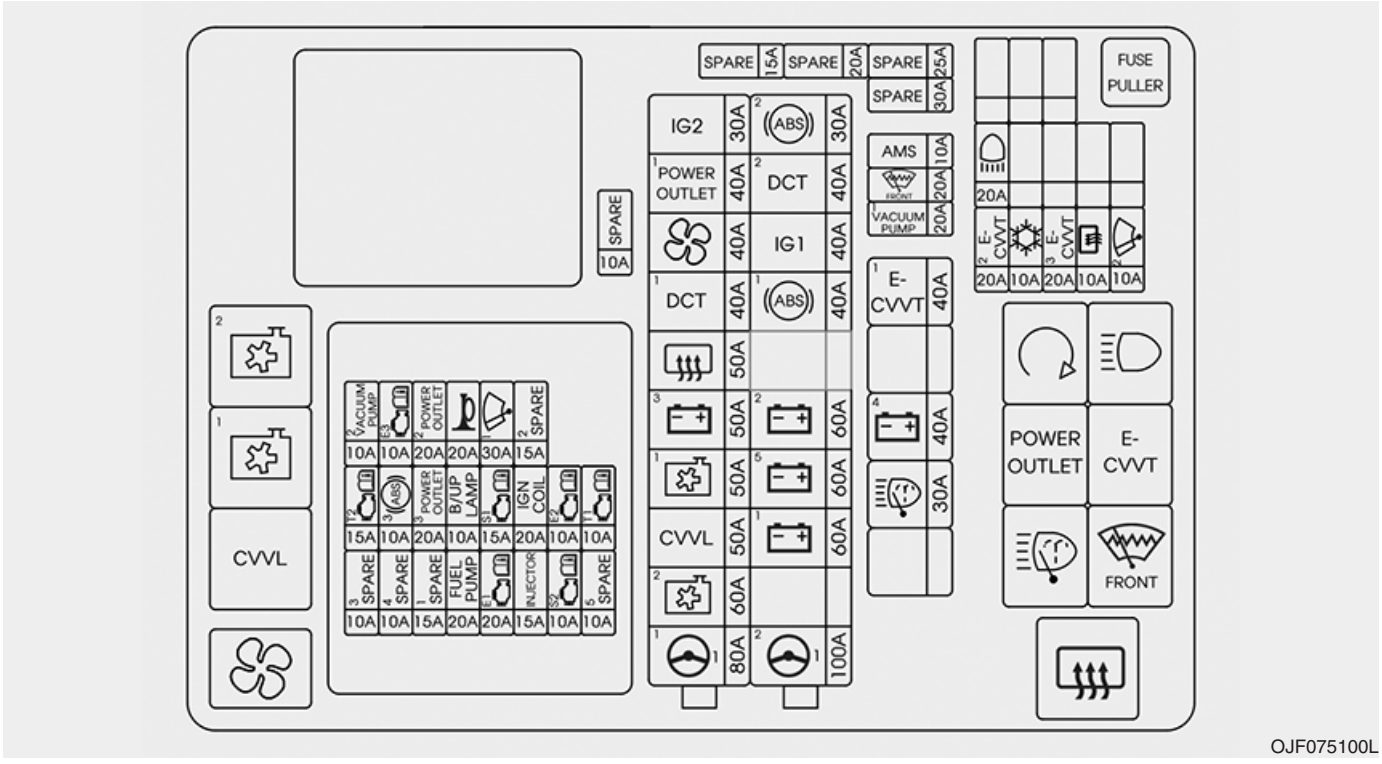
Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
MODULE 7	7 MODULE	10A	Around View Unit, Front Air Ventilation Seat Control Module, Front Seat Warmer Control Module, Rear Seat Warmer Control Module
MODULE 5	5 MODULE	10A	A/C Control Module, Electro Chromic Mirror, Crash Pad Switch, Head Lamp LH/RH, Auto Head Lamp Levelling Device Module, A/V & Navigation Head Unit, Fuel Lid & Trunk Open Switch, Shift Lever Indicator, Driver IMS Module, Driver IMS Module, Oil Level Sensor (D4FD), DC-DC Converter (AMP)/(Audio), Front Air Ventilation Seat Control Module, Front Seat Warmer, Control Module, Rear Seat Warmer Control Module
MODULE 6	6 MODULE	10A	BCM, Smart Key Control Module
A/CON	❄	10A	A/C Control Module, E/R Junction Block (RLY. 3 - Blower Relay), Ionizer, Diesel Junction Block (RLY. 3/4 - PTC Heater #2/#3 Relay)
START	↻	10A	[W/O Smart Key & IMMO.] ICM Relay Box (Burglar Alarm Relay) [With Smart Key / IMMO. - A/T, DCT] Transaxle Range Switch, PCM (G4KH/G4KE) [With Smart Key / IMMO. - M/T] PCM/ECM (G4ND/D4FD), Smart Key Control Module, E/R Junction Block (RLY. 5 - Start Relay)
A/BAG		15A	SRS Control Module
MODULE 3	3 MODULE	10A	BCM, ATM Shift Lever, Stop Lamp Switch, DBL Unit, Keyboard, A/C Control Module
MODULE 4	4 MODULE	10A	Console Switch, Blind Spot Detection Radar LH/RH, ECS Unit, Smart Parking Assist Control Module, Smart Cruise Control Unit, AEB Module, Lane Keeping Assist Module, Clutch Sensor
INTERIOR LAMP		10A	Trunk Room Lamp, Ignition Key Ill. & Door Warning Switch, Glove Box Lamp, Driver/Passenger Smart Key Outside Handle, Front Vanity Lamp Switch LH/RH, Overhead Console Lamp, Centre Room Lamp, Centre Personal Lamp, Rear Personal Lamp LH/RH, Driver/Passenger Foot Lamp, Driver/Passenger Door Lamp,

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
MDPS		7.5A	MDPS Unit (Column/Rack), Steering Angle Sensor
IG1	IG1	25A	PCB Block (Fuse - GLOW, TCU2, ABS3, VACUUM PUMP2, ECU3)
MODULE 9	9 MODULE	10A	Immobiliser Module, Smart Key Control Module
WASHER		15A	Multifunction Switch (Wiper Low & Washer Switch)
MODULE 8	8 MODULE	10A	A/C Control Module, Driver/Passenger Door Module
CLUSTER	CLUSTER	10A	Instrument Cluster (IG1)
MULTI MEDIA	MULTI MEDIA	15A	Audio, A/V & Navigation Head Unit, DC-DC Converter (Audio)
HTD STRG		15A	BCM (Steering Wheel Heated)
MODULE 1	1 MODULE	10A	Console Switch, Key Solenoid, Driver/Passenger Door Module
DR LOCK		20A	Door Lock Relay, Door Unlock Relay, ICM Relay Box (Dead Lock Relay)
MEMORY 2	2 MEMORY	10A	Siren Control Module, Ultrasonic Instrusion Protection Sensor
SMART KEY	SMART KEY	15A	Smart Key Control Module

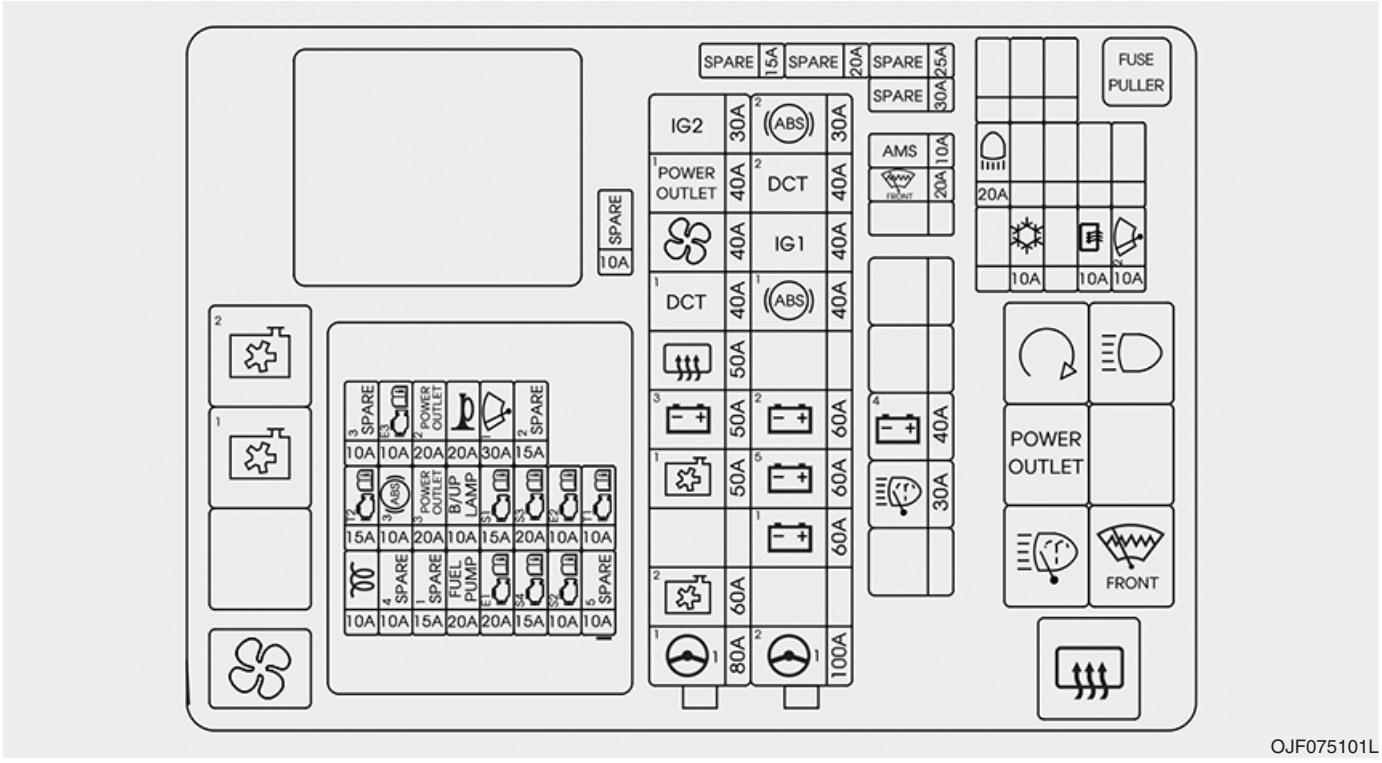
Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
A/BAG IND		10A	Instrument Cluster (Air Bag IND. Power)
TRUNK		10A	Trunk Lid Relay, Fuel Filler & Trunk Open Switch, Trunk Lid Motor, ICM Relay Box (Fuel Filler Open Relay)
SUNROOF 2		20A	Sunroof Control Unit (Roller)
MEMORY 1		10A	Instrument Cluster, A/C Control Module, Data Link Connector, BCM, Wireless Charger, Driver IMS Module, Rain Sensor, ICM Relay Box (Outside Mirror Folding/Unfolding Mirror Relay), Security Indicator, Auto Light & Photo Sensor, Driver/Passenger Door Module
FOG LAMP REAR		10A	ICM Relay Box (Rear Fog Lamp Relay)
S/HEATER REAR		25A	Rear Seat Warmer Control Module
SUNROOF 1		20A	Sunroof Control Unit (Glass)
S/HEATER FRONT		25A	Front Air Ventilation Seat Control Module, Front Seat Warmer Control Module
ECS	**ECS**	15A	ECS Unit
MODULE 2	**MODULE**	10A	Audio, A/V & Navigation Head Unit, Keyboard, Around View Unit, AMP, DC-DC Converter (AMP), DC-DC Converter (Audio), Power Outside Mirror Switch, Smart Key Control Module, BCM, Wireless Charger, Rear USB Charger, MTS E-Call Module, E/R Junction Block (RLY. 7 - Power Outlet Relay)

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
P/WDW RH	RH 	25A	Power Window RH Relay, Rear Safety Power Window Module LH, Rear Power Window Switch LH, Power Window Main Switch, [LHD] Passenger Safety Power Window Module [RHD] Driver Safety Power Window Module
P/SEAT PASS	PASS 	25A	Passenger Seat Manual Switch, Walk In Relay Module, Passenger Reclining Limit Switch
AMP	**AMP**	25A	AMP (JBL/MOBIS), DC-DC Converter (AMP)
BRAKE SWITCH	**BRAKE SWITCH**	10A	Stop Lamp Switch, Immobiliser Module, Smart Key Control Module, Start/Stop Button Switch
P/WDW LH	LH 	25A	Power Window LH Relay, Rear Safety Power Window Module RH, Rear Power Window Switch RH, Power Window Main Switch, [LHD] Driver Safety Power Window Module [RHD] Passenger Safety Power Window Module
P/SEAT DRV	DRV 	30A	Driver Seat Manual Switch, Driver IMS Module
POWER OUTLET	**POWER OUTLET**	20A	Front Power Outlet #1, Front Cigarette Lighter & Power Outlet #2

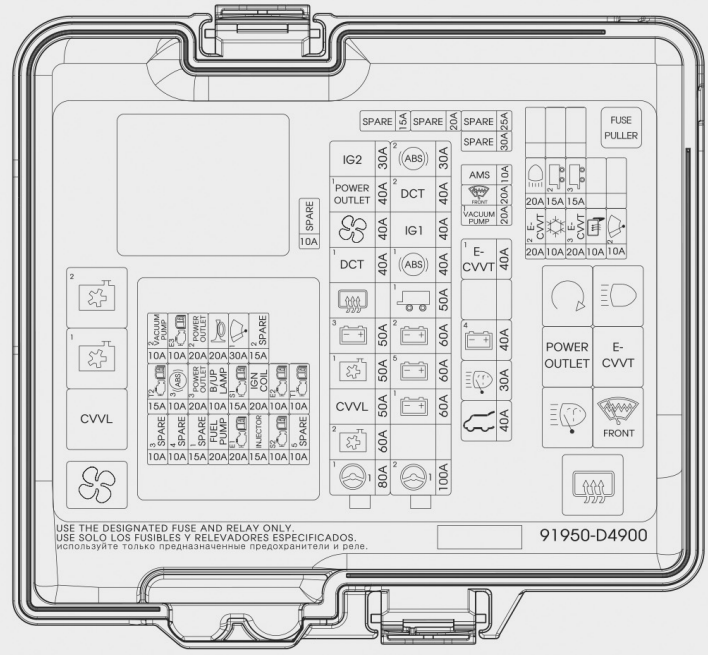
Engine compartment fuse panel (Petrol engine) (Sedan)



Engine compartment fuse panel (Diesel engine) (Sedan)

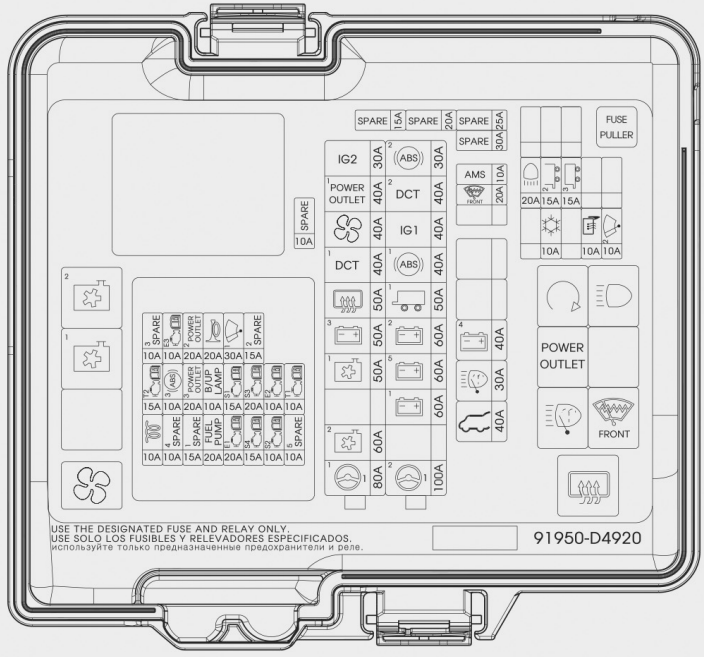


Engine compartment fuse panel (Petrol engine) (Wagon)



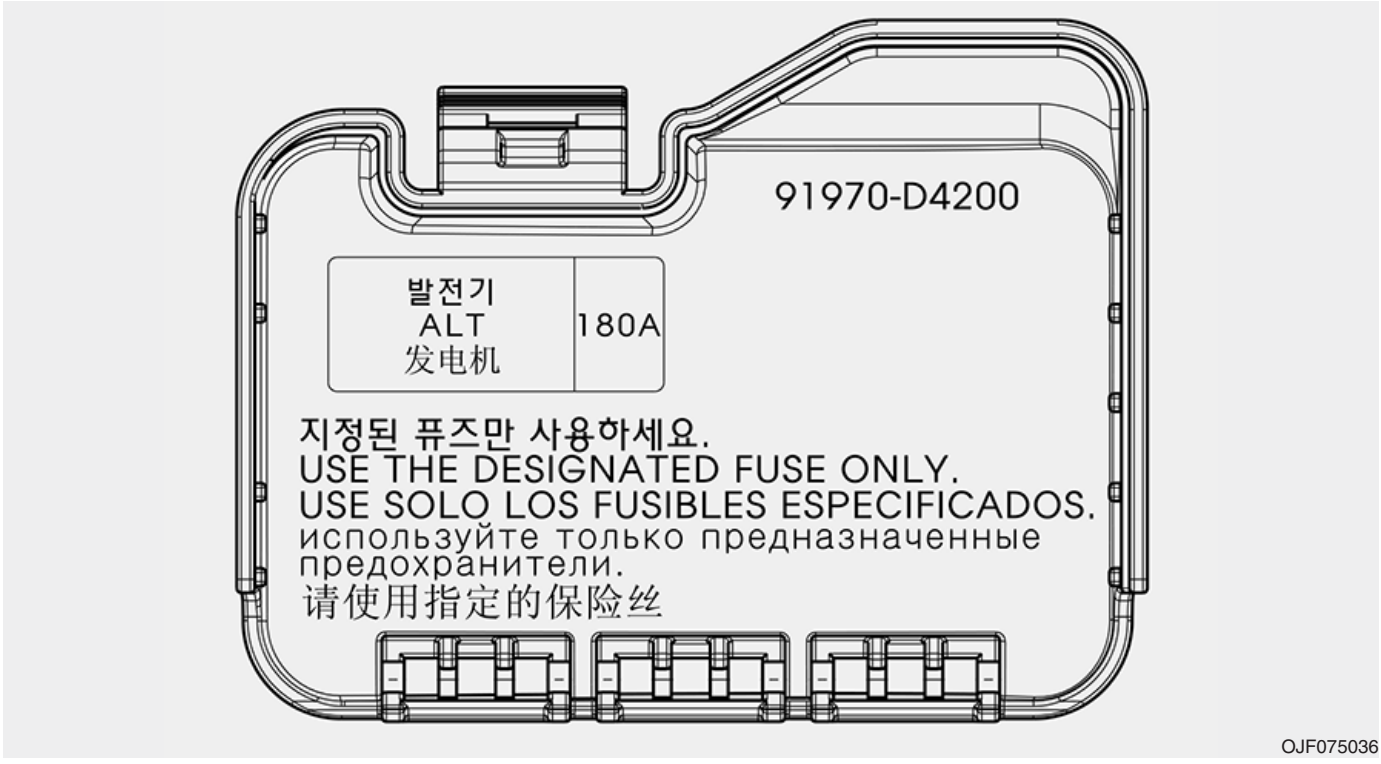
OJFW076207L

Engine compartment fuse panel (Diesel engine) (Wagon)

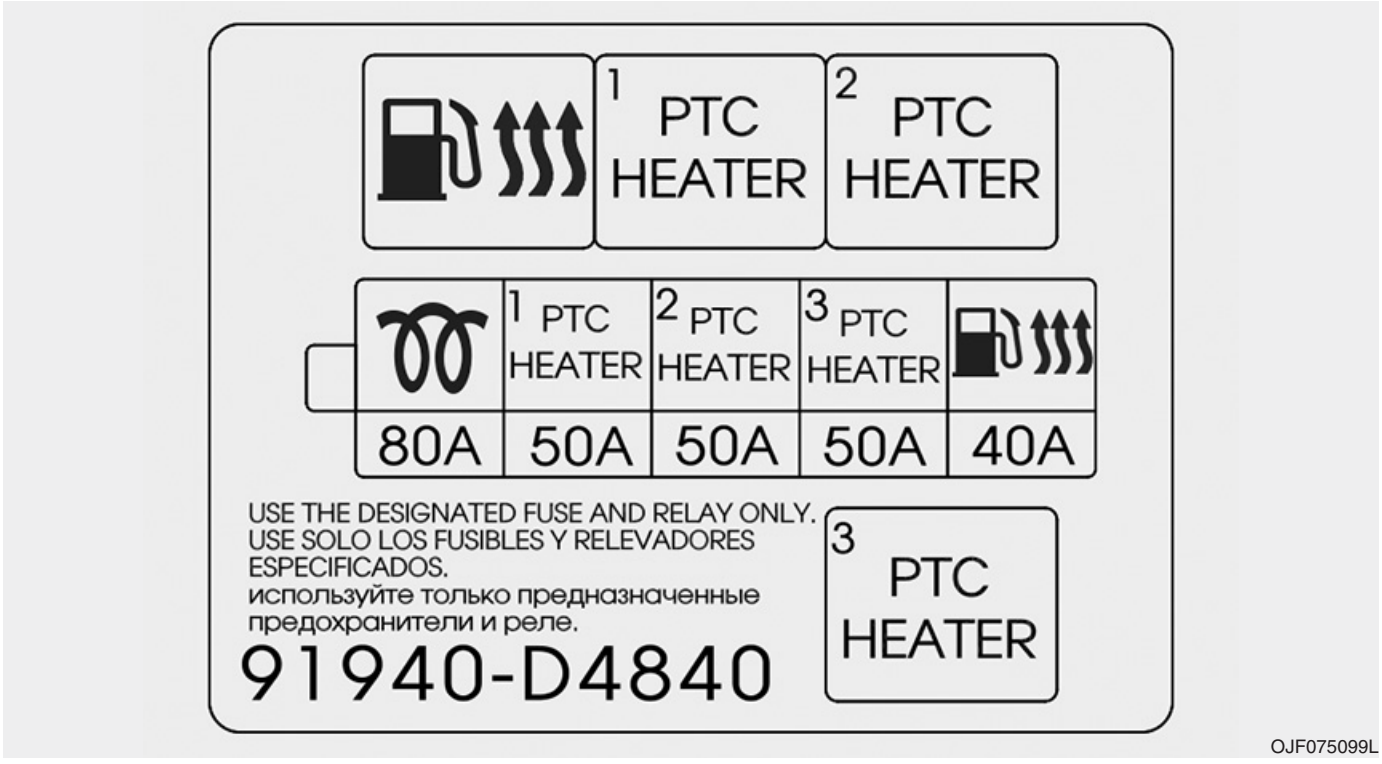


OJFW076208L

Engine compartment fuse panel (Battery terminal cover)



Engine compartment fuse panel (Diesel engine) (Passenger side)



Engine room compartment fuse panel

Fuse Name		Symbol	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
MULTI FUSE	MDPS 1	1	80A	MDPS Unit (Column)
	COOLING FAN 2	2	60A	[G4KH/D4FD/G4ND (Europe/Australia)/G4NA (Middle East)/G4KE (Europe/Australia/Middle East)] RLY. 1 (Cooling Fan2 Relay), RLY. 2 (Cooling Fan1 Relay)
	CVVL	CVVL	50A	[G4ND] RLY. 3 (CVVL Relay)
	COOLING FAN 1	1	50A	[G4ND (Except Europe/Australia)/G4NA (Except Middle East)/G4KE (Except Europe/Australia/Middle East)] RLY. 1 (Cooling Fan2 Relay), RLY. 2 (Cooling Fan1 Relay)
	B+3	3	50A	Smart Junction Block (IPS 2 (IPS 5), IPS 3 (IPS 6), IPS 7, IPS 8)
	REAR HEATED		50A	RLY. 11 (Rear Heated Relay)
	DCT 1	1 DCT	40A	[D4FD-DCT] TCM
	BLOWER		40A	RLY. 4 (Blower Relay)
	POWER OUTLET1	1 POWER OUTLET	40A	RLY. 7 (Power Outlet Relay)
	IG2	IG2	30A	[W/O Smart Key] RLY. 5 (Start Relay), Ignition Switch, [With Smart Key] RLY. 5 (Start Relay), PCB Block (IG2 Relay)
	MDPS 2	2	100A	MDPS Unit (Rack)

Fuse Name		Symbol	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
MULTI FUSE	B+1	1 	60A	Smart Junction Block (Fuse - TRUNK, SUNROOF2, S/HEATER REAR, SUNROOF1, P/WDW RH, P/SEAT PASS, P/WDW LH, P/SEAT DRV)
	B+5	5 	60A	PCB Block (Engine Control Relay, Fuse - FUEL PUMP, ECU2, TCU1, HORN, WIPER1)
	B+2	2 	60A	Smart Junction Block (IPS 1, IPS 4, Fuse - FOG LAMP REAR, S/HEATER FRONT, ECS, AMP)
	ABS1	1 	40A	ESC Control Module
	IG1	**IG1**	40A	[W/O Smart Key] Ignition Switch, [With Smart Key] PCB Block (IG1/ACC Relay)
	DCT2	2 **DCT**	40A	[D4FD-DCT] TCM
	ABS2	2 	30A	ESC Control Module, Multipurpose Check Connector

Fuse Name		Symbol	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
FUSE	H/Lamp Washer		30A	RLY. 9 (H/Lamp Washer Relay)
	B+4	[4] 	40A	Smart Junction Block (Leak Current Autocut Device Fuse - INTERIOR LAMP, MULTI MEDIA, MEMORY2, MEMORY1, Fuse - MODULE1, DR LOCK, SMART KEY, BRAKE SWITCH)
	E-CVVT 1	[1] **E-CVVT**	40A	[G4KH] RLY. 8 (E-CVVT Relay)
	VACUUM PUMP 1	[1] **VACUUM PUMP**	20A	[G4KH] Vacuum Pump
	DEICER		20A	RLY. 10 (Deicer Relay)
	AMS	**AMS**	10A	Battery Sensor
	E-CVVT 2	[2] **E-CVVT**	20A	[G4KH] PCM
	A/CON		10A	A/C Control Module
	E-CVVT 3	[3] **E-CVVT**	20A	[G4KH] PCM
	HEATED MIRROR		10A	A/C Control Module, Driver/Passenger Power Outside Mirror
	WIPER 2	[2] 	10A	BCM, PCM/ECM
	H/LAMP HI		20A	[Bi-Function] RLY. 6 (Head Lamp High Relay)
	GLOW		10A	[D4FD] Glow Relay Unit

Fuse Name		Symbol	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
FUSE	FUEL PUMP	FUEL PUMP	20A	Fuel Pump Relay
	ECU 1	E1	20A	PCM/ECM
	INJECTOR	INJECTOR	15A	[G4KE/G4ND/G4NA] Injector #1/#2/#3/#4
	SENSOR4	S4	15A	[D4FD] Camshaft Position Sensor, Air Flow Sensor, Diesel Junction Block (RLY. 2 - PTC Heater #1 Relay)
	SENSORS	S2	10A	E/R Junction Block (RLY. 1/RLY. 2 - Cooling Fan 1/2 Relay) [G4KH] Fuel Pump Relay, Oil Control Valve (Exhaust), RCV Control Solenoid Valve, Purge Control Solenoid Valve [G4KE] Fuel Pump Relay, Oil Control Valve #1/#2, Camshaft Position Sensor #1/#2, Crankshaft Position Sensor, Variable Intake Solenoid Valve, Purge Control Solenoid Valve [G4ND] Fuel Pump Relay, Variable Intake Solenoid Valve, Mass Air Flow Sensor, Oil Control Valve #1/#2, Camshaft Position Sensor #1/#2, Purge Control Solenoid Valve [G4NA] Fuel Pump Relay, Variable Intake Solenoid Valve, Oil Control Valve #1/#2, Camshaft Position Sensor #1/#2, Purge Control Solenoid Valve [D4FD] Lambda Sensor #1/#2, Rail Pressure Regulating Valve
	TCU 2	T2	15A	[A/T, DCT] Transaxle Range Switch, TCM (DCT), [M/T] PCB Block (Fuse - B/UP LAMP)
	ABS 3	3 (ABS)	10A	ESC Control Module, Multipurpose Check Connector
	POWER OUTLET 3	3 POWER OUTLET	20A	Rear Power Outlet
	B/UP LAMP	B/UP LAMP	10A	PCM/TCM, Transaxle Range Switch, Audio, Electro Chromic Mirror, Rear Combination Lamp (IN) LH/RH, MTS E-Call Module, Back-Up Lamp Switch (M/T)

Fuse Name		Symbol	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
FUSE	SENSOR 1	S1 	15A	[G4KH/G4KE/G4ND/G4NA] Oxygen Sensor (Up/Down) [D4FD] Electronic VGT Actuator, PM (Particulate Matter) Sensor
	IGN COIL	**IGN COIL**	20A	[G4KH/G4KE/G4ND/G4NA] Ignition Coil #1/#2/#3/#4, Condenser
	SENSOR 3	S3 	20A	[D4FD] Fuel Pump Relay, Fuel Pressure Regulating Valve, EGR Cooling Bypass Solenoid Valve, Diesel Junction Block (RLY. 1 - Fuel Heater Relay)
	ECU 2	E2 	10A	PCM/ECM
	TCU 1	T1 	10A	PCM/TCM
	VACUUM PUMP2	2 **VACUUM PUMP**	10A	[G4KH] Vacuum Pump, Vacuum Switch
	ECU 3	E3 	10A	PCM/ECM
	POWER OUTLET2	2 **POWER OUTLET**	20A	Front Power Outlet #1
	HORN		20A	Horn Relay, ICM Relay Box (Burglar Alarm Horn Relay)
	WIPER 1	1 	30A	Wiper Power Relay

Engine room compartment fuse panel (Diesel engine) (Passenger side)

Circuit

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
Glow Relay		80A	Glow Relay Unit
PTC Heater 1 Relay	1 PTC HEATER	50A	RLY. 2 (PTC Heater #1 Relay)
PTC Heater 2 Relay	2 PTC HEATER	50A	RLY. 3 (PTC Heater #2 Relay)
PTC Heater 3 Relay	3 PTC HEATER	50A	RLY. 4 (PTC Heater #3 Relay)
Fuel Heater Relay		40A	RLY. 1 (Fuel Heater Relay)

Relay

Relay No.	Symbol	Relay Name	Type
RLY. 1		Fuel Heater Relay	MICRO PLUG
RLY. 2	1 PTC HEATER	PTC Heater #1 Relay	MICRO PLUG
RLY. 3	2 PTC HEATER	PTC Heater #2 Relay	MICRO PLUG
RLY. 4	3 PTC HEATER	PTC Heater #3 Relay	MICRO PLUG

LIGHT BULBS

Bulb replacement precaution

Please prepare bulbs with appropriate standards in case of emergencies. Refer to “Bulb Wattage” in chapter 9.

When changing bulbs and sorts, first turn off the engine at a safe place, firmly apply the side brake and take out the battery's negative (-) terminal.

⚠ WARNING - Working on the lights

Prior to working on the light, firmly apply the parking brake, ensure that the ignition switch is turned to the LOCK position and turn off the lights to avoid sudden movement of the vehicle and burning your fingers or receiving an electric shock.

Use only the bulbs of the specified wattage.

⚠ WARNING

Be sure to replace the burned-out bulb with one of the same wattage rating. Otherwise, it may cause extensive wiring damage and possible fire.

⚠ CAUTION

If you don’t have necessary tools, the correct bulbs and the expertise, consult an authorised Kia dealer. In many cases, it is difficult to replace vehicle light bulbs because other parts of the vehicle must be removed before you can get to the bulb. This is especially true if you have to remove the headlight assembly to get to the bulb(s). Removing/installing the headlight assembly can result in damage to the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***If unauthentic parts or substandard lights are used when changing lights, it may lead to fuse disconnection and malfunction, and other wiring damages.***
- ***Do not install extra lamps or LED to the vehicle. If supplementary lights are installed, it may lead to lamp malfunction and flickering of the lights. In addition, the fuse box and other writing may be damaged.***

• Lamp part malfunction due to net-work failure

The headlamp, taillight, and fog light may lit up when the head lamp switch is turned ON, and not light up when the taillight or for light switch is turned ON. This may be cause by network failure or vehicle electrical control system malfunction. If there is a problem, we recommend the system be serviced by an authorised Kia dealer.

• Lamp part malfunction due to electrical control system stabilization

A normally functioning lamp may flicker momentarily. This momentary occurrence is due to stabilization unction of the vehicle's electrical on control system. If the lamp soon returns to normal, the vehicle does not require service.

However, if the lamp goes out after he momentary flickering, or the flickering continues, we recommend the system be serviced by an authorised Kia dealer.

✻ NOTICE

- **If the light bulb or lamp connector is removed from an operating lamp activated by electricity, the fuse box's electronic device may scan it as a malfunction. Therefore, a lamp malfunction history may be recorded in Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) in the fuse box.**
- **It is normal for an operating lamp may blink temporarily. Since this occurrence is due stabilization function of the vehicle's electronic control device, if the lamp lights up normally after temporary blinking, there is no problem in the vehicle. However, if the lamp continues to blink several times or turn off completely, there may be an error in the vehicle's electronic control device. So we recommend that you have the vehicle checked by an authorised Kia dealer immediately.**

✻ NOTICE

We recommend that the headlight aiming be adjusted after an accident or after the headlight assembly is reinstalled at an authorised Kia dealer.

✻ NOTICE

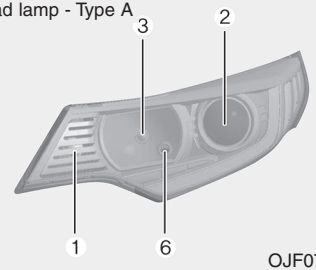
After driving in heavy rain or washing, headlamp and taillamp lenses could appear frosty. This condition is caused by the temperature difference between the lamp inside and outside. This is similar to the condensation on your windows inside your vehicle during the rain and doesn't indicate a problem with your vehicle. If the water leaks into the lamp bulb circuitry, have the vehicle checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

✻ NOTICE - Traffic Change (For Europe)

The low beam light distribution is asymmetric. If you go abroad to a country with opposite traffic direction, this asymmetric part will dazzle oncoming car driver. To prevent dazzle, ECE regulation demand several technical solutions (ex. automatic change system, adhesive sheet, down aiming). This headlamps are designed not to dazzle opposite drivers. So, you need not change your headlamps in a country with opposite traffic direction.

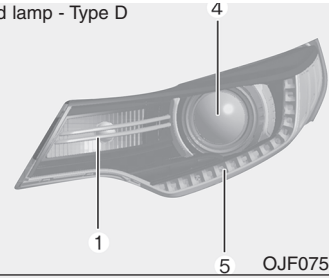
Light bulb position (Front)

■ Head lamp - Type A



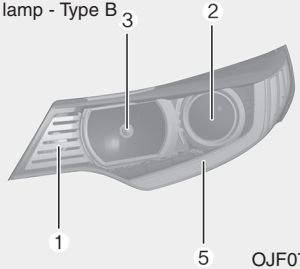
OJF075134L

■ Head lamp - Type D



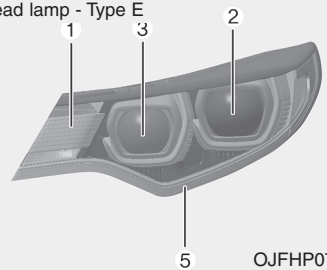
OJF075137L

■ Head lamp - Type B



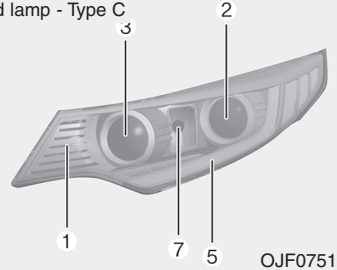
OJF075135L

■ Head lamp - Type E



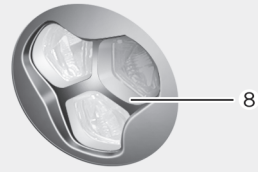
OJFHP076190L

■ Head lamp - Type C



OJF075136L

■ Fog lamp

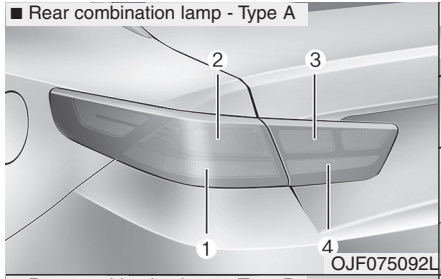


OJF075148L

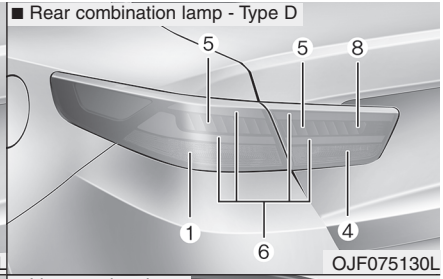
(1) Front turn signal lamp
(2) Headlamp (Low)
(3) Headlamp (High)
(4) Headlamp (Low/High)
(5) Day time running lamp /Position lamp (LED type)
(6) Position lamp
(7) Smart cornering lamp
(8) Front fog lamp (LED type)

Light bulb position (Rear - Sedan)

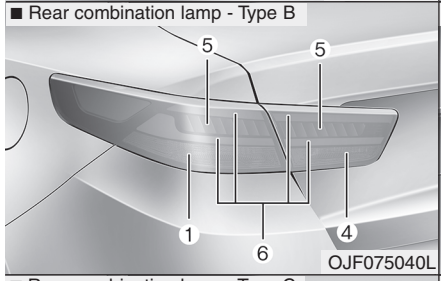
■ Rear combination lamp - Type A



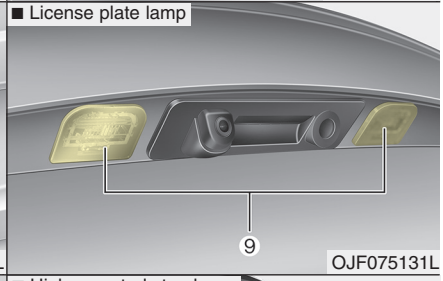
■ Rear combination lamp - Type D



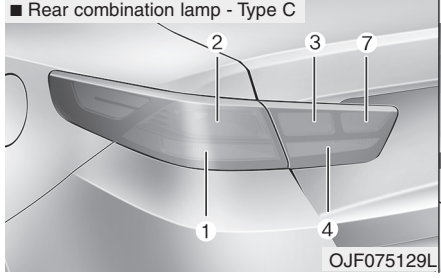
■ Rear combination lamp - Type B



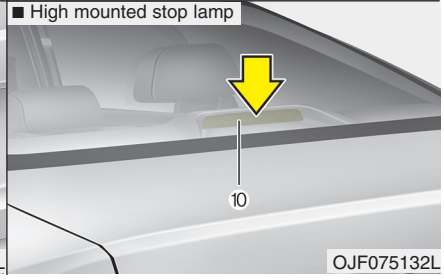
■ License plate lamp



■ Rear combination lamp - Type C



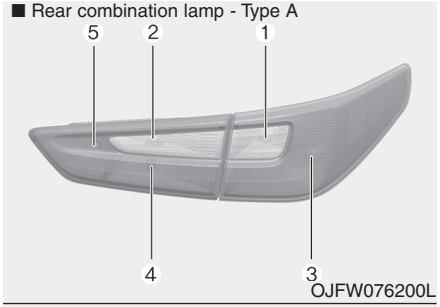
■ High mounted stop lamp



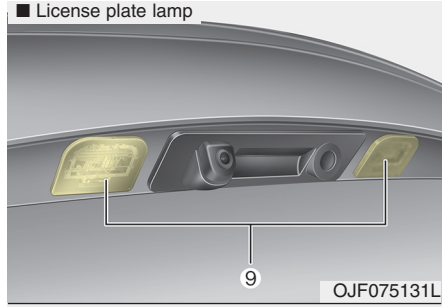
(1) Rear turn signal lamp
(2) Stop and tail lamp
(3) Position lamp
(4) Back-up lamp
(5) Stop lamp (LED type)
(6) Tail lamp (LED type)
(7) Rear fog lamp
(8) Rear fog lamp (LED type)
(9) License plate lamp
(10) High mounted stop lamp

Light bulb position (Rear - Wagon)

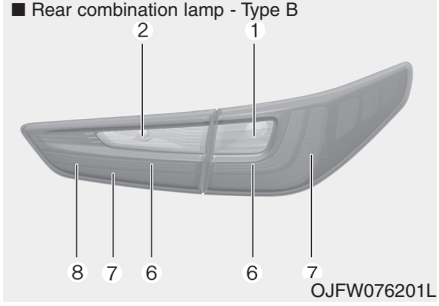
■ Rear combination lamp - Type A



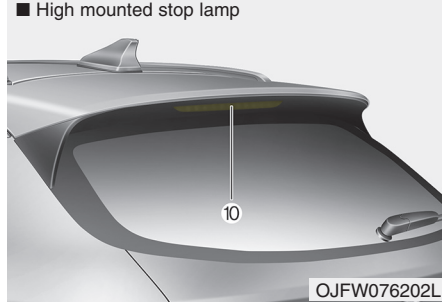
■ License plate lamp



■ Rear combination lamp - Type B

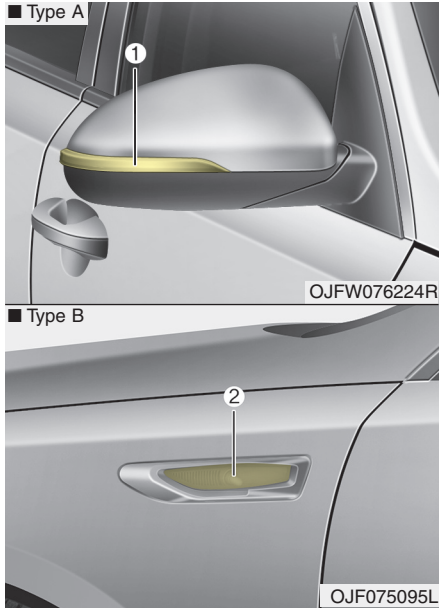


■ High mounted stop lamp



(1) Rear turn signal lamp (bulb type)
(2) Back-up lamp (bulb type)
(3) Stop and tail lamp (bulb type)
(4) Tail lamp (bulb type)
(5) Rear fog lamp (bulb type)
(6) Stop lamp (LED type)
(7) Tail lamp (LED type)
(8) Rear fog and stop lamp (LED type)
(9) License plate lamp
(10) High mounted stop lamp

Light bulb position (Side)



(1) Side repeater lamp (LED type)
(2) Side repeater lamp (Bulb type)

Headlamp (HID type) bulb replacement

If the light bulb does not operate, we recommend that you checked an authorised Kia dealer.

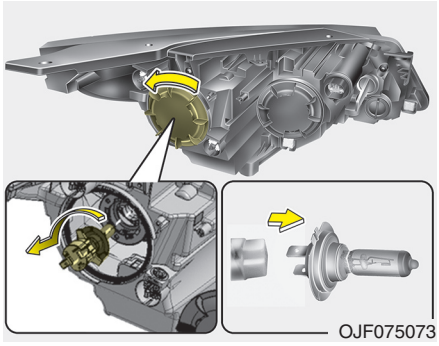
⚠ WARNING - HID Headlamp (if equipped)

Do not attempt to replace or inspect the HID headlamp (XENON bulb) due to electric shock danger. If the light bulb does not operate, we recommend that you checked an authorised Kia dealer.

✻ NOTICE

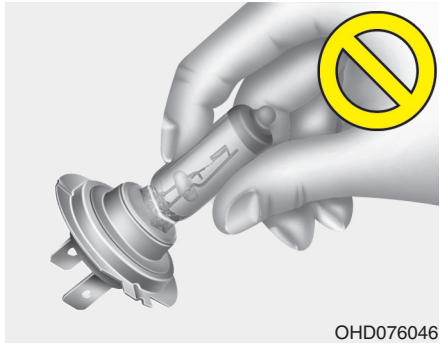
HID lamps have superior performance vs. halogen bulbs. HID lamps are estimated by the manufacturer to last twice as long or longer than halogen bulbs depending on their frequency of use. They will probably require replacement at some point in the life of the vehicle. Cycling the headlamps on and off more than typical use will shorten HID lamps life. HID lamps do not fail in the same manner as halogen incandescent lamps. If a headlamp goes out after a period of operation but will immediately relight when the headlamp switch is cycled it is likely the HID lamp needs to be replaced. HID lamping components are more complex than conventional halogen bulbs thus have higher replacement cost.

Headlamp (Low beam) bulb replacement


OJF075073

1. Open the bonnet.
2. Remove the headlamp bulb cover by turning it counterclockwise.
3. Remove the bulb-socket from the headlamp assembly by turning the bulb-socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb-socket align with the slots on the headlamp assembly.
4. Remove the bulb from bulb-socket by pulling it out.
5. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the bulb-socket.
6. Install the bulb-socket in the headlamp assembly by aligning the tabs on the bulb-socket with the slots in the headlamp assembly. Push the bulb-socket into the headlamp assembly and turn the bulb-socket clockwise.
7. Install the headlamp bulb cover by turning it clockwise.

Headlamp bulb


OHD076046

⚠ WARNING - Halogen bulbs

- **Halogen bulbs contain pressurized gas that will produce flying pieces of glass if broken.**
- **Always handle them carefully, and avoid scratches and abrasions. If the bulbs are lit, avoid contact with liquids. Never touch the glass with bare hands. Residual oil may cause the bulb to overheat and burst when lit.**

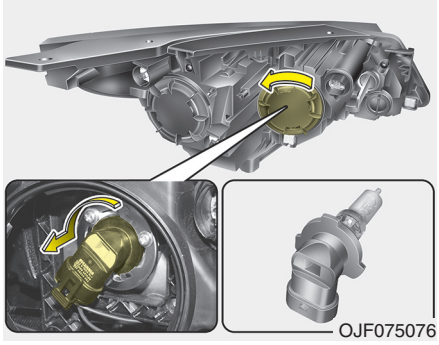
(Continued)

(Continued)

A bulb should be operated only when installed in a headlight.

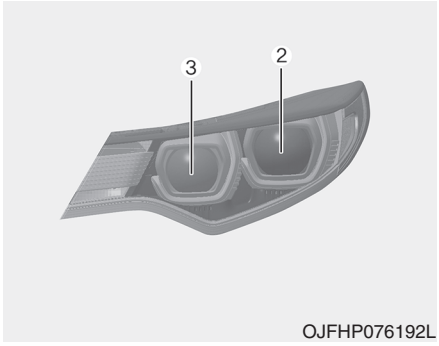
- **If a bulb becomes damaged or cracked, replace it immediately and carefully dispose of it.**
- **Wear eye protection when changing a bulb. Allow the bulb to cool down before handling it.**

Headlamp (High beam) bulb replacement



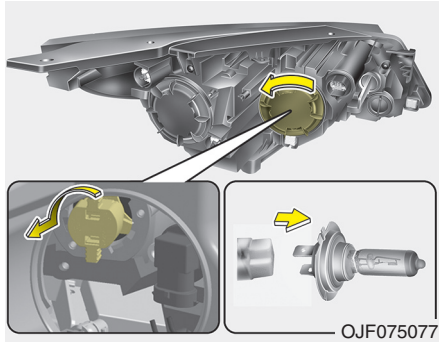
1. Open the bonnet.
2. Remove the headlamp bulb cover by turning it counterclockwise.
3. Disconnect the headlamp bulb socket-connector.
4. Remove the bulb-socket from the headlamp assembly by turning the bulb-socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb-socket align with the slots on the headlamp assembly.
5. Install a new bulb-socket assembly in the headlamp assembly by aligning the tabs on the bulb-socket with the slots in the headlamp assembly. Push the bulb-socket into the headlamp assembly and turn the bulb-socket clockwise.
6. Install the headlamp bulb cover by turning it clockwise.

Headlamp (High/Low beam) LED replacement



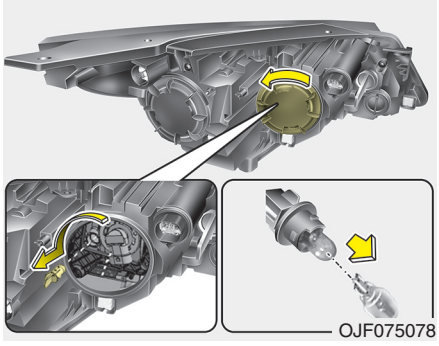
If the light bulb(Low(2), High(3)) does not operate, we recommend that you checked an authorised Kia dealer.

Smart cornering lamp bulb replacement



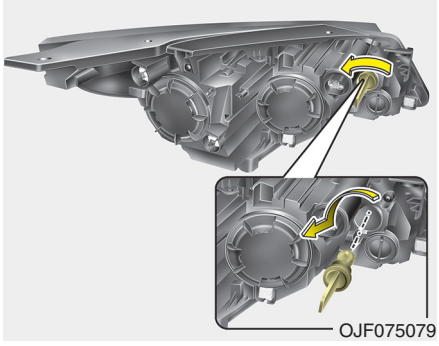
1. Open the bonnet.
2. Remove the headlamp bulb cover by turning it counterclockwise.
3. Remove the bulb-socket from the headlamp assembly by turning the bulb-socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb-socket align with the slots on the headlamp assembly.
4. Remove the bulb from bulb-socket by pulling it out.
5. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the bulb-socket.
6. Install the bulb-socket in the headlamp assembly by aligning the tabs on the bulb-socket with the slots in the headlamp assembly. Push the bulb-socket into the headlamp assembly and turn the bulb-socket clockwise.
7. Install the headlamp bulb cover by turning it clockwise.

Position lamp bulb replacement



1. Open the bonnet.
2. Remove the headlamp bulb cover by turning it counterclockwise.
3. Remove the bulb-socket from the headlamp assembly by turning the bulb-socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb-socket align with the slots on the headlamp assembly.
4. Remove the bulb from bulb-socket by pulling it out.
5. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the bulb-socket.
6. Install the bulb-socket in the headlamp assembly by aligning the tabs on the bulb-socket with the slots in the headlamp assembly. Push the bulb-socket into the headlamp assembly and turn the bulb-socket clockwise.
7. Install the headlamp bulb cover by turning it clockwise.

Front turn signal lamp bulb replacement



1. Open the bonnet.
2. Remove the bulb-socket from the headlamp assembly by turning the bulb-socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb-socket align with the slots on the headlamp assembly.
3. Remove the bulb from the bulb-socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the bulb-socket. Pull the bulb out of the bulb-socket

4. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the bulb-socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
5. Install the socket in the headlamp assembly by aligning the tabs on the bulb-socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the bulb-socket into the headlamp assembly and turn the socket clockwise.

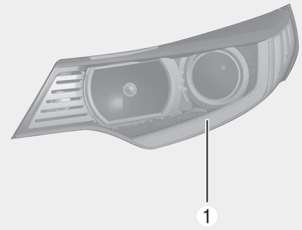
Front fog lamp (LED type) bulb replacement



If the front fog lamp (LED) (1) does not operate, we recommend that you checked an authorised Kia dealer.

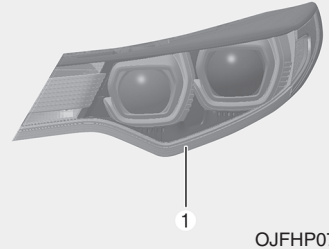
Position lamp + DRL (LED type) bulb replacement

■ Type A



OJFH075175

■ Type B

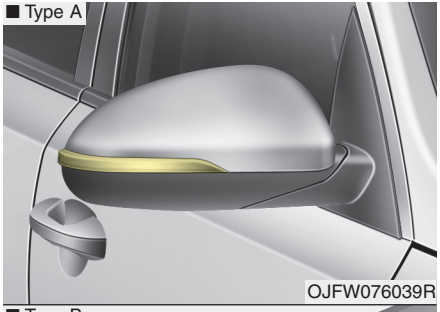


OJFHP076191L

If the position lamp + DRL (1) does not operate, we recommend that you checked an authorised Kia dealer.

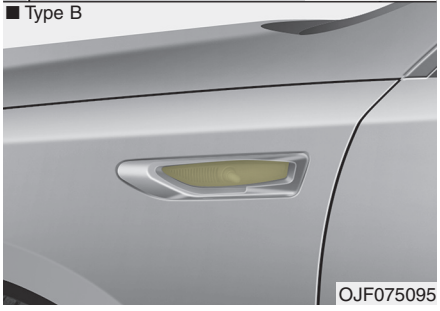
Side repeater lamp bulb replacement

■ Type A



OJFW076039R

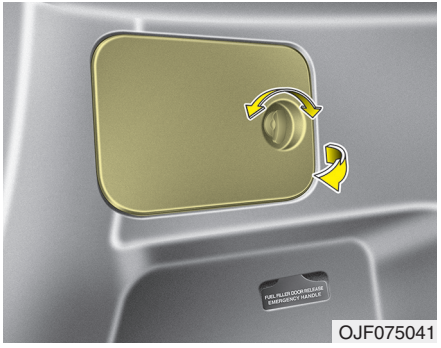
■ Type B



OJF075095

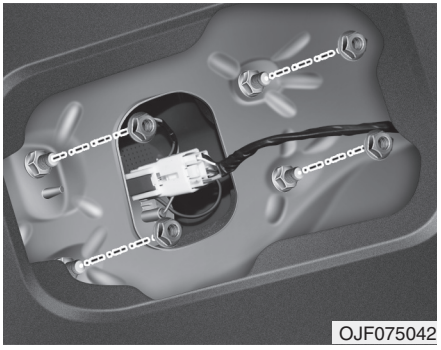
If the Side repeater lamp does not operate, we recommend that you checked an authorised Kia dealer.

Rear turn signal lamp bulb replacement (Sedan)



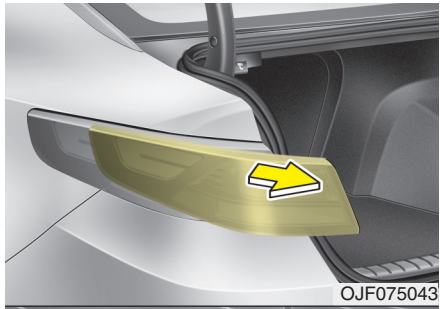
OJF075041

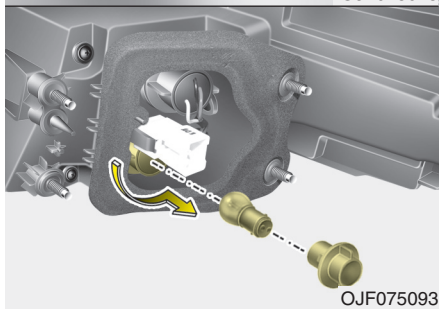
1. Open the trunk lid.
2. Open the service cover.



OJF075042

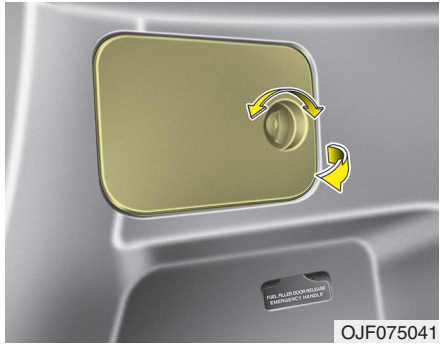
3. Remove the nuts from the vehicle.
4. Disconnect the rear combination lamp connector.



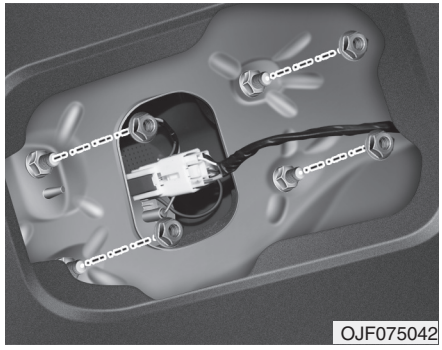


5. Remove the rear combination lamp assembly from the body of the vehicle.
6. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
7. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
8. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
9. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
10. Install the rear combination lamp assembly to the body of the vehicle.
11. Install the service cover by putting it into the service hole.

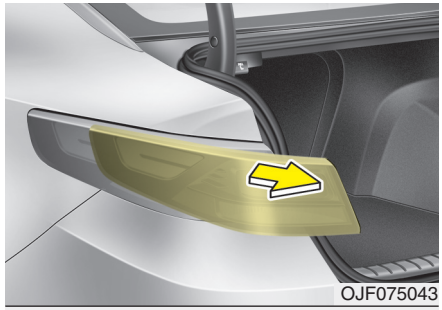
Stop and tail lamp bulb replacement (Sedan)

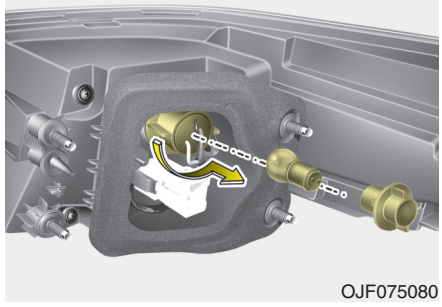


1. Open the trunk lid.
2. Open the service cover.



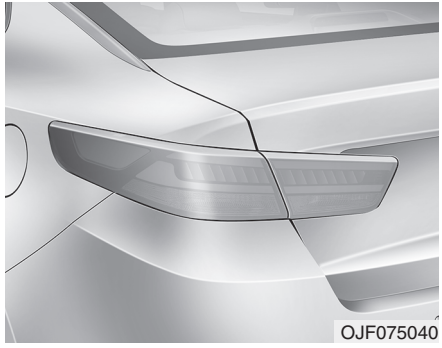
3. Remove the nuts from the vehicle.
4. Disconnect the rear combination lamp connector.





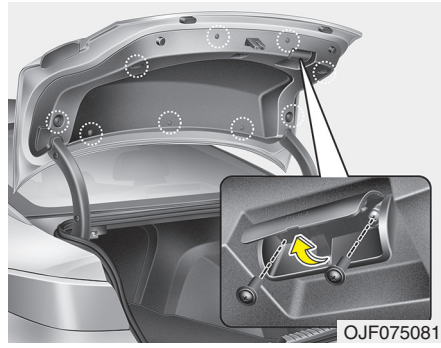
5. Remove the rear combination lamp assembly from the body of the vehicle.
6. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
7. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
8. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
9. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
10. Install the rear combination lamp assembly to the body of the vehicle.
11. Install the service cover by putting it into the service hole.

Stop and tail lamp (LED type) bulb replacement (Sedan)

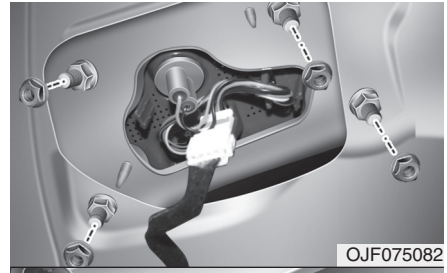


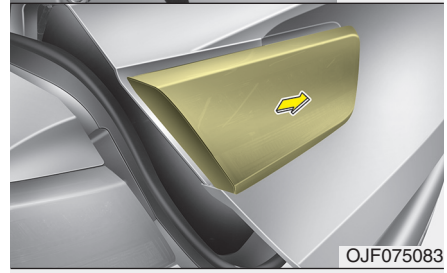
If the stop and tail lamp (LED) does not operate, we recommend that you checked an authorised Kia dealer.

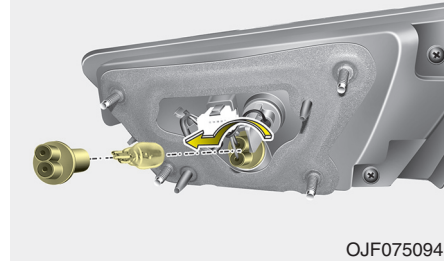
Back-up lamp bulb replacement (Sedan)



1. Open the trunk lid.
2. Loosen the retaining screw of the trunk lid cover and then remove the cover.

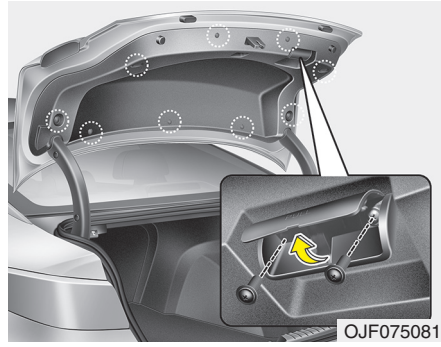




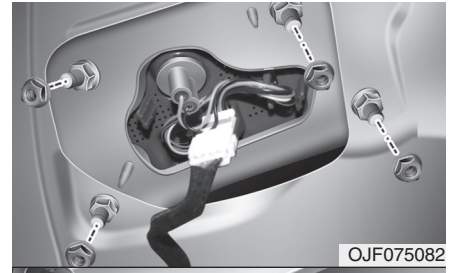


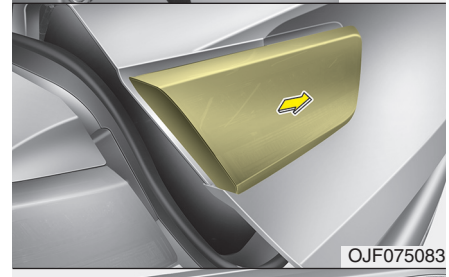
3. Remove the nuts from the vehicle.
4. Disconnect the rear combination lamp (inside) connector.
5. Remove the rear combination lamp (inside) assembly from the body of the vehicle.
6. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
7. Remove the bulb from bulb-socket by pulling it out.
8. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the bulb-socket.
9. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
10. Install the rear combination lamp (inside) assembly to the body of the vehicle.
11. Install the trunk lid cover.

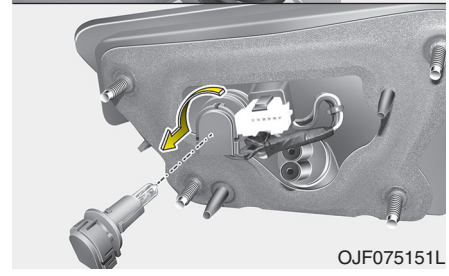
Rear fog lamp bulb replacement (Sedan)


OJF075081

1. Open the trunk lid.
2. Loosen the retaining screw of the trunk lid cover and then remove the cover.

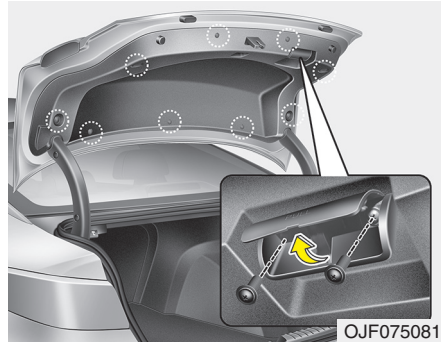

OJF075082


OJF075083

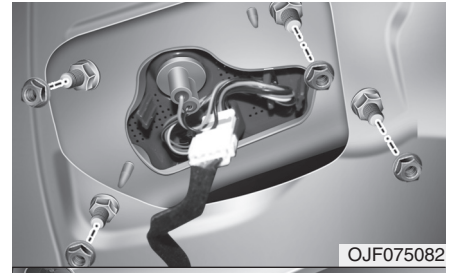

OJF075151L

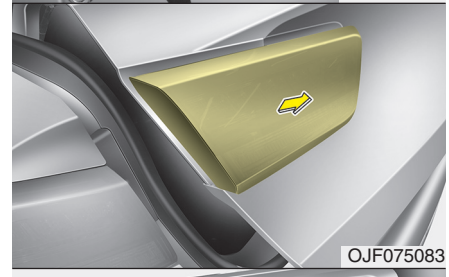
3. Remove the nuts from the vehicle.
4. Disconnect the rear combination lamp (inside) connector.
5. Remove the rear combination lamp (inside) assembly from the body of the vehicle.
6. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
7. Remove the bulb from bulb-socket by pulling it out.
8. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the bulb-socket.
9. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
10. Install the rear combination lamp (inside) assembly to the body of the vehicle.
11. Install the trunk lid cover.

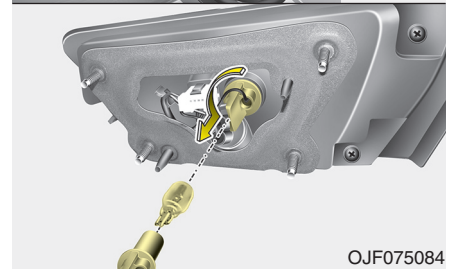
Tail lamp bulb replacement (Sedan)


OJF075081

1. Open the trunk lid.
2. Loosen the retaining screw of the trunk lid cover and then remove the cover.

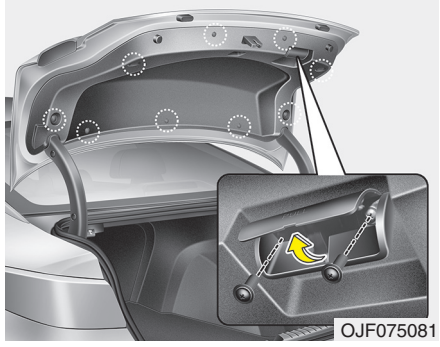

OJF075082


OJF075083

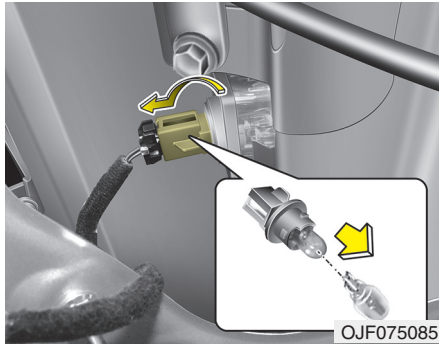

OJF075084

3. Remove the nuts from the vehicle.
4. Disconnect the rear combination lamp (inside) connector.
5. Remove the rear combination lamp (inside) assembly from the body of the vehicle.
6. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
7. Remove the bulb from bulb-socket by pulling it out.
8. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the bulb-socket.
9. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
10. Install the rear combination lamp (inside) assembly to the body of the vehicle.
11. Install the trunk lid cover.

License plate lamp bulb replacement (Sedan)

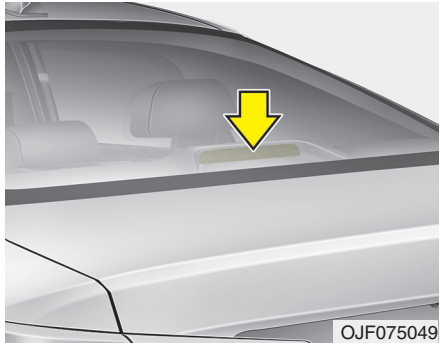


1. Open the trunk lid.
2. Loosen the retaining screw of the trunk lid cover and then remove the cover.



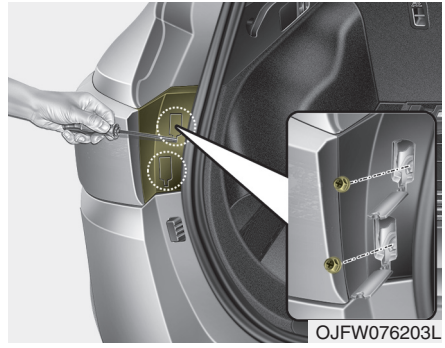
3. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
4. Remove the bulb from bulb-socket by pulling it out.
5. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the bulb-socket.
6. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
7. Install the trunk lid cover.

High mounted stop lamp bulb replacement (Sedan)

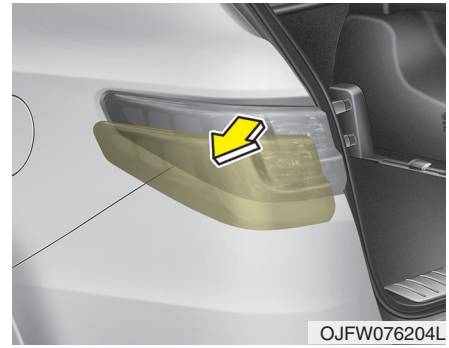


If the high mounted stop lamp (LED) does not operate, we recommend that you checked an authorised Kia dealer.

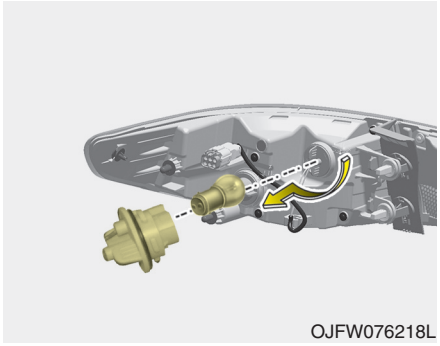
Rear turn signal lamp bulb replacement (Wagon)



1. Open the tailgate.
2. Open the service cover.
3. Loosen the light assembly retaining screws with a cross-tip screwdriver.

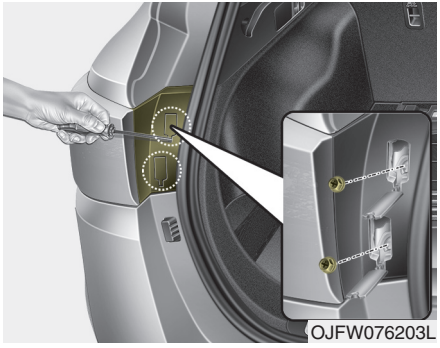


4. Remove the rear combination lamp assembly from the body of the vehicle.
5. Disconnect the rear combination lamp connector.

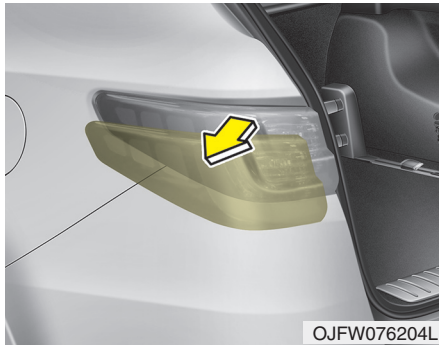

OJFW076218L

6. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
7. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
8. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
9. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
10. Install the rear combination lamp assembly to the body of the vehicle.
11. Install the service cover.

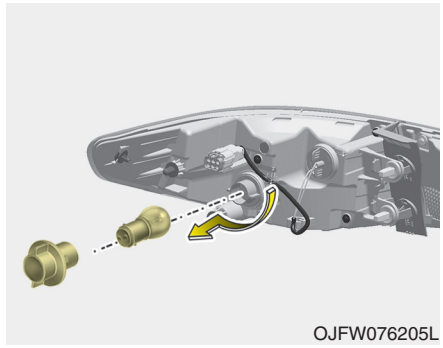
Stop and tail lamp bulb replacement (Wagon)


OJFW076203L

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Open the service cover.
3. Loosen the light assembly retaining screws with a cross-tip screwdriver.

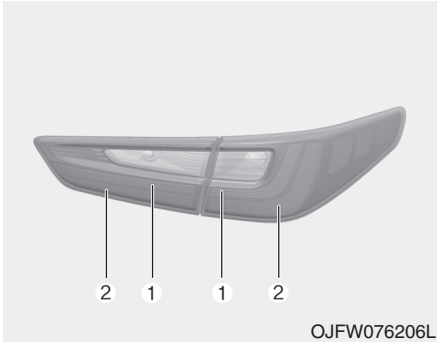

OJFW076204L

4. Remove the rear combination lamp assembly from the body of the vehicle.
5. Disconnect the rear combination lamp connector.


OJFW076205L

6. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
7. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
8. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
9. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
10. Install the rear combination lamp assembly to the body of the vehicle.
11. Install the service cover.

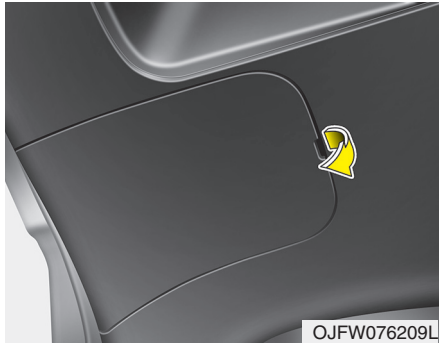
Stop and tail lamp (LED type) bulb replacement (Wagon)



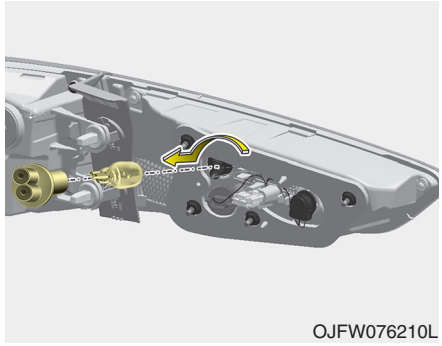
OJFW076206L

If the stop(1) and tail(2) lamp (LED) does not operate, we recommend that you checked an authorised Kia dealer.

Back-up lamp bulb replacement (Wagon)

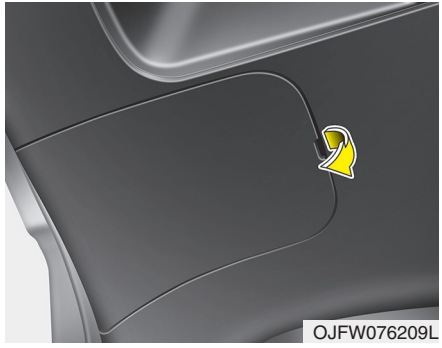

OJFW076209L

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Remove the service cover.

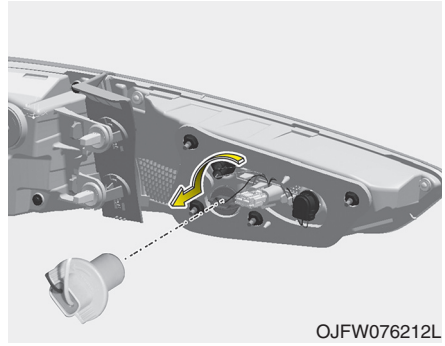

OJFW076210L

3. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
4. Remove the bulb from bulb-socket by pulling it out.
5. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the bulb-socket.
6. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
7. Install the service cover by putting it into the service hole.

Tail lamp (inside) bulb replacement (Wagon)

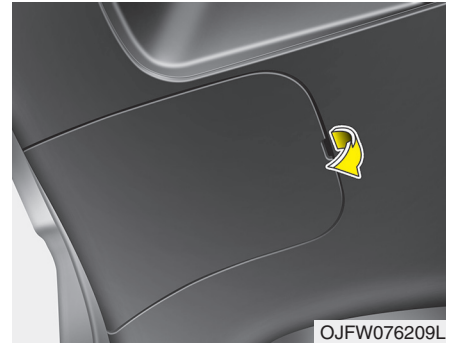


1. Open the tailgate.
2. Remove the service cover.

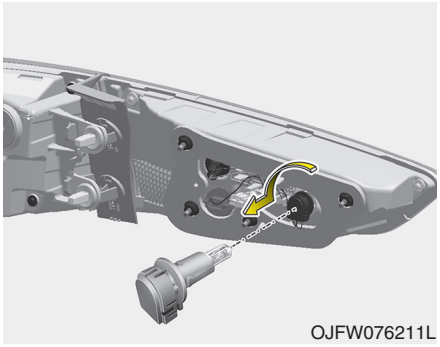


3. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
4. Remove the bulb from bulb-socket by pulling it out.
5. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the bulb-socket.
6. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
7. Install the service cover by putting it into the service hole.

Rear fog lamp bulb replacement (Wagon)

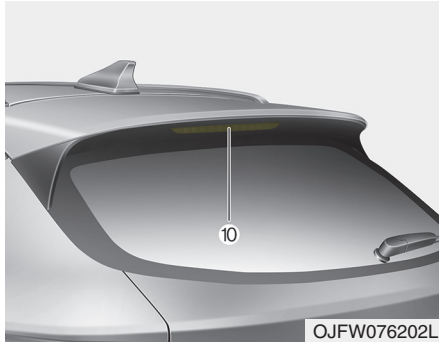


1. Open the tailgate.
2. Remove the service cover.


OJFW076211L

3. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
4. Remove the bulb from bulb-socket by pulling it out.
5. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the bulb-socket.
6. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
7. Install the service cover by putting it into the service hole.

High mounted stop lamp bulb replacement (Wagon)



OJFW076202L

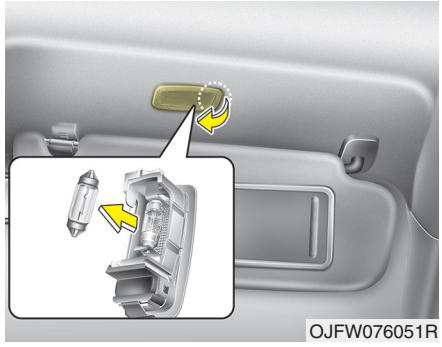
If the high mounted stop lamp (LED) (1) does not operate, we recommend that you checked an authorised Kia dealer.

Map lamp bulb replacement


OJF075050

If the map lamp (bulb and LED type) does not operate, we recommend that you checked an authorised Kia dealer.

Vanity mirror lamp bulb replacement


OJFW076051R

⚠ WARNING

Prior to working on the Interior lamps, ensure that the "OFF" button is depressed to avoid burning your fingers or receiving an electric shock.

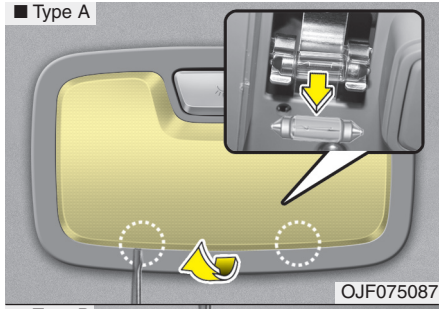
1. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, gently pry the lamp assembly from interior.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
3. Install a new bulb in the socket.
4. Install the lamp assembly to interior.

⚠ CAUTION

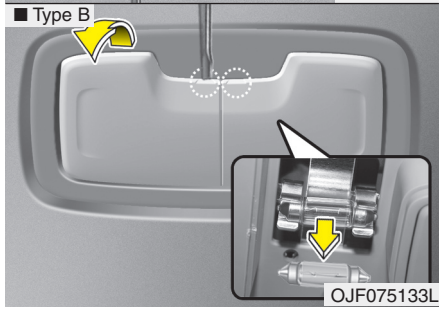
Be careful not to dirty or damage the lens, lens tab, and plastic housings.

Room lamp bulb replacement

■ Type A


OJF075087

■ Type B


OJF075133L

⚠ WARNING

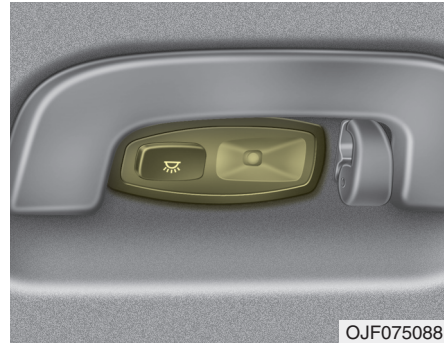
Prior to working on the Interior lamps, ensure that the "OFF" button is depressed to avoid burning your fingers or receiving an electric shock.

1. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, gently pry the lens cover from lamp housing.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
3. Install a new bulb in the socket.
4. Align the lens cover tabs with the lamp housing notches and snap the lens into place.

⚠ CAUTION

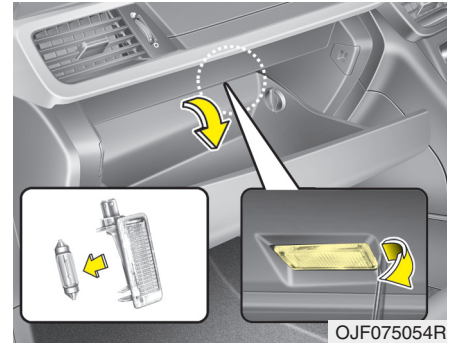
Be careful not to dirty or damage the lens, lens tab, and plastic housings.

Personal lamp bulb replacement



If the personal lamp (LED) does not operate, we recommend that you checked an authorised Kia dealer.

Glove box lamp bulb replacement

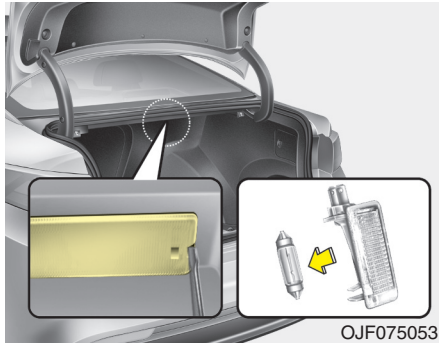


1. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, gently pry the lamp assembly from interior.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
3. Install a new bulb in the socket.
4. Install the lamp assembly to interior.

⚠ CAUTION

Be careful not to dirty or damage the lens, lens tab, and plastic housings.

Trunk lamp bulb replacement (Sedan)

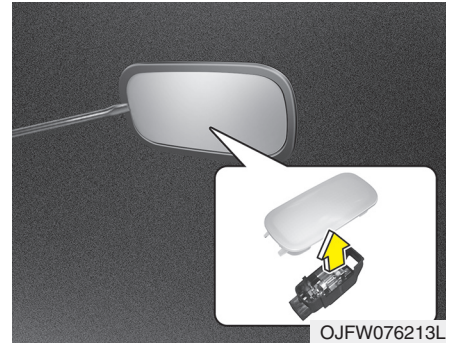

OJF075053

1. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, gently pry the lens cover from lamp housing.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
3. Install a new bulb in the socket.
4. Align the lens cover tabs with the lamp housing notches and snap the lens into place.

⚠ CAUTION

Be careful not to dirty or damage the lens, lens tab, and plastic housings.

Tailgate room lamp bulb replacement (Wagon)


OJFW076213L

1. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, gently pry the lens cover from lamp housing.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
3. Install a new bulb in the socket.
4. Align the lens cover tabs with the lamp housing notches and snap the lens into place.

⚠ CAUTION

Be careful not to dirty or damage the lens, lens tab, and plastic housings.

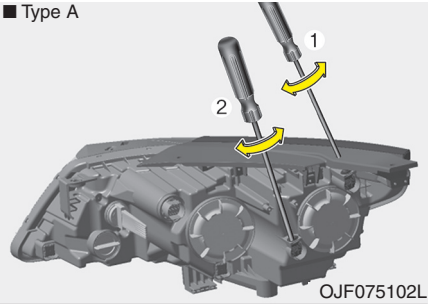
✻ NOTICE

If the LED lamp does not operate, we recommend that you checked on authorised Kia dealer.

Headlamp and front fog lamp aiming (for Europe)

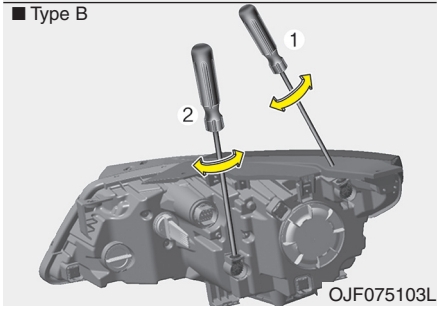
Headlamp aiming

■ Type A



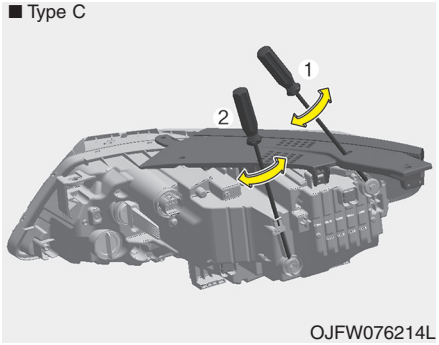
OJF075102L

■ Type B



OJF075103L

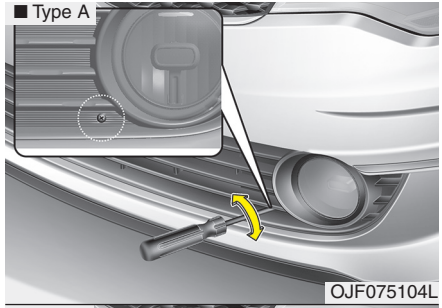
■ Type C

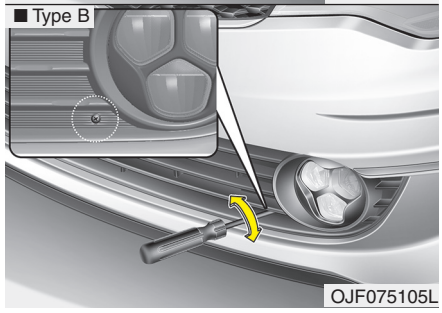


OJFW076214L

1. Inflate the tyres to the specified pressure and remove any loads from the vehicle except the driver, spare tyre, and tools.
2. The vehicle should be placed on a flat floor.
3. Draw vertical lines (Vertical lines passing through respective head lamp centers) and a horizontal line (Horizontal line passing through centre of head lamps) on the screen.
4. With the head lamp and battery in normal condition, aim the head lamps so the brightest portion falls on the horizontal and vertical lines.
5. To aim the low and high beams left or right, turn the driver (1) clockwise or counterclockwise. To aim the low and high beams up or down, turn the driver (2) clockwise or counterclockwise.

Front fog lamp aiming



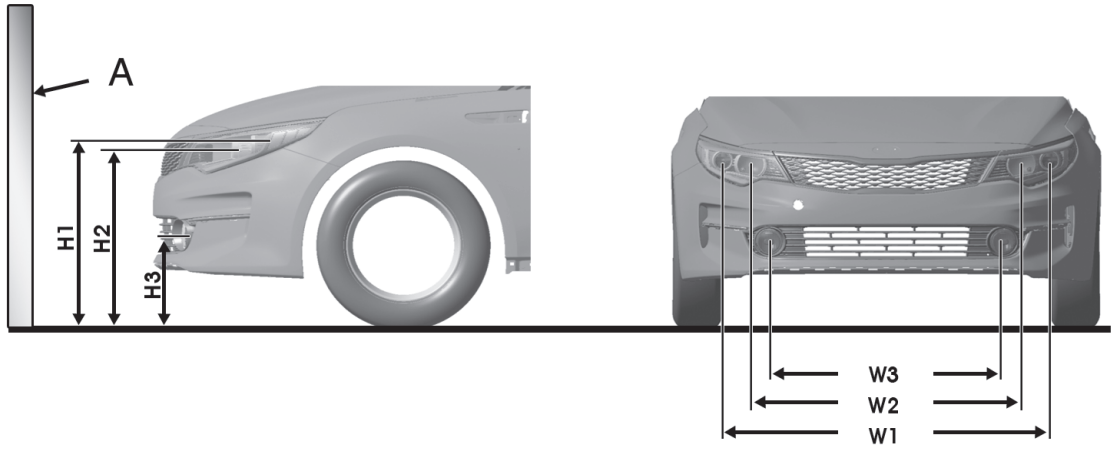


The front fog lamp can be aimed as the same manner of the head lamps aiming.

With the front fog lamps and battery normal condition, aim the front fog lamps.

To aim the front fog lamp up or down, turn the driver clockwise or counter-clockwise.

Aiming point



OJF075106L

* A : Screen

Unit: mm (in)

Vehicle condition	Head lamp (Single projection type)				Head lamp (Dual projection type)				Head lamp (Bi-function type)	
	Ground Height		Distance between lamps		Ground Height		Distance between lamps		Ground Height	Distance between lamps
	Low beam	High beam	Low beam	High beam	Low beam	High beam	Low beam	High beam	Low/High beam	Low/High beam
	H1	H2	W1	W2	H1'	H2'	W1'	W2'	H1''	W1''
Without driver	699 (27.5)	678 (26.7)	1398 (55)	1143 (45)	699 (27.5)	671 (26.4)	1398 (55)	1132 (44.6)	695 (27.4)	1347 (53)
With driver	690 (27.2)	669 (26.3)	1398 (55)	1143 (45)	690 (27.2)	662 (26.1)	1398 (55)	1132 (44.6)	686 (27)	1347 (53)

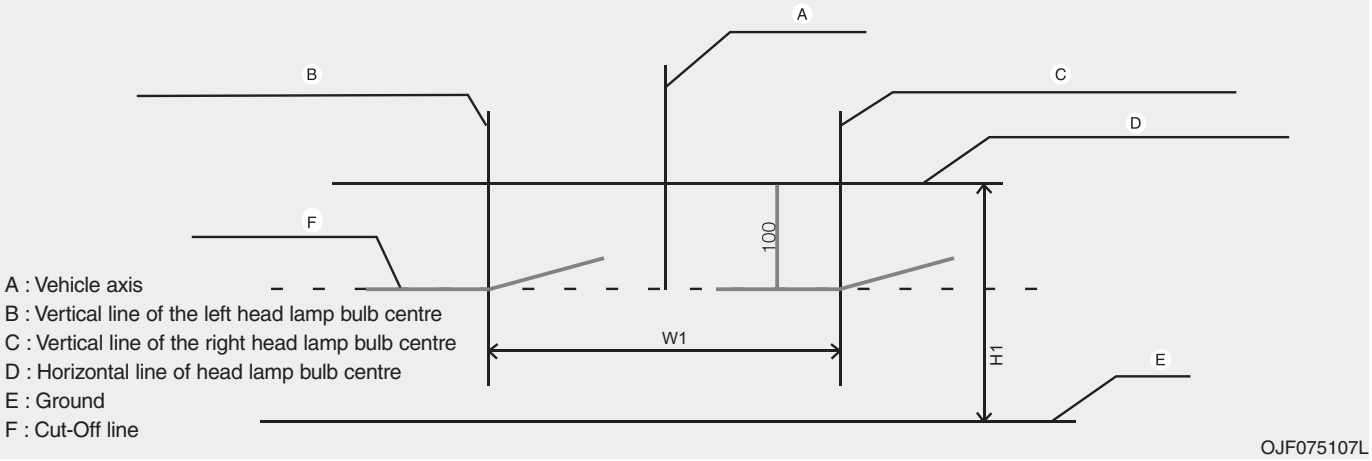
Unit: mm (in)

Vehicle condition	Head lamp (LED type)				Head lamp (LED type) (Europe GT Line)			
	Ground Height		Distance between lamps		Ground Height		Distance between lamps	
	Low beam	High beam	Low beam	High beam	Low beam	High beam	Low beam	High beam
	H1'''	H2'''	W1'''	W2'''	H1''''	H2''''	W1''''	W2''''
without driver [mm(in)]	708 (27.9)	683 (26.9)	1400 (55.1)	1178 (46.4)	698 (27.5)	673 (26.5)	1400 (55.1)	1178 (46.4)
with driver [mm(in)]	693 (27.3)	668 (26.3)	1400 (55.1)	1178 (46.4)	683 (26.9)	658 (25.9)	1400 (55.1)	1178 (46.4)

Unit: mm (in)

Vehicle condition	Front Fog lamp (Bulb type)		Front Fog lamp (LED type)	
	Ground Height	Distance between lamps	Ground Height	Distance between lamps
	H3	W3	H3'	W3'
Without driver	344 (13.5)	1002 (39.4)	344 (13.5)	1002 (39.4)
With driver	335 (13.2)	1002 (39.4)	335 (13.2)	1002 (39.4)

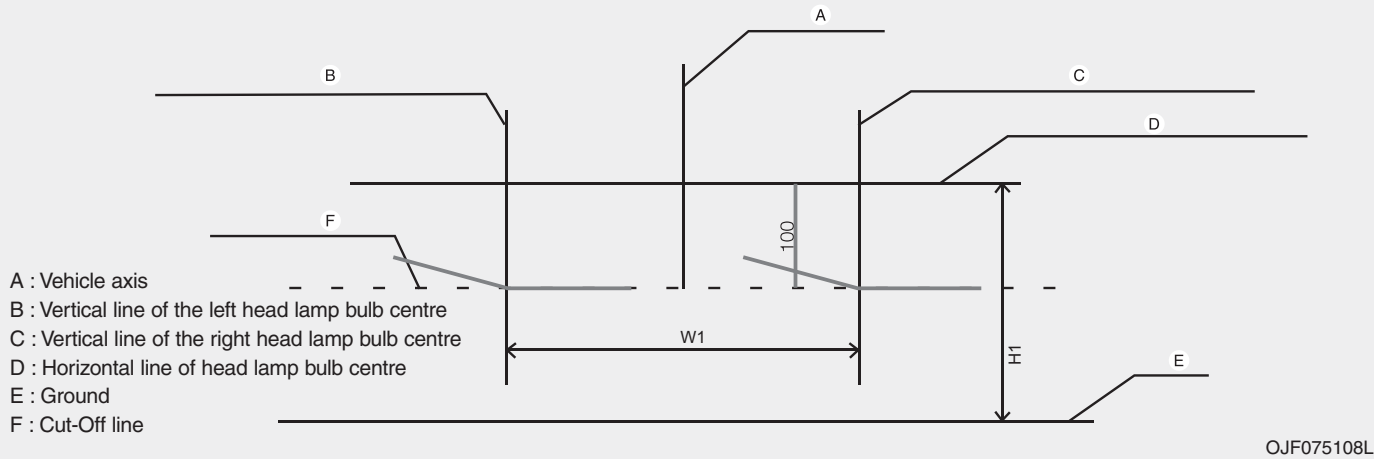
■ Based on 10m screen



Head lamp low beam (LHD Vehicle)

1. Turn the low beam on without driver aboard.
2. The cut-off line should be projected in the cut-off line shown in the picture.
3. When aiming the low beam, vertical aiming should be adjusted after adjusting the horizontal aiming.
4. If head lamp levelling device is equipped, adjust the head lamp levelling device switch with 0 positions.

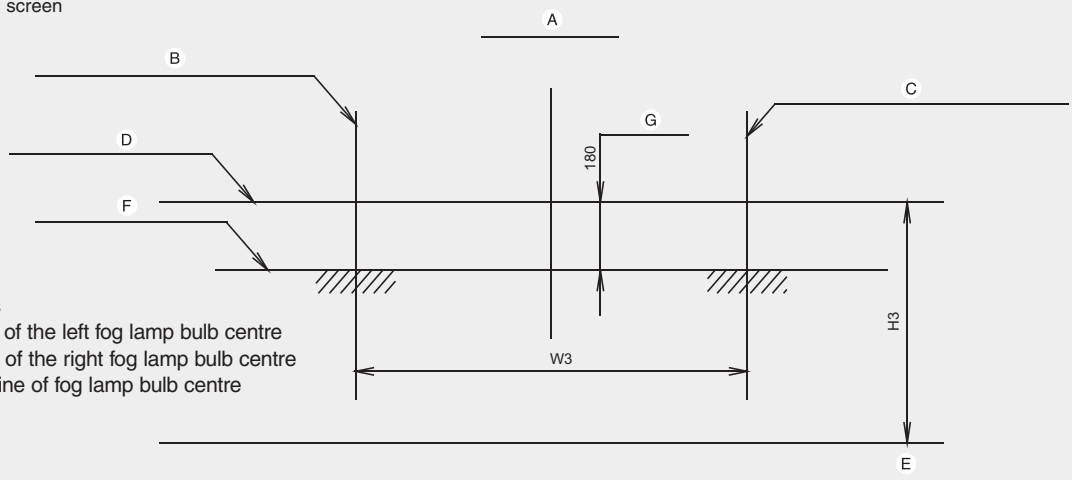
■ Based on 10m screen



Head lamp low beam (RHD Vehicle)

1. Turn the low beam on without driver aboard.
2. The cut-off line should be projected in the cut-off line shown in the picture.
3. When aiming the low beam, vertical aiming should be adjusted after adjusting the horizontal aiming.
4. If head lamp levelling device is equipped, adjust the head lamp levelling device switch with 0 positions.

■ Based on 10m screen



A : Vehicle axis
B : Vertical line of the left fog lamp bulb centre
C : Vertical line of the right fog lamp bulb centre
D : Horizontal line of fog lamp bulb centre
E : Ground
F : Cut-Off line
G : Upper limit

OJF075109L

Front fog lamp

1. Turn the front fog lamp on without the driver aboard.
2. The cut-off line should be projected in the allowable range (shaded region).

APPEARANCE CARE

Exterior care

Exterior general caution

It is very important to follow the label directions when using any chemical cleaner or polish. Read all warning and caution statements that appear on the label.

Finish maintenance

Washing

To help protect your vehicle's finish from rust and deterioration, wash it thoroughly and frequently at least once a month with lukewarm or cold water.

If you use your vehicle for off-road driving, you should wash it after each off-road trip. Pay special attention to the removal of any accumulation of salt, dirt, mud, and other foreign materials. Make sure the drain holes in the lower edges of the doors and rocker panels are kept clear and clean.

Insects, tar, tree sap, bird droppings, industrial pollution and similar deposits can damage your vehicle's finish if not removed immediately.

Even prompt washing with plain water may not completely remove all these deposits. A mild soap, safe for use on painted surfaces, may be used.

After washing, rinse the vehicle thoroughly with lukewarm or cold water. Do not allow soap to dry on the finish.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not use strong soap, chemical detergents or hot water, and do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight or when the body of the vehicle is warm.***
- ***Be careful when washing the side windows of your vehicle.***

  Especially, with high-pressure water, water may leak through the windows and wet the interior.
- ***To prevent damage to the plastic parts and lamps, do not clean with chemical solvents or strong detergents.***

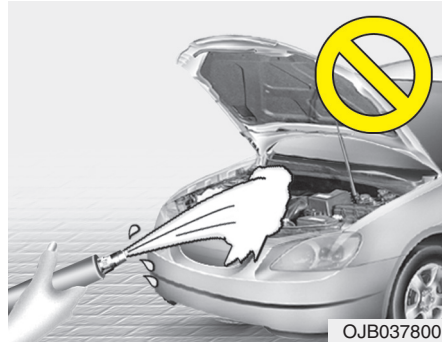
⚠ WARNING - Wet brakes

After washing the vehicle, test the brakes whilst driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly whilst maintaining a slow forward speed.

High-pressure washing

- When using high-pressure washers, make sure to maintain sufficient distance from the vehicle.

  Insufficient clearance or excessive pressure can lead to component damage or water penetration.
- Do not spray the camera, sensors or its surrounding area directly with a high pressure washer. Shock applied from high pressure water may cause the device to not operate normally.
- Do not bring the nozzle tip close to boots (rubber or plastic covers) or connectors as they may be damaged if they come into contact with high pressure water.


OJB037800

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Water washing in the engine compartment including high pressure water washing may cause the failure of electrical circuits located in the engine compartment.***
- ***Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/electronic components inside the vehicle as this may damage them.***

Waxing

Wax the vehicle when water will no longer bead on the paint.
Always wash and dry the vehicle before waxing. Use a good quality liquid or paste wax, and follow the manufacturer's instructions. Wax all metal trim to protect it and to maintain its luster.
Removing oil, tar, and similar materials with a spot remover will usually strip the wax from the finish. Be sure to re-wax these areas even if the rest of the vehicle does not yet need waxing.
Do not apply wax on embossed unpainted unit, as it may tarnish the unit.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Wiping dust or dirt off the body with a dry cloth will scratch the finish.***
- ***Do not use steel wool, abrasive cleaners, acid detergents or strong detergents containing high alkaline or caustic agents on chrome-plated or anodized aluminum parts. This may result in damage to the protective coating and cause discoloration or paint deterioration.***

Finish damage repair

Deep scratches or stone chips in the painted surface must be repaired promptly. Exposed metal will quickly rust and may develop into a major repair expense.

✻ NOTICE

If your vehicle is damaged and requires any metal repair or replacement, be sure the body shop applies anti-corrosion materials to the parts repaired or replaced.

Bright-metal maintenance

- To remove road tar and insects, use a tar remover, not a scraper or other sharp object.
- To protect the surfaces of bright-metal parts from corrosion, apply a coating of wax or chrome preservative and rub to a high luster.
- During winter weather or in coastal areas, cover the bright metal parts with a heavier coating of wax or preservative. If necessary, coat the parts with non-corrosive petroleum jelly or other protective compound.

Underbody maintenance

Corrosive materials used for ice and snow removal and dust control may collect on the underbody. If these materials are not removed, accelerated rusting can occur on underbody parts such as the fuel lines, frame, floor pan and exhaust system, even though they have been treated with rust protection.

Thoroughly flush the vehicle underbody and wheel openings with lukewarm or cold water once a month, after off-road driving and at the end of each winter. Pay special attention to these areas because it is difficult to see all the mud and dirt. It will do more harm than good to wet down the road grime without removing it. The lower edges of the doors, rocker panels, and frame members have drain holes that should not clog with dirt; trapped water in these areas can cause rusting.

⚠ WARNING

After washing the vehicle, test the brakes whilst driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly whilst maintaining a slow forward speed.

Aluminum wheel maintenance

The aluminum wheels are coated with a clear protective finish.

- Do not use any abrasive cleaner, polishing compound, solvent, or wire brushes on aluminum wheels. They may scratch or damage the finish.
- Clean the wheel when it has cooled.
- Use only a mild soap or neutral detergent, and rinse thoroughly with water. Also, be sure to clean the wheels after driving on salted roads. This helps prevent corrosion.
- Avoid washing the wheels with high-speed car wash brushes.
- Do not use any alkaline or acid detergent. It may damage and corrode the aluminum wheels coated with a clear protective finish.

Corrosion protection

Protecting your vehicle from corrosion

By using the most advanced design and construction practices to combat corrosion, we produce vehicles of the highest quality. However, this is only part of the job. To achieve the long-term corrosion resistance your vehicle can deliver, the owner's cooperation and assistance is also required.

Common causes of corrosion

The most common causes of corrosion on your vehicle are:

- Road salt, dirt and moisture that is allowed to accumulate underneath the vehicle.
- Removal of paint or protective coatings by stones, gravel, abrasion or minor scrapes and dents which leave unprotected metal exposed to corrosion.

High-corrosion areas

If you live in an area where your vehicle is regularly exposed to corrosive materials, corrosion protection is particularly important. Some of the common causes of accelerated corrosion are road salts, dust control chemicals, ocean air and industrial pollution.

Moisture breeds corrosion

Moisture creates the conditions in which corrosion is most likely to occur. For example, corrosion is accelerated by high humidity, particularly when temperatures are just above freezing. In such conditions, the corrosive material is kept in contact with the vehicle's surface by moisture that evaporate slowly.
Mud is particularly corrosive because it dries slowly and holds moisture in contact with the vehicle. Although the mud appears to be dry, it can still retain moisture and promote corrosion.
High temperatures can also accelerate corrosion of parts that are not properly ventilated so the moisture can be dispersed.
For all these reasons, it is particularly important to keep your vehicle clean and free of mud or accumulations of other materials. This applies not only to the visible surfaces but particularly to the underside of the vehicle.

To help prevent corrosion

You can help prevent corrosion from getting started by observing the following:

Keep your vehicle clean

The best way to prevent corrosion is to keep your vehicle clean and free of corrosive materials. Attention to the underside of the vehicle is particularly important.

- If you live in a high-corrosion area — where road salts are used, near the ocean, areas with industrial pollution, acid rain, etc.—, you should take extra care to prevent corrosion. In winter, hose off the underside of your vehicle at least once a month and be sure to clean the underside thoroughly when winter is over.
- When cleaning underneath the vehicle, give particular attention to the components under the fenders and other areas that are hidden from view. Do a thorough job; just dampening the accumulated mud rather than washing it away will accelerate corrosion rather than prevent it. Water under high pressure and steam are particularly effective in removing accumulated mud and corrosive materials.
- When cleaning lower door panels, rocker panels and frame members, be sure that drain holes are kept open so that moisture can escape and not be trapped inside to accelerate corrosion.

Keep your garage dry

Don't park your vehicle in a damp, poorly ventilated garage. This creates a favorable environment for corrosion. This is particularly true if you wash your vehicle in the garage or drive it into the garage when it is still wet or covered with snow, ice or mud. Even a heated garage can contribute to corrosion unless it is well ventilated so moisture is dispersed.

Keep paint and trim in good condition

Scratches or chips in the finish should be covered with "touch-up" paint as soon as possible to reduce the possibility of corrosion. If bare metal is showing through, the attention of a qualified body and paint shop is recommended.

Bird droppings : Bird droppings are highly corrosive and may damage painted surfaces in just a few hours. Always remove bird droppings as soon as possible.

Don't neglect the interior

Moisture can collect under the floor mats and carpeting and cause corrosion. Check under the mats periodically to be sure the carpeting is dry. Use particular care if you carry fertilizers, cleaning materials or chemicals in the vehicle.

These should be carried only in proper containers and any spills or leaks should be cleaned up, flushed with clean water and thoroughly dried.

Interior care

Interior general precautions

Prevent chemicals such as perfume, cosmetic oil, sun cream, hand cleaner, and air freshener from contacting the interior parts because they may cause damage or discoloration. If they do contact the interior parts, wipe them off immediately. If necessary, use a vinyle cleaner, see instructions for correct usage.

⚠ CAUTION

Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/electronic components inside the vehicle as this may damage them.

⚠ CAUTION

When cleaning leather products (steering wheel, seats etc.), use neutral detergents or low alcohol content solutions. If you use high alcohol content solutions or acid/alkaline detergents, the colour of the leather may fade or the surface may get stripped off.

Cleaning the upholstery and interior trim

Vinyl

Remove dust and loose dirt from vinyl with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean vinyl surfaces with a vinyl cleaner.

Fabric

Remove dust and loose dirt from fabric with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean with a mild soap solution recommended for upholstery or carpets. Remove fresh spots immediately with a fabric spot cleaner. If fresh spots do not receive immediate attention, the fabric can be stained and its colour can be affected. Also, its fire-resistant properties can be reduced if the material is not properly maintained.

⚠ CAUTION

Using anything but recommended cleaners and procedures may affect the fabric's appearance and fire-resistant properties.

Cleaning the lap/shoulder belt webbing

Clean the belt webbing with any mild soap solution recommended for cleaning upholstery or carpet. Follow the instructions provided with the soap. Do not bleach or re-dye the webbing because this may weaken it.

Cleaning the interior window glass

If the interior glass surfaces of the vehicle become fogged (that is, covered with an oily, greasy or waxy film), they should be cleaned with a glass cleaner. Follow the directions on the glass cleaner container.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not scrape or scratch the inside of the rear window. This may result in damage of the rear window defroster grid.

EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

The emission control system of your vehicle is covered by a written limited warranty. Please see the warranty information contained in the Warranty & Maintenance book in your vehicle.

Your vehicle is equipped with an emission control system to meet all applicable emission regulations.

There are three emission control systems, as follows.

(1) Crankcase emission control system
(2) Evaporative emission control system
(3) Exhaust emission control system

In order to assure the proper function of the emission control systems, it is recommended that you have your vehicle inspected and maintained by an authorised Kia dealer in accordance with the maintenance schedule in this manual.

Caution for the Inspection and Maintenance Test (With Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system)

- **To prevent the vehicle from misfiring during dynamometer testing, turn the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system off by pressing the ESC switch.**
- **After dynamometer testing is completed, turn the ESC system back on by pressing the ESC switch again.**

1. Crankcase emission control system

The positive crankcase ventilation system is employed to prevent air pollution caused by blow-by gases being emitted from the crankcase. This system supplies fresh filtered air to the crankcase through the air intake hose. Inside the crankcase, the fresh air mixes with blow-by gases, which then pass through the PCV valve into the induction system.

2. Evaporative emission control system

The Evaporative Emission Control System is designed to prevent fuel vapors from escaping into the atmosphere.

Canister

Fuel vapors generated inside the fuel tank are absorbed and stored in the onboard canister. When the engine is running, the fuel vapors absorbed in the canister are drawn into the surge tank through the purge control solenoid valve.

Purge Control Solenoid Valve (PCSV)

The purge control solenoid valve is controlled by the Engine Control Module (ECM); when the engine coolant temperature is low during idling, the PCSV closes so that evaporated fuel is not taken into the engine. After the engine warms up during ordinary driving, the PCSV opens to introduce evaporated fuel to the engine.

3. Exhaust emission control system

The Exhaust Emission Control System is a highly effective system which controls exhaust emissions whilst maintaining good vehicle performance.

Vehicle modifications

This vehicle should not be modified. Modification of your vehicle could affect its performance, safety or durability and may even violate governmental safety and emissions regulations.

In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from any modification may not be covered under warranty.

- If you use unauthorised electronic devices, it may cause the vehicle to operate abnormally, wire damage, battery discharge and fire. For your safety, do not use unauthorised electronic devices.

Engine exhaust gas precautions (carbon monoxide)

- Carbon monoxide can be present with other exhaust fumes. Therefore, if you smell exhaust fumes of any kind inside your vehicle, have it inspected and repaired immediately. If you ever suspect exhaust fumes are coming into your vehicle, drive it only with all the windows fully open. Have your vehicle checked and repaired immediately.

⚠ WARNING - Exhaust

Engine exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide (CO). Though colorless and odourless, it is dangerous and could be lethal if inhaled. Follow the instructions on this page to avoid CO poisoning.

- Do not operate the engine in confined or closed areas (such as garages) any more than what is necessary to move the vehicle in or out of the area.
- When the vehicle is stopped in an open area for more than a short time with the engine running, adjust the ventilation system (as needed) to draw outside air into the vehicle.
- Never sit in a parked or stopped vehicle for any extended time with the engine running.
- When the engine stalls or fails to start, excessive attempts to restart the engine may cause damage to the emission control system.

Operating precautions for catalytic converters (if equipped)

⚠ WARNING - Fire

- **A hot exhaust system can ignite flammable items under your vehicle. Do not park the vehicle over or near flammable objects, such as grass, vegetation, paper, leaves, etc.**
- **The exhaust system and catalytic system are very hot whilst the engine is running or immediately after the engine is turned off. Keep away from the exhaust system and catalytic, you may get burned.**

  Also, do not remove the heat sink around the exhaust system, do not seal the bottom of the vehicle or do not coat the vehicle for corrosion control. It may present a fire risk under certain conditions.

Your vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter emission control device.

Therefore, the following precautions must be observed:

- Make sure to refuel your vehicle according to the "Fuel requirements" suggested in chapter 1.
- Do not operate the vehicle when there are signs of engine malfunction, such as misfire or a noticeable loss of performance.
- Do not misuse or abuse the engine. Examples of misuse are coasting with the ignition off and descending steep grades in gear with the ignition off.
- Do not operate the engine at high idle speed for extended periods (5 minutes or more).
- Do not modify or tamper with any part of the engine or emission control system. All inspections and adjustments must be made by an authorised Kia dealer.
- Avoid driving with an extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

Failure to observe these precautions could result in damage to the catalytic converter and to your vehicle.

Additionally, such actions could void your warranties.

Diesel Particulate Filter (if equipped)

The Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) system removes the soot in the exhaust gas.
Unlike a disposable air filter, the DPF system automatically burns (oxidizes) and removes the accumulated soot according to the driving condition. In other words, the active burning by engine control system and high exhaust gas temperature caused by normal/high driving condition burns and removes the accumulated soot.
However, if the vehicle continues to be driven at repeated short distance or driven at low speed for a long time, the accumulated soot may not be automatically removed because of low exhaust gas temperature. More than a certain amount of soot deposited, the malfunction indicator light ( ) illuminates.

When the malfunction indicator light blinks, it may stop blinking by driving the vehicle at more than 60 km/h (37 mph) or at more than second gear with 1500 ~ 2500 engine rpm for a certain time (for about 25 minutes).
If the malfunction indicator light ( ) continues to be blinked or the warning massage “Check exhaust system” illuminates in spite of the procedure, please visit an authorised Kia dealer and the check the DPF system.

If you continue to drive with the malfunction indicator light blinking for a long time, the DPF system can be damaged and fuel consumption can be worsen.

⚠ **CAUTION - Diesel Fuel (if equipped with DPF)**

It is recommended to use the regulated automotive diesel fuel for diesel vehicle equipped with the DPF system.

If you use diesel fuel including high sulfur (more than 50 ppm sulfur) and unspecified additives, it can cause the DPF system to be damaged and white smoke can be emitted.

Lean NOx Trap (if equipped)

The Lean NOx Trap (LNT) system removes the nitrogen oxide in the exhaust gas. The smell can occur in the exhaust gas depending on the quality of the fuel and it can degrade NOx reduction performance, please use the regulated automotive diesel fuel.

Specifications & Consumer information

Dimensions 9-2
Gross vehicle weight. 9-3
Engine 9-3
Air conditioning system. 9-4
Luggage volume 9-4
Bulb wattage. 9-5
Tyres and wheels (For europe, australia, russia) . . 9-6
Tyres and wheels
(Except europe, australia, russia). 9-7
Recommended lubricants and capacities. 9-8
Recommended sae viscosity number 9-10
Vehicle identification number (VIN) 9-12
Vehicle certification label. 9-12
Tyre specification and pressure label 9-13
Engine number 9-13
Air conditioner compressor label 9-14
Refrigerant label. 9-14
Declaration of conformity 9-14

DIMENSIONS

• Sedan

ITEM			Length (mm)
Overall length			4,855
Overall width			1,860
Overall height			1,465 1,475 (High Sus. Opt.) 1,455 (GT) 1,485 (Only in Russia)
Tread	Front	205/65 R16	1,614
		215/60 R16	1,607
		215/55 R17	1,597*1 (1,602)*2
		235/45 R18	1,597 (GT 1,597)
	Rear	205/65 R16	1,621
		215/60 R16	1,614
		215/55 R17	1,604*1 (1,609)*2
		235/45 R18	1,604 (GT 1,608)
Wheelbase			2,805

*1 : Only for EUROPE, AUSTRALIA, RUSSIA
*2 : Only for except EUROPE, AUSTRALIA, RUSSIA

• Wagon

Item			Length (mm)
Overall length			4,855
Overall width			1,860
Overall height			1,470 (with roof rack) 1,480 (High. Sus. Opt., with roof rack) 1,460 (GT, with roof rack)
Tread	Front	215/60 R16	1,607
		215/55 R17	1,597
		235/45 R18	1,597 (GT 1,597)
	Rear	215/60 R16	1,614
		215/55 R17	1,604
		235/45 R18	1,604 (GT 1,608)
Wheelbase			2,805

ENGINE

Item	Petrol Engine			Diesel Engine
	Nu 2.0 MPI / Nu 2.0 CVVL	Theta II 2.4 MPI / Theta II 2.4 GDI	Theta II 2.0 T-GDI	U2 1.7
Displacement [cc (cu. in)]	1,999 (121.98)	2,359 (143.95)	1,998 (121.9)	1,685 (102.8)
Bore x Stroke [mm (in.)]	81 x 97 (3.18 x 3.82)	88 x 97 (3.46 x 3.81)	86 x 86 (3.39 x 3.39)	77.2 x 90.0 (3.03 x 3.54)
Firing order	1-3-4-2	1-3-4-2	1-3-4-2	1-3-4-2
No. of cylinders	4. In-line	4. In-line	4. In-line	4. In-line

GROSS VEHICLE WEIGHT

• Sedan

kg (lbs)

ITEM		FOR EUROPE	FOR EXCEPT EUROPE	FOR AUSTRALIA
Nu 2.0 MPI	A/T	-	2,030 (4,475)	-
Nu 2.0 CVVL	A/T	2,020 (4,453)	-	-
	M/T	2,000 (4,409)	-	-
Theta II 2.4 MPI	A/T	2,040 (4,497)	2,050 (4,519)	-
Theta II 2.4 GDI	A/T	2,050 (4,519)	2,060 (4,541)	2,060 (4,541)
Theta II 2.0 T-GDI	A/T	2,120 (4,673)	2,120 (4,673)	2,120 (4,673)
U2 1.7	M/T	2,070 (4,563)	-	-
	DCT	2,080 (4,585)	-	-

M/T : Manual transaxle
A/T : Automatic transaxle
DCT : Dual clutch transmission

• Wagon

kg (lbs)

ITEM		FOR EUROPE
Nu 2.0 CVVL	M/T	2,070 (4,563)
	A/T	2,090 (4,607)
Theta II 2.0 T-GDI	A/T	2,190 (4,828)
U2 1.7	M/T	2,140 (4,717)
	DCT	2,150 (4,739)

M/T : Manual transaxle
A/T : Automatic transaxle
DCT : Dual clutch transmission

LUGGAGE VOLUME

• Sedan

ITEM	Volume
VDA	510 L (18.0 cu ft)

• Wagon

ITEM	Volume
VDA	min. 552 L (19.5 cu ft) / max. 1,686 L (59.5 cu ft)

AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM

ITEM		Weight of volume	Classification
Refrigerant	GENERAL / EUROPE(FOR R-134a)	570 ± 25g (20.1 ± 0.8)	R-134a
	EUROPE (FOR R-1234yf)	470 ± 25g (16.6 ± 0.8)	R-1234yf
Compressor lubricant g (oz.)		80 ± 10 (2.82 ± 0.35)	PAG (ND-0IL12)

We recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer for more details.

BULB WATTAGE

Light Bulb			Wattage (W)	Bulb type
Front	Headlamps (Low)		55W	H7SL
	Headlamps (Low) - HID type*		35W	D3S
	Headlamps (High)		55W/65W	9005HL+/H9
	Front turn signal lamps		21W	PY21WL/L
	Front position lamps		0.7W	LED
	Daytime running light	LED type	6.5W	LED
	Smart cornering lamp		55W	H7L
	Front fog lamps	Bulb type	35W	H8LL
		LED type	3W	LED
	Side Repeater lamps	Bulb type	5W	WY5W
		LED type	0.5W	LED
Rear	Rear Stop/Tail lamps (outside)	Bulb type	5W	P21
	Rear tail lamps (Inside)		5W	W5W
	Rear Stop/Tail lamps (outside)	LED type	12W	LED
	Rear tail lamps (Inside)		6W	LED
	Rear turn signal lamps		21W	PY21W
	Back-up lamps		16W	W16W
	High mounted stop lamp*		3W	LED
	License plate lamps		5W	W5W
Interior	Map lamps	Bulb type	10W	FESTON BULB
		LED type	1W	LED
	Room lamps		10W	FESTON BULB
	Personal lamps		1W	LED
	Vanity mirror lamps		5W	FESTON BULB
	Glove box lamp		5W	FESTON BULB
	Trunk lamp		5W	FESTON BULB

* If equipped

TYRES AND WHEELS (FOR EUROPE, AUSTRALIA, RUSSIA)

Item	Tyre size	Wheel size	Load Capacity		Speed capacity		Inflation pressure [bar(psi, kPa)]				Wheel lug nut torque [Kgf·m (lbf·ft, N·m)]
							Normal load		Maximum load		
			LI *1	Kg	SS *2	Km/h	Front	Rear	Front	Rear	
Full size tyre	205/65 R16*3	6.5J × 16	95	690	H	210	2.35 (34, 235)	2.35 (34, 235)	2.35 (34, 235)	2.35 (34, 235)	9~11 (65~79, 88~107)
	215/60 R16	6.5J × 16	95	690	V	240	2.35 (34, 235)	2.35 (34, 235)	2.35 (34, 235)	2.35 (34, 235)	
	215/55 R17	7.5J × 17	94	670	W	270	2.35 (34, 235)	2.35 (34, 235)	2.35 (34, 235)	2.35 (34, 235)	
	235/45 R18	7.5J × 18	98	750	Y	300	2.35 (34, 235)	2.35 (34, 235)	2.35 (34, 235)	2.35 (34, 235)	
Compact spare tyre (if equipped)	T125/80 D16	4.0T × 16	97	730	M	130	4.2 (60, 420)	4.2 (60, 420)	4.2 (60, 420)	4.2 (60, 420)	
	T135/80 D17	4.0T × 17	103	875	M	130	4.2 (60, 420)	4.2 (60, 420)	4.2 (60, 420)	4.2 (60, 420)	

*1 : Load Index *2 : Speed Symbol *3 : Only for sedan

✻ NOTICE

- **We recommend that when replacing tyres, use the same originally supplied with the vehicles. If not, that effects driving performance.**
- **When driving in high altitude grades, it is natural for the atmospheric pressure to decrease. Therefore, please check the tyre pressure and add more air when necessary. Additionally required tyre air pressure per km above sea level: 10.5 kpa (1.5 psi)/km**

⚠ CAUTION

When replacing tyres, use the same size originally supplied with the vehicle.
Using tyres of a different size can damage the related parts or make it work irregularly.

TYRES AND WHEELS (EXCEPT EUROPE, AUSTRALIA, RUSSIA)

Item	Tyre size	Wheel size	Load Capacity		Speed capacity		Inflation pressure [bar(psi, kPa)]				Wheel lug nut torque [Kgf·m (lbf·ft, N·m)]
							Normal load		Maximum load		
			LI *1	Kg	SS *2	Km/h	Front	Rear	Front	Rear	
Full size tyre	205/65 R16	6.5J × 16	95	690	H	210	2.35 (34, 235)	2.35 (34, 235)	2.35 (34, 235)	2.35 (34, 235)	9~11 (65~79, 88~107)
	215/55 R17	7.0J × 17	94	670	V	240	2.35 (34, 235)	2.35 (34, 235)	2.35 (34, 235)	2.35 (34, 235)	
	235/45 R18	7.5J × 18	94	670	V	240	2.35 (34, 235)	2.35 (34, 235)	2.35 (34, 235)	2.35 (34, 235)	
Compact spare tyre (if equipped)	T125/80 D16	4.0T × 16	97	730	M	130	4.2 (60, 420)	4.2 (60, 420)	4.2 (60, 420)	4.2 (60, 420)	
	T135/80 D17	4.0T × 17	103	875	M	130	4.2 (60, 420)	4.2 (60, 420)	4.2 (60, 420)	4.2 (60, 420)	

*1 : Load Index

*2 : Speed Symbol

✻ NOTICE

- **We recommend that when replacing tyres, use the same originally supplied with the vehicles. If not, that effects driving performance.**
- **When driving in high altitude grades, it is natural for the atmospheric pressure to decrease. Therefore, please check the tyre pressure and add more air when necessary. Additionally required tyre air pressure per km above sea level: 10.5 kpa (1.5 psi)/km**

⚠ CAUTION

When replacing tyres, use the same size originally supplied with the vehicle.

Using tyres of a different size can damage the related parts or make it work irregularly.

RECOMMENDED LUBRICANTS AND CAPACITIES

Lubricant			Volume	Classification
Engine oil *1 *2 (drain and refill) Recommends Shell HELIX Motor oils	Petrol Engine	Nu 2.0 MPI	4 *l* (4.23 US qt.)	All (Except Middle east, India, Libia, Algeria, Mrocco, Tunisia, Sudan, Egypt, Iran) : ILSAC GF-4 or above & API SM, ACEA A5 or above / 5W-20 Middle east, India, Libia, Algeria, Mrocco, Tunisia, Sudan, Egypt, Iran : ACEA A5 or above / 5W-30
		Nu 2.0 CVVL	4.3 *l* (4.54 US qt.)	All (Except Middle east, India, Libia, Algeria, Mrocco, Tunisia, Sudan, Egypt, Iran) : ILSAC GF-4 or above & API SM, ACEA A5 or above / 5W-20 Middle east, India, Libia, Algeria, Mrocco, Tunisia, Sudan, Egypt, Iran : ACEA A5 or above / 5W-30
		Theta II 2.4 MPI	With oil cooler : 4.8 *l* (5.07 US qt.) Without oil cooler : 4.7 *l* (4.97 US qt.)	All (Except Middle east, India, Libia, Algeria, Mrocco, Tunisia, Sudan, Egypt, Iran) : ILSAC GF-4 or above & API SM, ACEA A5 or above / 5W-20 Middle east, India, Libia, Algeria, Mrocco, Tunisia, Sudan, Egypt, Iran : ACEA A5 or above / 5W-30
		Theta II 2.4 GDI	4.8 *l* (5.07 US qt.)	ACEA A5 or above / 5W-30
		Theta II 2.0 T-GDI	4.8 *l* (5.07 US qt.)	ACEA A5 or above / 5W-30
	Diesel Engine	U2 1.7 with DPF *3	4.8 *l* (5.07 US qt.)	ACEA C2 or C3
		U2 1.7 without DPF *3	4.8 *l* (5.07 US qt.)	ACEA B4
Manual transaxle fluid	Petrol Engine	Nu 2.0 CVVL	1.7 ~ 1.8 *l* (1.80 ~ 1.90 US qt.)	SAE 70W, API GL-4 (Recommended : SK HK MTF 70W, SHELL SPIRAX S6 GHME 70W, GS CALTEX GS MTF HD 70W)
	Diesel Engine	U2 1.7	1.8 ~ 1.9 *l* (1.90 ~ 2.01 US qt.)	

Lubricant				Volume	Classification
Automatic transaxle fluid	Petrol Engine	Nu 2.0 MPI		7.3 *l* (7.71 US qt.)	ATF SP-IV
		Nu 2.0 CVVL		7.3 *l* (7.71 US qt.)	
		Theta II 2.4 MPI		7.1 *l* (7.50 US qt.)	
		Theta II 2.4 GDI		7.1 *l* (7.50 US qt.)	
		Theta II 2.0 T-GDI		7.8 *l* (8.24 US qt.)	
Dual Clutch transmission fluid	Diesel Engine	U2 1.7		1.9 ~ 2.0 *l* (2.01 ~ 2.11 US qt.)	SAE 70W, API GL-4 (Recommended : SK HK MTF 70W, SHELL SPIRAX S6 GHME 70W, GS CALTEX GS MTF HD 70W)
Coolant	Petrol Engine	Nu 2.0 MPI	A/T	5.8 *l* (6.13 US qt.)	Mixture of antifreeze and distilled water (Ethylene glycol base coolant for aluminum radiator)
		Nu 2.0 CVVL	A/T	5.8 *l* (6.13 US qt.)	
			M/T	5.9 *l* (6.23 US qt.)	
		Theta II 2.4 MPI	M/T	7.0 *l* (7.40 US qt.)	
		Theta II 2.4 GDI	A/T	7.2 *l* (7.61 US qt.)	
		Theta II 2.0 T-GDI	A/T	7.3 *l* (7.71 US qt.)	
	Diesel Engine	U2 1.7	M/T	7.1 *l* (7.5 US qt.)	
			DCT	7.1 *l* (7.5 US qt.)	

Lubricant		Volume	Classification
Brake / Clutch fluid		0.45 *l* (0.47 US qt.)	FMVSS116 DOT 3 or DOT 4
Fuel	Petrol Engine	70 *l* (73.97 US qt.)	Refer to Fuel requirements in chapter 1
	Diesel Engine	70 *l* (73.97 US qt.)	

*1 : Refer to the recommended SAE viscosity numbers on the next page.

*2 : Engine oils labeled Energy Conserving Oil are now available. Along with other additional benefits, they contribute to fuel economy by reducing the amount of fuel necessary to overcome engine friction. Often, these improvements are difficult to measure in everyday driving, but in a year's time, they can offer significant cost and energy savings.

*3 : Diesel Particulate Filter

Recommended SAE viscosity number

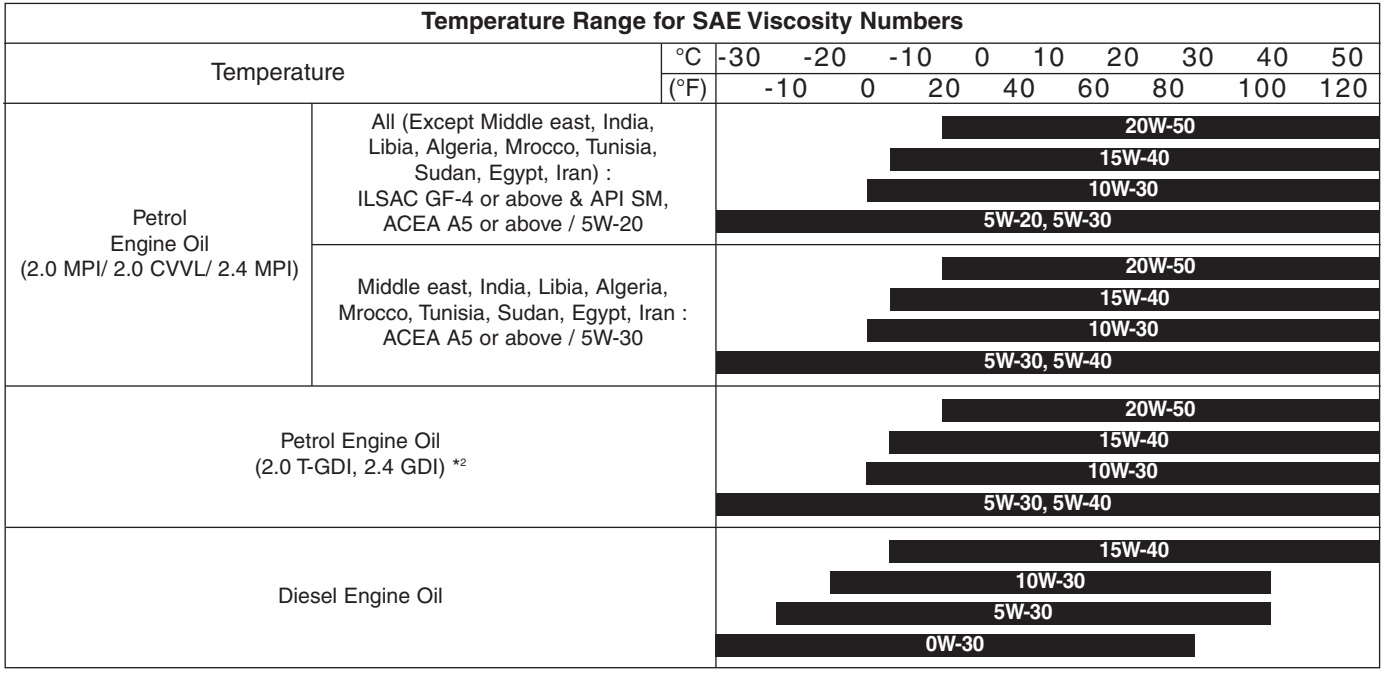
⚠ CAUTION

Always be sure to clean the area around any filler plug, drain plug, or dipstick before checking or draining any lubricant. This is especially important in dusty or sandy areas and when the vehicle is used on unpaved roads. Cleaning the plug and dipstick areas will prevent dirt and grit from entering the engine and other mechanisms that could be damaged.

Engine oil viscosity (thickness) has an effect on fuel economy and cold weather operating (engine start and engine oil flowability). Lower viscosity engine oils can provide better fuel economy and cold weather performance, however, higher viscosity engine oils are required for satisfactory lubrication in hot weather.

Using oils of any viscosity other than those recommended could result in engine damage. When choosing an oil, consider the range of temperature your vehicle will be operated in before the next oil change. Proceed to select the recommended oil viscosity from the chart.

Temperature Range for SAE Viscosity Numbers

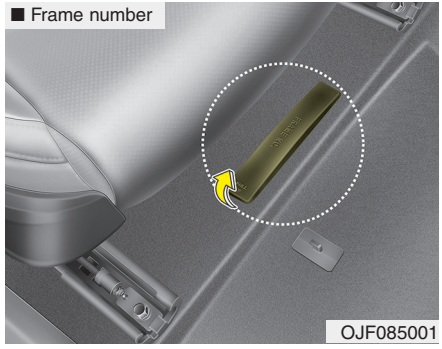


*1 : For better fuel economy, it is recommended to use the engine oil of a viscosity grade SAE 5W-20 (API SM / ILSAC GF-4 / ACEA A5). However, if the engine oil is not available in your country, select the proper engine oil using the engine oil viscosity chart.

*2 : For better fuel economy, it is recommended to use the engine oil of a viscosity grade SAE 5W-30 (ACEA A5). However, if the engine oil is not available in your country, select the proper engine oil using the engine oil viscosity chart.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (VIN)

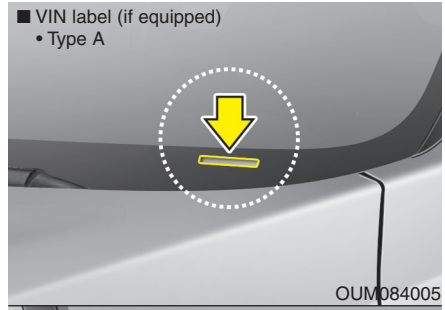
■ Frame number



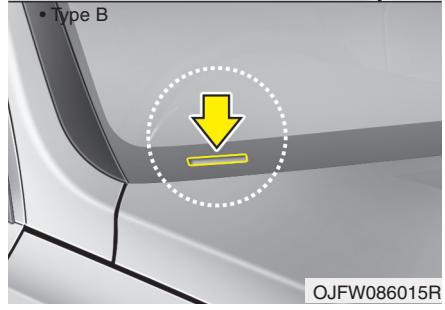
The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the number used in registering your vehicle and in all legal matters pertaining to its ownership, etc.

The number is punched on the floor under the driver seat. To check the number, open the cover.

■ VIN label (if equipped)
• Type A



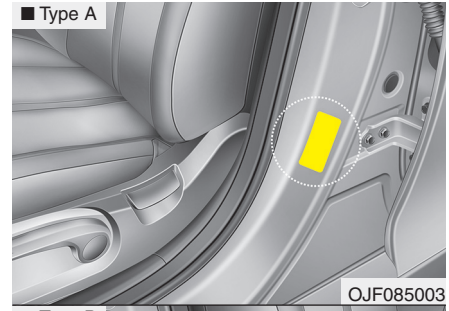
• Type B



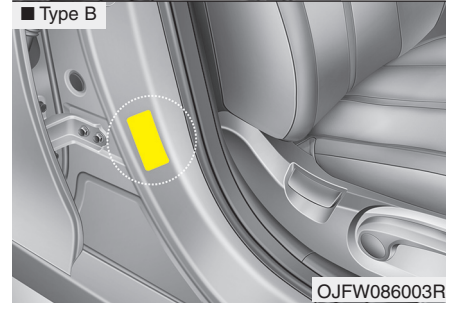
The VIN is also on a plate attached to the top of the dashboard. The number on the plate can easily be seen through the windscreen from outside.

VEHICLE CERTIFICATION LABEL

■ Type A

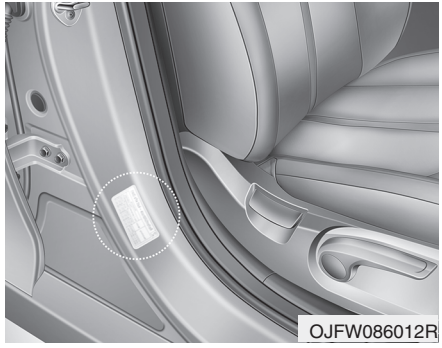


■ Type B



The vehicle certification label attached on the driver's (or front passenger's) side centre pillar gives the vehicle identification number (VIN).

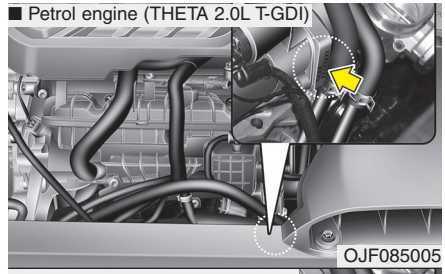
TYRE SPECIFICATION AND PRESSURE LABEL

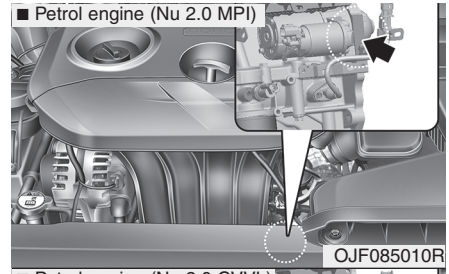


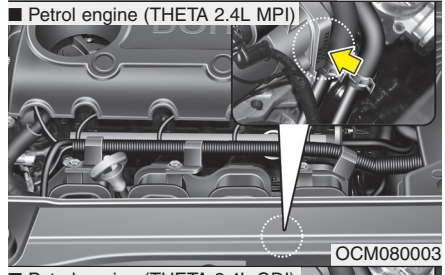
The tyres supplied on your new vehicle are chosen to provide the best performance for normal driving.

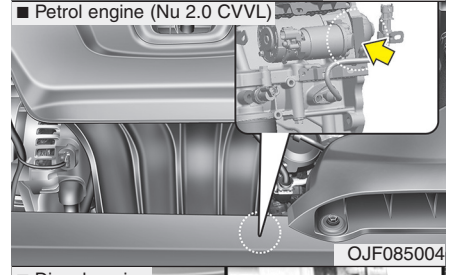
The tyre label located on the driver's side centre pillar gives the tyre pressures recommended for your vehicle.

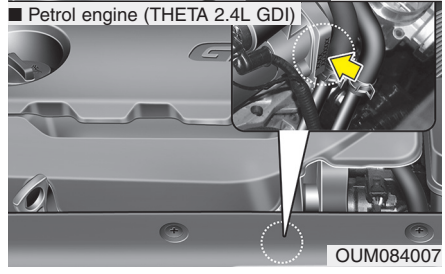
ENGINE NUMBER

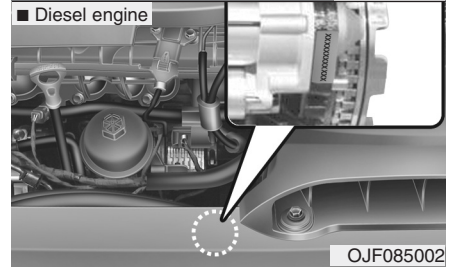






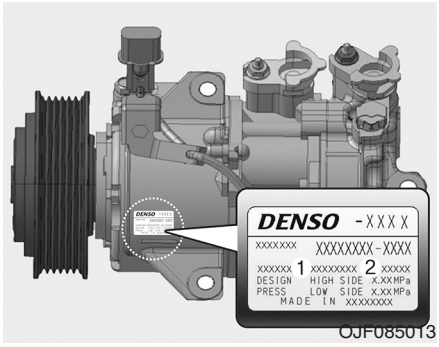






The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown in the drawing.

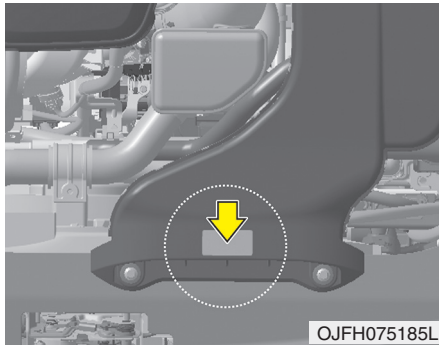
AIR CONDITIONER COMPRESSOR LABEL



OJF085013

A compressor label informs you the type of compressor your vehicle is equipped with such as model, supplier part number, production number, refrigerant (1) and refrigerant oil (2).

REFRIGERANT LABEL


OJFH075185L

The refrigerant label is located on the top of the air duct.

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

■ Example

CE CE 0678

CE0678

The radio frequency components of the vehicle comply with requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1995/5/EC.

Further information including the manufacturer's declaration of conformity is available on Kia web site as follows;

http://www.kia-hotline.com

Index

A

Advanced smart cruise control system 6-96
Limitations of the system.....6-107
Speed setting 6-97
To adjust the sensitivity of advanced smart cruise control 6-106
To convert to cruise control mode: 6-107
Vehicle to vehicle distance setting.....6-102
Air bag - supplemental restraint system.....3-51
Additional safety precautions 3-76
Air bag warning label 3-77
Air bag warning light.....3-55
Curtain air bag 3-67
Driver's and passenger's front air bag 3-60
How does the air bag system operate 3-52
Side air bag 3-66
SRS Care 3-74
SRS components and functions 3-57
Air cleaner 8-66
Filter replacement 8-66
Air conditioner compressor label 9-14
Air conditioning system 9-4
Appearance care 8-149
Exterior care.....8-149
Interior care 8-155
Audio (With Touch Screen) 5-68
Bluetooth® Wireless Technology (Type B-1) 5-102
Bluetooth® Wireless Technology (Type B-2) 5-109
Bluetooth® Wireless Technology (Type B-2, For Colombia Model) 5-116
Feature of Your Audio 5-69
Media Mode.....5-86
Phone Mode 5-101
Radio Mode (Type B-1).....5-81
Radio Mode (Type B-2).....5-84
Rear View Camera 5-155
Setup Mode (Type B-1) 5-131
Setup Mode (Type B-2) 5-140
Setup Mode (Type B-2, For Colombia Model) 5-148
Voice Recognition Mode 5-123
Audio (Without Touch Screen).....5-7
Feature of Your Audio 5-8
Media Mode.....5-28
Phone Mode 5-35
Radio Mode (Type A-1, Type A-2 with RDS).....5-25
Radio Mode (Type A-3, Type A-4) 5-27
Setup Mode (Type A-1, Type A-2) 5-45
Setup Mode (Type A-3, Type A-4) 5-53
Setup Mode (Type A-3, Type A-4, For Colombia Model) 5-60
Voice Recognition Mode 5-38
Audio system 5-2
Antenna 5-2
AUX, USB port 5-4
How vehicle audio works 5-4

Steering wheel audio controls 5-3
Automatic transaxle 6-23
Automatic transaxle operation 6-23
Good driving practices 6-30
Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) 6-70
AEB warning message and system control 6-73
Brake operation 6-74
Limitation of the system 6-77
Recognizing pedestrians 6-80
Sensor to detect the distance from the vehicle in front (front radar) 6-75
System malfunction 6-76
System setting and activation 6-70

B

Battery 8-74
Battery capacity label 8-76
Battery recharging 8-76
For best battery service 8-74
Reset items 8-77
Before driving 6-5
Before entering vehicle 6-5
Before starting 6-5
Necessary inspections 6-5
Blind Spot Detection system (BSD) 6-133
BSD (Blind Spot Detection) / LCA (Lane Change Assist) 6-133
Driver's Attention 6-140
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) 6-137
Bonnet 4-49
Closing the bonnet 4-49
Opening the bonnet 4-49
Brake system 6-43
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 6-58
AUTO HOLD 6-54
Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) 6-47
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 6-61
Emergency Stop Signal (ESS) 6-67
Good braking practices 6-68
Hill-start Assist Control (HAC) 6-66
Parking brake 6-45
Power brakes 6-43
Vehicle Stability Management (VSM) 6-65
Warning messages 6-57
Brake/clutch fluid 8-62
Checking the brake/clutch fluid level 8-62
Bulb wattage 9-5

C

Child restraint system (CRS) 3-36
Installing a Child Restraint System (CRS) 3-39
ISOFIX anchorage and top-tether anchorage (ISOFIX anchorage system) for children 3-40
Selecting a Child Restraint System (CRS) 3-37

Clean air 4-188
Climate control air filter 8-68
Filter inspection 8-68
Climate control system 4-164
Air conditioning 4-165
Air Conditioning refrigerant label 4-167
Automatic climate control system 4-175
Automatic heating and air conditioning 4-176
Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant 4-168
Climate control air filter 4-166
Manual climate control system 4-169
System operation 4-164
Cruise control system 6-81
Cruise control switch 6-82
To cancel cruise control, do one of the following: 6-85
To decrease the cruising speed: 6-84
To increase cruise control set speed: 6-84
To resume cruising speed at more than approximately 30 km/h (20 mph). 6-86
To set cruise control speed: 6-82
To temporarily accelerate with the cruise control on: ..6-85
To turn cruise control off, do one of the following: ..6-86

D

Declaration of Conformity 5-156
ANATEL for Brazil 5-162
CE for EU 5-158
FCC 5-156
MOC for Israel 5-161
NCC for Taiwan 5-160
Defroster 4-163
Rear window defroster 4-163
Dimensions 9-2
Door locks 4-20
Child-protector rear door lock 4-25
Door lock/unlock features 4-23
Operating door locks from inside the vehicle 4-21
Operating door locks from outside the vehicle 4-20
Drive mode integrated control system 6-118
Drive mode 6-118
ECS (Electronic Controlled Suspension) malfunction warning message 6-120
Dual Clutch Transmission (DCT) 6-32
Dual clutch transmission operation 6-32
Good driving practices 6-41

E

Economical operation 6-141
Emergency commodity 7-38
Fire extinguisher 7-38
First aid kit 7-38
Triangle reflector 7-38
Tyre pressure gauge 7-38

Emergency starting 7-5
Jump starting 7-5
Push-starting 7-7
Emission control system 8-156
1. Crankcase emission control system 8-156
2. Evaporative emission control system 8-156
3. Exhaust emission control system 8-157
Lean NOx Trap 8-160
Engine 9-3
Engine compartment 2-7,8-4
Engine coolant 8-59
Changing the coolant 8-61
Checking the coolant level 8-59
Engine number 9-13
Engine oil 8-55
Changing the engine oil and filter 8-58
Checking the engine oil level 8-55
Engine start/stop button 6-12
Engine start/stop button position 6-12
Illuminated engine start/stop button 6-12
Starting the engine 6-15
Stopping the petrol engine/ diesel engine 6-18
Explanation of scheduled maintenance items 8-51
Air cleaner filter 8-52
Air conditioning refrigerant 8-54
Automatic transaxle fluid 8-53
Brake discs, pads, calipers and rotors 8-54
Brake hoses and lines 8-54
Brake/Clutch fluid 8-54
Coolant 8-53
Cooling system 8-53
Drive belts 8-51
Drive shafts and boots 8-54
Dual clutch transmission fluid 8-53
Engine oil and filter 8-51
Fuel filter (for petrol) 8-51
Fuel filter cartridge (for diesel) 8-51
Fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections 8-51
Manual transaxle fluid 8-53
Parking brake 8-54
Spark plugs (for petrol engine) 8-52
Steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint 8-54
Suspension mounting bolts 8-54
Vacuum crankcase ventilation hoses 8-52
Valve clearance (for petrol engine) 8-52
Vapour hose (for petrol engine) and fuel filler cap 8-52
Exterior features 4-210
Roof rack (wagon) 4-210
Exterior overview 2-2

F

Fuel filler lid 4-51
Emergency fuel filler lid release 4-53
Opening the fuel filler lid 4-51

Fuel Filter (For Diesel) 8-65
Draining water from the fuel filter 8-65
Fuel filter cartridge replacement 8-65
Fuel requirements 1-3
Diesel engine 1-6
Petrol engine 1-3
Fuses 8-90
Engine compartment fuse replacement 8-93
Fuse/relay panel description 8-95
Inner panel fuse replacement 8-91

G

Gross vehicle weight....9-3

H

How to use this manual 1-2

I

If the engine overheats 7-8
If the engine will not start 7-4
If engine doesn't turn over or turns over slowly 7-4
If engine turns over normally but does not start 7-4
If you have a flat tyre (with spare tyre) 7-16
Changing tyres 7-17
EC Declaration of Conformity for Jack 7-25
Jack and tools....7-16
Jack label 7-24
Removing and storing the spare tyre 7-17
If you have a flat tyre
(with Tyre Mobility Kit)....7-26
Checking the tyre inflation pressure 7-32
Components of the Tyre Mobility Kit
(TMK) 7-27
Distributing the sealant 7-31
Introduction 7-26
Notes on the safe use of the Tyre Mobility Kit 7-33
Technical Data 7-33
Using the TMK 7-28
In case of an emergency whilst driving 7-3
If engine stalls whilst driving 7-3
If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing 7-3
If you have a flat tyre whilst driving 7-3
Instrument cluster 4-67
Dual clutch transmission shift indicator 4-75
Gauges 4-70
Instrument Cluster Control 4-69
LCD Display Control....4-70
Transaxle Shift Indicator 4-74
Instrument panel overview 2-5
Interior features....4-192
Air ventilation seat....4-196
Ashtray....4-192
Barrier net (wagon) 4-204

Cargo security screen (Wagon) 4-206
Cigarette lighter 4-192
Clothes hanger 4-202
Cup holder 4-193
Floor mat anchor(s) 4-202
Luggage net (holder) 4-203
Luggage rail system (wagon).....4-208
Power outlet 4-197
Seat warmer 4-195
Side curtain 4-203
Sunvisor 4-194
USB charger.....4-198
Wireless smart phone charging system 4-199
Interior light 4-158
Automatic turn off function 4-158
Door courtesy lamp 4-161
Glove box lamp 4-160
Map lamp 4-158
Room lamp.....4-159
Trunk room lamp 4-160
Vanity mirror lamp.....4-161
Interior overview.....2-4
ISG (Idle Stop and Go) system 6-113
Auto start 6-115
Auto stop 6-113
Condition of ISG system operation 6-116
ISG system deactivation 6-116
ISG system malfunction 6-117

K

Key positions 6-7
Ignition switch position 6-7
Illuminated ignition switch 6-7
Starting the engine 6-9
Stopping the petrol engine/ diesel engine 6-11
Keys 4-5
Immobiliser system 4-7
Key operations 4-5
Record your key number 4-5

L

Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS).....6-121
The LDWS does not operate when:.....6-124
The LDWS may not warn you even if the vehicle leaves the lane, or may warn you even if the vehicle does not leave the lane when: 6-124
Warning indicator 6-123
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) 6-125
LKAS function change 6-132
LKAS malfunction.....6-131
LKAS operation.....6-126
LCD Display.....4-77
A/V Mode 4-89
ASCC/LDWS/LKAS 4-89
LCD Modes 4-77

Service Mode 4-78
Trip modes (Trip computer).....4-84
Turn By Turn Mode 4-89
User Settings Mode 4-80
Warning Messages 4-90
Light bulbs 8-114
Back-up lamp bulb replacement 8-128
Back-up lamp bulb replacement (Wagon) 8-135
Bulb replacement precaution 8-114
Front fog lamp (LED type) bulb replacement 8-124
Front turn signal lamp bulb replacement 8-123
Glove box lamp bulb replacement 8-139
Headlamp (HID type) bulb replacement 8-119
Headlamp (High beam) bulb replacement.....8-121
Headlamp (High/Low beam) LED replacement 8-122
Headlamp (Low beam) bulb replacement 8-120
Headlamp and front fog lamp aiming (for Europe) 8-141
High mounted stop lamp bulb replacement.....8-132
High mounted stop lamp bulb replacement (Wagon) 8-137
License plate lamp bulb replacement 8-131
Light bulb position (Front) 8-116
Light bulb position (Rear - Sedan) 8-117
Light bulb position (Rear - Wagon).....8-118
Light bulb position (Side) 8-119
Map lamp bulb replacement 8-137
Personal lamp bulb replacement 8-139
Position lamp + DRL (LED type) bulb replacement ..8-124
Position lamp bulb replacement.....8-123
Rear fog lamp bulb replacement (Wagon).....8-136
Rear fog lamp bulbreplacement.....8-129
Rear turn signal lamp bulb replacement 8-125
Rear turn signal lamp bulb replacement (Wagon) 8-132
Room lamp bulb replacement 8-138
Side repeater lamp bulb replacement.....8-125
Smart cornering lamp bulb replacement 8-122
Stop and tail lamp (LED type) bulb replacement 8-128
Stop and tail lamp (LED type) bulb replacement (Wagon) 8-135
Stop and tail lamp bulb replacement 8-126
Stop and tail lamp bulb replacement (Wagon) 8-133
Tail lamp (inside) bulb replacement (Wagon) 8-136
Tail lamp bulb replacement 8-130
Tailgate room lamp bulb replacement (Wagon) 4-140
Trunk lamp bulb replacement (Sedan).....4-140
Vanity mirror lamp bulb replacement 8-138
Lighting.....4-141
AFLS (Adaptive Front Lighting System) 4-151
Battery saver function 4-141
Daytime running light 4-142
Front fog light 4-148
Headlight escort function.....4-141
Headlight levelling device 4-150

High Beam Assist 4-145
High beam operation 4-144
Lighting control 4-142
Rear fog light 4-149
Smart cornering lamp.....4-142
Turn signals and lane change signals.....4-147
Luggage volume 9-4

M

Maintenance services 8-7
Owner maintenance precautions 8-7
Owner's responsibility 8-7
Manual Transaxle 6-19
Good driving practices.....6-21
Manual transaxle operation 6-19
Mirrors 4-62
Inside rearview mirror 4-62
Outside rearview mirror.....4-63
Reverse parking aid function 4-66

O

Owner maintenance 8-9
Owner maintenance schedule 8-9

P

Panorama sunroof 4-54
Closing the sunroof 4-57
Resetting the sunroof 4-58
Sliding the sunroof 4-56
Sunroof open warning 4-55
Sunshade 4-55
Tilting the sunroof 4-57
Parking assist system 4-117
Non-operational conditions of parking assist system 4-119
Operation of the parking assist system 4-117
Self-diagnosis.....4-121
Parking brake 8-64
Checking the parking brake 8-64

R

Rearview camera.....4-139
Recommended lubricants and capacities 9-8
Recommended sae viscosity number 9-10
Refrigerant label 9-14
Remote keyless entry 4-9
Battery replacement 4-13
Remote keyless entry system operations 4-9
Smart key system operation.....4-10
Transmitter precautions 4-12
Road warning 7-2
Hazard warning flasher 7-2

S

Scheduled maintenance service 8-11
Scheduled maintenanceservice precaution 8-11
Seat belts.....3-22
Care of seat belts 3-35
Pre-tensioner seat belt 3-29
Seat belt precautions 3-32
Seat belt restraint system 3-22
Seats 3-2
Driver position memory system (for power seat) 3-9
Driver's seat 3-2
Front passenger's seat 3-2
Front seat adjustment - manual 3-5
Front seat adjustment - power 3-6
Headrest (for front seat).....3-11
Rear seat.....3-2
Rear seat adjustment 3-15
Seatback pocket 3-14
Smart parking assist system (SPAS).....4-122
Additional instructions (messages) 4-133
Additional instructions (messages) 4-137
How the system works (Exit mode) 4-134
How the system works (Parking Mode) 4-127
Non-operating condition 4-124
Operating condition 4-122
System malfunction 4-134
System malfunction 4-138
Smart trunk (For SEDAN) 4-29
Special driving conditions 6-143
Driving at night 6-145
Driving in flooded areas 6-146
Driving in the rain 6-145
Driving off-road 6-146
Hazardous driving conditions 6-143
Highway driving 6-146
Rocking the vehicle 6-143
Smooth cornering.....6-144
Speed limit control system 6-87
To set speed limit : 6-87
To turn off the speed limit control, do one of the following: 6-89
Speed Limit Information Function (SLIF) 6-90
Display 6-92
Driver's attention 6-94
Operation 6-91
SLIF activation / deactivation 6-91
Steering wheel 4-59
Electric power steering 4-59
Heated steering wheel 4-60
Horn 4-61
Tilt & telescopic steering 4-60
Storage compartment 4-189
Centre console storage.....4-189
Glove box.....4-189
Luggage side partition (wagon).....4-191

Luggage side tray (wagon) 4-191
Luggage tray (wagon) 4-191
Sunglass holder 4-190
Surround view monitoring system 4-140

T

Tailgate 4-33
Emergency tailgate safety release 4-43
Non-power tailgate.....4-33
Power tailgate.....4-34
Smart tailgate 4-39
Theft-alarm system 4-14
Armed stage 4-14
Disarmed stage.....4-16
Theft-alarm stage 4-15
Theft-alarm system 4-17
Towing 7-34
Emergency towing 7-35
Removable towing hook 7-35
Towing service 7-34
Trailer Towing.....6-153
Driving with a trailer 6-156
Hitches 6-155
If you do decide to pull a trailer 6-161
Maintenance when trailer towing 6-160
Safety chains 6-155
Trailer brakes 6-156
Trunk (For SEDAN) 4-26
Closing the trunk 4-27
Emergency trunk safety release 4-28
Opening the trunk 4-26
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 7-9
Changing a tyre with TPMS 7-13
Check tyre pressure 7-9
Low tyre pressure position telltale.....7-11
Low tyre pressure telltale.....7-11
TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System) malfunction indicator.....7-12
Tyre specification and pressure label 9-13
Tyres and wheels.....8-78
Checking tyre inflation pressure 8-79
Low aspect ratio tyre 8-88
Recommended cold tyre inflation pressures 8-78
Tyre care 8-78
Tyre maintenance 8-84
Tyre replacement 8-82
Tyre rotation 8-80
Tyre sidewall labeling 8-84
Tyre traction 8-84
Wheel alignment and tyre balance.....8-81
Wheel replacement 8-83
Tyres and wheels (Except europe, australia, russia) 9-7
Tyres and wheels (For europe, australia, russia) 9-6

V

Vehicle break-in process 1-8
Vehicle certification label 9-12
Vehicle identification number (vin) 9-12
Vehicle weight 6-165
Base kerb weight 6-165
Cargo weight 6-165
GAW (Gross Axle Weight) 6-165
GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating) 6-165
GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight) 6-165
GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating) 6-165
Overloading 6-165
Vehicle kerb weight 6-165

W

Warning and indicator lights.....4-100
Indicator Lights 4-111
Warning lights 4-100
Washer fluid 8-63
Checking the washer fluid level.....8-63
Welcome system 4-162
Escort welcome 4-162
Interior light 4-162
Welcome light 4-162
Windows 4-44
Power windows 4-45
Windscreen defrosting and defogging 4-184
Auto defogging system
(Only for automatic climate control system).....4-187
Automatic climate control system 4-184
Defogging logic 4-186
Manual climate control system 4-184
Operation tips.....4-185
Winter driving.....6-148
Carry emergency equipment 6-152
Change to "winter weight" oil if necessary 6-151
Check battery and cables 6-151
Check spark plugs and ignition system 6-151
Don't let ice and snow accumulate underneath 6-152
Don't let your parking brake freeze 6-152
Snowy or Icy conditions 6-148
To keep locks from freezing 6-151
Use approved window washer anti-freeze in
system 6-151
Use high quality ethylene glycol coolant 6-151
Wiper blades 8-70
Blade inspection.....8-70
Blade replacement 8-70
Wipers and washers 4-152
Windscreen washers.....4-155
Windscreen wiper/washer 4-152
Windscreen wipers 4-153